# Narrationes Faciles de Historia Romanorum

## compiled by John P. Piazza

The purpose of this reader is to provide teachers and students with readings on Roman history and culture which do not require a departure from the target language, namely Latin. It is hard to understand why so many Latin textbooks cover this content in English, when it can be presented in comprehensible Latin, which students can read for interest and enjoyment, and especially when such narratives already exist. I have gone through four or five first-year textbooks (many of them out of print) which contain narratives, in Latin, on most of the major people and events of Roman history, and I have rearranged them into chronological order, from the origins, to Marcus Aurelius and Pliny the Younger. These readings are NOT organized by level of difficulty, but every reading is condsidered first year level. Teachers should easily be able to tell if a given reading is appropriate for his/her students, either by looking at the page or chapter number (if there is one), or by reading through the text. For many stories, there are multiple readings, which are more or less organized according to level of difficulty. Students who are well into their first year should be able to understand any of the readings contained here (perhaps with some assistance), and this compilation (or some modification of it) would make great summer reading between first and second year, or as extensive reading for students in their second or third year.

This is only the first step in the development of an extensive reader which will hopefully be of much help to teachers. Many of the readings are less than perfect with regard to style, vocabulary, and content. If anyone succeeds in refining any of the readings, or producing additional readings, I would like very much to add them to this reader.

For those interested in the sources of these readings, I have written initials in the bottom corner of the first page of each reading. Here is the key:

J       Jenny and Scudder. *First Year Latin*
LAR  *Latin and the Romans*
LFA  *Latin for Americans*
LWR  *Living With the Romans*
OLH  *Our Latin Heritage*
UL       *Using Latin*

This reader is not meant to replace any textbook, and is intended to be used freely in accordance with fair academic usage.

John Piazza
www.johnpiazza.net

# Table of Contents

# I. Origins

## Troy + Aeneas

# LESSON THIRTY-NINE

*"*

## *The Perfect Tense Passive*

══════════ PRELIMINARY REMARKS ══════════

In preparation for this lesson review what you have learned about the principal parts and stems of a Latin verb. You have seen the perfect passive participle used as an adjective and you have learned how to translate it. This participle is also used to form what is known as the *participial system* (the compound tenses) of Latin verbs. The present system consists of the tenses formed by the use of the present stem: the present, imperfect, and future, active and passive. The perfect system consists of the tenses formed by the use of the perfect stem: the perfect and past perfect active. The participial system consists of the tenses formed by the use of the participial stem: the perfect and past perfect passive. There is one more tense of the Latin verb — the future perfect; but it is not used in this book.

## HOW THE TROJAN WAR BEGAN

Cornēlia, mātrōna Rōmāna, in cathedrā[1] prope piscīnam[2] peristȳlī sedēbat. Prope eam trēs fīliae ejus et fīlius parvus Pūblius sedēbant. Tullius autem atque fīliī Mārcus et Quīntus nōn jam aderant. In Forō enim erant, ubi ōrātiōnem ducis
5  ēgregiī urbis Rōmae audiēbant. Fessae[3] erant puellae. Diū enim lūserant. Itaque fābulam, quam eīs Cornēlia dē initiō Rōmae nārrābat, gaudiō magnō audiēbant. Cupitisne hanc fābulam audīre? Attendite.

*"*



The flight from Troy. "Come then, dear father, place yourself on my back. I shall support you with my shoulders. Little Iulus shall come with me. And you, father, take in your hand the holy images of our ancestral household gods." (VERGIL)

"Ut vōs, meī līberī,[4] cognōvistis," inquit Cornēlia, "Larēs[5] et Penātēs,[6] deōs familiae et cīvitātis, habēmus, quī vītam 10 bonaque familiārum nostrārum cīvitātisque Rōmānae semper cūrāvērunt et cūrābunt. Nōnne vōbīs nārrābō dē itinere Penātium quī hūc Rōmam ā majōribus[7] nostrīs portātī sunt [1]? Nōnne bene attendētis?

"Cīvitās Rōmāna initium ab urbe Trōjā[8] habuit. Fābula 15 dē initiō cīvitātis Rōmānae ā Vergiliō[9], ēgregiō poētā nostrō, scrīpta est. Multae fābulae quidem dē temporibus antīquīs ā poētīs nostrīs nōbīs trāditae sunt. Propter vōcem autem Vergilī illīus [2] fābula dē bellō Trōjānō,[10] dē factīs itineribusque Trōjānōrum, et dē cīvitātis nostrae initiō semper ab hominibus 20 in memoriā habita est.

"Trōja urbs antīqua in Asiā[11] erat. Quod Helena,[12] rēgīna pulchra et marīta Menelāī,[13] prīncipis Graecī, in Asiam portāta est, bellum longum inter Trōjānōs et Graecōs gestum est. Cum mīlle nāvibus et numerō magnō mīlitum Graecī trāns mare 25 nāvigāvērunt et rēgīnam āmissam quaesīvērunt. Illam re- cuperāre erat negōtium magnae difficultātis. Per novem annōs in campīs et sub mūrīs urbis Trōjae bellum gestum est; nam Trōjānī contrā hostēs urbem magnā cum virtūte dēfendēbant."

[NOTES] 1. *cathedra, -ae (f.)*, chair. 2. *piscīna, -ae (f.)*, pool. 3. *fessus, -a, -um*, tired. 4. *meī līberī*, my children (*voc.*). 5. *Larēs, -ium (m.)*, Lares. 6. *Penātēs, -ium (m.)*, Penates. 7. *majōrēs, -um (m. pl.)*, ancestors. 8. *Trōja, -ae (f.)*, Troy. 9. *Vergilius, Vergilī (m.)*, Vergil. 10. *Trōjānus, -a, -um*, Trojan. 11. *Asia, -ae (f.)*, Asia. 12. *Helena, -ae (f.)*, Helen. 13. *Menelāus, -ī (m.)*, Menelaus.

## GRAMMAR NOTES

[*The Perfect Indicative Passive, All Conjugations.*]

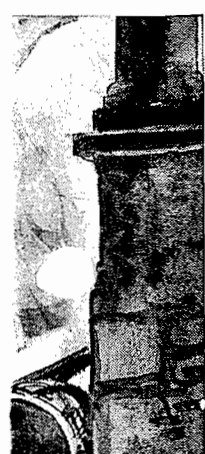**1.** Unlike the other tenses you have learned, the perfect passive is not formed by the addition of endings to a stem. Instead, it is formed by the use of the perfect passive participle as an adjective with the present tense of **sum**. The participle, being an adjective, agrees in gender and number with the subject.

The perfect indicative passive is inflected as follows:

[ 295 ]

LESSON
OBJECTIVES
- To learn the forms of second declension neuter words
- To learn English derivatives of neuter nouns

# TRŌIA

Graecī et Trōiānī[1] ad Trōiam[2] pugnāvērunt. Trōiānī barbarī erant, quī[3] in Asiā[4] habitāvērunt. Trōiānī et Graecī annōs IX pugnāvērunt. Decimō[5] annō Ulixēs[6], clārus Graecus, cōnsilium novum in animō habuit. Graecōs singulōs signō vocāvit et eīs[7] cōnsilium mandāvit: "Multam māteriam ex silvā ad
5 castra portāte. Ex māteriā equum altum parāte. Barbarīs praemium novum dōnābimus."

Graecī equum parāvērunt et in equum virī singulī ascendērunt[8]. In equō scrīpsērunt[9]: "Graecī Minervae[10] praemium dōnant." Tum ad Trōiānōs equum mōvērunt. Ad īnsulam parvam nāvigāvērunt et frūmentum
10 parāvērunt. Barbarī equum et castra dēserta[11] Graecōrum vīdērunt. Equum vocāvērunt signum sacrum et in oppidum[12] mōvērunt. Nocte[13] Graecī ab īnsulā revertērunt[14] et ūnus ex Graecīs[15] signō ex equō virōs ēvocāvit. In oppidum sociōs vocāvērunt. Graecī Trōiam occupāvērunt. Fortūna Trōiānōrum mala erat.

the Trojans
near Troy
who
Asia (modern Turkey)
tenth
Ulys'sēs
to them
climbed
wrote
Minerva, a goddess who favored the Greeks
deserted
town
at night
retu___d
one of the Greeks

_he legend of the Trojan Horse _d the capture of Troy have spired artists and storytellers _m Homer (ca. 750 B.C.) down the present day. In this 1994 _inting by Tomas Galamoros, _e fall of Troy is told as much by _lor symbolism as by narrative _tail. The gold, silver, and aborate design suggest the ealth of Troy; the red and ack, the fire and ashes of its struction. In the center, most the Trojans gladly welcome e horse, ignoring the ghoulish _ure in the lower right who ges them not to trust the _ee__ _en when they bear fts.

Private Collection/The Bridgeman Art Library

LFA

all of whom had murdered their husbands on their wedding night. When the women died, they were punished in Tartarus by having continually to pour water into sieves.

## For the Most Beautiful

"Dā mihi (*to me*) pōmum aureum, et imperium et pecūniam habēbis, Paris," Jūnō, rēgīna deārum et hominum, prōmīsit.

"Honōrēs et glōriam et fāmam tibi (*to you*) dabō," inquit (*said*) Minerva, dea sapientiae (*of wisdom*), "si mihi pōmum dabis."

"Nōnne fēminam pulchram esse uxōrem dēsīderās?" rogāvit Venus, dea amōris (*of love*) et pulchritūdinis (*of beauty*).

Paris, pastor (*shepherd*) et fīlius Priāmī, nōn dubitāvit. Sine morā et māgnō cum studiō Venerī pōmum aureum dedit, sed jūdicium fatāle Paridis erat initium bellī Trōjānī.

Helena, soror (*sister*) Castoris et Pollūcis (*of Pollux*), erat uxor Menelāī. Graecī Helenam pulchram amāvērunt et Menelāō māgnum honōrem dedērunt. Menelāus, rēx (*king*) Spartae, apud Graecōs multum imperium habēbat. Auxiliō Veneris, Paris ad terram Spartānōrum nāvigāre parāvit. Mox cum multīs sociīs in domiciliō Menelāī erat. Rēx nōbilis Paridī inimīcus nōn fuit. Diū Paris cum rēge et rēgīnā Spartae mānsit. Tum pastor perfidus (*treacherous*) auxiliō sociōrum Helenam raptāvit (*carried off*) et trāns aquam ad ōrās (*shores*) Trōjae nāvigāvit. Perfidia Paridis et infidēlitās Helenae erant causae longī bellī inter Graecōs et Trōjānōs.

Menelāus māgnā cum īrā multitūdinem amīcōrum et sociōrum statim (*immediately*) convocāvit. Ex oppidīs et vīcīs, ex agrīs et silvīs, ex īnsulīs et montibus (*mountains*) sine morā properāvērunt. Cūnctī virī validī Menelāum adjuvāre dēsīderāvērunt, et ad Spartānōrum terram gladiōs, tēla, scūta, arma bellī portāvērunt.

Per duōs (*two*) annōs Graecī māgnās nāvēs (*ships*) parāverant. Agamemnōn inter Graecōs māgnum imperium habuit, et nāvēs ad Trōjae ōrās nāvigāre jūssit. Agamemnōn, autem (*however*), in silvīs ambulābat et cervum (*deer*) Diānae forte (*by chance*) necāvit. Dea īrāta ventōs esse tranquillōs jūssit. Calchās vātes (*prophet*) Agamemnonī nūntiāvit:

"Sī ventōs secundōs (*favorable*) dēsīderās, fīliam tuam Īphigenīam sacrificāre dēbēs. Est mandātum deae Diānae." Pater miser fīliam ante āram (*altar*) Diānae stāre jūssit, sed Diāna puellam pulchram ad templum portāvit. Posteā secundī erant ventī, et nāvēs ad ōrās Trōjae nāvigāre parāvērunt.

# AENĒĀS

[The Trojan War was fought more than three thousand years ago at Troy, in Asia Minor, near the Dardanelles in what is now Turkey. The story of the war is told by the Greek poet Homer in the *Iliad.* Vergil, the Roman poet, tells part of the story in his *Aeneid* and goes on to tell of the Trojan Aeneas, said to be the son of the goddess Venus. After the fall of Troy Aeneas eventually reached Italy and, according to the story, he and his companions were the ancestors of the Romans.]

Trōiānī cum Graecīs multōs annōs bellum gessērunt. Graecī Trōiam occupāvērunt. Aenēās Trōiānus arma cēpit et cum multīs virīs oppidum dēfendere mātūrāvit. Sed Venus dea, māter Aenēae[1], eum[2] in mediō oppidō invēnit et verba fēcit:

"Audī sententiam meam. Tenē memoriā familiam tuam. Convocā familiam 5 et amīcōs firmōs et fuge. Novam patriam inveniēs. Céde fortūnae. Deī Trōiānōs poenā dūrā afficient."

Aenēās cōnsilium nōn grātē audīvit, sed officium fēcit. Virōs redūxit et amīcōs convocāvit. Amīcī convēnērunt et excēdere parāvērunt. Tum Aenēās ex oppidō patrem[3] portāvit et fīlium parvum dūxit. Cum multīs servīs et 10 sociīs fūgit. Singulī in locum commodum convēnērunt et ibi castra posuērunt. Mātēriam ex silvā portāvērunt et nāvēs[4] parāvērunt. Tum nāvēs in aquam trāxērunt et undīs mandāvērunt et migrāvērunt. Ad multās īnsulās et terrās novās vēnērunt sed patriam novam nōn invēnērunt. Vītam dūram ēgērunt. Īra Iūnōnis,[5] rēgīnae deōrum, hoc[6] effēcit. 15

In īnsulā Crētā castra posuērunt. Tum in mediō somnō[7] Aenēās Penātēs[8] vīdit et sententiam audīvit:

"Crēta patria vestra nōn erit. Excēdite, Trōiānī. Locus est quem[9] Graecī Hesperiam, aliī[10] Italiam vocant. Ibi terminum cūrārum perpetuārum inveniētis. Ibi in ōtiō et concordiā habitābitis et magnum oppidum pōnētis et 20 mūniētis."

Ita Trōiānī cōnsilium novum cēpērunt. Castra mōvērunt et ad Italiam nāvigāvērunt.

[1] *of Aeneas* (gen. sing.)
[2] *him*
[3] *father* (acc. sing.)
[4] *ships* (acc. pl.)
[5] *the anger of Juno*
[6] *this* (acc. sing.)
[7] *sleep*
[8] *household gods* (acc. pl.)
[9] *which* (acc.)
[10] *others*

LFA  9 page Aeneid

# LESSON XXVII

# AD ITALIAM

## LESSON OBJECTIVES
- To learn about
  trip toward Ital:
- To learn the pa
  voice and the p
  forms of the pr
  imperfect, and
  tenses

In magnīs undīs nāvēs[1] Trōiānōrum volvuntur[2]. Sed Trōiānī ex mediīs undīs servantur et ad Actium[3] properant; ibi inveniunt Helenum Trōiānum, quī[4] terram regēbat. Helenus Trōiānōs convocat et verba pauca facit:

"Longa est via ad Italiam, ad quam[5] accēdere parātis. Accēdite ad Siciliam et nāvigāte ab Siciliā ad Italiam fīnitimam. Dūrum est semper nāvigāre, sed 5 Fāta viam invenient."

Sententia Helenī grātē accipitur, et Aenēās Helenō grātiās agit. Castra moventur nāvēsque undīs committuntur. "Italiam, Italiam videō!" clāmat nauta et terram mōnstrat. In terrā equī clārē videntur. "Signum proelī sunt equī," dīcit Anchīsēs[6]; "equīs bellum geritur. Proelium committere nōn 10 dēbēmus." Nōn ibi manent sed ad Siciliam fīnitimam properant. Aetna eōs[7] terret et ā Siciliā fugiunt.

Tum Iūnō, rēgīna deōrum, quae[8] Trōiānōs nōn amābat, ad Aeolum, quī ventōs regit et continet, venit dīcitque:

"Sī ventī dūrī in nāvēs[9] Trōiānōrum mittentur, magnam grātiam habēbō et 15 magna praemia tibi[10] dōnābō."

Aeolus ventōs in nāvēs mittere mātūrat. Altīs undīs Trōiānī terrentur. Arma virīque in undīs sunt. Tum Neptūnus, deus undārum, ventōs audit et ad locum venit ubi nāvēs sunt. Īra Neptūnī magna est; ventī lātē fugiunt. Paucī Trōiānī āmittuntur[11]; reliquī ad terram fīnitimam veniunt et servantur. Sed in 20 quā[12] terrā sunt? Nōn sciunt[13], sed castra pōnere nōn dubitāvērunt[14].

[1] *ships* (nom. pl.)
[2] *are tossed*
[3] *Actium (Ak'shium)*
[4] *who*
[5] *which*
[6] father of Aeneas; pron Ankī'sēs
[7] *them*
[8] *who*
[9] *ships* (acc. pl.)
[10] *to you*
[11] *are lost*
[12] *what*
[13] *know*
[14] *did not hesitate*

## Questions
1. Where do the Trojans land first and whom do they meet?
2. Where does their host tell them to go before going to Italy?
3. What will help the Trojans get there?
4. Is Helenus' advice accepted?
5. Who spots Italy first and what does he see there?
6. How does Anchises interpret what is seen?
7. Do the Trojans stop in Italy?

# LESSON XXVIII

# IN ĀFRICĀ AENĒĀS AUXILIUM ACCIPIT.

**A**enēās sociōs convocāvit et verba fēcit:

"In terrā novā sumus. Sed deī praesidium nostrum sunt. Deīs vītam committite. Neque terra neque aqua nōs[1] terret. Inveniēmus viam aut faciēmus. Italia nostra erit. Ibi et terminus malōrum nostrōrum et ōtium perpetuum ā Trōiānīs invenientur. Ibi patria erit et nova Trōia. Ē patriā novā numquam excēdēmus."

Tum Aenēās cum ūnō sociō ē castrīs excessit. Loca explōrāre mātūrāvit. Venus māter eum[2] vīdit et appellāvit. Nōmen[3] oppidī, quod[4] appellātur Carthāgō et in Āfricā est, et nōmen rēgīnae, quae[5] est Dīdō, Aenēae[6] Venus nūntiat. Via Aenēae ā deā mōnstrātur; Aenēās prōcessit et magnum oppidum 10

[1] us
[2] him
5 [3] name (acc.)
[4] which
[5] who
[6] dative



In Carthage, Dido, sympathetic to the Trojans' woes, welcomed them and had a great banquet prepared. Afterwards, Aeneas, at Dido's insistence, reluctantly told of the havoc of the fall of Troy and his pain at having to flee in obedience to the will of the gods. Can you identify some of the events connected with the Trojan War as shown in this

LFA

vīdit. In mediō oppidō templum erat. Ad templum rēgīna Dīdō cum paucīs sociīs vēnit. Ibi erant reliquī Trōiānī quōs[7] undae ab Aeneā[8] sēparāverant[9].

Dīdō mala Trōiānōrum audit et dīcit:

"Auxiliō meō aut in Italiam aut in Siciliam commodē veniētis, amīcī. Sed
15 sī grātum est in nostrā patriā manēre, oppidum nostrum est vestrum et praesidium habēbitis."

Tum magna cēna et cibī ēgregiī[10] ā rēgīnā parantur. Aenēās nūntium ad fīlium, quī Iūlus[11] appellātur, mittit; nūntius dīcit:

"Properā ad oppidum, Iūle. Pater tē[12] exspectat."
20 Sed in locō Iūlī Venus deum Amōrem[13] mittit. Sed et Aenēās et reliquī Trōiānī deum crēdunt esse Iūlum[14]. Tum Amor rēgīnam afficit, et Dīdō Aenēam amāre incipit.

### Questions

1. What does Aeneas tell his comrades about the gods?
2. How does he express his determination to get to Italy?
3. What will be found in Italy and why does he speak of a **nova Trōia** (line 5)?
4. Why did Aeneas leave the camp?
5. Who saw him leave and met him?
6. What information did he receive from her?
7. Who was at the temple when Aeneas and his comrade got there?
8. What choices did Dido offer Aeneas after hearing his troubles? Were they helpful?
9. To whom does Aeneas send a message, and what was it?
10. What is the paradoxical (unexpected) result?

# VOCABULARY

## Noun

**praesi´dium, praesi´dī** n. *guard, protection*

## Verb

**appel´lō, appellā´re, appellā´vī, [appellā´tus]**　　(appellate)
　　*call, name*

## Conjunctions

**aut** *or*
**aut... aut** *either . . . or*
**et... et** *both . . . and*

# AENĒĀS ET DĪDŌ

SSON
JECTIVES

o read about Aeneas
nd    to

o learn the use of
djectives as nouns in
atin

acc.)

(dat.)

ıcc. pl.)

ınds (me)

erself

**D**īdō ad Annam sorōrem[1] properāvit: "Anna soror," dīxit, "animus meus miser perīculīs terrētur; Aenēam amō. Quid agam?"

Anna respondit: "Aenēās est bonus et amīcus vir. Prō Trōiā pugnāvit sed patriam āmīsit; nunc prō nostrā patriā multōs annōs pugnābit. Fīnitimī nōn
5 sunt amīcī. Terminī nostrī ab Aenēā proeliīs dēfendentur."

Aenēās in Āfricā cum rēgīnā pulchrā mānsit. Dīdō Trōiānum per medium oppidum dūxit et eī[2] oppidum mōnstrāvit.

Tum Iuppiter Mercurium nūntium ad Aenēam mīsit. "Annum in hōc[3] locō ēgistī," Mercurius dīxit. "Verba deī memoriā nōn tenēs; properā in
10 Italiam cum sociīs tuīs, ubi fīlius tuus reget. Ibi ōtium habēbis."

Aenēās sociōs convocāvit. Sociī frūmentum in nāvēs[4] portāvērunt. Dīdō Aenēam appellāvit:

"Cūr[5] fugis? Dūrus es; iniūriam facis. Magnum est perīculum nostrum. Ā populīs fīnitimīs agrī nostrī occupābuntur, oppidum āmittētur. Praesidium
15 nostrum esse dēbēs. In concordiā perpetuā habitābimus."

Aenēās respondit: "Deum Mercurium vīdī. Officium meum est ad Italiam nāvigāre. Dūrum est, sed deus imperat[6]."

Aenēās tardē excessit et ad nāvēs vēnit. Sociī convēnērunt et nāvēs in aquam trāxērunt. Tum nāvēs undīs ventīsque commīsērunt. Dīdō misera
20 nāvēs vīdit et sē interfēcit[7].

Trōiānī ad Italiam migrāvērunt et patriam novam invēnērunt. Dīdō vītam āmīsit; Aenēās patriam invēnit. Ita in librīs poētārum scrībitur.

## Questions

1. Why was Dido troubled?
2. Why did Anna and Dido both think that Aeneas should stay?
3. What does Mercury tell Aeneas to do?
4. What arguments did Dido use to try to persuade Aeneas to stay in Carthage?
5. What did Dido do after Aeneas left?
6. Where did Aeneas go?
7. How long did Aeneas stay with Dido?

LFA

# AENĒĀS AD ĪNFERŌS¹

**A**enēās fīlius Anchīsae² fuit, quī in Siciliā ē vītā excesserat. Tum Anchīsēs in somnō ad fīlium vēnerat et fīlium vocāverat: "Venī, fīlī, ad īnferōs, ubi sum. Sibylla³ viam nōvit et tē⁴ dūcet."

Ita Aenēās in Italiam prōcessit, ubi Sibylla habitābat. Cōnsilium Sibyllae erat: "Sī in silvā rāmum aureum⁵ inveniēs, ad īnferōs tē prōdūcam et sine 5 perīculō redūcam; sed sine rāmō numquam tē prōdūcam." Ita Aenēās in silvam properāvit. Auxiliō Veneris⁶ rāmum invēnit et cum Sibyllā ad īnferōs dēscendit. Ibi multa nova vīdit et nōvit.

Tum ad magnam silvam vēnērunt. Ibi erat Dīdō. Aenēās rēgīnam vīdit et vocāvit: "Nūntiusne vērum nūntiāvit? Vītamne āmīsistī? Causane fuī? 10 Invītus⁷ ē patriā tuā excessī, sed ita deus imperāvit⁸." Sed rēgīna, nunc inimīca, verbīs lacrimīsque⁹ Aenēae nōn movētur. Neque Aenēam spectāvit neque respondit, sed in silvam fūgit.

Aenēās tardē ē silvā excessit et locum vīdit ubi malī poenā afficiēbantur. Tum Aenēās Sibyllaque in Ēlysium¹⁰ prōcessērunt. Ibi animae¹¹ bonōrum in 15 concordiā vītam agēbant. Iniūriae et pugnae aberant. Ibi Anchīsēs erat.

¹ *the Lower World* (See footnote 6, p. 160)
² *Anchises (Ankī´ses,* gen.)
³ *the Sibyl* (a prophetess)
⁴ *you* (acc.)
⁵ *golden branch*
⁶ genitive of *Venus*
⁷ *unwilling(ly)*
⁸ *has commanded*
⁹ *tears*
¹⁰ *Elÿ´sium,* Greek and Roman heaven
¹¹ *souls*
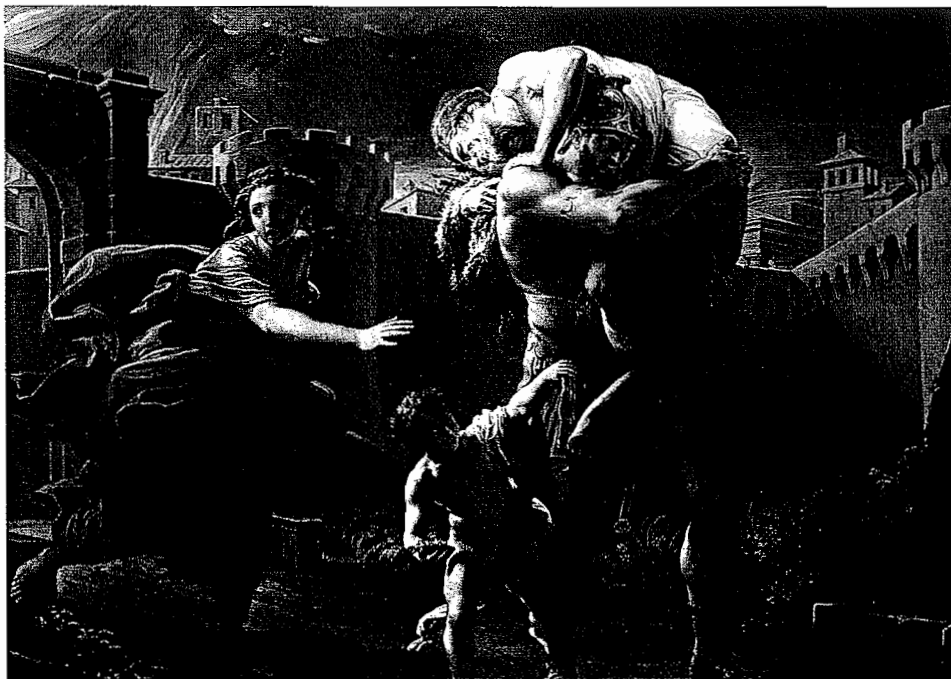


Ever obedient to the will of Fate, Aeneas reluctantly abandons Troy to fulfill his destiny as the founder of Rome. On his shoulder, he carries his father Anchises, who grasps a lion skin, and at his side is Ascanius (Iulus). Also with him are his household gods, brought along to serve as a vital link between the past and the future. Following is Creusa,

LFA

Resource, NY

Grātus[12] fīlium accēpit et nūntiāvit: "Clārōs Rōmānōs quī posteā in terrā erunt et glōriam populī tuī mōnstrābō. Rōmānī malōs superābunt[13] et populōs aequē regent." Aenēās ab Anchīse nōn retinētur et ā Sibyllā in terram redūcitur. Tum loca commoda in Italiā occupāre mātūrāvit.

## Questions

1. Where did Aeneas' father die?
2. What did Aeneas' father ask him to do?
3. Whom did Aeneas need to lead him into the Lower World?
4. What did Aeneas need to find in order to go into the Lower World and come back safely?
5. What questions did Aeneas ask of Dido?
6. What reason did he give for leaving her country?
7. How did Dido react and where did she go?
8. Where did Aeneas go after leaving Dido?
9. Whom did he see next and what was he shown?

# VOCABULARY

## Adjective

**inimī´cus, -a, -um** *unfriendly, hostile;*      [amīcus]
    as noun, *personal enemy*

## Verbs

**ab´sum, abes´se, ā´fuī, [āfutū´rus]**      [sum]
    *be away, be absent*
**nōs´cō, nōs´cere, nō´vī, [nō´tus]**
    *learn;* in perfect tense, *have learned, know*
**prōcē´dō, prōcē´dere, prōces´sī,**      [cēdō]
    **[processū´rus]** *go forward, advance*
**prōdū´cō, prōdū´cere, prōdū´xī,**      [dūcō]
    **[prōduc´tus]** *lead out*
**reti´neō, retinē´re, reti´nuī, [reten´tus]**      [teneō]
    *hold back, keep*

## Adverb

# IN ITALIĀ AENĒĀS AUXILIUM ACCIPIT.

*wards*

*de*

*dians (acc.)*

*e*

*us.* For the joining of **cum** to
. of personal pronouns, see
te 18, p. 219.

Ōlim in Latiō erat oppidum appellātum Pallanteum. Rēx[1] oppidī, Ēvander, cum multīs colōnīs ab Arcadiā in Graeciā mīgrāverat. In Italiā oppidum mūnīverant in locō ubi posteā[2] Rōmulus Rōmam mūnīvit. Cum fīnitimīs populīs Latīnīs Ēvander Graecīque bellum semper gerēbant.

5  Aenēās et colōnī Trōiānī etiam[3] in Italiā habitābant et etiam cum Latīnīs pugnābant. Quod sociōs cupiēbant, Aenēās et paucī virī ad Pallanteum accessērunt. Extrā[4] oppidum virī Trōiānī fīlium Ēvandrī et paucōs Arcadēs[5] invēnērunt. Dīxērunt.

**Pallas:** Pallas sum, fīlius Ēvandrī. Ego et amīcī meī vōs salūtāmus. Quī[6] 10 estis? Cūr[7] tū et virī tuī ad Pallanteum vēnistis?

**Aenēās:** Appellor Aenēās. Ego et virī meī ad Italiam vēnimus quod Fāta nōs dūxērunt. Nunc auxilium vestrum cupimus. Accipite nōs, quaesō,[8] et historiam[9] nostram audīte.

**Pallas:** Vōs nōn dīmittam. Multa dē vōbīs audīvī. Ad oppidum nōbīscum[10] 15 prōcēdite.

(Rēx Ēvander grātē Aenēam accipit.)

e Luca/CORBIS

# AENEĀS ET TURNUS

LESSON
OBJECTIVES
• To read how the Fat
  bring about the end
  Aeneas' struggles
• To learn about the p
  fect passive particip
  and how to form the
  perfect passive tense

Trōia ā Graecīs capta erat et Aenēās cum paucīs Trōiānīs ad Italiam
vēnerat et per terrās barbarōrum virōs prōdūxerat. Sed Iūnō inimīca mānsit
et contrā Aenēam miserum multōs populōs barbarōs Italiae incitāvit. Lāvīnia,
fīlia rēgis Latīnī[1], ā Turnō amābātur sed Aenēae[2] in mātrimōnium dōnāta est.
Turnus bellum gerere nōn dubitāvit. Ab Aenēā bellum nōn grātē susceptum 5
est; ad terminum vītae sub armīs esse nōn cupīvit.

Sed causa Trōiānōrum ā Fātīs suscepta erat. Aenēās etiam ā Graecīs quī
in Italiā habitābant beneficium et auxilium accēpit, quod Turnō inimīcī
erant. Per multōs diēs bellum gestum est et multa ēgregia exempla virtūtis[3]
in proeliīs clārīs prōposita sunt.                                      10

Tandem Turnus sōlus Aenēam sōlum ad pugnam ēvocāvit, quod reliquīs
exemplum prōpōnere cupīvit. In locō commodō sub portīs oppidī
pugnāvērunt. Nōn longa fuit pugna, quod Venus, māter Aenēae, fīliō arma
ēgregia dōnāverat quae[4] deus Vulcānus fēcerat. Fāta iusserant auxilium ad
Turnum nōn mittī[5]; itaque Iūnō, socia Turnī, aberat. Vīta Turnī fūgit et 15
Aenēās ad terminum perīculōrum vēnit et ōtium invēnit.

[1] *King Latinus* (gen.)
[2] dative
[3] *of courage* (gen.)
[4] *which*
[5] *to be sent*



LFA

A painted frieze found in 18
on the outskirts of Rome sho
an episode of the Aeneas leg
outside of Vergil's *Aeneid*. He
winged Victory crowns Aene
during the final fatal struggl
between Trojans and Rutulia
near the river Numicus.
According to the poet Ovid,
was at this moment that Aer
was transformed into a god

J. Driscoll

## THE TROJAN WAR

In Asiā est vir clārus. Vir est Anchīsēs. Dea Anchīsēn (*accusative*) amat. Aenēās est fīlius deae et Anchīsae. Aenēae fēmina est Creūsa. Creūsa Aenēāsque fīlium vocant Ascānium.

Aenēae patria est Trōia. Trōia nōn est in Eurōpā, sed in Asiā. Graecī et virī Trōiae pugnant. Graecī Trōiam occupant. Aenēās Anchīsēn portat. Creūsam fīliumque vocat.

AENĒĀS: "Nōn iam est Trōia. Sed deī deaeque virōs Trōiae amant. Etiam fēminās et puerōs puellāsque amant. Hodiē ad Ītaliam nāvigāmus."

## AENEAS SAILS TO CARTHAGE

Post longum bellum in Asiā, Aenēās cum amīcīs ab Asiā ad Ītaliam nāvigat. Sed perīculum est in Eurōpā. Ab Eurōpā ad Āfricam nāvigat. Est magnum oppidum in Āfricā. Elissa* est rēgīna oppidī. Elissa frūmentum et dona Aenēae amīcīs (*dative*) dat. Elissa Aenēan (*accusative*) amat. Deī Aenēan rēgīnamque dē caelō spectant.

Nautae Aenēae et virī fēminaeque in oppidō sunt amīcī. Sed perīculum est in Āfricā.

* Elissa of Tyre, usually known by her nickname Dido, was the foundress of Carthage in North Africa.

## THE GODS CALL AENEAS TO ITALY

Rēgnum Elissae in Āfricā est. Rēgnum est lātum et oppidum est magnum altumque. Ferī Āfricānī rēgīnam nōn amant. Bellum parant, sed rēgīnae oppidum nōn occupant.

Aenēās cum amīcīs ā Siciliā ad Āfricam nāvigat. Elissa Aenēan amat et vocat: "Meum rēgnum est tuum. In magnō perīculō sumus. Troiānīs meam patriam dō."

Sed deī Trōiānōs in Ītaliam vocant. Aenēās: "Tuum rēgnum est magnum et bonum et pulchrum, et Āfricānī sunt malī. Tē et tuum rēgnum laudō, et tē amō. Sed deī Trōiānōs ad Ītaliam vocant."

## THE TROJAN WAR

In Asiā est vir clārus. Vir est Anchīsēs. Dea Anchīsēn (*accusative*) amat. Aenēās est fīlius deae et Anchīsae. Aenēae fēmina est Creūsa. Creūsa Aenēāsque fīlium vocant Ascānium.

Aenēae patria est Trōia. Trōia nōn est in Eurōpā, sed in Asiā. Graecī et virī Trōiae pugnant. Graecī Trōiam occupant. Aenēās Anchīsēn portat. Creūsam fīliumque vocat.

AENĒĀS: "Nōn iam est Trōia. Sed deī deaeque virōs Trōiae amant. Etiam fēminās et puerōs puellāsque amant. Hodiē ad Ītaliam nāvigāmus."

## THE FALL OF TROY

DĪDŌ: "Meōs tuōsque amīcōs convocābō. Nārrābisne malam fortūnam Trōiae?"

AENĒĀS: "Nārrābō. Cum meō parvō fīliō et fēminā, Creūsā, in oppidō meō habitābam. Vītam bonam Trōiānōrum laudābāmus. Nūntiī bellum nūntiābant: 'Graecī ad Asiam nāvigābunt.' Trōiānī bellum parābant et Graecōs exspectābant. Bellum in patriam meam portābant Graecī. Graecōrum gladiī multōs Trōiānōs vulnerābant. Trōiānī labōrābāmus: Graecī Trōiānōs superābant. Cum Graecīs ferīs pugnābam et multōs vulnerābam. Ō, mala nārrō! Graecī meum oppidum altum occupābant!"

## AENEAS AT THE CAPTURE OF TROY

Aenēās miseram fortūnam Trōiānōrum pulchrae rēgīnae narrābat.

AENĒĀS: "Graecī Trōiam occupābant. Perīculum erat (*was*) magnum. Nostrōs virōs fēmināsque cum amīcīs ad oppidī portam convocābam. Propter perīculum sacra deōrum ad portam portābāmus, et Anchīsae dabāmus. Meī servī frūmentum et aquam parābant. Meīs amīcīs servīsque gladiōs dābam.

"Anchīsēs deōs invocābat: 'Amābātis Trōiam Trōiānōsque. Ubi estis? Spectātisne nostra perīcula? Inter multa perīcula labōrāmus. Amantne deī nostram patriam?'"

## AENEAS AFTER THE FALL OF TROY

AENĒĀS: "Bellum erat longum; diū labōrābāmus. Nunc nāvigābam ab
Asiā cum Anchīsā Ascaniōque et sacrīs deōrum Trōiānōrum."
DĪDŌ: "Sed Creūsa ubi erat?"
AENĒĀS: "Ō, nōn aderat! Miser eram sine fēminā meā. Sed interim ab
Asiā nāvigābāmus ad Thrāciam."
DĪDŌ: "Ubi est Thrācia?"
AENĒĀS: "In Eurōpā est. Sed ibi erat perīculum magnum, et deī Trōiā-
nōs in altum (*the deep*) vocābant."
DĪDŌ: "Posteā ubi erātis?"
AENĒĀS: "Est in altō īnsula sacra, īnsula deī. Ad īnsulam nāvigābāmus,
et ibi deus Anchīsae bona verba dabat dē nostrā fortunā."

## AENEAS CONTINUES HIS TALE

AENĒĀS: "Tum ab īnsulā sacrā ad terram Crētam fortūna Trōiānōs
vocābat. Ibi oppidum parābāmus; et nunc Anchīses cōnfirmābat
meōs, et clāmābat: 'In Crētā habitābimus. In Crētā stābunt sacra
deōrum Trōiānōrum!'"
DĪDŌ: "Cūr hodiē in Crētā nōn estis?"
AENĒĀS: "Dēerat* frūmentum, et misera erat vīta. Et nunc deī
Anchīsae viam dēmōnstrābant in Ītaliam, ubi parābant rēgnum
Trōiānīs."

* *from* **dēsum, dēesse,** *to be lacking*

## AENEAS COMPLETES HIS TALE

AENĒĀS: "Anchīses animōs nostrōs bonīs verbīs cōnfirmāvit: 'Deī sig-
num dedērunt; nostrum rēgnum est in Ītaliā. Est longē ab Āfricā,
sed post longam fugam et multōs annōs in Ītaliam nāvigābimus.'

Tum nāvigāvimus in terram ubi habitābant vir fēminaque, captīvī
Trōiānī, nostrī amīcī. Iam līberī erant. Fēmina multa et pulchra
dōna nōbīs (*to us*) dedit, et vir bonum cōnsilium dē nostrō rēgnō
in Ītaliā. Nautae nostrī arma et cōpiam aquae frūmentīque ab
oppidō nostrōrum amīcōrum portāvērunt. Tum ad rēgnum tuum
nāvigāvimus."

A

## AENEAS INCURS DIDO'S ANGER

Ubi Aenēās perīcula Trōiānōrum narrāverat, rēgīna clāmāvit: "Magna est audācia tua! Ad multa loca et per perīcula magna nāvigāvistī! Multa dōna tuīs sociīs dedī, et nunc fugam ex meā patriā parātis."

Magna erat cūra Aenēae: rēginam amābat, sed deī Trōiānōs vocābant in Ītaliam.

Ubi fugam parāverat Aenēās magna erat īra rēgīnae. Misera clāmāvit: "Aenēan virum meum appellāvī, sed Trōiānus malus nōn amāvit mē! Iam fugam parāvit; crās ab Āfricā nāvigābit. Semper stābit īra mea inter Trōiānōs et populum meum! Sociī nōn erunt: semper meī in armīs stābunt contrā Trōiānōs, et diū labōrābunt Trōiānī bellīs et proeliīs multīs!"

Sed interim Aenēās erat in altō; ad Ītaliam iam nāvigābat.

## LAVINIA

Ubi Trōiānī in Ītaliam nāvigāverant, Amāta erat rēgīna Latīnōrum. Lāvīnia erat fīlia Amātae et Latīnī. Lāvīniam Aenēās amāvit, sed Turnus, dominus Rutulōrum et socius Latīnōrum, Lāvīniam diū 'amābat. Amātae Turnus grātus erat, Aenēās nōn grātus. Inter Trōiānōs et Latīnōs erat longum bellum. Causa bellī erat Lāvīnia.

Latīnī castra Aeneadārum oppugnābant. Turnus clāmāvit: "Tua fāma, Aenēa (*vocative*), mī inimīce, est magna. Nunc convocā tuōs sociōs et dēmōnstrā audāciam Troiānōrum."

## TURNUS ASSEMBLES THE RUTULIANS

Turnus, dux Rutulōrum, in magnō oppidō Ardeā cum patre Daunō et sorōre Iūturnā habitābat. Tum alta et magna in agrō Latīnō Ardea stābat. Posteā oppidum parvum erat, sed Rōmānīs sacrum. Saepe cōnsulēs Rōmānī dona pulchra deīs Ardeae dabant.

Ubi Aeneadae in Ītaliam navigāverant, fāma dē Trōianōrum fugā longē lātēque per Ītaliam volāverat, sed Turnum nōn dēlectāvit. Dux Rutulōrum populum convocāvit, animōs mīlitum cōnfirmāvit et bellum parāvit.

"Jam decimus annus bellī aderat," Cornēlia narrābat, "et nōndum Trōja ā Graecīs capta est. Ea urbs enim, quae altitūdine mūrōrum mūnīta est, ā Trōjānīs cum virtūte dēfendēbātur[1]. Dēfessī[1] ob bellum longum erant et Trōjānī, quī intrā mūrōs urbis obsidēbantur, et Graecī, quī Trōjānōs obsidēbant. Multae fuerant mortēs, multa vulnera et Trōjānōrum et hostium. Fīnis bellī illō tempore ā Graecīs quaerēbātur, quōs amor patriae atque familiārum vehementer movēbat. Itaque cōnsiliō Ulixis,[2] prīncipis Graecōrum, īnsidiae contrā Trōjānōs atque nova ratiō bellī parātae sunt.

Greek vase painting

**The sack of Troy**

"Equus magnus ligneus[3] exstrūctus est. Ulixēs enim sociīs ita prōnūntiāverat : 'Equum magnum exstruēmus, quem prope mūrōs pōnēmus. Intrā corpus illīus equī virōs paucōs et numerum satis magnum armōrum abdēmus. Posteā nōs reliquī urbem et campum et lītus Trōjānum, velut[4] fugā, relinquēmus. Trōjānī equum sine timōre in urbem trahent. Nocte ex equō nostrī venient et gladiīs Trōjānōs, quibuscum novem annōs frūstrā contendimus, sine difficultāte vincent.' Ratiōnem hīs verbīs expositam Graecī accēpērunt. Itaque ejus cōnsiliō īnsidiīsque Trōjānī victī sunt, quōs neque gladiī hostium neque centum proelia neque mīlle nāvēs vincere potuerant."

[NOTES] 1. *dēfessus, -a, -um,* tired, worn out. 2. *Ulixēs, Ulixis (m.),* Ulysses; one of the chief Greek leaders. 3. *ligneus, -a -um,* wooden. 4. *velut,* as if.
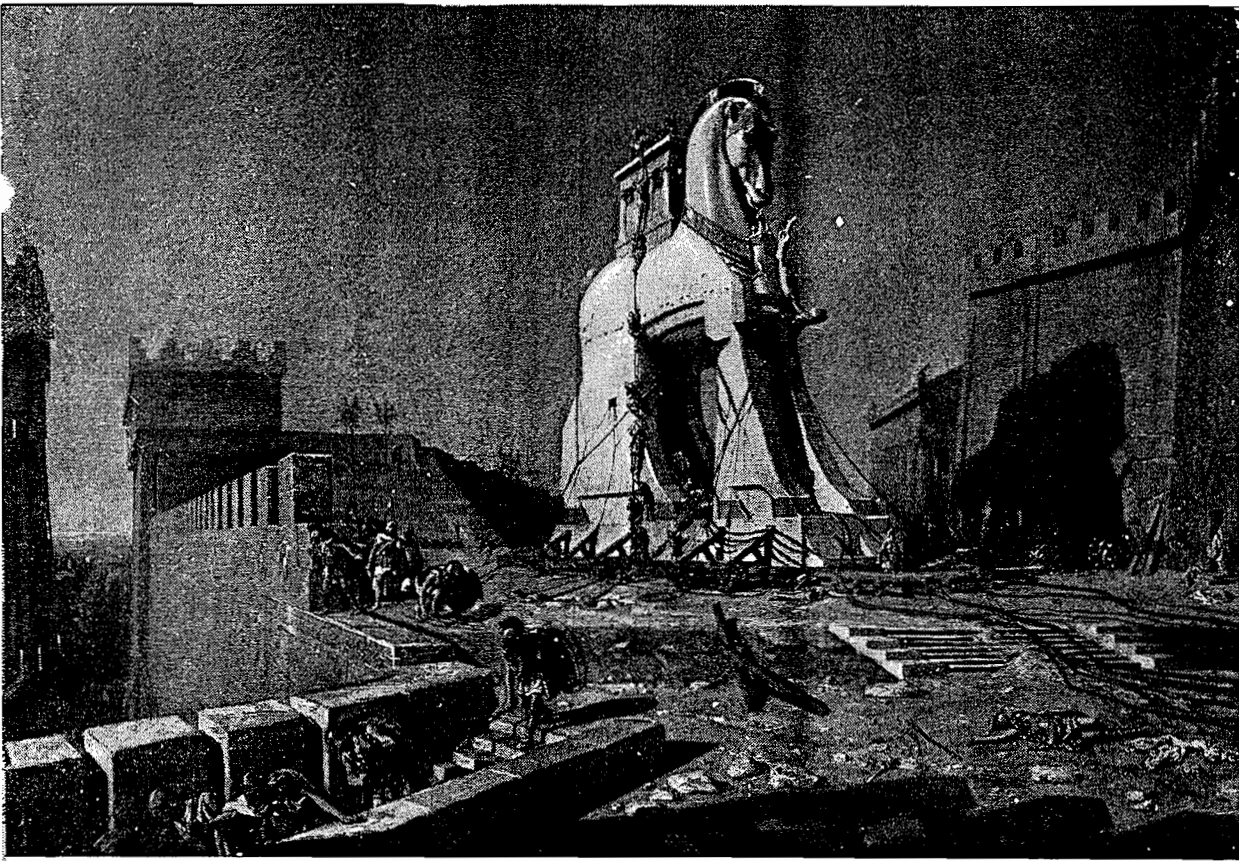
**The wooden horse of Troy**

# LESSON FORTY-TWO

## *Adjectives of the Third Declension*

=== PRELIMINARY REMARKS ===

The adjectives that you have learned so far have all been in the first and second declensions. Can you decline correctly and quickly *vērus, -a, -um, vester, -tra, -trum*? There are also many adjectives that use the endings of the third declension. Review these endings, see pages 198, 204, and 224. Note the occurence of forms of adjectives of the third declension in the story.

### THE GREEKS LEAVE THE HORSE

"Post multās horās nox jam aderat et somnus[1] gravis [1] omnem urbem tenēbat. Dum autem Trōjānī sine timōre dormiunt,[2] omnēs Graecī, quī ad īnsulam Tenedum discesserant, ad Trōjam nāvigābant. Interim illī novem virī quī cōnsiliō

Ulixis[3] in equō clausī sunt, ex corpore equī mediā nocte vēne- 5
rant et ad portās urbis contenderant. Postquam eō vēnērunt,
omnēs portās clausās urbis aperuērunt.[4]

"Post breve tempus nāvēs Graecōrum ventō levī et secundō
pulsae ad lītora Trōjae pervēnērunt. Sine morā Graecī ex om-
nibus nāvibus excessērunt et per portās urbis contendērunt. 10
Neque ā cīvibus prohibitī sunt. Paucī enim Trōjānī, quī arma
capere potuerant, contrā hostēs aegrē pugnāvērunt. Reliquī
aut in somnō interfectī sunt aut timōre gravī permōtī in fugam
sē dedērunt.[5] Dum fugiunt, multī Trōjānī inīquō proeliō ad
mortem missī sunt. Tandem nē ūnus quidem Trōjānus contrā 15
victōrēs Graecōs pugnābat.

"Hōc modō urbs antīqua post decem annōs bellī et mortēs
multōrum virōrum per īnsidiās Graecōrum occupāta est. Tum
Graecī, quī, quod urbem tam diū obsessam capere potuerant,
maximē laetī erant, tōtam urbem incendērunt.[6] Captīvōs 20
omnēs et praedam in patriam remōvērunt.

"Inter ducēs Trōjānōs, quī contrā Graecōs pugnāverant,
erat dux quīdam[7] Aenēās appellātus. Ille ā Graecīs nōn captus
est sed ad collēs fīnitimōs ēvāsit.[8] Hodiē autem vōbīs satis
fābulārum nārrāvī. Vōs, fīliae, sī ita cupitis, dum Pūblius 25
dormit lūdere poteritis. Ego epistulam scrībam." Ita Cornēlia
dīxit.

[NOTES] 1. *somnus, -ī (m.)*, sleep. 2. *dormiō, -īre, -iī*, sleep. 3. *Ulixēs,
-is (m.)*, Ulysses. 4. *aperiō, -īre, aperuī, apertus*, open. 5. *in fugam sē
dedērunt*, fled away (gave themselves to flight). 6. *incendō, -ere, -cendī,
-cēnsus*, burn. 7. *quīdam*, a certain (*nom.*). 8. *ēvādō, -ere, ēvāsī*, escape.

## GRAMMAR NOTES

*[Adjectives of the Third Declension.]*
1. There are Latin adjectives using the case endings of the third
declension. Some of them have the same ending for all genders in the
nominative singular. Others have the same ending for the mascu-
line and feminine genders, but a different ending for the neuter. Still
others have a different ending for each gender. Adjectives of the third
declension are inflected as follows. Note the **i** -*stem* forms in the plural
and the ending of the ablative singular in -**ī**.

[ 315 ]

The derivatives of these Latin nouns always end in *-ty* in English. What are the derivatives for these: **humilitās, antīquitās, gravitās, dīgnitās, necessitās, quālitās, quantitās, sēcūritās, vīcīnitās, ūtilitās, brevitās, sānitās, celeritās?**

Write the Latin for: *unity, paucity, loquacity, facility, civility, alacrity, asperity, anxiety, sobriety, piety, society.* The last four are derived from adjectives that end in *-ius:* **anxius, sobrius, pius, socius.**


## SENTENCE PATTERNS

A. Complete and translate the following sentences into English:
1. Graecī Minervae equum līgne____ cum celeritāt____ dedērunt.
2. Sī prīncip____ equum per portās in oppid____ mōverint, Trōjānī Graec____ superābunt.
3. Statim populus Trōjān____ māgnō cum studiō virōs valid____ equ____ ligneum in oppidum movēre jūss____.
4. Nōn armīs sed dol____ Graecī Trōjān____ superāvērunt.
5. Flūmin____ erant lāta et itinera erant long____.
6. Achillēs fīlium rēg____ Trōjae necāvit.
7. Nōnne posteā patr____ Priāmō corpus ded____?
8. Ante oculōs duc____ dea silvārum virgin____ pulchram ad templ____ portāvit.
9. Lāocoōn dōn____ equī līgneī timuit et Trōjānōs monu____.
10. Posteā Graecī Trōj____ dēlēvērunt et tum pāx in terr____ fuit.

B. Translate the italicized words into Latin:
1. The Greek captive *by trickery* remained *in Troy.*
2. *With great speed* Achilles dragged *the body* of Hector three times *around the walls* of Troy *before the eyes* of Hector's sad *father.*
3. Immediately the *king* ordered *the men* to move *the wooden horse into town.*
4. And on earth *peace to men!*
5. They feared *the long journeys and the deep rivers.*


### Not by Arms but by Treachery

Jūdicium pastōris et pulchritūdō fēminae erant causae bellī Trōjānī. Graecī cum multīs prīncipibus ad ōrās (*shores*) Trōjae multitūdine nāvium (*ships*) nāvigāvērunt. Inter Graecōs erant ducēs clārī, Ulixēs, Achillēs, Agamemnōn, Menelāus. Priāmus, rēx Trōjae, et fīlius Hector, et Aenēās, fīlius Anchīsae, erant ducēs clārī Trōjānī.

Per novem (*nine*) annōs Graecī inimīcī in agrīs propinquīs Trōjae cum Trōjānīs pūgnāvērunt, sed incolae Trōjae erant validī

OLH

et patriam contrā Graecōs dēfendērunt. Jūnō et Minerva et Neptūnus Trōjānōs et Paridem nōn amāvērunt, et prō Graecīs pūgnāvērunt. Paris ac Trōjānī Venerī et Mārtī erant grātī, et prō Trōjānīs Venus et Mārs pūgnāvērunt.

Tum Achillēs Graecus hastā (*spear*) Hectōrem necāvit et ter (*thrice*) circum mūrōs Trōjae corpus Hectōris ante oculōs patris trāxit (*dragged*). Trōjānī autem (*however*) Trōjam etiam tenuērunt. Tandem Ulixēs, Graecōrum prīnceps, dolō malō Trōjānōs superāvit. Graecī māgnum equum līgneum, dōnum Minervae, extrā (*outside*) mūrōs oppidī aedificāvērunt. Altō in equō erant prīncipēs Graecōrum cum multitūdine hominum validōrum. Posteā ab ōrīs Trōjae nāvigāre simulāvērunt (*pretended*) sed nōn longē ā terrā mānsērunt.

Trōjānī laetī māgnā cum celeritāte extrā mūrōs oppidī properāvērunt. Sed Lāocoōn, sacerdōs (*priest*) Neptūnī, dē templō cucurrit (*ran*) et clāmāvit: "Nōnne dolum Ulixis et Graecōrum, Trōjānī, memoriā tenētis? Timeō Graecōs etiam dōna ferentēs."

Tum pastōrēs Trōjānī ad rēgem captīvum Graecum portāvērunt. "Sī respōnsa vēra dederis, vītam tuam servābimus." Sinōn captīvus cum terrōre respondit: "Equus est dōnum ā Graecīs Minervae. Sī Trōjānī equum in oppidum mōverint, Graecōs vērō superābunt."

Subitō māgnī serpentēs ex aquā māgnā cum celeritāte properāvērunt et Lāocoontem et fīliōs necāvērunt. Trōjānī mōnstrum virīs complētum (*filled*) per portās mōvērunt. Posteā laetī dormiērunt (*slept*). Pāx in terrā erat. Terminus bellī erat.

Noctū (*At night*) Graecī ab īnsulā ubi clam (*secretly*) mānserant ad ōrās Trōjae nāvigāvērunt. Sinōn sīgnum dedit et dē equō Ulixēs et prīncipēs Graecī dēscendērunt. Scūta, tēla, gladiōs, arma bellī portāvērunt. Per portās Trōjae properāvērunt Graecī. Nōn pūgna sed caedēs (*slaughter*) erat. Undique erat clāmor; undique erat terror; undique ambulāvit Mors (*Death*).

ad fīnēs nostrōrum sociōrum in Eurōpā. 10. Quōs invēnistī ubi in castra pervēnistī?

E. Translate.

1. We remained in camp for four hours, for we had not heard the signal. 2. We have come a mile and yet we have not found a river. 3. For many years she waited; yet the letters from him did not come. 4. We carried the grain and water to the horses many miles across the plains. 5. Ten thousand of the enemy were captured, for they fought badly because there was no food in their camp. 6. They are building a large camp in the territory of the friendly Gauls. 7. The attacks of our infantry were hindered by the enemy's boldness. 8. I saw three thousand men who had come from a neighboring city. 9. In my farmhouse there are the horns of many animals which I found in the woods. 10. What did you hear when you arrived at the villa of the consul?

## —— Reading ——

### A CITY IS TAKEN BY A HORSE

Ōlim fīlius rēgis Trōiānī per Graeciam iter faciēbat. Ibi rēgīnam pulchram Graecōrum vīdit et statim amāvit. Posteā eam trāns mare ad urbem Trōiam dūxit.

Īrātī ob rēgīnae discessum prīncipēs Graeciae multās nāvēs parāvērunt. Atque ad illam urbem cum multīs et fortibus cōpiīs nāvigāvērunt.

Post novem annōs tamen ab hostibus nōn superata est Trōia propter virtūtem Trōiānōrum. Itaque decimō annō clārus imperātor Graecus cōnsilium novum et audāx cēpit. Mīlitēs eius iussū magnum equum ligneum fēcērunt, cuius corpus erat cavum. Ille exercituī, "In hōc equō cavō," inquit, "partem peditum nostrōrum pōnēmus. Hoc animal, sī in urbem dūcētur, nōbīs victōriam dabit."

Ubi Trōiānī dē mūris magnitūdinem animālis spectāvērunt, terrēbantur paucī. Multī tamen clāmābant, "Nōnne sacer est hic equus? Movēte eum per portās urbis ad templa deōrum, nam sine hōrum auxiliō urbem nostram nōn bene dēfendere poterimus."

Sed equus, quem in urbem accēpērunt Trōiānī, non pācem sed arma hostium portābat. Hōc modō id quod hominēs nōn decem annīs fēcerant, ūnā nocte cōnfēcit equus.
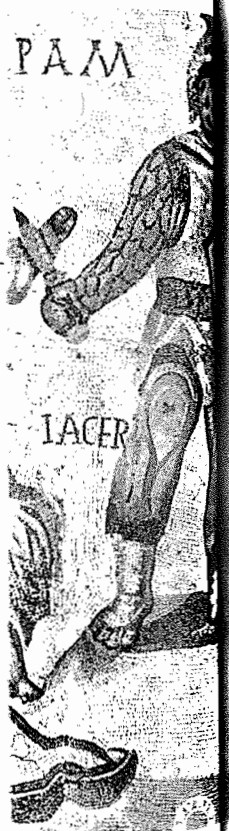
## THE TROJAN HORSE ENTERS THE WALLS

"Estne trāctus equus ille vērō in urbem?" Pūblius rogāvit.

"Certē trāctus est," Cornēlia respondit. "Graecī, cōnsiliō inductī quod Ulixēs eīs dederat, equum magnum ex lignō[1] exstrūctum prope mūrōs Trōjae posuērunt. Tum trāns mare
5 ad īnsulam propinquam, quae Tenedos appellābātur, nāvigāvērunt et post ejus īnsulae collēs et silvās virōs nāvēsque abdidērunt.

"Posterō diē[2] Trōjānī, perīculō [1] līberātī, ex urbe vēnērunt. Nōn jam aut castra in campīs aut nāvēs in lītore[3] vīdērunt. Nē
10 ūnus quidem [2] ex hostibus vidēbātur. Ubi ad equum appropinquāvērunt, in ejus corpore haec verba lēgērunt: 'Nōs Graecī deae Minervae hunc equum parātum relīquimus.'

"Statim paucī prīncipēs Trōjānōrum, quī natūram et mentēs Graecōrum nōn sciēbant et īnsidiās nōn timēbant, sociōs ita
15 monuērunt: 'Illum equum intrā mūrōs trahere dēbēmus. Eum trahere poterimus [3]. Sī equum intrā urbem trahēmus, dea nōbīs benigna erit [3]. Tum perīculō bellī līberī erimus.' Cēterī prīncipēs frūstrā hoc cōnsilium prōpositum prohibēre temptāvērunt.

20 "Itaque equus, quī in corpore novem virōs et arma eōrum portābat, intrā mūrōs trāctus est et prope templum[4] Minervae positus est. Posteā timor mentēs cīvium nōn perterrēbat. Tōta urbs laetitiae[5] trādita est."

[NOTES] 1. *lignum, -ī (n.)*, wood. 2. *posterō diē*, on the next day. 3. *lītus, -oris (n.)*, shore. 4. *templum, -ī (n.)*, temple. 5. *laetitia, -ae (f.)*, joy.

## GRAMMAR NOTES

*[The Ablative Used to Express Separation.]*
**1.** You have learned that the ablative is used with the prepositions ā (ab), dē, ē (ex) to express the place from which motion proceeds. Sometimes, however, the separation is not actual, but figurative. [As, *They were freed from danger.*] To express such an idea in Latin the ablative is used, usually without a preposition. [As, **Perīculō līberātī sunt**, *They were freed from danger.*] This usage is known as the *ablative*

B. Translate into Latin:

1. On account of serious wrongs the Sabines were hostile to the citizens of Rome.
2. Sometimes the Romans were not equal in number to their enemies.
3. Rome was in great danger because the daring enemy were near the city
4. We ought always be kind in word and in deed.
5. The powerful troops fought bravely and fiercely.

## SIGHT TRANSLATION: AENEAS

Apud Trōjānōs prīnceps fortis erat nōmine Aenēās. Virtūte et cōnsiliō sociōs superābat. Quod Graecī Trōjam occupāverant et dēlēverant, cum sociīs ex patriā properāre parāvit. Sīc Venus fīlium monuit: "Nōn jam Trōjae manē. In Ītaliam properā. Ibi cōnsiliō deōrum nova patria fīlium meum exspectat." Cum patre et fīliō parvō et paucīs sociīs fīdīs trāns mare nāvigāvit. Per septem (*seven*) annōs terrā marīque errāvit (*wandered*).

Saepe Aenēās rogāvit: "Quandō patriam novam vidēbimus?" Sed tamen deī eī (*to him*) nūntiāvērunt: "In Ītaliā cum sociīs habitābis, et in Ītaliā līberī Trōjae māgnam fāmam habēbunt." Trōjānīs fortibus multa erant perīcula. Propter pōmum aureum Jūnō et Minerva Trōjānōs novum oppidum habēre nōn dēsīderābant. "Trōjānī," inquit (*said*) Jūnō, "māgnō in perīculō saepe erunt." Tandem multa post perīcula, Aenēās parvā cum parte sociōrum et nāvium ad Ītaliam pervēnit (*arrived*).

line until it enclosed enough land for the citadel that afterward became the famous and powerful Carthage, rival of Rome.

When Aeneas and his companions arrived at Carthage, Dido received them warmly, held games in their honor, and listened with absorbed interest to the tale of their adventures as related to her by Aeneas. Dido fell in love with the hero and offered herself and her kingdom to him.

But the gods were on the alert. Jupiter sent Mercury to remind Aeneas of his destiny in Italy. In spite of Dido's pleas and allurements, Aeneas sadly hoisted sail. In despair, Dido stabbed herself. Looking back, Aeneas saw with anguish the flames of the funeral pyre on which Dido's body was being consumed.

### The Trojan Hero

Aenēās, clārus Trōjae vir (*hero*), erat fīlius deae Veneris et Anchīsae. Māgnā cum celeritāte sociōs ad arma vocāvit, et in viīs Trōjae contrā Graecōs pūgnāvit. Sed Graecī mūrōs urbis tenuērunt et domicilia et aedificia inflammāverant. Ante oculōs patris, Pyrrhus Polītam, fīlium Priamī, et posteā rēgem Priamum necāvit, dum Hecuba, rēgīna Trōjae et uxor Priamī, cum fīliābus spectat.

Tum Aenēās per flammās patrem Anchīsam in humerīs (*shoulders*) cum celeritāte portāvit. Quod Trōjam servāre nōn potuit, ex urbe properāvit et cum patre Anchīsā et fīliō Ascaniō et paucīs sociīs ad terram novam nāvigāvit. Diū terrā marīque Aenēās errāvit (*wandered*). Post septem (*seven*) annōs, nāvēs Trōjānae in flūmen Tiberim nāvigāvērunt.

Incolae regiōnis erant Latīnī, rēxque erat Latīnus. Latium erat nōmen partis Ītaliae ubi nunc est clāra urbs Rōma. Latīnus rēx fīliam, nōmine Lāvīniam, habēbat. Turnus, prīnceps nōbilis Ītaliae, Lāvīniam pulchram in mātrimōnium dūcere (*to marry*) dēsīderābat. Sed pater Latīnus negāvit, quod vōcēs deōrum rēgem monuerant: "Externus (*Stranger*) Lāvīniam habēbit, et nōmen tuum propter facta externī clārum erit."

Latīnus rēx pācem cum Trōjānīs esse dēsīderābat, sed Amāta, uxor Latīnī, Aenēam Lāvīniam in mātrimōnium dūcere nōn dēsīderābat. Turnus, rēx Rutulōrum, fīliam rēgis amābat et māgnā cum īrā populum regiōnis incitāvit. Māgnās cōpiās habēbat. Aenēās cum paucīs hominibus auxilium ab Etrūscīs habēbat.

Inter Turnum et Aenēam multa erant proelia. Tum Turnus cum Aenēā sōlō (*alone*) pūgnāvit, sed Aenēae erat nōn pār

OLH

(*equal*).  Post mortem Turnī erat pāx inter Trōjānōs et Rutulōs. Latīnus Aenēae Trōjānō fīliam pulchram Lāvīniam in mātri-mōnium dedit.  Aenēās parvum oppidum in Latiō aedificāvit et ex nōmine uxōris Lāvīniae oppidum Lāvīnium appellāvit (*named*). Hīc (*Here*) per paucōs annōs rēgnāvit et rēgnum aequīs lēgibus administrāvit.  Quod bonus vir et deōs et patrem ac fīlium amābat, poētae Rōmānī Aenēam semper laudābant.

# *Unit* XXIV

## CONVERSATION

PATER:  Dum Ascanius, Aenēae fīlius, puer est, Lāvīnia rēgnāvit. Tum propter incolārum Lāvīnī multitūdinem, mātrī (*mother*) urbem Ascanius dedit; urbem novam aedificāvit.

HENRĪCUS:  Ubi, pater, Aenēae fīlius urbem aedificāvit?

PATER:  Sub monte Albānō urbem novam, Albam Longam, aedi-ficāvit.

ROBERTUS:  Nōnne multī rēgēs fortēs post Ascanium rēgnāvērunt?

PATER:  Multī rēgēs, fortēs audācēsque, Albae Longae imperium tenuērunt; multī autem Aenēae nōn similēs erant.

ROBERTA:  Num incolae Albae Longae erant Trōjānī?

ROBERTUS:  Aenēās regiōnis incolās Latīnōs appellāvit (*called*) quod locī nōmen fuit Latium, atque Latīnus rēx fuerat.

PATER:  Et clāra lingua incolārum Latī erat Latīna.

HENRĪCUS:  Aedificāvitne rēx Albānōrum Rōmam?

PATER:  Silvius Proca, Latīnōrum antīquōrum rēx, frātrum Romulī ac Remī avus (*grandfather*) erat.  Puerī, fortēs et audācēs, omnēs hostēs superāvērunt et Rōmam aedificāvērunt.

## SECTION 1 Third Declension Adjectives

▶ DISCUSSION

All Latin adjectives, except those declined like first and second de-clension nouns, belong to the third declension and have in the nominative singular either one, two, or three terminations.

*131*

## HOW AENEAS CAME TO ITALY

Hodiē Tullius domī apud familiam mānserat. Multa dē
factīs Rōmānōrum fīliīs nārrāverat. Tandem Mārcus "Herī,
pater," inquit, "māter nōbīs fābulam dē equō ligneō[1] et dē
Trōjā captā nārrāvit. Illam fābulam gaudiō multō audīvimus.
5 Nōnne tū hodiē nōbīs partem reliquam hujus fābulae nārrābis?"

"Certē, mī fīlī,[2]" Tullius respondet, "vōbīs haec nārrābō.
Attendite omnēs."

"Apud Trōjānōs prīnceps fortis erat, nōmine [1] Aenēās,[3]
quī virtūte et cōnsiliō maximē nōtus est. Ille fīlius erat deae
10 Veneris[4] et ducis Trōjānī, nōmine Anchīsae.[5] Quod Trōja ab
hostibus occupāta erat [2] et multī ejus sociī ad mortem missī
erant, ex patriā excēdere statim parāvit. Nam ā mātre ita
monitus erat: 'Trōja fuit et vōs Trōjānī fuistis. Nōn jam im-
perium in hīs terrīs possidētis. Nōn jam hīc manēre dēbētis.
15 In Italiā enim nova patria cōnsiliō deōrum vōs exspectat. Ibi
tū et nepōtēs[6] tuī rēgnum semper habēbitis. Illūc[7] Penātēs[8]
Trōjae portā!'

"Itaque Aenēās, quī ob haec verba mātris animō cōnfir-
mātus erat, cum patre et fīliō parvō et paucīs sociīs fidēlibus
20 trāns mare nāvigāre cōnstituit. Per septem annōs circum omnēs
partēs maris pulsus, octāvō annō in Italiam pervēnit. Post-
quam castra in rīpā flūminis Tiberis[9] posuit, lēgātōs ad Latī-
num,[10] rēgem Latīnōrum,[11] mīsit; quōs Latīnus nōn dīmīsit.
Fīliam suam,[12] nōmine Lāvīniam,[13] etiam Aenēae in mātrimō-
25 nium[14] dare cupiēbat.

"Sed Turnus, ācer et potēns dux Italiae, ā quō Lāvīnia diū
amāta erat, vīcīnōs populōs contrā Aenēam et Trōjānōs in-
citāvit. Bellum ācre gestum est. Tandem Aenēās, cui auxilium
ā mātre Venere datum erat, Turnum in proeliō interfēcit. Vic-
30 tōria Aenēae pācem amīcitiamque lēgibus aequīs inter Latīnōs
et Trōjānōs cōnfirmāvit et Aenēās Lāvīniam in mātrimōnium
dūxit. Urbem novam, quam condidit,[15] Lāvīnium[16] ē nōmine
marītae appellāvit [3]. Hīc Penātēs Trōjae dēposuit. Hīc in
Italiā Penātēs nostrī per omnēs annōs[17] mānsērunt."

# XXIX

Ōlim in cavernā oppidō Cūmīs propinquā Sibylla nōta habitābat. Post bellum Trōjānum Aenēās, dux° Trōjānus, plūrimīs cum virīs ad oppidum Cūmās nāvigāvit.

Hīc Aenēās ante jānuam cavernae Sibyllae stetit et clāmā- vit, "Audī mē, Sibylla! Ē rēgnō mortuōrum Anchīsēs, pater 5 meus, mē vocat. Dūc mē ad Orcum."

Sibylla respondit, "Noctū et interdiū jānua Orcī aperta est. Multī in rēgnum mortuōrum dēscendērunt, sed patriam iterum nōn vidēbunt. Tē ad Orcum dūcere nōn possum. Nūllī vīvī ad rēgnum mortuōrum īre° possunt." 10

"Dea Venus māter mea est," Aenēās clāmāvit. "Mē juvā- bit māter mea."

"In silvā propinquā est sacer rāmus aureus," inquit Sibylla. "Prīmum ad mē fer° rāmum aureum! Properā! Deinde tibi portam rēgnī mortuōrum mōnstrābō." 15

Aenēās sine morā in silvam obscūram properāvit. Ibi columbās geminās vīdit; lentē volābant. Columbae deae sacrae Aenēae viam mōnstrābant. Subitō Aenēās per rāmōs aurum splendidum cōnspexit.

"Ecce! Rāmus aureus!" Aenēās laetus[1] rāmum aureum 20 cēpit et ad cavernam Sibyllae portāvit.

Sibylla dīxit, "Dī tē amant. Ecce! Jānua cavernae aperta est. Nunc portābimus rāmum aureum ad Prōserpinam, rēgīnam mortuōrum."

Aenēās et Sibylla in cavernam properāvērunt; per viās 25 perīculōsās et obscūrās ambulāvērunt. Auxiliō rāmī aureī, altissimum atque lātissimum fluvium——etiam ātrum[2] Stygem——trānsīre° potuērunt.

Deinde Sibylla rēgiam Prōserpinae mōnstrāvit, et Aenēās rāmum aureum in jānuā rēgiae posuit. Dōnum erat rēgīnae 30 grātissimum.

°**dux** (nom. sing.) leader • **ī're** to go • **fer** (sing.) bring!
**trānsī're** to go across, to cross

[1]An adjective may sometimes be translated as an adverb, as here: "Aeneas joyfully," etc.

[2]**Āter** (black) and **albus** (white) are found only in the positive.

Dēnique Aenēās cum Sibyllā per Campōs Ēlysiōs ad locum quiētum vēnit, ubi Anchīsēs fīlium expectābat. Hīc Anchīsēs fīliō multa futūra nārrāvit et multa Orcī mōnstrāvit.

| | |
|---:|---|
| **colum′ba, -ae** | F., dove |
| ***mā′ter** | F., mother |
| ***pa′ter** | M., father |
| **ā′ter, -tra, -trum** | black |
| **ge′minus, -a, -um** | twin-born, twin |
| **vī′vus, -a, -um** | alive, living |
| **cōnspi′ciō, -ere, cōnspex′ī** | catch sight of, look at |
| **ec′ce** | see! behold! |
| **hīc** | here |
| ***pri′mum** | (at) first |
| ***an′te** | (with acc.) in front of, before |

## IRREGULAR IMPERATIVES

**Dūc mē ad Orcum!** Lead me to Orcus!
**Dīc nōbīs nōmen tuum.** Tell us your name.

The imperatives of **dīcō**, **dūcō**, **faciō**, and **ferō** differ from those of other verbs in the singular: **dīc, dūc, fac, fer.** The plurals of the first three are regular: **dīcite, dūcite, facite.** The plural of **fer** is **ferte.**

I  Give imperative singular of each verb.

1 dīcō    3 dormiō    5 edō    7 juvō
2 dō      4 dūcō      6 faciō   8 moneō

II  Complete each sentence by translating each underlined English word or phrase with a suitable word from the list. Translate the completed sentences.

1 <u>To many</u> Mīdās fābulam nārrāvit.   a) aedificāre
2 Magister <u>to the pupils</u> benignissimus erat.   b) dēbēmus
3 Amīcōs juvāre semper <u>we ought</u>.   c) discipulīs
4 Puerī casam parvam <u>to build</u> temptant.   d) monēte
5 Virī jānuās templī dēfendere nōn <u>were able</u>.   e) multīs
6 <u>Warn</u> agricolās dē perīculō.   f) poterant

**161**

**II** For each form in A select from the forms in B the other two
corresponding degrees of comparison.

A       B
1 ācerrimī     ācris, ācria, ācrius, ācriōris, ācrī
2 plūrima     multa, plūrēs, plūs, plūra, multae
3 altius     altum, altior, altē, altissimum, altiōrem
4 majōrēs     maximae, majus, major, magnae, maximōs
5 similēs     similior, similī, simillimī, simillimīs, similiōrēs

**III** For each Latin word in the numbered list, find a matching
English expression in the lettered list.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1 fortiōris | 6 facilia | a) very talkative | g) safest |
| 2 potēns | 7 pulchriōrum | b) too short | h) braver |
| 3 maximī | 8 tūtissimae | c) most ferocious | i) powerful |
| 4 brevius | 9 fēlīciōrem | d) more beautiful | j) best |
| 5 ferōcissima | 10 plūrima | e) happier | k) most |
| | | f) very large | l) easy |

# LIII

## A LIFE FOR A FRIEND

Trōjānī erant in magnō perīculō. Aenēās ex castrīs suīs
paucīs cum virīs discessit et auxilium ab urbibus propinquīs
petīvit. Ascanius, fīlius ejus, in castrīs mānsit.

Tum Rutulī castra Trōjāna vehementer oppugnāvērunt.
Trōjānī hoc perīculum Aenēae nūntiāre cupiēbant. Undique 5
autem mīlitēs hostium portās ācerrimē oppugnābant.

Nīsus, amīcus Ascaniī, dīxit, "Ego cum Euryalō comite
per castra hostium nūntium portābō. Hoc iter difficillimum
temptābimus, quod nihil est melius quam glōria."

Omnēs Trōjānī dīxērunt, "Tuum cōnsilium optimum est." 10

Ascanius laetus hīs amīcīs bona arma dedit; ducēs eīs
epistulās dedērunt. Noctū Nīsus et Euryalus ad castra hostium
sēcrētō appropinquāvērunt, et multōs mīlitēs facile necā-
vērunt. Hīc galeās aureās, pulchriōrēs et splendidiōrēs quam
galeās suās, invēnērunt. Statim illās galeās cēpērunt; tum 15
ex castrīs hostium discessērunt.

ᴜL

Subitō agmina hostium novōrum vīdērunt; sociī Rutu-
lōrum auxilia addūcēbant. Amīcī inter arborēs latēre temptā-
vērunt, sed lūce lūnae hostēs galeās aureās facillimē vīdērunt.

Nīsus celerius currere poterat; itaque in silvam fūgit. 20
Ex silvā Nīsus perīculum amīcī vīdit et ad Euryalum pro-
perāvit. Euryalum autem dux ipse hostium interfēcit.

Prō amīcō mortuō fortissimē pugnāvit; dēnique gladiō
ducem interfēcit. Comitēs hujus ducis autem mīlitem sōlum
facillimē superāvērunt. Mox capita amīcōrum sociī Rutu- 25
lōrum in hastīs prope castra Trōjāna superbē portābant.

| | |
|---|---|
| **agmen, -inis** | N., marching army, marching column |
| **\*arbor, -oris** | F., tree |
| **comes, -itis** | M. or F., companion, associate |
| **\*iter, itineris** | N., way, journey, trip |
| **\*lūx, lūcis** | F., light |
| **\*nūntiō, -āre, -āvī** | announce, report |
| **addūcō, -ere, -dūxī** | lead or bring to, lead against, influence |
| **undique** | from or on all sides, everywhere |
| **\*vehementer** | vehemently, violently |
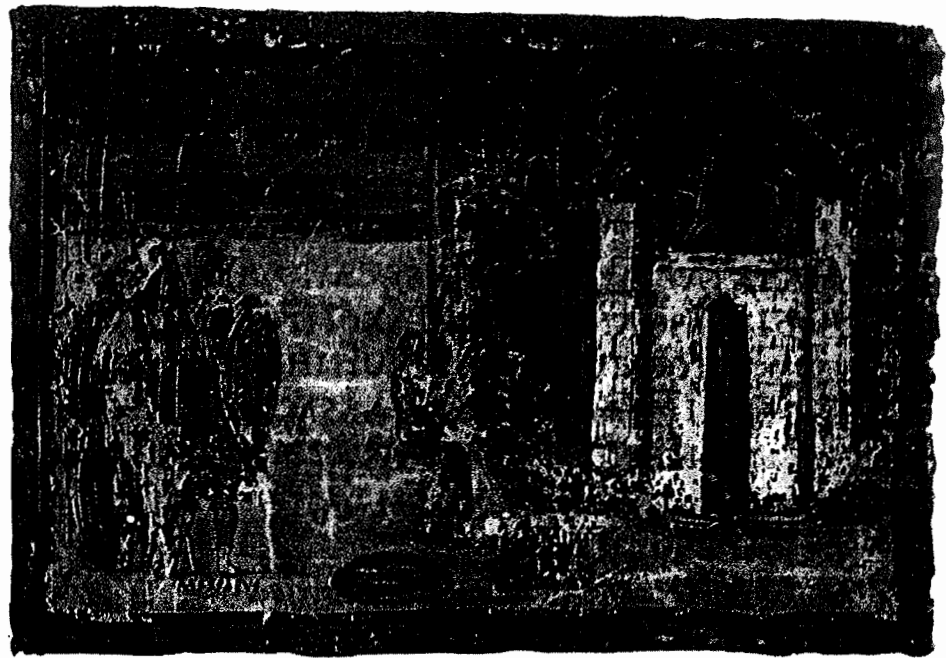


Fourth century illustration of the camp which Aeneas left in Ascanius' care

# LXIII

## A GIFT FOR THE FAIREST

Ōlim erat magna cēna in Graeciā. Omnēs dī deaeque
praeter deam Discordiam invītātī erant. Ea dea īrātissima
tamen ad cēnam vēnit, ubi jēcit inter deōs deāsque mālum
aureum in quō erat hoc verbum, "Pulcherrimae."

Statim dē hōc mālō deae Jūnō et Minerva et Venus inter sē ₅
disputāre incēpērunt. Omnēs mālum aureum habēre cupiē-
bant.

Juppiter, quī contrōversiam audīverat, dīxit, "Hujus cer-
tāminis jūdex esse nōn cupiō. In monte Īdā autem habitat
pāstor, cujus nōmen est Paris. Hanc contrōversiam fīnīre ₁₀
dēbet. Is deae pulcherrimae dabit hoc mālum, signum
victōriae."

Deae igitur in montem Īdam convēnērunt. Mercuriī
auxiliō Paridem invēnērunt.

Mercurius pāstōrī Paridī mālum aureum mōnstrāvit, ₁₅
dīcēns, "In hōc mālō quod teneō est ūnum verbum, 'Pul-
cherrimae.' Magna est contrōversia inter hās deās quibus-
cum vēnī. Quis est pulcherrima dea? Juppiter tē jūdicem
hujus contrōversiae dēlēgit."

Paris, magnopere agitātus, dīxit, "Jūdicium est dif- ₂₀
ficillimum."

Prīmō Jūnō dīxit, "Rēgīna deōrum sum. Dā mihi mālum
aureum, Paris; dīvitiās potentiamque tibi dabō."

Deinde Minerva jūdicī dīxit, "Dea sapientiae sum. Dā
mihi mālum aureum; magnam sapientiam et cōnsilia bona ₂₅
tibi dabō."

Dēnique Venus prō jūdice stetit. "Fīnem hujus contrō-
versiae facile faciam," dīxit. "Dea amōris sum. Dā mihi
mālum aureum; pulcherrima fēmina orbis terrārum tua
conjūnx erit!" ₃₀

Paris autem jūdicium facile facere nōn potuit. Dīvitiae
potentiaque, sapientia cōnsiliaque bona—haec omnia juvenī
grāta erant. Tamen conjugem pulcherrimam ā deā amōris
prōmissam maximē cupiēbat.

Itaque Paris dīxit, "Venus, tū es dea pulcherrima; tibi ₃₅
mālum aureum dabō."

Iudicium Paridis → finis Aeneadae     24 pp     also ulysses + proteus

# LXIV

## PARIS GETS HIS REWARD

Venus, postquam mālum accēpit aureum, Paridī dīxit, "Fēmina pulcherrima in Graeciā habitat. Nōmen ejus est Helena; Helena erit tua conjūnx."

Dea quoque dīxit Paridem ipsum nōn esse fīlium pāstōris; patrem et mātrem esse rēgem et rēgīnam Trōjae. "Monitus 5 ōrāculō," inquit, "pater tuus mortem tuam cupiēbat; tē in silvīs relīquit. Pāstor benignus autem tē ā perīculīs silvārum servāvit."

Deinde dea dīxit Hectorem, frātrem Paridis, in rēgiā Trōjānā habitāre et ab omnibus Trōjānīs propter magnam audā- 10 ciam laudārī.

Statim Paris invidiōsus īrātusque ad urbem Trōjam prōcessit. Priamus, rēx Trōjānus, ubi pāstōrem vīdit, statim sēnsit eum esse fīlium suum. Nōn jam mortem Paridis cupiēbat. Laetus quod Paris vīvēbat, Priamus juvenem 15 libenter in rēgiam invītāvit.

Posteā Paris sēcrētō ad Graeciam nāvigāvit. Pater autem crēdidit eum ad aliam terram iter factūrum esse.[1] In Graeciā juvenis audīvit Helenam, fēminam ā Venere prōmissam, Spartae rēgīnam et uxōrem Menelāī rēgis esse. 20

Paris autem sōlus ad urbem Spartam prōcessit. Rēgina perfida, Helena, Paridem vīdit et eum fōrmōsissimum esse putāvit. Suā voluntāte Helena sēcrētō ē rēgiā discessit et ad urbem Trōjam cum Paride fūgit.

Multum agitātus, rēx Menelāus prīncipēs Graeciae convo- 25 cāvit. Propter amōrem Helenae, Menelāus in animō bellum in Trōjānōs gerere habuit.

| | |
|---|---|
| *princeps, -ipis | M., leader, chief; as adj., first, chief |
| *voluntās, -ātis | F., will, wish, inclination |
| *putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum | consider, think, suppose |
| *crēdō, -ere, crēdidī, -itum | trust (in), believe (with dative) |

[1] eum ... iter factūrum esse, that he would travel. Factūrum esse (future active infinitive) indicates action that is to take place after the time of the main verb.

# LXVI

## BEGGAR OR SPY?

Postquam Paris et Hector ā Graecīs interfectī sunt, magnus dolor animōs populī Trōjānī occupāvit. In viās urbis Helena exīre nōn audēbat, quod fēminae Trōjānae clāmābant, "Propter tē, fēmina pessima, dī nōs nōn jam amant."

In templīs sacerdōtēs dīcēbant, "Deōs, Trōjānī, ōrāte; in 5 ārīs sacrificia pōnite. Ōmina sunt mala. Fāta nōs dēlēbunt."

Trōjānī sciēbant sē ducēs bonōs nōn jam habēre. Quamquam bellum Trōjānum diū gerēbātur, tamen mīlitēs Graecī urbem Trōjam nōn cēpērunt.

Jam Helena ad Graecōs trānsīre cupiēbat. Tamen nōn 10 sōlum īram Menelāī timēbat, sed etiam ex urbe exīre nōn poterat, quod portae clausae erant. Helena Graecōs juvāre dēsīderāvit; Trōjānī autem eam prohibuērunt.

Ōlim Helena in urbe mendīcum vīdit. Multī līberī, clāmantēs et lapidēs jacientēs, ad eum ībant. Helena subitō 15 sēnsit hunc mendīcum esse Ulīxem, ducem clārum Graecum.

Itaque servō suō dīxit, "Vocā mendīcum in rēgiam; dā eī cibum et aquam."

Deinde Helena servōs expulit suōs et parvā vōce mendīcō dīxit, "Tē recognōscō; tū es Ulīxēs. Quid in hāc urbe facis? 20 Nōnne ad Graecōs redībis?"

Ulīxēs respondit sē portās et viās urbis spectāre; Graecōs novum cōnsilium inīre. "Certē," dīxit, "Trōja dēlēbitur."

Tum Helena dīxit, "Tē juvābō; tibi viam in mediam urbem mōnstrābō. Ita meō auxiliō Graecī Trōjam dēlēbunt." 25

| | |
|---|---|
| *īra, -ae | F., wrath, anger, ire |
| *mendīcus, -ī | M., beggar, mendicant |
| *lapis, lapidis | M., stone |
| *ōmen, ōminis | N., omen, sign |
| sacerdōs, -dōtis | M. or F., priest, priestess |
| | |
| audeō, -ēre | dare |
| *prohibeō, -ēre, -hibuī, -itum | restrain, hinder, prohibit |
| *expellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum | drive out, expel |
| *recognōscō, -ere, -cognōvī, -cognitum | recognize |

**335**

**COMPOUNDS OF** eō are conjugated like **eō,** with a prefixed syllable (**ab-, ad-, ex-, in-, sub-, trāns-,** etc.). There are many compounds of **eō;** e.g., **abeō, adeō, exeō, ineō, subeō, trānseō.** The meaning of these compounds is clear, because each prefix is already familiar as a preposition. The first (**abeō**) means "go away." What do the others mean?

Another compound of **eō** (**redeō**) has the syllable **red-** (for **re-,** "back" or "again") prefixed.

**I** Supply the correct form of each verb in parentheses to complete the sentence it follows.

1 Mīlitēs ab hostibus _____ recūsāvērunt. (**dēprehendō**)
2 In rīpā flūminis lātissimī castra _____ cōnstituimus. (**pōnō**)
3 Vītam quiētissimam in īnsulā _____ temptābās. (**agō**)
4 Vir fortis sē in perīculum maximum _____ crēdidit. (**dūcō**)
5 Vōs _____ poteritis, sī mē juvābitis. (**servō**)

**II** Change each direct statement to indirect, and each indirect statement to direct.

1 Menelāus, ad urbem Trōjam nāvigāre parāns, nūntiāvit, "Absunt duo ducēs."
2 Ulīxēs sē uxōrem fīliumque relinquere nōn dēsīderāre dīxit.
3 Nūntius ā rēge missus prīmō Ulīxem īnsānum esse putāvit.
4 Posteā autem nūntius rēgī dīxit, "Hic fuit dolus Ulīxis."
5 Māter Achillem monuit, "Bellum gerere nōn dēbēs."
6 Thetis Achillem ad rēgiam amīcī sēcrētō missum esse nārrāvit.

# LXVII

## THE WOODEN HORSE

Auxiliō Helenae, quae ex urbe Trōjā exīre jam dēsīderābat, Graecī dolum parāvērunt. Magnum equum ligneum īnstrūxērunt in quō numerum virōrum fortium cēlāvērunt. Noctū cēterī Graecī equum in cōnspectū° Trōjānōrum relīquērunt et ad īnsulam propinquam discessērunt. Ūnus 5

°**cōnspectū** (abl. sing.) sight, view

ex comitibus, cujus nōmen erat Sinōn, prope urbem sē
cēlāvit.

Māne Trōjānī ex urbe magnō cum gaudiō exiērunt et in
castra Graecōrum dēserta convēnērunt. Equum spectā-
vērunt. Aliī, quī dolum Graecōrum nōn sēnsērunt hunc ₁₀
equum esse, in urbem equum trahere dēsīderāvērunt. Aliī,
quī autem equum timuērunt, eum dēlēre dēsīderāvērunt.
Rēx et magistrātūs° dēnique equum intrā mūrōs urbis intrō-
dūxērunt.

Deinde Lāocoōn, sacerdōs, clāmāvit, "In equō latet dolus. ₁₅
Timeō Graecōs et dōna ferentēs°."

Statim Lāocoōn hastam in equum jēcit. Subitō autem duo
serpentēs ex marī vēnērunt, quī Lāocoontem et ejus duōs
fīliōs interfēcērunt.

Interim Sinōn inventus et ad rēgem ductus est. ₂₀

Is dīxit sē Graecum esse; aliōs Graecōs sē ipsum inter-
ficere temptāvisse; sē autem fūgisse et latuisse; jam exercitūs°
Graecōs in patriam suam reditūrōs esse.

"Hic equus Minervae sacer est," dīxit. "Pōne equum in
arce; ita urbs semper erit tūta." ₂₅

**°magistrātūs\*** (nom. pl.) magistrates  •  **et dōna ferentēs**  even
when they are bringing gifts  •  **exercitūs**  (nom., acc. pl.) armies



This painting by Giovanni Battista Tiepoli (1696-1770) represents the moment when
the decision has been made to move the wooden horse into the city.

Postquam equus in arce positus est, deīs sacrificia Trōjānī fēcērunt. In tōtā urbe magnum erat gaudium.

Mediā nocte Sinōn ad equum vēnit. Ille jānuam parvam in corpore equī aperuit; Graecī dēscendērunt et portās urbis aperuērunt. Jam omnēs exercitūs Graecī adfuērunt.

Signum proeliī datum est; impetus° in Trōjānōs factus est. Urbs, equī ligneī auxiliō capta, jam ā Trōjānīs dēserta, vāstāta est.

°**impetus**\* (nom. sing.) attack

| | |
|---|---|
| **arx, arcis (-ium)** | F., citadel |
| **nox, noctis (-ium)** | F., night |
| **aliī . . . aliī** | some . . . others |
| | |
| \***dēserō, -ere, -seruī, -sertum** | abandon, forsake, desert |
| \***īnstruō, -ere, -strūxī, -strūctum** | build up, construct, equip |
| \***intrōdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum** | lead or bring into, introduce |
| \***trahō, -ere, trāxī, tractum** | draw, drag, pull |
| | |
| **intrā** | (with acc.) within, inside, into |

**A FUTURE ACTIVE PARTICIPLE** in Latin is like a perfect participle in form, except that it has **-ūr-** before the case ending.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **portātūrus, -a, -um** | about to carry | or | going to carry |
| **monitūrus, -a, -um** | about to warn | or | going to warn |
| **dictūrus, -a, -um** | about to say | or | going to say |
| **audītūrus, -a, -um** | about to hear | or | going to hear |

Some verbs which have no perfect participle have a future active participle. The future active participle of such verbs is often given as the fourth principal part: **sum, esse, fuī, futūrus; stō, stāre, stetī, stātūrus.**

The future active participle of a Latin verb is often combined with a form of **sum** to refer to something which the subject intends to do or is about to do.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Mānsūrus eram.** | I was about to remain. | or | I intended to remain. |
| **Laudātūrus est.** | He is about to praise. | or | He intends to praise. |

**339**

## IN SEARCH OF A PROMISED LAND

Trōjā ā Graecīs vāstātā, Aenēās, dux Trōjānus, cum sociīs suīs ad Thrāciam nāvigāvit. Simul atque nāvium ancorae jactae sunt, Aenēās paucīs cum sociīs ad lītus prōcessit.

In lītore erat tumulus arboribus cēlātus. Ex humō Aenēās ūnam ex arboribus fōdit, quod āram adōrnāre dēsīderāvit. 5 Dux fortis, sanguine in rādīcibus vīsō, magnopere ipse territus est.

Tum vōx ā tumulō clāmāvit, "Ō Aenēās, mē miserum vulnerāvistī. Sum Polydōrus Trōjānus. Rēx hujus terrae mē necāvit et sub hōc tumulō corpus cēlāvit meum. Fuge ab 10 hīs lītoribus perīculōsīs sine morā!"

Hīs verbīs audītīs, Aenēās et sociī ā lītoribus Thrāciae fūgērunt. Dēlos, īnsula Apollinī grāta, nōn longē aberat. Hīc Aenēās, patre praesente, auxilium deī rogāvit.

Ita Aenēās ōrāvit, "Ō Apollō, dā Trōjānīs domicilium idō- 15 neum; dā gentem validam et urbem mānsūram; dā nōbīs ōmen bonum."

Vōx deī respondit, "Antīquam exquīrite mātrem vestram. Ibi Aenēās erit rēx, et līberī ejus erunt rēgēs."

Hōc audītō, rogāvērunt sociī Aenēae, "Ubi est māter nostra 20 antīqua?"

Tum sine morā Anchīsēs, pater Aenēae, dīxit, "In īnsulā Crētā initium gentis nostrae fuit. Patrēs nostrī dīxērunt illam īnsulam esse mātrem nostram antīquam."

Itaque, ventō surgente, Trōjānī laetī ad īnsulam Crētam 25 nāvigāvērunt. Posteā, parvā urbe aedificātā, pestilentia multōs Trōjānōs interfēcit.

Tum Aenēās ā deīs suīs ita monitus est, "Crēta nōn est antīqua māter vestra. Longē ab hāc īnsulā in terrā Ītaliā tūtum domicilium vōs expectat." 30

| | |
|---|---|
| *ancora, -ae | F., anchor |
| *humus, -ī | F., earth, ground, soil |
| tumulus, -ī | M., mound, tomb |
| gēns, gentis (-ium) | F., nation, clan, tribe |
| lītus, -oris | N., shore, beach |

UL

**II** For each underlined word substitute from the list a verb form
that reverses the meaning of the sentence, and make other
necessary changes. Translate both versions.

1 Comitēs, duce praesente, in castrīs <u>mānsērunt.</u>
2 Hostibus vīsīs, dux castra <u>posuit.</u>
3 Brevī tempore custōdēs portās urbis <u>claudent.</u>
4 Cōnsiliō captō, hae gentēs inter sē pugnāre <u>dēstitērunt.</u>
5 Urbe <u>vāstātā</u> mortem <u>accipit.</u>
6 Rēgīna territa fēminās urbis <u>petīvit.</u>
7 Frāter sororque <u>lacrimābant,</u> bonīs calceīs <u>āmissīs.</u>
8 <u>Mīlitēs</u> castra nostra sine morā <u>dēfendunt.</u>

aedificātā
aperient
fūgērunt
incēpērunt
inventīs
mōvit
oppugnant
recūsat
rīdēbant
vītāvit

# LXIX

## NO PERMANENT HOME

Nāvibus parātīs, Aenēās sociīque iterum trāns mare ab
īnsulā Crētā nāvigāvērunt. Eōs, ubi longē ā lītore āfuērunt
et caelum undique et undique mare vīdērunt, magna tem-
pestās per undās perīculōsās in vada portāvit. Dēnique
Aenēās cum sociīs suīs ad īnsulam sibi ignōtam vēnit.     5

Hīc Trōjānī fessī multa in lītore animālia vīdērunt. Paucīs
animālibus necātīs, cēnam et sacrificia parāvērunt. Subitō dē
caelō avēs ferae circum eōs volāvērunt. Haec mōnstra, quae
habēbant corpora avium, capita fēminārum, Harpyiae appellā-
bantur. Hīs mōnstrīs vīsīs, Trōjānī territī fūgērunt. Posteā, 10
verbīs ducis excitātī, sociī Aenēae contrā Harpyiās pugnāre
temptābant, sed terga dūra avium nē gladiīs quidem acūtīs
vulnerāre poterant.

Subitō Harpyia fera magnā vōce clāmāvit, "Animālia nostra
necāvistis; nōs necāre temptāvistis. In hāc terrā igitur pācem 15
numquam habēbitis. In Ītaliā urbem dēsīderātam habēbitis."

Trōjānī propter terrōrem mortis in hōc locō manēre nōn
jam poterant. Mente mūtātā, ab īnsulā celeriter nāvigāvērunt.

Deinde Aenēās prope ōram Graeciae nāvigāvit; dēnique
cum cēterīs Trōjānīs ad terram vēnit ubi Helenus erat rēx 20

**347**

atque sacerdōs Apollinis. Helenus, fīlius rēgis Trōjānī, amī-
cōs vidēns erat laetus eōsque ad rēgiam dūxit. Ibi eīs cibum
et multa dōna dedit.

Tum, auxiliō deī prō Aeneā rogātō, Helenus dīxit, "Magna
erunt perīcula et magnae erunt difficultātēs; per multa maria 25
nāvigābitis; dēnique in Ītaliā domicilium tūtum et idōneum
inveniētis."

| | |
|---:|---|
| **vadum, -ī** | N., ford, shoal |
| ***mēns, mentis (-ium)** | F., mind, purpose |
| ***terror, -ōris** | M., fear, fright, terror |
| ***acūtus, -a, -um** | sharp, pointed, acute |
| **ignōtus, -a, -um** | unknown |
| **nē . . . quidem** | not even |
| ***contrā** | (with acc.) against |

## FREE TRANSLATION OF ABLATIVE AB-SOLUTE

Since there is no English construction ex-
actly like the ablative absolute, such a Latin phrase may often
be translated by a dependent clause introduced by "when,"
"after," "if," "since," or "although." Occasionally an Eng-
lish phrase is a better translation than a complete clause.

A **Nāvibus parātīs, Aenēās ad Thrāciam nāvigāvit.** When the ships
were ready (with the ships ready), Aeneas sailed to Thrace.

B **Paucīs animālibus necātīs, cēnam parāvērunt.** After a few ani-
mals had been killed or After killing a few animals (after they had
killed a few animals), they prepared a feast.

C **Ventō surgente, Trōjānī ad Crētam nāvigāvērunt.** Since the wind
was rising (with the rising wind), the Trojans sailed to Crete.

D **Camillō duce, mīlitēs fortiter pugnant.** Under the leadership of
Camillus or When Camillus is the leader, the soldiers fight bravely.

A perfect participle in an ablative absolute phrase indicates
time earlier than that of the main verb, as in sentence B.
A present participle indicates the same time, as in sentence C.

**P R A C T I C E**    (I) Give at least two possible translations for each ablative absolute in the following sentences.

1 **Hīs mōnstrīs vīsīs, Trōjānī fūgērunt.**
2 **Mente mūtātā, ab īnsulā nāvigāvērunt.**
3 **Auxiliō rogātō, Helenus dīxit, "Magna erunt perīcula."**

(II) Make five sentences in English, each containing a different phrase or clause that could be expressed in Latin by an ablative absolute. (Practice II is optional.)

**I** Change 1 and 2 to direct statement and 3 to indirect.

1 Sacerdōs dēclārāvit in equō latēre dolum; sē Graecōs timēre.
2 Sinōn rēgī dīxit equō in arce positō urbem semper tūtam futūram esse; hunc equum Minervae sacrum esse.
3 Ille dīxit, "Aliī Graecī mē interficere temptāvērunt. Jam mīlitēs Graecī in patriam suam redeunt."

**II** Translate each Latin sentence, using suitable English conjunctions and pronouns in the list in expressing ablative absolute phrases as clauses in the translation.

1 Venus mālō acceptō aureō Paridī dīxit ejus conjugem Helenam futūram esse.
2 Patre ōrāculō monitō, fīlius in silvā relictus est.
3 Ulīxēs equō et bove jūnctīs ōram maritimam arāre incēpit.
4 Signō proeliī datō, mīlitēs oppidum nōn oppugnāvērunt.
5 Ulīxēs fīliō jam īnfante patriam relinquere nōn dēsīderābat.

| after | as soon as | if | when | while |
|-------|-----------|-----|------|-------|
| although | because | since | which | who |

# L X X

## A  F A T E F U L  S T O R M

Aenēās, terrā Helenī relictā, iterum in Ītaliam pervenīre temptāvit. Jūnō autem magnam tempestātem mīsit, quae nāvēs Trōjānās ad lītus Āfricae pepulit. Inter vada et magna

saxa classis tempestāte paene dēlēta est.  Dēnique Trōjānī
tūtī in lītore Āfricae stetērunt. 5

Frūmentum in nāvibus portātum nōn jam bonum erat,
quod nāvēs multam aquam accēperant.  In silvā propinquā
cibum petēns, Aenēas sagittīs septem cervōs occīdit; ita virī
cēnam in ōrā parāre potuērunt.

Postrīdiē Aenēas et sociī in lītore ambulantēs appropin- 10
quāvērunt ad magnam et pulchram urbem Carthāginem,
quae ā Phoenīcibus aedificāta erat.

Dīdō, ōlim rēgīna Phoenīciae, post mortem conjugis trāns
Mare Mediterrāneum ad Āfricam cum multīs comitibus
nāvigāverat.  Hīc hanc novam urbem aedificāverat Dīdō. 15

Calamitāte Trōjānōrum ab Aenēā nūntiātā, Dīdō, jam
rēgīna Carthāginis, Trōjānōs cum benignitāte accēpit.  Aenēas
et Ascanius, fīlius ejus, cum multīs prīncipibus ad rēgiam
ductī sunt.

Eādem nocte in rēgiā magna cēna parāta est.  Cibus et alia 20
dōna ad cēterōs Trōjānōs missa sunt.  Posteā Dīdō dīxit sē
Trōjānō dē bellō audīre cupere.  Aenēas, verbīs rēgīnae
mōtus, fābulam maestam Trōjae nārrāvit.



As Queen Dido welcomes Aeneas and Ascanius, the cupids point to the love that will
spring up between Dido and Aeneas.  Pietro da Cortona (1596-1669) is the artist.

Dīdō, memoriā tenēns dolōrem suum, Trōjānōs in Africā manēre dēsīderāvit; itaque Aenēae et sociīs domicilia in 25 rēgnō suō dedit rēgīna. Brevī tempore Juppiter, hāc morā Aenēae vīsā, Mercurium nūntium ad Aenēam mīsit.

Mercurius dīxit, "Carthāgō nōn est illa urbs Trōjānīs ā deīs prōmissa. Trāns mare Ītalia tē expectat. Ibi urbem aedificābis clāram; ibi Lāvīnia, fīlia rēgis, erit conjūnx tua. 30 Relinque statim hanc urbem. In Ītaliā pete domicilium tuum."

Tum Aenēās, verbīs deī āctus, sine morā urbem relīquit et eōdem diē ab ōrīs Āfricae nāvigāvit. Spectāns ē rēgiā, Dīdō misera nāvēs Trōjānās vīdit. Jam magnō rēgnō 35 dēspērātō, sibi mortem dēlēgit.

| | |
|---|---|
| *benignitās, -tātis | F., kindness, courtesy |
| *calamitās, -tātis | F., disaster, calamity |
| *classis, -is (-ium) | F., fleet; division, class |
| *pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsum | beat, strike; rout, drive away |
| paene | nearly, almost |

I Combine words from groups A and B to form sensible examples of the ablative absolute. Translate them as clauses.

A

1 ancorīs  5 morā
2 cibō  6 sacerdōtibus
3 domiciliō  7 tempestāte
4 līberīs  8 urbe

B

a) acceptō  f) praesentibus
b) dēlētā  g) rogātā
c) clāmantibus  h) servātīs
d) excitātīs  i) surgente
e) inventō  j) jactīs

II From the combinations resulting from I, select an appropriate ablative absolute to add to each sentence, and translate.

1 Virī fessī in lītore jacēbant.
2 Classis in saxa pulsa est.
3 Comitēs Aenēae vītās fēlīcēs agent.
4 Dux et sociī ē nāvibus dēscendērunt.
5 Hominēs sacrificia in ārīs pōnunt.
6 Incolae tēcta nova cōnstruere incēpērunt.

**351**

# LXXII

## A ROYAL DILEMMA

Post multās difficultātēs calamitātēsque classis Trōjāna ad
Ītaliam et rēgnum Latīnī pervēnit. Castrīs in lītore positīs,
nūntiī, pācem amīcitiamque prō Trōjānīs petentēs, statim ad
rēgem ab Aenēā missī sunt. Multa dōna pretiōsa rēgī Latīnō
dux Trōjānus dedit.                                          5

Rēx Latīnus convocātīs comitibus suīs dīxit, "Hic quidem
dux Trōjānus est ille advena ā nōbīs expectātus. Hic nōbilis
Aenēās erit conjūnx fīliae meae. Haec omnia ōminibus
praedicta sunt."

Hīs verbīs dictīs, Lāvīnia, fīlia rēgis, Aenēae conjūnx   10
prōmissa est. Māter autem Lāvīniae Turnum, rēgem Rutu-
lōrum, esse conjugem fīliae suae cupiēbat.

Rēgīna Amāta igitur, Latīnum implōrāns multīs cum
lacrimīs, dīxit, "Lāvīnia ab Aenēā petitur. Territus ōminibus
incertīs, dabisne fīliam nostram huic advenae Trōjānō?"    15

Alia verba saeva dīxit rēgīna īrāta; sed Latīnus, ā deīs
monitus, mentem nōn mūtāvit. Amāta igitur noctū in
montēs altōs cum fīliā Lāvīniā fūgit. Ibi in sēcrētō locō
Lāvīniam cēlāvit.

Interim Turnus in somniō haec verba audīvit, "Rēgnum  20
tuum et conjūnx prōmissa tua ab hōc advenā Trōjānō capien-
tur! Convocā omnēs comitēs fīdōs! Oppugnā parva castra
hostium! Dūc mīlitēs fortēs in hostēs! Pugnā prō Lāvīniā!
Cōnfirmā animum tuum! Dī tē juvābunt; fortūna tibi vic-
tōriam dabit."                                               25

Māne Turnus, populō convocātō, clāmāvit, "Postulō
uxōrem prōmissam, Lāvīniam; omnēs Trōjānī sunt perfidī!
Nōs ā deīs nostrīs dūcimur; victōria nōbīs dabitur!"

| | |
|---|---|
| *incertus, -a, -um | uncertain, doubtful |
| *nōbilis, -e | well-known, high-born, noble, of noble birth |
| *cōnfirmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum | strengthen, confirm, establish |
| *implōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum | beseech, beg, implore |
| *praedicō, -ere, -dīxī, -dictum | foretell, predict; advise |

UL

## 10

### THE OLD MAN OF THE SEA

Prōteus erat fīlius Neptūnī, sed in rēgiā Neptūnī nōn habitābat; altīs in cavernīs sub Ōceanō habitābat. Sub sōle altō interdum relinquēbat altās aquās cavernāsque Ōceanī et ad terram natābat. Magnus numerus phōcārum ex undīs cum Prōteō veniēbat. Prōteus, ubi stetit tūtus in ōrā, phōcās 5 ēnumerābat. Deinde in cavernā somnō sē dabat.

Graecī dē Prōteō nōtam nārrant fābulam.

Nautae multās fābulās dē Prōteī scientiā Ulīxī nārrāverant, quī igitur deum vidēre in animō habuit. Ulīxēs et paucī nautae, ubi ad magna saxa prope Prōteī cavernam vēnērunt, 10 magnō silentiō ad ea saxa natāvērunt. Post saxa sē cēlāvērunt. Prōteus post merīdiem cum phōcīs natāvit ad ōram. Prīmum Prōteus phōcās ēnumerāvit, sed in cavernam nōn intrāvit. Prōteus in ōrā inter phōcās somnō sē dedit.

Deinde Ulīxēs cum nautīs ad locum properāvit, ubi Prōteus 15 phōcaeque jacēbant. Ulīxēs sine morā deum cēpit. Phōcae ad altam aquam Ōceanī fūgērunt, sed Prōteus sē ē somnō excitāvit; fōrmam suam iterum atque iterum mūtāvit; fuit leō, serpēns, aper, aqua, arbor, flammae—sed Ulīxēs deum firmiter semper tenēbat. 20

Dēnique Prōteus fessus vēram fōrmam suam habuit. Nunc Ulīxī multa dē vītā futūrā et perīculīs futūrīs nārrāvit.

## 11

### THE WHITE STAG

In Latiō antīquō cervus albus erat ōmen bonae fortūnae. Ita sine timōre cervus albus per silvās regiōnis errāre

"Illa est sagitta Trojana!"

poterat. Vēnātōrēs album cervum numquam necāre audēbant.

In Latiō habitābat agricola Tyrrhus. Ōlim in silvā fīliī Tyrrhī album cervum vulnerātum invēnērunt. Sine morā 5 cervum ad casam portāvērunt. Mox herbīs cervum cūrāre poterant. Frātrēs sorōrī Silviae cervum dedērunt.

Aenēās Trōjānus, ubi in Latium pervēnit, castra prope flūmen Tiberim posuit. Mox mūrōs parvae urbis aedificābat.

Ascanius, fīlius Aenēae, cum sociīs in silvīs errābat. 10 Sagittīs parvīs animālia necāre temptābant.

Subitō puerī cervum album in rīpīs flūminis vīdērunt. Ascanius, quod sibi magnam glōriam dēsīderābat, necāre cervum temptāvit. Sagitta cervum vulnerāvit sed nōn interfēcit. Cervus vulnerātus ad casam Tyrrhī fūgit. 15

Tyrrhus, ubi sagittam vīdit, clāmāvit, "Illa est sagitta Trōjāna! Perfidī Trōjānī! Vōs cervum album sagittīs vulnerāvistis; sagittīs nostrīs igitur Trōjānōs vulnerābimus!"

Statim Tyrrhus cum fīliīs et amīcīs eōrum castra Trōjāna vehementer oppugnāvit; haec erat causa bellī! 20

362

# LXXIII

## AENEAS SEEKS AID

Turnus sociīque ejus, furōre excitātī, Trōjānōs ex Ītaliā in mare expellere volēbant. Mīlitibus agricolīsque gentium propinquārum convocātīs, Turnus cum Trōjānīs pugnāre parāvit. Trōjānī quoque castra sua vehementer dēfendere cōnstituērunt. 5

Nox erat, et Aenēās erat fessus. Prope castra Trōjāna flūmen Tiberis fluēbat; in rīpā ejus flūminis Aenēās jacēbat.

In somniō vōx deī flūminis Aenēae dīxit, "Nōlī timēre aut Turnum aut ejus sociōs! In hāc terrā erit domicilium tuum. Haec ā deīs prōmissa sunt. Socius tuus erit Evander, 10



A medieval painting of Evander showing Aeneas the site of Rome

amīcus patris tuī. Ante bellum Trōjānum ille in Italiam vēnit, et jam parvae urbis rēx est. Haec urbs, in colle aedificāta, ab hōc locō nōn longē abest. Pete auxilium ab Evandrō."

Aenēās paucīs cum nāvibus māne castra relīquit; postrīdiē ad urbem Evandrī appropinquāvit. Incolae urbis, nāvibus Trōjānōrum vīsīs, multum territī erant et statim arma cēpērunt. Pallās, fīlius Evandrī, ad rīpam properāvit.

"Īnsignia armōrum vestrōrum mihi nōta nōn sunt," dīxit. "Quī estis? Cūr ad urbem nostram appropinquātis?"

Aenēās respondit, "Sumus Trōjānī; sum Aenēās, dux Trōjānus. Bellum vōbīscum gerere nōlumus; bellum cum Rutulīs jam gerimus; auxilium ab Evandrō petimus."

Tum Evander ita dīxit, "Populus meus tibi auxilium dabit. Saepe incolae hujus regiōnis cum Rutulīs bellum gerunt. Mīlitēs gentium quoque Etrūriae propinquae vōs juvāre volunt. Etiam nunc eōrum nāvēs sunt parātae; eōrum mīlitēs sunt in armīs. Signō datō, proelium jungent. Tū, Aenēās, omnium eris dux."

| | |
|---|---|
| **collis, -is (-ium)** | M., hill, height |
| ***īnsigne, -is (-ium)** | N., mark, badge; pl., insignia |
| | |
| **volō, velle, voluī** | will, wish, intend |
| **nōlō, nōlle, nōluī** | be unwilling, don't wish |

**THE VERBS volō AND nōlō** are conjugated like most other -ō verbs of third conjugation, except for four irregular forms of each verb in present tense.

**Nōlō** (I do not wish, I am unwilling) combines a negative (**nē**) and **volō** (I wish, I am willing); that is, **nōlō = nōn volō; nōlumus = nōn volumus; nōlunt = nōn volunt.** For the remaining three forms of **nōlō** in present tense **nōn** is used with corresponding forms of **volō: nōn vīs, nōn vult, nōn vultis.**

Principal parts of these verbs are **volō, velle, voluī, ———; nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, ———.**

**USE YOUR EYES** What is unusual about the forms **velle** and **nōlle?** Point out three differences between the principal parts of **nōlō** and those of **volō.**

**365**

5 Hostibus victīs rēx sine prīncipibus _____ . **redeō/exeō**

6 Tribus deābus pulcherrimīs disputantibus, nēmō jūdex _____ volēbat. **legō/dēligō**

7 Decemvirī potestātis cupidī imperium _____ nōlēbant. **impōnō/dēpōnō**

8 Dea, quamquam ad cēnam invītāta nōn erat, tamen _____ . **absum/adsum**

9 Ulixēs cum comitibus nāvēs māne _____ . **dēscendō/cōnscendō**

10 Dux mīlitibus dīxit sē condiciōnēs pācis cum hostibus _____ velle. **perficiō/interficiō**

# LXXIV

## THE WAR IS ON

Brevī tempore aliae gentēs Rutulīs, aliae gentēs Trōjānīs sē conjūnxērunt. Sonō cornūs audītō, duo exercitūs tum in acerbō bellō ācriter pugnāvērunt. Plūrimī mīlitēs vulnerātī sunt; plūrimī interfectī sunt.

Dēnique rēx Latīnus, magnā caede permōtus, bellum 5



Latinus' kingdom was not far from this hill, known as Mons Sacer.

diūtius gerere nōluit. Itaque Trōjānī prope urbem Latīnī castra posuērunt.

Rutulī quoque castra posuērunt lātō in campō per quem flūmen Tiberis fluēbat. Fessī mīlitēs aut in grāmine campī aut in rīpīs flūminis dormiēbant. 10

Mediā nocte Turnus ad rēgiam Latīnī prōcessit. "Māne," Turnus rēgī dīxit, "Aenēam prōvocābō ad certāmen. Aut hāc dextrā ducem Trōjānōrum interficiam aut Aenēās Lā- vīniam conjugem habēbit."

Latīnus respondit, "In Latiō sunt multae virginēs; dēlige 15 conjugem ex aliīs virginibus. Dī mē jussērunt Aenēae Lāvīniam in mātrimōnium dare; imperāta deōrum facere volō.

"Jam Latīnī in proeliō superātī sunt, quamquam moenia adhūc mūniuntur et vehementer dēfenduntur. Multī sociī, ā Trōjānīs necātī, in campīs in cōnspectū meō jacent. Tū 20 magnam glōriam jam cēpistī; pete pācem ā Trōjānīs."

Turnus respondit, "Mortem nōn timeō sed vītam sine glōriā tolerāre nōlō. Aut gladiō meō Aenēam vincam aut vītam meam āmittam."

Illa verba ā rēgīnā audīta sunt, quae territā vōce clāmāvit, 25 "Tū, Turne, fortūnam bellī temptāre nōn dēbēs. Quis tibi auxilium dabit? Nōnne meae lacrimae tē movent?"

Turnus autem ācriter respondit, "Ō rēgīna, lacrimae tuae sunt ōmen malum! Mē nōn vincunt. Mēns mea mūtāta nōn est. Neque Trōjānī neque Rutulī iterum impetum facient. 30 Ego sōlus cum Aenēā sōlō pugnābō; victor Lāvīniam habēbit!"

| | |
|---|---|
| *dextra, -ae | F., right hand |
| imperātum, -ī | N., order, command |
| caedēs, caedis (-ium) | F., slaughter, blood-shed |
| grāmen, -inis | N., grass, plant |
| moenia, -ium | N. pl., city walls, fortifications |
| *virgō, -inis | F., maiden, unmarried woman |
| *cōnspectus, -ūs | M., sight, view |
| *impetus, -ūs | M., attack |
| cornū, -ūs | N., horn; wing of an army, flank |
| acerbus, -a, -um | harsh, biting, severe |
| *tolerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum | bear, sustain, tolerate |
| *conjungō, -ere, -jūnxī, -jūnctum | join together, unite |

# LXXV

## A BROKEN TREATY

Aenēās prōvocātiōnem Turnī accēpit. Itaque posterō diē exercitūs Rutulōrum et Trōjānōrum, castrīs relictīs, sub moenia urbis prōcessērunt, ubi locum certāminis parāvērunt. Prope locum dēsignātum erant magna āra et sella rēgia.

Tempore cōnstitūtō Latīnus et Turnus cum paucīs prīn- 5 cipibus suīs in medium campum prōcessērunt. Ad eōs Aenēās et fīlius ejus, Ascanius, paucīs cum comitibus lentē appropinquāvērunt. Virī silentēs circum campum stābant.

Prīmō Aenēās prō soliō magnā vōce clāmāvit, "Hōc certā- mine foedus petimus aeternum; hoc foedus bellum prohibēbit. 10 Rēx Latīnus arcem suam, urbem suam, rēgnum suum, omnēs suās rēs habēbit. Turnō victōre, Trōjānī numquam hoc rēgnum oppugnābunt; sed, mē victōre, Latīnī sub potestāte Trōjānōrum numquam erunt. Trōjānī urbem suam aedificā- bunt, et Lāvīnia huic urbī novae nōmen suum dabit." 15

Deinde Latīnus dē soliō altō ita dīxit, "Hās rēs probō; hoc foedus semper erit sacrum. Pāx aeterna erit inter nōs."



Latinus and the Trojans confronting one another in front of a temple

His rēbus ab Aenēā Latīnōque probātīs, tamen furor mentēs Rutulōrum occupāvit. Eīs hoc foedus nōn erat grātum; bellum, nōn pācem facere volēbant. 20

Nunc Turnus sōlus et tacitus ad āram prōcēdēbat. Subitō silentium frāctum est.

Jūturna, soror Turnī atque sacerdōs Jūnōnis, clāmāvit, "Ubi est honor? Ubi est fāma? Capite arma, Rutulī! Pugnāte prō patriā vestrā! Vultisne Turnum sōlum pugnāre? Eum 25 juvāre dēbēmus!"

Verbīs Jūturnae audītīs, Turnus spē novā occupātus est. Etiam mēns ejus jam mūtāta est. Itaque Rutulī foedus frēgērunt. Arma petīvērunt; hastae jactae sunt. Foedere frāctō, mīlitēs cum mīlitibus iterum pugnābant. 30

| | |
|---:|:---|
| **sella, -ae** | F., seat, chair, stool |
| **\*silentium, -ī** | N., silence |
| **\*foedus, -eris** | N., agreement, treaty, league |
| **\*prōvocātiō, -ōnis** | F., challenge, appeal, provocation |
| **spēs, speī** | F., hope, expectation |
| | |
| **\*dēsignātus, -a, -um** | pointed out, designated, elect |
| **\*posterus, -a, -um** | following, next |
| **\*rēgius, -a, -um** | royal, regal |
| **\*silēns,** gen., **-entis** | quiet, silent |
| | |
| **\*frangō, -ere, frēgī, frāctum** | break |

**FIFTH-DECLENSION NOUNS** always end in **-ēs** in the nominative singular. The genitive singular ends in **-ēī** (**-eī** after a consonant).

**Rēs** (thing) and **diēs** (day) are the only fifth-declension nouns with forms for all cases. The few other nouns of this declension are used mostly in the singular.

| | **rēs** (F.) thing | | **diēs** (M. or F.) day | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Singular | Plural | Singular | Plural |
| Nom. | **rēs** | **rēs** | **diēs** | **diēs** |
| Gen. | **reī** | **rērum** | **diēī** | **diērum** |
| Dat. | **reī** | **rēbus** | **diēī** | **diēbus** |
| Acc. | **rem** | **rēs** | **diem** | **diēs** |
| Abl. | **rē** | **rēbus** | **diē** | **diēbus** |

**371**

**Diēs** in the singular is sometimes masculine and sometimes feminine; in the plural it is always masculine. Most other nouns of fifth declension are feminine.

**I** For each underlined expression choose from the list a word to convey a similar idea and supply proper endings, if necessary.
1 Posterō diē exercitus castra sua relīquit.
2 Hās rēs probō.
3 Sub mūrōs urbis ambulābāmus.
4 Prope locum dēsignātum solium rēgis erat.
5 Tempore cōnstitūtō cum prīncipibus in medium campum perveniam.
6 Hominēs silentēs circum solium stābant.
7 Mē superante sub potestāte ejus numquam eritis.
8 Furor animōs sociōrum cēpit.

a) **ager**  c) **haec**  e) **lēgātus**  g) **occupō**  i) **tacitus**
b) **dēligō**  d) **mēns**  f) **moenia**  h) **postrīdiē**  j) **victor**

**II** In the sentences find a Latin word or phrase that corresponds to each English expression.
1 Hōc certāmine foedus petimus aeternum.     a) everlasting
2 Lāvīnia huic urbī novae nōmen suum dabit.  b) her own
3 Eīs hoc foedus grātum erat.                c) priestess
4 Turnus sōlus ad āram cum silentiō prōcessit. d) silently
5 Jūturna soror rēgis atque sacerdōs Jūnōnis e) they liked
  erat.                                        f) violated
6 Turnus spē novā occupātus est.            g) was filled
7 Rutulī foedus frēgērunt.                   h) our aim is

# LXXVI

## RENEWED CONFLICT

Foedere frāctō, Aenēās, īrā excitātus, magnā vōce clāmāvit, "Nōlīte pugnāre, Trōjānī. Dēpōnite tēla! Cūr bellum iterum geritis? Foedus frāctum est, sed ego huic foederī fīdus erō! Ego sōlus cum Turnō pugnāre volō!"

Neque Trōjānī neque Rutulī autem ā proeliō recēdere 5
voluērunt.

Paucīs hōrīs magnus numerus Trōjānōrum sociōrumque
in terrā jacēbat, ā Rutulīs perfidīs necātus. Multī Rutulī
quoque necātī sunt.

Latīnus cum comitibus suīs ad urbem fūgit; portae sunt 10
clausae.

Sociīs mortuīs vīsīs, Aenēās magnopere agitātus est.
Undique multās hōrās Turnum petēbat. Proelium prope
portās urbis conjūnctum est. Hōc vīsō, mēns Aenēae
mūtāta est.                                                    15

"Oppugnāte moenia! Haec est diēs victōriae nostrae,"
Aenēās, cum tribus comitibus in tumulō stāns, clāmāvit.
"Vultisne hanc urbem, causam bellī, manēre? Nostrī in
proeliō injūstō interficiuntur."

Hōc tempore Trōjānī moenia ascendēbant et portās expugnā- 20
bant. Nōn sōlum hastae, sed etiam taedae in urbem jaciē-
bantur. Magnus erat terror cīvium; urbs et domicilia eōrum
flammīs dēlēbantur.

"Ubi est Turnus?" clāmāvit rēgīna Amāta, furōre agitāta.
"Urbs nostra vincitur. Turnus sōlus nōs servāre poterit; sine 25
eō superābimur. Heu! Ego sum causa calamitātis; propter
mē Turnus interficiētur. Nōn jam vīvere volō!"

Hīs verbīs dictīs, Amāta dēmēns sē interfēcit. Latīnus,
dolōre affectus, brevī tempore mortuus est. Lāvīnia cum
aliīs puellīs ad āram Jūnōnis fūgit.                           30

Clāmōre audītō, Turnus, quī extrā moenia pugnāverat, ad
urbem fūmō flammīsque paene cēlātam cucurrit.

"Ō Rutulī et Latīnī!" clāmāvit Turnus, "nōlīte pugnāre
diūtius. Ego sōlus Aenēam in certāmine petītūrus sum."

Cīvēs, jam morte rēgis rēgīnaeque stupefactī, maximīs 35
clāmōribus per multōs diēs dolēbant.

| | |
|---|---|
| **tēlum, -ī** | N., weapon |
| *__dēmēns__, gen., **dēmentis** | out of one's mind, insane |
| **expugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum** | take by storm, overcome, capture |
| *__afficiō__, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum | influence, afflict, affect |
| *__recēdō__, -ere, -cessī, -cessum | retreat, recede, withdraw |
| *__stupefaciō__, -ere, -fēcī, -factum | stun, stupefy |

**373**

# LXXVII

Vōce Turnī audītā, Aenēās urbem relīquit et ad certāmen avidē prōcessit. Jam et Latīnī et Trōjānī ē locō recesserant et silentiō certāmen spectābant.

Prīmō Aenēās hastam suam in hostem jēcit, sed hasta suprā Turnī caput volāvit et in arbore propinquā stetit. 5 Turnus deinde hastam jēcit suam, quae, umbōne° scūtī Trō-jānī dēclīnāta, in terram cecidit.

Deinde gladiīs Aenēās et Turnus vehementer pugnābant. Sed subitō avis fera, ā Jove ad terram missa, volāvit circum Turnī umerōs et scūtum ejus ālīs pulsāvit. Turnus hoc 10 ōmen mortis recognōvit.

Jūturna hanc avem procul vīdit et clāmāvit, "Haec avis quidem missa est, quod dī Turnum interficī et Rutulōs vincī volunt. Frātre meō interfectō Rutulīsque victīs, ego nōn jam vīvere dēsīderō." 15

Itaque Jūturna mortem in undīs Tiberis petīvit.

Nunc Aenēās Turnum agitāre incēpit.

"Cūr recēdis, Turne?" clāmāvit ille. "Cūr mortem tuam fugere temptās? Cūr mēcum pugnāre nōn vīs?"

Turnus respondit, "Verba tua mē nōn terrent. Dī et odium 20 deōrum mē terrent. Juppiter est mihi inimīcus."

Tum Aenēās, spē victōriae excitātus, ictū gladiī magnō Turnum trānsfīxit; Turnus, graviter vulnerātus, cecidit.

Turnus victus dīxit, "Vītam meam āmittere prō patriā jam diū parātus sum. Satis pugnāvī; nunc mē vīcistī. Lāvīnia 25 erit conjūnx tua. Vītam nōn ōrō, sed certē prō patre miserō meīs amīcīs corpus meum dabis."

°**umbō, -ōnis**  M., boss (in center of shield)

|  |  |
|---|---|
| **umerus, -ī** | M., shoulder |
| *__odium, -ī__ | N., hatred |
| **ictus, -ūs** | M., thrust, blow |
| *__dēclīnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum__ | turn aside; deviate; shun |
| *__pulsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum__ | beat, knock (on) |
| *__trānsfīgō, -ere, -fīxī, -fixum__ | thrust or pierce through; transfix |

# II. Kings

In clauses beginning with *if* in English we usually use the present tense when the future or future perfect would be more accurate. In a sentence like "If I'm in town tomorrow I'll meet you," "if I'm in town" really means "if I shall be in town."

Latin is much more accurate in its use of tenses than English, and always uses the future or future perfect if future time is meant.

Sī hostēs superāverimus, castra occupābimus.
*If we defeat the enemy, we shall seize their camp.*
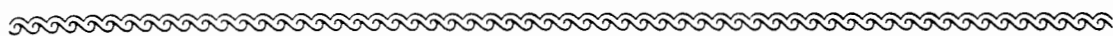
## ——Reading——

### THE KINGS OF ROME

In vīllā sub montibus Faliscīs post secundam mēnsam pater Rōmānus quattuor filiīs fābulās dē patriā in lūcem (*until dawn*) nārrābat. Hiems erat et in sellīs ad ignem sedēbant. Per fenestrās mōns Sōracte albus vidēbātur.

"Pater," clāmāvit ūnus ex puerīs, "nārrā fābulam aut dē Aenēā aut dē rēgibus Rōmānīs."

"Fābulā," respondit pater, "mī cāre filī, dē rēgibus dēlector. Septem erant rēgēs Rōmānī. Rōmulus prīmus erat. Tum urbs nova in monte Palātiō asylum erat servōrum atque malōrum, et cīvibus nōn erant fēminae. Sed fābula dē fēminīs Sabīnīs longa est et posteā nārrābitur.

"Post mortem Rōmulī populus Numae imperium dedit. Numa sacra cūrāvit.

"Sed prīma lūx adest. Crās, sī bonī fueritis, fābulam dē quīnque rēgibus reliquīs nārrābō."

crās post proelium castra movēbimus.   9. Decem virī pugnam relīquērunt et ā lēgātō vīsī sunt.   10. Cūr post castra mīlitēs relīquit imperātor?

**D.** Translate.

1. Why had they moved the troops, with the auxiliary forces, out of the town across the river?   2. The boys were sending letters to their friends across the sea.   3. A powerful king used to rule the fierce tribes in the territory of the Britons.   4. The general with his soldiers had defended Lucius, the consul's brother.   5. The soldiers had pitched camp on a high mountain.   6. Marcus, our leader, will defend the wretched soldier.   7. Why didn't the Roman people send aid to its allies across the sea?   8. Caesar, while commander, waged war with the Gauls.   9. Caesar's soldiers conquered the enemy in Gaul and even in Germany.   10. The enemy have surrendered their arms to our leader, Caesar's lieutenant.

## —— *Reading* ——

### THE KINGS OF ROME (continued)

Pater fīliīs fābulam dē rēgibus Rōmānīs nārrābat: "Tertius rēx erat Tullus Hostīlius. Bellum cum Albānīs gessit. In bellō Albānō trēs frātrēs Rōmānī, Horātiī, patriam defendērunt. Cum tribus frātribus Albānīs, Curiātiīs, pugnāvērunt. Cīvēs Rōmānī Albānīque pugnam spectāvērunt. Diū pugnātum est. Trēs Curiātiī vulnerātī erant. Ūnus ex Horātiīs vīvus relictus est, sed Curiātiōs vīcit et necāvit. Cīvēs surrēxērunt et Horātium in urbem magnō cum gaudiō duxērunt. Albānī urbem Albam Longam Tullō trādidērunt. Rēx Rōmānus Albam vāstāvit.

"Quārtus rēx erat Ancus Marcius. Post mortem Ancī Lūcius Tarquinius Priscus rēgnum occupāvit. Multa bella gessit et Serviō Tulliō, sextō rēgī, magnum agrum trādidit. Servius populum bene rēxit et urbī Rōmae multa dedit. Post mortem Servī fīlius Tarquinī Priscī, Tarquinius Superbus, rēgnum obtinuit. Bene appellātus est. Superbus malusque erat rēx. Brūtus, pater patriae, Tarquinium Superbum ab urbe rēgnōque ēgit."

# RŌMULUS ET REMUS

a people of Latium

ıd

**S**ilvius Proca, rēx fortis Albānōrum[1], Numitōrem et Amūlium fīliōs habuit. Numitōrī rēgnum relīquit. Sed Amūlius, Numitōre ē cīvitāte pulsō, rēxit. Rhēa Silvia, fīlia Numitōris, geminōs[2] Rōmulum et Remum habuit. Pater geminōrum deus Mārs erat; itaque Mārs auctor populī Rōmānī
5 appellābātur. Amūlius puerōs in Tiberī flūmine pōnī iussit. Sed aqua geminōs in siccō[3] relīquit. Lupa[4] accessit et puerōs aluit[5]. Posteā Faustulus, pāstor rēgis, puerōs invēnit. Post multōs annōs Rōmulō et Remō dīxit: "Numitor est avus[6] vester." Verbīs pāstōris adductī, geminī Amūlium

LFA

tive mosaic, now in
useum in England,
ᵀ feeds Romulus and
twins she has rescued
oded Tiber. Above
ed the site of the
**Ficus Rūminālis,** or
g tr. of Rome. Yet
iestions: Why is she
eeth? Is she standing
/n? Why does she
h like a horse? Had
ver seen a wolf?

Leeds Museums and Art Galleries (City Museum)/The Bridgeman Art Library

interfēcērunt. Numitōrī, quem Amūlius ē cīvitāte pepulerat, rēgnum
mandāvērunt. 10

Posteā oppidum mūnīvērunt in locō in quō inventī erant, quod dē nōmine
Rōmulī Rōmam appellāvērunt.

Rōmulus Remusque parēs erant, sed tamen Remō cēdere Rōmulō nōn
facile erat. Remō interfectō, Rōmulus sōlus Rōmānōs rēxit et omnibus iūra
dedit. 15

### Questions

1. How were Numitor and Amulius related?
2. What happened to Numitor?
3. Numitor's daughter gave birth to twins with divine ancestry. How could
   they claim divinity?
4. What action did Amulius take in response to this birth?
5. How were the twins saved?
6. Who persuaded Romulus and Remus to kill Amulius?
7. Whom did they establish as rightful ruler of the Albans?
8. What did the twins do next?
9. What does the conclusion of the story suggest about the original character
   of the Roman people?

## VOCABULARY

### Nouns

**auc´tor, auctō´ris** m. *maker, author*      [**augeō**]
**cī´vitās, cīvitā´tis** f. *citizenship, state*      [**cīvis**]
**pa´ter, pa´tris** m. *father*      (paternal)

### Verb

**pel´lō, pel´lere, pe´pulī, pul´sus**      (impel, repulsive)
     *beat, drive, defeat*

### Adverb

**post´eā** *afterwards*

### Preposition

**post** with acc. *behind (of place); after (of time)*

Jewish; *gentle*, of good social standing because of belonging to one's clan; *genteel*, polite, worthy of a *gentle*man. *Genteel* is now used only in a humorous sense. Etymologically, what do we mean by a *gentle* horse or *gentle* breeze?

## SENTENCE PATTERNS

A. Complete and translate into English:

1. Ad Ītaliam nāvigāre, autem, fuit officium grav____ fort____ ducis.
2. Amūlius, fīlius audāx rēgis, rēgnum frātr____ occupāvit.
3. Nōnne celer____ nāvēs nautārum fort____ ad patriam properāvērunt?
4. Num omnia praemia erant par____?
5. Nōnne celer____ servī per montēs et inter flūmin____ viās aedificāvērunt?
6. Cūr hominēs potent____ et dīligent____ multā nocte ad urbem appropin-quāvērunt?
7. Ācrēs host____ contrā dominōs Rōmān____ māgnā cum īrā pūgnāvērunt.
8. Frātrēs audāc____ rēgem inīquum necāvērunt.
9. Rēgīna alacris Trōjānōs fort____ in Āfricā manēre dēsīderāverat.
10. Nōnne Virginēs Vestālēs inter Rōmānōs erant potent____?

B. Translate into Latin:

1. The boy was not equal to his brother. Was he like his father?
2. Every man cannot be swift and daring.
3. The powerful leader with his fierce troops seized the city at nightfall.
4. We love all the mountains, all the rivers, all the seas of America.
5. Did not the wicked king kill the son of his brother?

### The Rescue of the Twins

Post mortem Ascanī, fīlī Aenēae fortis, rēgēs et bonī et malī urbem Albam Longam administrāvērunt. Proca, rēx clārus Latīnōrum, diū māgnā cum jūstitiā rēgnābat. Duōs fīliōs habē-bat, Numitōrem, fortem ac benīgnum, et Amūlium, audācem at-que inīquum. Post patris mortem Amūlius rēgnum occupāvit et frātrem Numitōrem expulit (*expelled*). Numitōris fīlium necāvit, et frātris fīliam, Rheam Silviam, Vestālem Virginem creāvit.

Contrā lēgēs Rhea Silvia geminōs (*twin*) fīliōs habēbat. Rōmu-lus et Remus mātrī (*mother*) erant cārī, sed Amūlius Rheam Silviam necāvit. Servōs geminōs in flūmen Tiberim jactāre (*throw*) jūssit. Servus benīgnus, autem, īnfantēs in alveō (*basket*) locāvit et in aquam prope rīpam alveum jactāvit. Forte (*by chance*) flūmen redundāvit (*overflowed*). Mox alveus in terrā erat. Fortūna geminōrum erat bona. Ācris lupa (*wolf*) puerōs cūrāvit et vītam īnfantium servāvit.

**135**

Faustulus, pastor rēgis, prope rīpam flūminis forte ambulābat. Subitō īnfantēs vīdit et in casam ad uxōrem portāvit. Acca Lārentia, uxor pastōris, erat laeta. Per vīgintī (*twenty*) annōs Rōmulus et Remus cum pastōribus manēbant. In agrīs labōrābant et in silvīs cum sociīs ambulābant.

Tum latrōnēs (*robbers*) ācrēs pecora (*cattle*) Faustulī raptābant (*were seizing*). Geminī fortēs et audācēs cum latrōnibus ācribus pūgnāvērunt, et Faustulō et pastōribus praedam latrōnum dedērunt. Latrōnēs māgnā cum īrā cum frātribus fortibus pūgnāvērunt. Virī potentēs Remum superāvērunt et captīvum ad rēgem portāvērunt. Rēx Amūlius latrōnēs Remum ad frātrem Numitōrem portāre jūssit.

Numitor, ubi captīvum fortem vīdit, Remum multum amāvit et rogāvit: "Esne fīlius Faustulī?" Remus Numitōrī benīgnō fābulam dē vītā geminōrum narrāvit. Numitor erat laetus. Frātrēs, audācēs fortēsque, erant nepōtēs (*grandsons*). Interim Rōmulus cum omnibus pastōribus ad rēgiam (*palace*) Amūlī properāvit. Remus cum servīs Numitōris frātrī audācī auxilium dedit, et frātrēs Amūlium potentem necāvērunt. Numitōrī rēgnum dedērunt.

# *Unit* XXV

## CONVERSATION

REMUS: Bonus avus noster imperium Albae Longae bene administrat.
RŌMULUS: Urbem novam in flūminis rīpā aedificāre ubi Faustulus prīmus nōs (*us*) vīdit dēbēmus.
REMUS: Sīc honōrem ac glōriam gentī nostrae dabimus!
RŌMULUS: Urbis nostrae fāma perpetua erit!
REMUS: Alacriter ac dīligenter urbem novam aedificābimus!
RŌMULUS: Altīs mūrīs hostēs prohibēre poterimus!
REMUS: Adulēscentēs fortēs nōmine factīsque in urbe habitābunt!
RŌMULUS: Nihil timēbunt. Omnēs gentēs virtūte superābunt!
REMUS: Quid urbem nostram appellābimus?
RŌMULUS: Ego rēx esse et urbī nōmen meum dare dēsīderō!

136
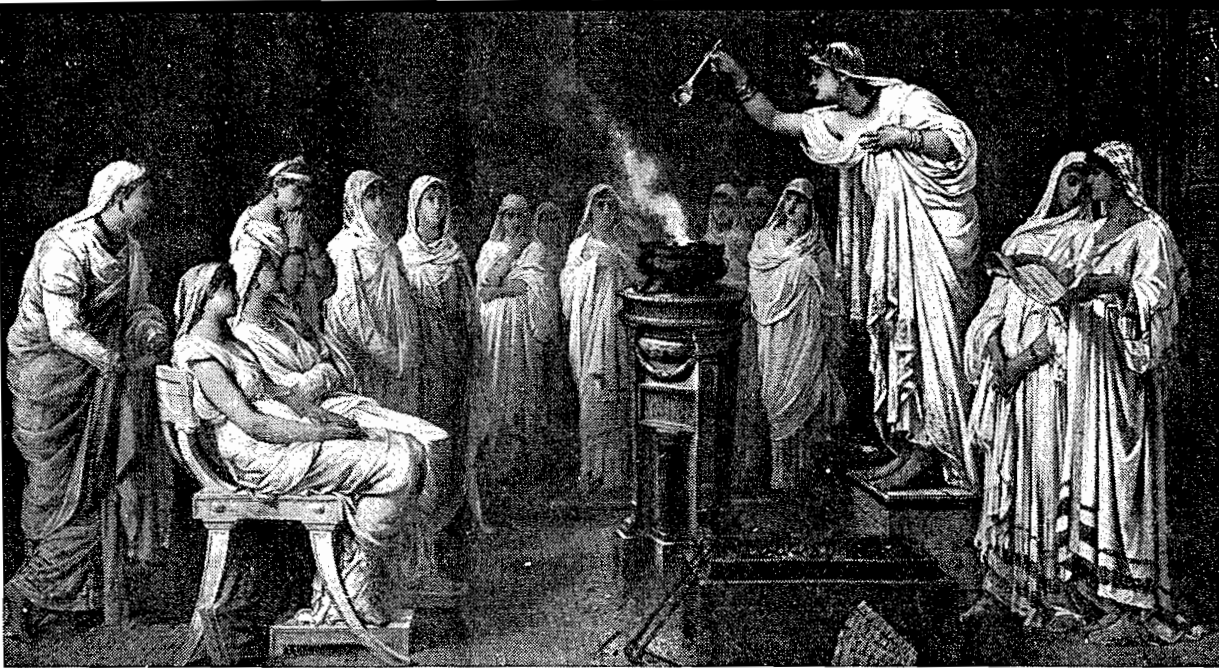
Painting by Louis-Hector Leroux, Braun & Cie, New York–Paris

**A meeting of the Vestal Virgins. The duties of the order are being explained by the chief of the Vestals to the others. Notice the dress of the Vestals. Does it remind you of the dress of any other order?**

do not know, see whether you can find out. Do you see any similarity to Roman life in the occasional modern need for *vigilantes*?

You have just read about Vesta and the Vestal Virgins. Do you see any resemblance between the Roman respect for Vesta and some of our own practices? The eternal flame burns at the tomb of the French "Unknown Soldier" in Paris.

The Roman **fascēs** are used on one of our United States coins. Do you know which one? Can you find out where the Italian *fascists* got their name?

## Supplementary Story

### ROMULUS AND REMUS

Rōmulus et Remus fīliī[1] Mārtis[2] et Rhēae Silviae[3] fuērunt. Amūlius, rēx Latīnōrum,[4] Rhēam Silviam et puerōs magnopere timēbat. Itaque Rhēam Silviam interfēcit[5] atque puerōs parvōs interficere[5] in animō habuit. In arcam[6] puerōs posuit atque
5 arcam in fluvium Tiberim[7] jēcit. Forte[8] autem fluvius agrōs tum inundābat.[9]

Itaque Amūlius puerōs frūstrā[10] interficere temptāvit, quod fluvius arcam et puerōs in locō siccō[11] relīquit. Ibi lupa[12] puerōs

[ 144 ]

LAR

parvōs cūrāvit. Tandem[13] Faustulus pāstor[14] appropinquāvit. Pāstor puerōs vīdit et ad marītam puerōs portāvit. Marīta 10 Faustulī, fēmina benigna, puerōs bene cūrāvit.

Post multōs annōs Rōmulus et Remus Amūlium interfēcē-runt. Tum oppidum novum prope fluvium in locō aedificāvē-runt[15] ubi puerī cum Faustulō habitābant. Dum oppidum aedificant, Remus rīsit,[16] quod parvum fuit. Statim[17] Rōmulus 15 Remum interfēcit. Oppidum novum Rōmam appellāvit. Per multōs annōs Rōmulus imperium Rōmae tenuit.

[NOTES] 1. *fīlius, fīlī (m.)*, son. 2. *Mārtis*, of Mars. 3. *Rhēa Silvia, Rhēae Silviae (f.)*, Rhea Silvia. 4. *rēx Latīnōrum*, king of the Latins. 5. *interficiō, -ere, -fēcī*, kill. 6. *arca, -ae (f.)*, chest. 7. *fluvium Tiberim*, the river Tiber (*acc.*). 8. *forte (adv.)*, by chance. 9. *inundō, -āre, -āvī*, overflow. 10. *frūstrā (adv.)*, in vain. 11. *in locō siccō*, on a dry spot. 12. *lupa, -ae (f.)*, she-wolf. 13. *tandem (adv.)*, at length. 14. *pāstor*, shepherd (*nom.*). 15. *aedificō, -āre, -āvī*, build. 16. *rīdeō, -ēre, rīsī*, laugh. 17. *statim (adv.)*, at once.

**❚❚**

Can you tell the story of Romulus and Remus and of how the city of Rome was founded?

**❚❚**

The wolf nurses Romulus and Remus. Above is the slope of the Palatine Hill. The river god Tiber looks on, while above him are two shepherds

## The Eternal City Is Built

Rōmulus et Remus cum Numitōre Albae Longae per paucōs annōs mānsērunt. Numitor urbem bene administrāvit. Cīvēs rēgem cārum habēbant quod imperium et lēgēs erant jūstae. Sed adulēscentēs māgnam urbem propinquam locō ubi cum Faustulō et Accā Larentiā habitāverant aedificāre dēsīderāvērunt.

Statim contrōversia ācris dē locō et dē nōmine urbis novae fuit. Rōmulus in monte Palātiō et Remus in monte Aventīnō urbem aedificāre dēsīderāvērunt. "Rēx erō," clāmāvit Rōmulus, "et nōmen meum urbī dabō!" "Urbem nōmine meō appellābō, et in urbe rēgnābō!" ācriter respondit Remus.

Amīcī frātrum augurium nūntiāvērunt. "Vultūrēs servābimus (*wait for*). Vultūrēs sīgna bona semper dant." Ad Palātium Rōmulus cum amīcīs celeriter properāvit, et per longam noctem caelum dīligenter spectābat. Remus in Aventīnō quoque augurium alacriter exspectābat. Prīmā lūce (*At daybreak*) Rōmulus duodecim (*twelve*), Remus sex vultūrēs vīdit. Rōmulus fuit victor et in Palātiō urbem novam locāvit.

Mūrī urbis nōn erant altī, et Remus ubi mūrōs vīdit dērīsit (*mocked*): "Mūrī tuī hostēs nōn prohibēbunt. Nihil prohibēbunt." Statim Rōmulus māgnā cum īrā frātrem necāvit. Sīc Rōmulus imperium obtinuit et urbī novae nōmen Rōmam dedit. Posteā Rōmulus erat prīmus rēx Rōmanōrum.

# Comprehensive Review:  Units XXI–XXV

A. Write in Latin the nominative, genitive, gender, and base of:

| | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| eye | ship | king | youth | enemy | death | father | judgment |
| law | gift | city | chief | consul | night | device | mountain |
| man | name | camp | tribe | honor | peace | courage | trickery |
| row | wind | wife | voice | daring | region | journey | swiftness |
| sea | body | river | speed | virgin | leader | brother | citizen |

B. Write in Latin the feminine and neuter forms in the nominative plural for the following adjectives. Give the English meanings.

> potēns  audāx  brevis  altus  similis  ācer  pār  dīligēns
> alacer  celer  fortis  omnis  līgneus  gravis  paucī  ūtilis

C. Write in Latin the adverbs formed on the following adjectives. Give the English meanings of the adverbs formed.

> ācer  altus  audāx  brevis  fortis  longus  similis
> pār  clārus  celer  gravis  potēns  alacer  dīligēns

OLH
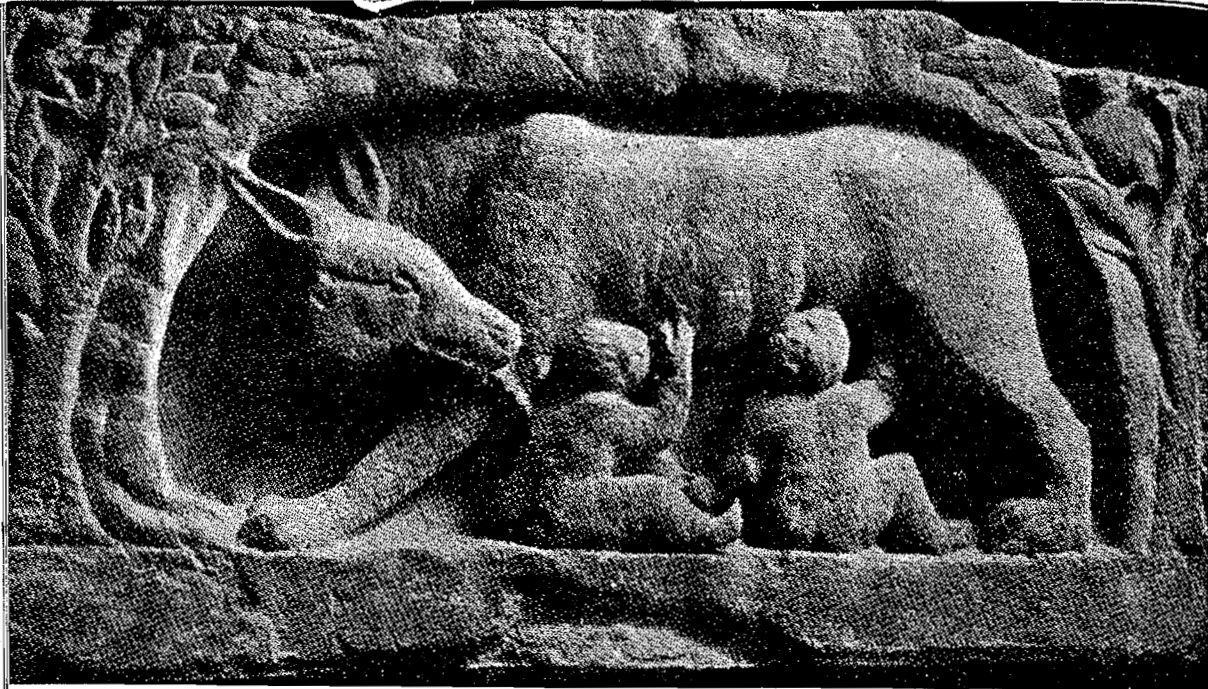
**The Wolf of Rome.** *The wolf standing in a cave looks back protectingly and licks her nurslings. The fig tree of Romulus is seen on both sides.*

## CHAPTER XXII

I.             **RŌMULUS ET REMUS I**

Nostra fābula est dē Albā Longā et Latīnīs antīquīs. In Ītaliā parvum oppidum erat quod hominēs Albam Longam appellāvērunt. Hominēs quī in oppidō erant Latīnōs appellāmus. Silvius Proca, rēx Latīnōrum antī-
5 quōrum, rēgīnaque fīliōs, Numitōrem Amūliumque, habuē-
runt. Numitōrī Proca rēgnum relīquit sed Amūlius rēx erat. Nam Amūlius ex oppidō Numitōrem cum fīliō fīliāque pepulit. Dolor Numitōris erat magnus. Nam cum Amūliō pugnāre nōn potuit neque fīlius parvus
10 Numitōris patrī auxilium dare potuit. Numitor neque virōs neque equōs habuit, sed Amūlius magnam cōpiam virōrum equōrumque et multōs gladiōs habuit.

Numitor cum fīliō fīliāque in casā parvā quae prope Albam Longam est iam habitat. Amūlius est victor et
15 regit sed semper est miser; nam perīculum propter fīlium

228

*Wolf and Twins—124 A.D.* This view is on one side of an altar found at Ostia. To the right of the twins, Romulus and Remus, is a personification of the river Tiber; to the left the Palatine Hill with various animals; on the top the God of the Hill; in the background are two shepherds. The shepherd with the beard is Faustulus.
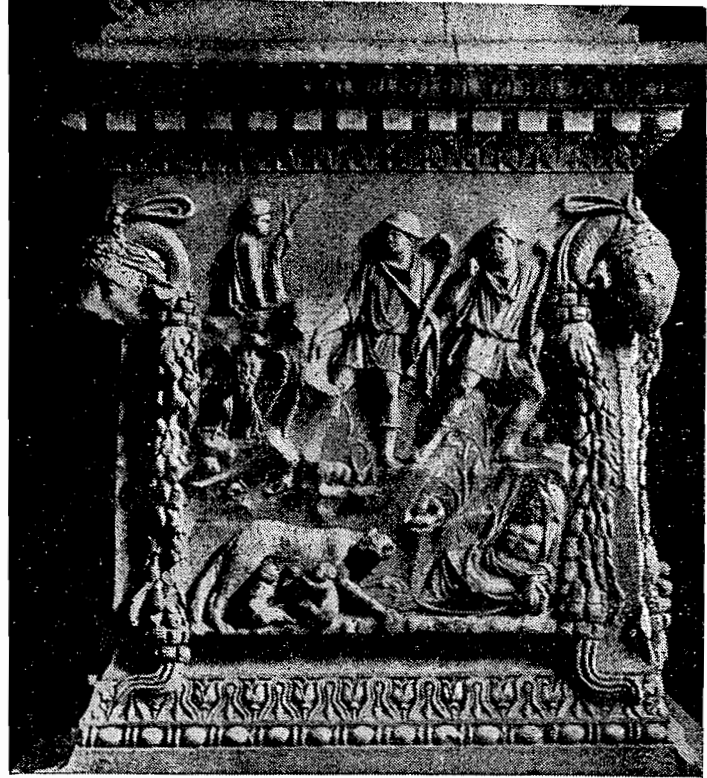
fīliamque Numitōris timet. Lēgātīs igitur nūntiāvit, "Mea vīta in perīculō est. Sī[1] vester animus est magnus, per vestrum auxilium meam vītam et rēgnum servābō. Ego vōs fīlium Numitōris clam[2] necāre iubeō. Puerum neque esse rēgem neque pellere mē ex meō rēgnō volō. 20 Ego vōs vōbīscum ad mē Rhēam Silviam, fīliam Numitōris, dūcere etiam iubeō."

Ubi Rhēa Silvia ad rēgem vēnit rēx puellae parvae nūntiāvit, "Ego amīcus tuus esse volō neque tē mē timēre volō. Dabisne mihi amīcitiam tuam? Tē Virginem Vestā- 25 lem lēgī. Noster populus magnō in honōre Virginēs Vestālēs semper habet. In pulchrō aedificiō Vestālēs vītam agunt. Vītam Virginis Vestālis amābis."

Rhēa Silvia, quae est puella parva, timet neque respondet. Amūlius iterum nūntiāvit, "Ad locum ubi hominēs 30 Albae Longae saepe conveniunt mēcum iam properābis. Virginēs Vestālēs tē exspectant."

---

[1] if.    [2] secretly.

229
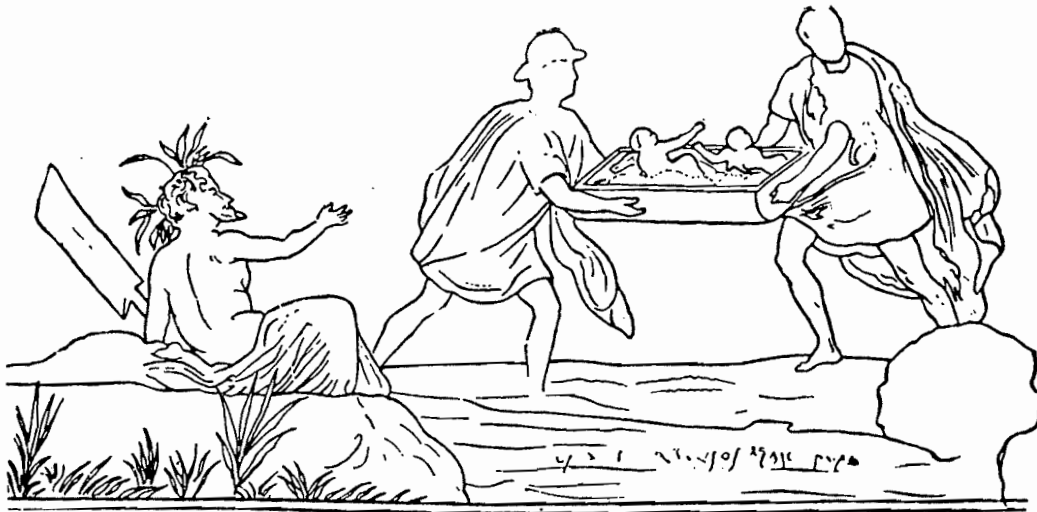
**The Twins, Romulus and Remus, Exposed.** *A fresco from the Esquiline. The twins are carried in a sort of tray by two attendants, both wearing short tunics and cloaks; one, also, has a hat. The river-god, Tiber, sits looking on; his head is crowned with reeds, and he holds a steering paddle expressive of the fact that his stream is navigable.*

Ad locum igitur celeriter pervēnērunt et Amūlius Silviam ad aedificium dūxit ubi Virginēs Vestālēs erant et
35 puellam relīquit.

Iam Amūlius vītam agere rēx in animō habet. Sed Mārs, deus pugnārum, dē Olympō ad oppidum venit et Rhēam Silviam, fīliam Numitōris, quem Amūlius ē rēgnō pepulit, videt ubi puella propter aquam ē templō Vestae ad
40 fontem[3] properat. Statim Mārs Silviam amāvit. Statim Silvia quoque Mārtem puerum pulchrum amāvit quem vīdit. Deus in mātrimōnium[4] Silviam clam[2] dūxit et Rōmulus Remusque fīliī Mārtis Silviaeque erant.

Amīcus Amūlī ubi dē fīliīs Silviae audīvit, ad Amūlium
45 nūntium mīsit et rēgī dē puerīs nārrāvit. Ubi rēx dē mātrimōniō[4] et dē fīliīs Silviae audīvit, statim propter iniūriam servōs puellam necāre iussit; nam Virginēs

---

[2] secretly.    [3] spring.    [4] marriage; with **dūcere** = to marry.

230
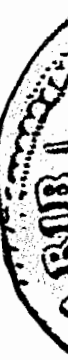
Vestālēs in mātrimōnium[4] virī dūcere nōn possunt. Servīs quoque nūntiāvit, "Fīliōs Silviae in Tiberim iactābimus. Ego vōs igitur negōtium vestrum celeriter agere iubeō." 50 Servī erant miserī, sed statim puerōs in aquam Tiberis quae erat prope rīpam iactāvērunt. Ubi ad rēgem servī vēnērunt et nūntiāvērunt, "Puerōs in Tiberim iactāvimus," rēx dē vītā nōn iam timet.

Sed propter cōnsilium deōrum aqua puerōs in terrā 55 repente relīquit. Lupa[5] puerōs invēnit et cūrāvit prope īnsulam quae est in mediō Tiberī ubi nāvigia saepe nāvigant; vītam igitur puerōrum servāvit. Iam Faustulus servus rēgis, puerōs invenit quibuscum lupa[5] prope ūnum[6] ex[6] septem montibus[6] Rōmae lūdit. Statim cum puerīs in 60 casam ad uxōrem properat et uxōrem ita[7] rogat, "Vīsne vidēre īnfantēs quōs ego cum lupā[5] prope cavum invēnī?"

Uxor: "Puerī pulchrī sunt. Dabisne mihi puerōs?"

"Ego tibi puerōs dabō, nam tēcum puerī laetē[8] habitābunt et tū puerōs prō tuīs fīliīs cūrābis. Quid puerōs tuōs 65 appellābis?"

"Meī puerī sunt sed tuī quoque. Quid nōs igitur nostrōs puerōs appellābimus?"

Puerōs quōs amant et cūrant Rōmulum Remumque appellant. 70

[4] marriage; with **ducere** = to marry.   [5] she-wolf.   [6] one of the hills.
[7] as follows.   [8] happily.

**Roman Coins.** *At the left, Mars and Rhea Silvia—a coin 140 A.D. Mars armed, his chlamys flying, floats through the air to the sleeping Rhea Silvia. At the right, the wolf and twins, coin 280 B.C.*
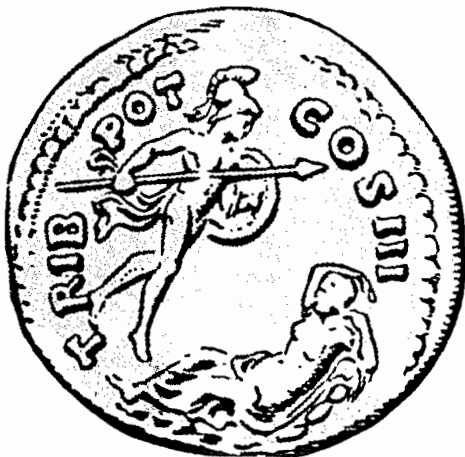
***The Tiber—First Century, A.D.*** *The Tiber is represented as a god with a cornucopia in his right hand to indicate abundance. Below is the wolf nursing the twins, Romulus and Remus.*

## CHAPTER XXIII

**1.**                    **RŌMULUS ET REMUS II**

Iam vīgintī[1] annōs[1] et Rōmulus et Remus cum Faustulō et uxōre habitāvērunt[1] et cum Faustulō in agrīs labōrāvē-runt. Numitor, agricola, in casā parvā prope Faustulum et uxōrem habitāvit et Amūlius populum Albae Longae rēxit.                                                                              5

Rōmulus Remusque iam pugnāvērunt cum bēstiīs in silvīs. Latrōnēs[2] quoque ā silvīs nōn āfuērunt. Etiam cum latrōnibus[2] eī puerī et amīcī pugnāvērunt, nam eī malī virī frūmentum agricolārum saepe coēgērunt et animālia eōrum ex agrīs ēgērunt. Sed Rōmulus et Remus semper 10 vīcērunt et frūmentum animāliaque agricolārum servā-

---

[1] for twenty years had lived.          [2] robbers.

239

**Wall of Romulus.** *This is on the western corner of the Palatine Hill.*

vērunt; nam latrōnēs[2] ea in agrīs relinquere coēgērunt. Eī igitur malī virī Rōmulum et Remumque nōn amāvērunt.

15 "Nōn vestra terra est," malī virī clāmant.

Iterum igitur cum Rōmulō Remōque pugnant ubi puerī arma nōn habent et ubi eōrum amīcī ab Albā Longā absunt neque auxilium dare possunt. Rōmulus ab agrō abest in quō Remus pugnat et Rōmulus est victor, sed 20 latrōnēs Remum vīcērunt et captīvum ad rēgem dūxērunt. Rēgī nārrāvērunt, "Remus frūmentum et animālia Numitōris ex agrīs cōgit."

Rēx igitur eum captīvum ad Numitōrem mīsit. Numitor ubi Remum vīdit eum amāvit et rōgāvit, "Quis es? 25 Fīliusne es Faustulī?"

Remus eī respondit: "Faustulus quidem nōs, mē Rōmulumque prope cavum lupae[3] invēnit et Faustulus et eius uxor nōs prō fīliīs semper cūrāvērunt."

----

[2] robbers.       [3] she-wolf.

240

Magnus erat dolor Faustulī et Rōmulī ubi nūntius eīs narrāvit, "Remus nōn habuit arma et latrōnēs[2] vincere 30 nōn potuit. Eum quidem agrōs relinquere coēgērunt et nunc captīvus Numitōris est." Faustulus igitur cum Rōmulō ad casam Numitōris celeriter properat; nam Remō auxilium dare volunt.

Ubi Faustulus ad casam pervēnit, Numitor eum dē eīs 35 puerīs rogāvit. Ubi eam fābulam ex Faustulō quoque dē vītā eōrum audīvit, erat laetus; nam invēnit fīliae Silviae fīliōs quōs per cōnsilium deōrum aqua servāvit. Rōmulus Remusque quoque laetī erant.

Iam Faustulus eīs dē Amūliō narrāvit. "Proca Numi- 40 tōrī rēgnum relīquit sed Amūlius Numitōrem ē rēgnō pepulit; et fīlium et fīliam Numitōris necāvit et in Tibe- rim vōs, fīliōs Silviae, iactāvit sed per cōnsilium deōrum aqua vōs in rīpā relīquit et lupa[3] vestram vītam servāvit. Iam quidem in magnō perīculō estis; nam amīcī rēgis 45 Amūlī eī dē vōbīs narrābunt et is vōs necāre dēsīderābit."

Eī puerī neque cōpiās neque gladiōs nec arma habuērunt sed statim amīcī eōrum convēnērunt et cōpiam gladiōrum et armōrum coēgērunt et cum puerīs ad oppidum Albam Longam properāvērunt. Rēgī nūntiāvērunt, "Propter 50 tuās iniūriās tē necābimus." Et statim id ēgērunt. Negōtium celeriter ēgērunt et Numitōrī rēgnum dedērunt. Hominēs Albae Longae iam laetī erant; nam Numitor iam rēx erat.

Eī puerī cum Numitōre multōs[4] annōs[4] nōn habitant; 55 nam oppidum magnum aedificāre volunt. Id aedificāre in animō habent prope eum locum in quō lupa[3] eōs cūrāvit. Ad Palātium igitur, ūnum[5] ex[5] septem montibus[5] Rōmae, veniunt quod est prope rīpam Tiberis ubi est īnsula in mediā aquā ad quam multa nāvigia nāvigant. Sed statim 60 dē nōmine oppidī pugnant.

[2] robbers.          [3] she-wolf.          [4] for many years          [5] one of the hills.

241

*Romulus (Quirinus) — 51 B.C. Note his long, flowing hair and beard, treated in formal curls in the archaic fashion; also his wreath of laurel. This head is perhaps copied from the statue which was set up on the Capitol.*

"Quid oppidum nostrum nōs appellābimus?" Remus rogāvit.

"Ego rēx esse et eī oppidō meum nōmen dare volō," 65 Rōmulus respondit.

"Ego tēcum pugnāre nōn dēsīderō, sed ego rēx esse volō," clāmāvit Remus, "et id oppidum ex meō nōmine appellābō." Deōs igitur rogāvērunt, et per cōnsilium deōrum Rōmulus erat victor. Oppidum Rōmam ex 70 nōmine Rōmulō appellāvit et eius rēx erat.

Iam Rōmulus mūrōs oppidī aedificāvit. Sed Remus mūrōs spectāvit et eōs lūsit, nam eī parvī erant.

"Tū victor esse nōn potes; oppidum victōris magnōs mūrōs habet," Remus clāmāvit.

75 Amīcus igitur Rōmulī statim Remum necāvit, et Rōmulus eum nōn iam timuit. Rōmulus virōs suōs[6] viās, multa aedificia, casās, templa aedificāre iam iussit; sed in eō oppidō novō multī hominēs nōn erant.

---

[6] his.

242

OBJECTIVES
• To learn the future and perfect of **sum**
• To learn uses of the infinitive

# RŌMULUS, NUMA ET TULLUS

**P**rīmus rēx[1] Rōmae Rōmulus fuit. Armīs et cōnsiliīs bonīs glōriam Rōmae auxit. Virī Rōmulum amāvērunt quod multīs familiīs asȳlum[2] dōnāvit et ad victōriam sociōs incitāvit. "Rōma magna erit," inquit[3] Rōmulus. "Clārī eritis."

Secundus[4] rēx Rōmae fuit Numa Pompilius. Numa bellum nōn amāvit.
5 Deam Ēgeriam[5] amāvit. Ēgeria Numam dē cūrīs sacrīs docuit. Tum rēx Rōmānōs docēre mātūrāvit. "Deī[6] amīcī Rōmae erunt," inquit[3] Numa, "sī[7] bonī et grātī erimus. Multam grātiam deīs habēre dēbēmus."

Tertius[8] rēx Rōmae fuit Tullus Hostīlius. Tullus inquit[3], "Bonus vir et rēx erō." Sed reverentiam[9] parvam habuit et concordiam nōn amāvit. Sacra[10] nōn
10 tenuit et multa bella mōvit[11]. Sed Iuppiter vītam Tullī nōn probāvit et Tullum fulmine[12] exstinguit.

rble relief of Romulus and
is. According to legend,
twins were the offspring
e god Mars and a Vestal
n, Rhea Silvia. Ordered to
posed and left to die by her
d uncle, they were nursed
he-wolf until they were
l and reared by a shepherd.
as they quarreled over
hould name and rule the
ity, Remus was killed; in
.C. F    ulus became the
f Rome's seven kings.

LFA

8. Ego ipse tibi viam intrā mūrōs certē dēmōnstrābō.
9. Rōmānī ipsī lībertātem amābant, sed fīnitimīs ẹam nōn dabant.
10. Propter puellae perfidiam cīvēs fortēs ab hostibus occupābantur.

B. Translate into Latin:

1. Liberty was desired by the Romans.
2. On the right were seen the treacherous enemy, on the left the faithful allies.
3. The way was sure, but they did not avoid all the dangers.
4. For many years there were peace and friendship between the men.
5. The short way was shown to the enemy by the girl.

### The Women Have the Last Word

Prīmus prīnceps urbis Rōmae atque imperī fuit Rōmulus ille, deī Martis et Rheae Silviae fīlius. Rōmulus urbem aedificāvit et urbem novam ex nōmine suō appellāvit. Ad Rōmulī urbem multitūdō hominum properāvit. Fugitīvīs ex fīnitimīs populīs asȳlum dedit. Concilium (*Council*) populī ā Rōmulō habēbātur. Omnibus incolīs lībertās atque aequa jūra (*rights*) dabantur. Etiam creāvit centum senātōrēs quī (*who*) patrēs quoque appellābantur.

Jam fīrma erat urbs nova et fīnitimīs gentibus bellō pār. Rōma incolārum plēna (*full*) erat, sed cūnctus populus virōrum erat. Rōmulus ipse sibi uxōrem dēsīderābat. Virī Rōmānī sibi uxōrēs māgnō cum studiō dēsīderābant. Tum Rōmulus lēgātōs ad fīnitimōs vīcōs properāre jūssit. Lēgātī cūnctīs populīs nūntiāvērunt: "Rōmulus rēx lūdōs māgnōs et spectācula habēbit. Virōs ac fēminās ad eōs lūdōs ac spectācula vocat."

Multae gentēs fīnitimae cum līberīs atque uxōribus ad urbem Rōmam cum laetitiā properāvērunt. Dum hominēs alacrēs lūdōs spectant, et perīculum nōn timent, sīgnum ā Rōmulō dabātur. Statim Rōmānī omnēs, virī puerīque, sibi Sabīnōrum fīliās comprehendērunt (*seized*) et cum eīs in casās suās properāvērunt. Virī Sabīnī fīliās servāre nōn potuērunt quod arma nōn habuērunt. Sīc Rōmānī sibi uxōrēs obtinuērunt.

Frūstrā puellae clāmāvērunt; frūstrā matrēs eārum implōrāvērunt; frūstrā patrēs frātrēsque Rōmānōs fīliās sorōrēsque suās sibi dare jūssērunt. Rōmānī Sabīnīs respondērunt: "Fīliae vestrae et sorōrēs nōbīscum laetae erunt. Eīs omnia jūra Rōmānōrum dabuntur."

182

Sabīnī autem māgnā cum īrā arma parāvērunt. Post longum tempus ad urbem Rōmam properāvērunt et cum Rōmānīs ācriter pūgnāvērunt. Multī Sabīnī et multī Rōmānī vulnerābantur. Multōs annōs Sabīnī extrā mūrōs urbis Rōmae et exspectābant et pūgnābant. Tandem propter Tarpējae perfidiam māgnō in perīculō erat Rōma. Arx ā Sabīnīs tenēbātur; urbs Rōma facile oppūgnābātur. In eō locō ubi nunc Forum Rōmānum est, longa et ācris erat pūgna. Subitō Sabīnae fīliae atque uxōrēs Rōmānae inter Sabīnōs et Rōmānōs volāvērunt, et pācem atque amīcitiam ā patribus ac virīs (*husbands*) implōrāvērunt. Dūces eō factō movēbantur et posteā ē multīs ūnum rēgnum fēcērunt (*made*).

# *Unit* XXXIII

## CONVERSATION

MAGISTER: Quī rēx in cordibus omnium cīvium Rōmānōrum prīmus semper fuit?

PAULUS: Rōmulus māgnus rēx ā Rōmānīs semper habēbātur.

PAULA: Posteā Rōmānī Rōmulum prō deō adōrāvērunt et eī nōmen Quirīnum dedērunt.

MAGISTER: Quibuscum rēx Rōmae bellum multōs annōs gerēbat?

JŪLIUS: Bellum longum contrā fīnitimōs inimīcōs ā Rōmulō gerēbātur, dum urbem Rōmam rēgit.

MAGISTER: Ā quibus Sabīnī in bellō superābantur?

JŪLIA: Sabīnī cum Rōmānīs illō tempore contendēbant, sed illī ā Rōmānīs post prīncipis mortem regēbantur.

MAGISTER: Quī rēx clārus ac bonus post Rōmulum Rōmānōs regēbat?

CORNĒLIUS: Incolae Rōmae ā Numā Pompiliō, rēge Sabīnō, regēbantur. Pācem amīcitiamque cum gentibus fīnitimīs cōnfirmāvit.

PAULUS: Quis fuit tertius rēx Rōmānōrum? Rōmānusne fuit?

MAGISTER: Tullus Hostīlius Rōmānus ā senātōribus populōque tertius rēx dēligēbātur. Neque pācem neque amīcitiam cum fīnitimīs cōnfirmāre temptāvit. Vir cupidus bellī erat.
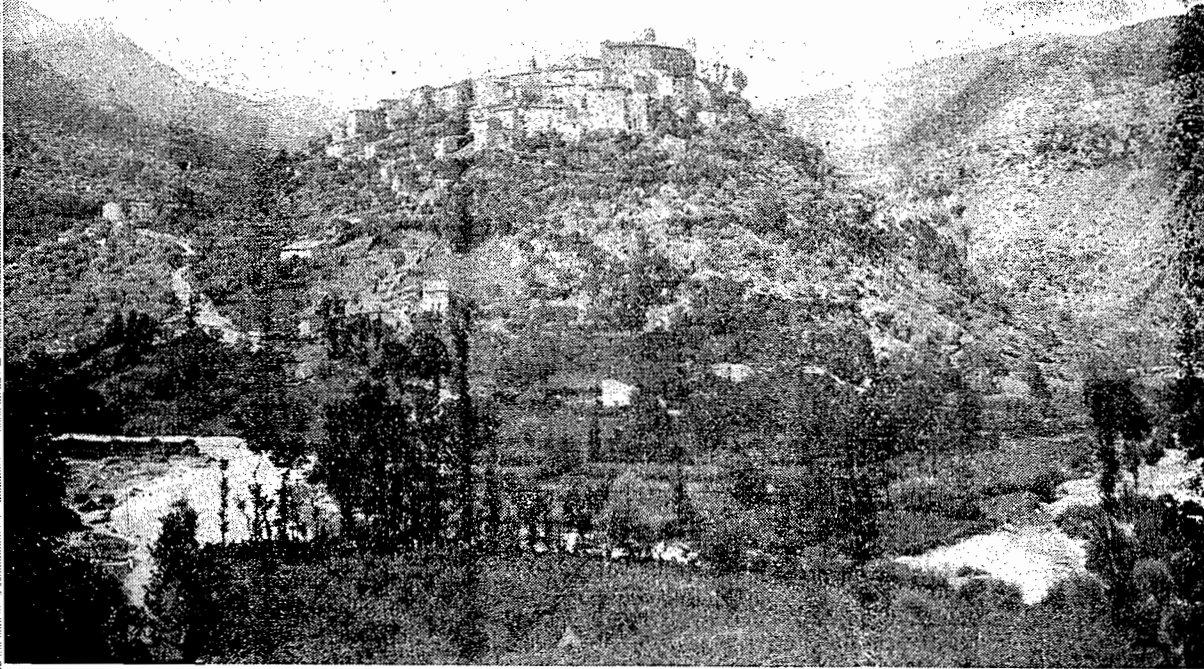
**A Sabine Town.** *A town in the Sabine Hills not far from Horace's villa.*

## CHAPTER XXIV

1. RŌMĀNĪ ET FĒMINAE SABĪNAE

Iam Rōmulus novum oppidum in Palātiō ūnō[1] ex[1] septem montibus[1] aedificat quod Rōmam ē suō nōmine appellat. Prope cavum lupae[6] id oppidum est et prope locum quoque ubi Faustulus Rōmulum Remumque in-
5 vēnit. Oppidum Rōma igitur ab īnsulā nōn longē[2] abest quae in Tiberī est, et nāvigia Rōmāna ad īnsulam Tiberis saepe nāvigant. Rōmulus et paucī amīcī in multīs casīs quās aedificāvērunt habitant. Sed Rōmulus magnum numerum hominum sēcum habitāre vult; eōs igitur virōs
10 nōn semper malōs sed quidem miserōs quōs ex agrīs et oppidīs propter iniūriās hominēs pepulērunt ad suum

---

[1] one of the hills.    [2] far.    [6] she-wolf.

oppidun
oppidun
sunt lae
eōrum ι
Rōmam
patrēs j
fīliās su
Iam Rō
habet.
   Stati
bonum
oppidu
habēbi
   "Op
vērunt
   Stat
erant p
tiāvēru
Rōmae
lūdōs s
magnu
dum c
coēgit.
   Laet
timuēr
Statim
fīliae
dērun
cōnsili
patrui
habuē
sed u

---

[3] ma

oppidum invītat. Statim magnus numerus virōrum in oppidum convenit sed sunt paucae fēminae. Virī nōn sunt laetī; nam in eō oppidō iam sunt multī virī sed paucī eōrum uxōrēs habent. Eī puellās quae in oppidīs prope 15 Rōmam habitant in mātrimōnium[3] dūcere volunt. Sed patrēs puellārum quī virōs malōs appellant, eōs neque fīliās suās neque sorōrēs in mātrimōnium[3] dūcere volunt. Iam Rōmulus dē suō oppidō timet, nam fēminās nōn habet. 20

Statim Rōmulus virīs miserīs nūntiāvit, "Ego cōnsilium bonum in animō habeō. Auxilium vōbīs dabō. Ego vōs oppidum meum relinquere nōn dēsīderō. Uxōrēs quidem habēbitis."

"Oppidum tuum relinquere nōn dēsīderāmus," clāmā- 25 vērunt.

Statim Rōmulus ea[7] ēgit: Nūntiōs in ea oppida quae erant prope Rōmam dīmīsit. Nūntiī cūnctīs populīs nūntiāvērunt, "Rēx Rōmulus lūdōs magnōs in deī honōrem Rōmae habēbit. Ad eōs lūdōs vōs invītat." Hominēs 30 lūdōs semper libenter spectant; ad mūrōs igitur Rōmae magnus numerus virōrum laetōrum vēnit et prope oppidum cum fēminīs, uxōribus et fīliābus et sorōribus, sē coēgit.

Laetī hominēs lūdōs spectāvērunt neque perīculum 35 timuērunt, sed in mediīs lūdīs Rōmulus signum dedit. Statim et virī Rōmānī et puerī sibi puellās quārum multae fīliae pulchrae sorōrēsque Sabīnōrum erant comprehendērunt[4] et cum eīs in suās casās properāvērunt. Propter cōnsilium malum Rōmulī magnus erat dolor cūnctōrum 40 patrum; sed fīliās servāre nōn potuērunt; nam arma nōn habuērunt. Cum Rōmānīs igitur pugnāre nōn potuērunt, sed ubi Sabīnī Rōmānōs fīliās suās sibi dare iussērunt,

---

[3] marriage, with **ducere** = to marry.    [4] seized.    [7] these things.

*The Rape of Sabines*—87, B.C. Two Romans, each carrying a Sabine woman—reverse of coin; the obverse is a head of the Sabine king, T. Tatius.

Rōmānī clāmāvērunt, "Fīliās vestrās et sorōrēs quae nunc
45 sunt nostrae uxōrēs amābimus et cūrābimus. Neque eās
necābimus neque est perīculum. Nōbīscum laetae erunt."

Propter ea[7] Sabīnī ex oppidō Rōmā ad sua oppida
properāvērunt. Statim eōrum rēx nūntiōs in oppida
rēgnī dīmīsit. Magnās cōpiās, gladiōs, equōs Sabīnī
50 coēgērunt et ē rēgnō ad oppidum Rōmam iterum properā-
vērunt. Sed ubi prope oppidum Rōmam vēnērunt,
Rōmānī portās clausērunt.

Sed rēx Sabīnus suās cōpiās ad eōrum oppida Sabīna
nōn dīmittit neque Rōmam relinquit. Prō portīs rēx et
55 cōpiae Rōmānōs exspectant, nam Rōmam vincere et
fīliās, Sabīnās fēminās quae sunt in oppidō Rōmānō ser-
vāre in animō habent. Multōs[5] annōs[5] cum Rōmānīs pug-
nant, sed neque Rōmānī neque Sabīnī sunt victōrēs.

---

[5] for many years.      [7] these things.

254

7. Eō tempore hostēs ex Ītaliā ā cīvibus fortibus pellēbantur.
8. Neque Sabīnī neque Albānī Rōmānōs tandem superāvērunt.
9. Senātōrēs populusque Rōmānus rēgem novum nōmināvērunt.
10. Annus in mēnsēs ā rēge bonō dīvidēbātur.

B. Write in Latin:

1. Many stories about the gods will be written by the poets.
2. Were not the leaders chosen by the king?
3. The bold general tried to strengthen neither peace nor friendship.
4. That nation waged war for many years with neighboring peoples.
5. The wicked kings did not determine to write the new laws, did they?

## Kings Rule Rome

Post Rōmulī mortem, prīmī rēgis Rōmae, per breve interrēgnum ūnīus annī Rōma ā senātōribus potentibus regēbātur. Tum omnēs incolae urbis rēgem novum postulāvērunt. Numa Pompilius, Sabīnus, rēx prūdēns et homō pācis, dēligēbātur. Virōs bonōs scrībere multās lēgēs aequās jūssit; senātōrēs hās popu-5 lum docuērunt. Rēx jūstus populōs fīnitimōs amābat et cum hīs contendere nōn dēsīderābat. Ubi hī auxilium rōgābant, Numa Pompilius hīs auxilium dedit. Templa aedificāvit et ea cūrāre multōs virōs nōmināvit. Virginēs Vestālēs dēligēbat, templum Jānī aedificāvit, annum ad cursum (course) lūnae in duodecim 10 mēnsēs dīvīsit. Numa annōs trēs et quadrāgintā (forty) prūdenter rēgnābat.

Iterum interrēgnum breve fuit, et posteā Tullus Hostīlius Rōmam regēbat. Numa Pompilius, prūdēns vir, pācis cupidus fuerat, sed Tullus Hostīlius, audāx et ācer, bellī cupidus fuit. 15 Populus autem pācem hōc tempore amābat, et virī puerīque agricolae esse dēsīderābant. Cum gentibus fīnitimīs contendere nōn dēsīderābant.

Sed propter rēgem bellicōsum Rōmānī cum Albānīs saepe ācriter contendēbant. Iterum iterumque Rōmānī in agrīs Albānōrum 20 bellum gerēbant, et Albānī eōs ex agrīs semper pellēbant. Rōmānī et Albānī virtūte et numerō virōrum paene parēs erant. Neque Rōmānī neque Albānī erant semper victōrēs.

Illō tempore dux Albānus prūdēns mortem multōrum virōrum fortium vītāre voluit (wished). Rēgī Rōmānō cōnsilium breviter 25 explānāvit.

# A Six-Man Battle

"Dēlige trēs virōs ex cōpiīs tuīs, et ego trēs ex meīs dēligam. Hī sex virī prō mīlitibus fortibus Rōmae et Albae Longae contendent. Sī Rōmānī erunt victōrēs, Albānōs regent; sī Albānī

Rōmānōs superābunt, hī ab Albānīs regentur. Probāsne cōnsilium meum?" "Cōnsilium tuum nōn est difficile et Rōmānīs grātum est," Hostīlius celeriter respondit.

Forte apud Rōmānōs erant trēs frātrēs, nōmine Horātiī, et apud Albānōs etiam erant trēs frātrēs, nōmine Cūriātiī. Horātiī et Cūriātiī amīcī semper fuerant, sed illī dēfēnsōrēs (*champions*) ā ducibus suīs dēligēbantur et prō gente suā in certāmine contendere dēsīderābant. Sex adulēscentēs fortēs sē armāvērunt et sine timōre in medium agrum cucurrērunt. Mīlitēs Rōmānī prō castrīs suīs, mīlitēs Albānī prō suīs sedēbant.

Intereā (*Meanwhile*) omnēs Rōmānī et Albānī praeter fēminās ad locum certāminis aderant. Amīcī et sociī adulēscentium fortium pūgnam spectāre parāvērunt et verbīs laudis illōs stimulāre. Inter duās gentēs Horātiī et Cūriātiī sine timōre stābant.

"Prō patriā Rōmā pūgnābimus!" clāmāvērunt Horātiī. "Prō lībertāte Albānōrum!" celeriter respondērunt Cūriātiī.

Prīncipēs duōrum populōrum tubā sīgnum dedērunt. Certāmen ācre fuit. Paene statim Cūriātiī duōs Horātiōs gladiīs necāvērunt sed Rōmānī trēs Albānōs vulnerāverant. Manēbat ūnus Horātius, sed ille erat integer. Horror ācer animōs Rōmānōrum cēpit. Albānī māgnō cum gaudiō clāmābant: "Victōria est nostra! Victōria est nostra!" Fīnis certāminis cum tranquillitāte exspectābātur.

Trēs Cūriātiī vulnerātī (*wounded*) circum ūnum Horātium stābant. Albānī celerem victōriam exspectābant. Sed ūnus Horātius erat alacer animō et celer pede. Subitō ā Cūriātiīs celeriter properāvit et fugam simulāvit. Rōmānī māgnō cum dolōre movēbantur, quod illī causam fugae nōn vidēbant. Eratne Horātius Rōmānus timidus?

Horātius neque perīculum neque mortem timēbat. Per agrum cucurrit et fugā suā ab sē Cūriātiōs vulnerātōs sēparāvit. Post Horātium trēs Cūriātiī cum difficultāte quoque cucurrērunt. Inter Cūriātiōs erant māgna intervalla. Subitō sē vertit et prīmum Cūriātium necāvit; deinde (*then*) secundum. Tertius manēbat. Horātius illum defessum (*wearied*) et vulnerātum facile superāvit et necāvit.

"Nostra est victōria!" clāmāvērunt Rōmānī laetī. "Alba Longa posthāc (*hereafter*) ā nōbīs regētur!" Posteā Tullus Hostīlius cum mīlitibus ācribus Albam Longam dēlēvit et Albānōs ad urbem Rōmam dūxit. Tum rēx ācer populōs duōrum oppidōrum jūnxit et prō Albānīs et prō Rōmānīs lēgēs gravēs scrīpsit. Multōs annōs Rōma ā rēge bellicōsō regēbātur.

people find them difficult to learn. If you have forgotten how difficult they can be, try writing *fourteen ninety-two* in Roman numerals.

## Kings Rule Rome (continued)

Ancus Mārcius, nepōs (*grandson*) Numae Pompilī, Rōmae erat quārtus rēx. Ille rēx bonus prūdēnsque fuit, et similis Numae cum fīnitimīs pūgnāre nōn cupīvit. Sed Rōma ā Latīnīs saepe oppūgnābātur. Rēx nōn timidus bellum contrā Latīnōs statim gessit. Urbem hostium dēlēvit et cīvēs ad urbem Rōmam dūxit. Cīvibus novīs Montem Aventīnum dedit.

Pontem sublicium (*wooden*) trāns Tiberim rēx fēcit, et Jāniculum cum urbe hōc ponte jūnxit. Carcer (*Prison*) prope Forum et sub monte Capitōlīnō aedificābātur, et Ostia, portus (*port*) Rōmae, in ōre (*mouth*) Tiberis condēbātur (*was founded*). Agrum fīnēsque Rōmae ad mare extendit et populī Rōmānī imperium auxit.

Post Ancum Mārcium rēgnum obtinuērunt prīncipēs Etrūscī. Tarquinius Prīscus cum uxōre suā ex Etrūriae oppidō ad urbem Rōmam migrāverat. Māgnam laudem et rēgis et populī Rōmānī celeriter sibi obtinuit, et tandem tūtor duōrum fīliōrum rēgis fuit.

Fīdus et bonus tūtor fuit, sed post mortem Ancī Mārcī ipse rēx esse cupīvit et imperium facile obtinuit. Multa bella gessit et multōs agrōs hostium audācter occupāvit. Circum Māximum aedificāvit et lūdōs Rōmānōs statuit. Et in bellō et in pāce Rōmam bene rēxit Tarquinius.

Interim duo fīliī Ancī Mārcī Tarquinium interficere et rēgnum occupāre statuērunt. Illī duōs pastōrēs rēgem interficere jūssērunt. Sed hī pastōrēs rēgem vulnerāvērunt; illum nōn statim interfēcērunt. Tanaquil rēgīna mortem rēgis nōn nūntiāvit donec (*until*) propter auctōritātem ējus (*her*) Servius Tullius grātiam populī obtinuerat et rēx ā populō creātus est.

Tarquinius Prīscus Servium Tullium prō fīliō ēdūcāverat quod Tanaquil puerum amāvit. Tum post Tarquinī Prīscī mortem Servius Tullius sibi rēgnum facile obtinuit. Prūdenter imperium administrāvit. Prīmus ille cēnsum populī Rōmānī habērī (*to be held*) jūssit.

Sed Lūcius Tarquinius, fīlius Tarquinī Prīscī, Rōmam regere māgnopere cupīvit. Cum malā uxōre, fīliā Servī Tullī, rēgem interfēcit et imperium occupāvit.

OLH

*Numa Pompilius.* Coin—B.C. 49. Note his diadem.

## CHAPTER XXVI

I.                    **RŌMULUS, NUMA, ET TULLUS**

Multōs annōs Rōmulus et populus eius laetī in oppidō
novō habitant quod Rōmulus aedificāvit in eō locō in quō
Faustulus eum prope cavum invēnit. Virī quī prope Ti-
beris rīpam habitābant multa nāvigia parva habēbant.
Ad īnsulam Tiberis saepe nāvigābant et aqua ventusque 5
nāvigia parva saepe iactābant.

Rōmulus bonus rēx erat. Populus quidem cui lēgēs
scrībēbat eum amābat et laudābat. Centum[1] virōs bonōs
et ēgregiōs lēgit quōs senātōrēs appellāvit. Senātōrēs
ducī auxilium et cōnsilium dabant et cum eō multōs 10
hominēs suōs regēbant et cūrābant; nam in oppidō novō
magnus numerus hominum iam habitābat. Multōs annōs
honōrem patriae suae tenēbat.

---

[1] one hundred.

LWR

*Janus.* God of beginnings and guardian deity of gates; hence is commonly represented with two heads because every door looks two ways. His name is connected with **ianuae,** gates or doors. As god of the door, Janus was conceived as a janitor with a key in one hand, and a switch in the other. Coin—B.C. 217.

Ōlim[2] populus Rōmānus cum rēge Rōmulō in lātum
15 agrum convēnit. Rēx hominibus dīcēbat. Subitō[3] horri-
bilis[4] tempestās erat quae hominēs terrēbat. Tempestās et
magnī ventī cūnctōs ad casās celeriter agēbant. Posteā
Rōmulum iterum invenīre nōn potuērunt, nam rēx ab
Rōmā longē[5] aberat.
20   Mox senātor Rōmānus, "Vester rēx," inquit, "ē vītā
nōn cessit, sed nunc est deus. Eius pater Mārs, deus
pugnārum, eī immortālitātem dedit. Ego eum in mediō
ventō ac tempestāte vīdī. Is mihi clāmāvit, 'Dīcēsne id
meō populō? Eōs semper cūrābō et auxilium dabō. Meam
25 Rōmam deī volunt oppidum esse magnum. Propter
magnum animum Rōmānī multōs populōs vincent et
multās terrās regent.' "
    Iam cūnctī Rōmānī Rōmulum deum habēbant et eum
Quirīnum ex nōmine Sabīnō patris Mārtis appellāvērunt

____
[2] once.      [3] suddenly.      [4] nom. sing. adj.      [5] far.

et templum in honōrem eius aedificāvērunt. Rōmulus 30
trīgintā[8] septem annōs[8] rēxit.

Rōmānī rēgem nōn iam habuērunt; senātōrēs oppidum
regēbant. Sed hominēs novum rēgem rogābant; senātōrēs
populusque igitur Numam Pompilium, Sabīnum bonum
et ēgregium, dēlēgērunt. 35

Rēx Numa Rōmānīs multās et novās lēgēs scrīpsit.
Senātōrēs lēgēs eius populō saepe legēbant. Is rēx amīcus
populōs amābat quī in oppidīs prope Rōmam habitābant.
Is oppida eōrum neque oppugnāre neque expugnāre
dēsīderābat. Sed eīs auxilium dedit ubi id rogābant. Is 40
mīlitēs suōs nōn audīvit ubi dē pugnā clāmāvērunt.
Amīcitiam cum cūnctīs populīs libenter tenēbat. Multa
aedificia et templa aedificāvit. Tum magnum numerum
virōrum dēlēgit et virī templa cūrābant. Multīs mīlitibus
Rōmānīs quī ūllam pecūniam nōn habēbant terram pūb- 45
licam dedit. Puerōs Rōmānōs virōsque agricolās esse et
in agrīs labōrāre iussit. Puerī Rōmānī mīlitēs neque agri-
colae semper fuērunt. Servī et servae in agrīs et in casīs
labōrābant. Sed iam virī Rōmānī quoque in agrīs labōrā-
bant et vīta nova grāta erat. Mox familiās suās et sē 50
cūrāre poterant. Ubi Numa erat rēx, hominēs semper
erant laetī. Sed Numa ē vītā cessit neque ūllum fīlium
rēgem relīquit.

Senātōrēs populusque igitur Tullum Hostīlium rēgem
dēlēgērunt. Sed dolor hominum erat magnus; nam rēx 55
novus erat malus et pugnās amābat. Iam virī puerīque
agricolae esse et in agrīs labōrāre neque pugnāre dēsīderā-
bant. In casīs et agrīs cum uxōribus et fīliīs et fīliābus
vītam agere et suum negōtium agere dēsīderābant.

Nunc Rōmānī cum Albānīs saepe pugnābant. Populus 60
Rōmānus magnum perīculum timēbat. Iam lēgātus

---

[8] for thirty years.

Rōmānus paucās cōpiās dē portā arcis quam Tarpēia prō praemiō Sabīnīs dedit in agrōs Albānōrum perdūxit. Albānī ex agrīs eōs mox pepulērunt. Victōria Rōmāna 65 igitur nōn erat, sed Rōmānī multam praedam[6] coēgērunt. Posteā propter iniūriam Rōmānōrum paucī Albānī in agrōs Rōmānōrum vēnērunt. Ubi mīlitēs quī in arce erant cōpiās Albānōrum vīdērunt, statim portam clausērunt et exspectāvērunt, sed mox Albānī cessērunt. Iterum iterum- 70 que Rōmānī in agrōs Albānōs et Albānī in agrōs Rōmānōs veniēbant. Et Rōmānī et Albānī victōrēs esse dēsīderā- bant. Neque Rōmānī Albānīs cēdunt, neque Albānī Rōmānīs cēdunt. ·

Tum Tullus nūntiāvit, "Cum Albānīs pugnāre in animō 75 habeō. Rēgnum nostrum et glōriam nōminis Rōmānī armīs dēfendēmus." Mox virī puerīque in castra con- vēnērunt. Tullus arma et gladiōs et equōs coēgit. Tum Tullus et mīlitēs cessērunt ad mūrōs Albānōrum. Cum magnō dolōre fēminae et uxōrēs et sorōrēs eōs dīmīsērunt.

80 Cōpiae Rōmānae ad terram Albānōrum celeriter per- vēnērunt ubi Mettius dux Albānus cum magnīs cōpiīs eōs exspectābat. Mettius magnum numerum mīlitum ēgre- giōrum Rōmānōrum spectāvit et pugnāre grātum nōn iam erat; nam ūllōs mīlitēs ē vītā cēdere nōn dēsīderābat. 85 Servāre neque necāre virōs suōs dēbet. Rōmānōs igitur sēcum pugnāre nōn vult, itaque[9] nūntium ad rēgis Tullī castra dīmīsit et nūntius rēgī dīxit, "Mettius tē ad sē venīre vult. Veniēsne mēcum ad castra Albāna?"

Tullus nūntiō: "Ego mox ad castra tuī dominī veniam," 90 et eum ad ducem Albānum remīsit.

Posteā Tullus vēnit. Tullum rogāvit, "Nōnne[7] possumus necāre paucōs prō multīs mīlitibus? Tibi cōnsilium meum nārrābō."

---

[6] booty.    [7] Asks a yes question.    [9] and so.

2.

a. Wh
to heave
b. Nai
to have

3.

ventus, ve
lēx, lēgis,
tempestās.
posteā, ad
ūllus, -a, -
mox, adv.
cēdō, -ere
tum, adv.
castrum, ī

dē-, (prefi

4.

a. ē v
b. dēl
out, choo

Temple of
The temple
structure wi
doors at ea
ture was of
Within was
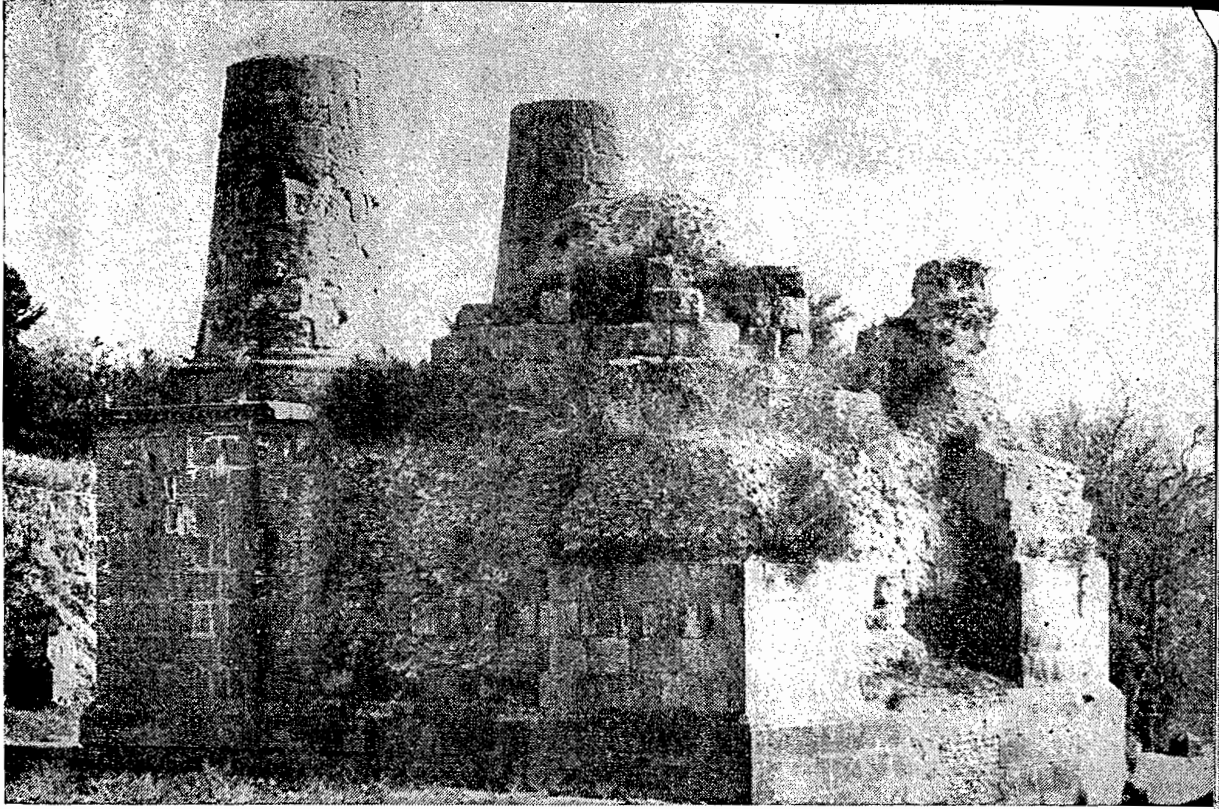
*The Tomb of the Horatii and the Curiatii at Albano.*

# CHAPTER XXVII

## *SECOND REVIEW — CHAPTERS XVI - XXVI*

I.            REVIEW STORY

*a.*     **HORĀTIĪ ET CŪRIĀTIĪ, ANCUS MĀRCIUS,
TARQUINIUS PRĪSCUS**

Mettius cūnctōs mīlitēs Albānōs cum cūnctīs Rōmānīs pugnāre nōn dēsīderābat. Neque Tullus pugnāre dēsīderābat; Mettius igitur ducī Rōmānō cōnsilium suum dīxit.

"Tū trēs virōs ex cōpiīs tuīs dēligēs et ego trēs ex meīs ₅ dēligam. Tum eī virī prō multīs mīlitibus pugnābunt. Sī Rōmānī vincent, Rōma Albam Longam reget. Sed sī Albānī vincent, Alba Longa Rōmam reget. Quid dē cōnsiliō meō dīcis?"

283
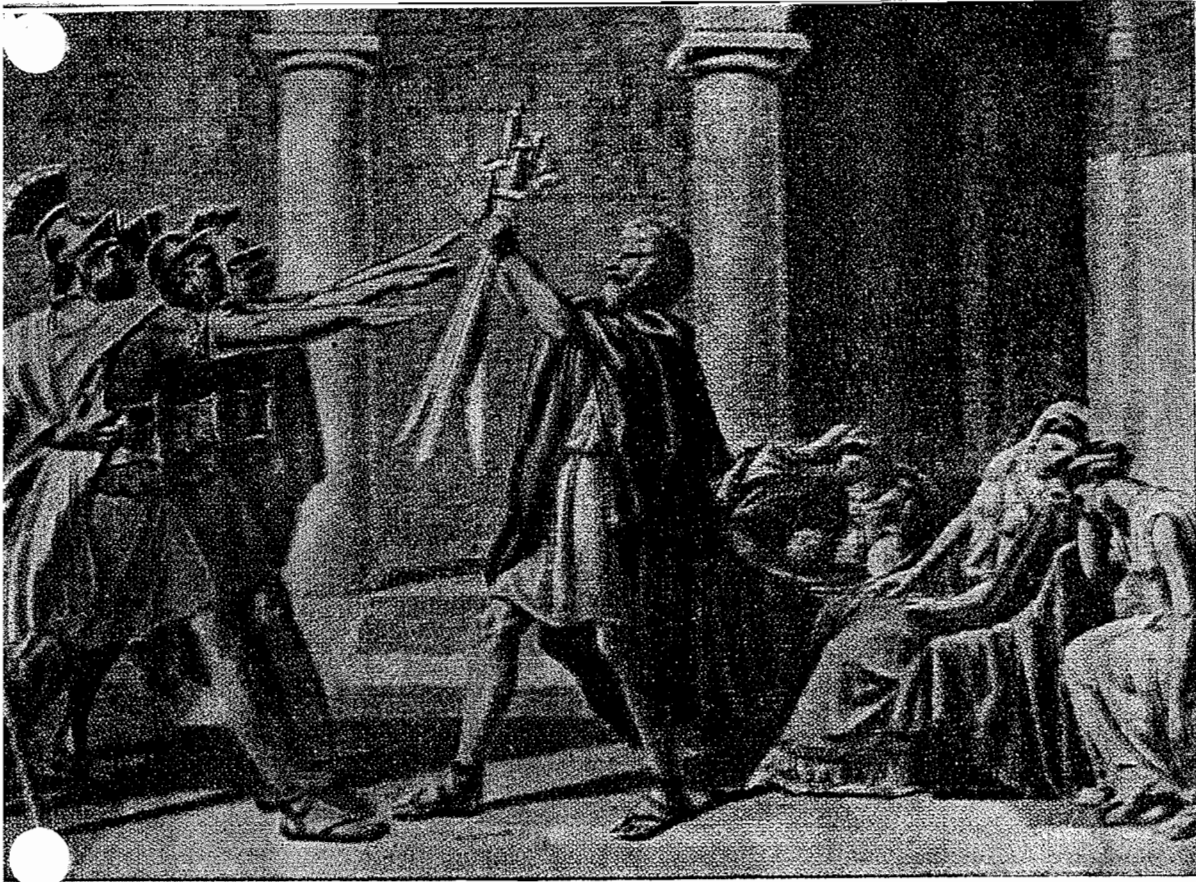
**The Horatii Given Swords by Their Father.** Note the contrast be-
tween the eagerness of the Horatii and the grief of their wives.

10   "Bonum est," respondit Tullus, "id agēmus."

    Rōmānī trēs frātrēs Horātiōs et Albānī trēs frātrēs
Cūriātiōs lēgērunt. Pater Horātiōrum fīliīs novōs gladiōs
dedit.

    Horātiī quidem in amīcitiā cum Cūriātiīs semper fuē-
15 runt, sed et Horātiī et Cūriātiī animum habēbant et prō
patriīs pugnāre in animō habēbant.

    In medium igitur agrum longum lātumque properant
et nūntiī mīlitēs quoque celeriter convenīre iubent. Et
Rōmānī et Albānī prope agrum statim conveniunt,
20 Rōmānī prō suīs castrīs, Albānī prō suīs. Cūnctī pugnam
spectābant et victōriam exspectābant. Dux signum dat.
Mox trēs Rōmānī frātrēs trēs Albānōs armīs vulnerant.[1]

[1] wound.

284

Rōmānī clām
duōs Rōmān(
mīlitēs Albār
statim bis cl
Victōria est r
  Tum mīlit
Rōmānīs "nō
nōrum erant
  Nunc ūnus
et per agrui
Rōmānī mag
tiī," Rōmānī
iam quidem i
possumus. S
  Rōmānī c
runt. Horāt
bānōs vulnei
pugnāre pot
mox necāvit
  "Victōria
tōria est nos
  Albānī su
Rōmānī laet
  Tum mīlitēs
oppidum Rō
  Uxōrēs et
runt ad port
dēbant ubi
vēnērunt, a
vērunt et R
Rōmae serv

[1] wounded.

Rōmānī clāmant et virōs suōs laudant. Tum trēs Albānī duōs Rōmānōs necant. Nōn iam clāmant Rōmānī. Nunc mīlitēs Albānī laetī dē victōriā sē iactābant et Rōmānīs 25 statim bis clāmābant, "Vestrum perīculum est magnum. Victōria est nostra."

Tum mīlitibus suīs, "Duōs Cūriātiōs," inquit ūnus ex Rōmānīs "nōn necāvērunt nostrī mīlitēs." Cōpiae Rōmānōrum erant miserae. 30

Nunc ūnus Rōmānus, Horātius, ab Cūriātiīs properāvit et per agrum in fugam sē dabat. Clāmant Cūriātiī. Rōmānī magnō cum dolōre pugnam spectābant. "Cūriātiī," Rōmānī nūntiābant, "ūnum Rōmānum relīquērunt et iam quidem in fugam sē dat neque eī ūllum auxilium dare 35 possumus. Sī nōn pugnābit, Albānī victōrēs erunt."

Rōmānī causam fugae animīs vidēre nōn etiam potuērunt. Horātius ūnus nōn timēbat, sed suā fugā trēs Albānōs vulnerātōs[1] separābat[2]. Tum Cūriātiōs singulōs[3] pugnāre poterat. Ūnus vir igitur singulōs[3] trēs Cūriātiōs 40 mox necāvit.

"Victōria est nostra," Rōmānī bis clāmāvērunt, "Victōria est nostra. Nōbīscum vōs habitābitis."

Albānī sunt miserī quod[4] Rōmānī eōs regent, sed Rōmānī laetī sunt quod Albānōs sēcum habitāre volunt. 45 Tum mīlitēs Rōmānī Albānōs miserōs relīquērunt et ad oppidum Rōmam properābant.

Uxōrēs et sorōrēs et fīliae eōrum ubi iam mīlitēs audīvērunt ad portās properāvērunt, quās Rōmānī semper claudēbant ubi mīlitēs oppidum relīquērunt. Ubi ē portīs 50 vēnērunt, ad mīlitēs properāvērunt et dē victōriā clāmāvērunt et Rōmānum ēgregium laudāvērunt quī glōriam Rōmae servāvit. Rēx fēminās laetās remīsit et victōrem

---

[1] wounded.    [2] separated.    [3] one by one.    [4] because.

285

*Sacrifice in Front of the Temple of Jupiter Capitolinus*

per p
nam

Iar
oppic
Ubi ¿
et po
Mult
lēgēs
vītā

Po
dēlēg
erat
virōs
pugn
Sed
iniūr
dīmī
Rōm
appe
aber

R
quin
Is fu
ex s
erat

V
vēn
sign
orbi
et l
ling

⁵

⁹ See

per portās in oppidum perdūxit. Victōrī praemia rēx dat; nam nōmen populī Rōmānī dēfendit et Rōmam servāvit. 55

Iam Albānī oppidum Albam relīquērunt et cūnctī ad oppidum Rōmam prope rīpam flūminis Tiberis vēnērunt. Ubi ad oppidum pervēnērunt, casās novās aedificāvērunt et populī duōrum oppidōrum in ūnō (oppidō) habitābant. Multōs annōs Tullus Hostilius et Albānīs et Rōmānīs 60 lēgēs scrībēbat et negōtium pūblicum agēbat. Tum ē vītā cessit.

Posteā senātōrēs populusque Ancum Mārcium rēgem dēlēgērunt, nam natūram eius amābant. Is bonus rēx erat atque rēgīnam bonam habēbat. Ancus Mārcius malōs 65 virōs ē rēgnō pepulit. Sed neque oppugnāre neque ex-pugnāre oppida neque cum mīlitibus pugnāre dēsīderābat. Sed saepe populī quī prope Rōmam habitābant propter iniūriam suam eum pugnāre cōgēbant. Tum mīlitēs suōs dīmīsit et Rōmam dēfendit. Etiam oppidum, portum[14] 70 Rōmae, prope flūmen Tiberim aedificāvit quod Ōstiam[5] appellāvit. Oppidum Ōstia[5] ab oppidō Rōmā nōn longē[6] aberat.

Rōmānī ubi Ancus Mārcius ē vītā cessit Lūciō Tar-quiniō Prīscō rēgnum dedērunt. Is quoque rēx bonus erat. 75 Is fundāmenta[7] templī Iovis in Capitōlīnō quod est ūnum ex septem montibus[8] Rōmae aedificāvit ubi arx Rōmulī erat.

Virī quī fundāmenta[7] aedificābant caput hominis in-vēnērunt. Augurēs[9] bis dīxērunt, "Id caput est bonum 80 signum. Mox hominēs appellābunt Rōmam 'caput' orbis[10] terrārum." Aedificium novum igitur Capitōlium et locum Capitōlīnum dē capite appellāvērunt. (Nostra lingua nōmen "capitol" dē Capitōliō habet.)

---

[5] See Chapter XV, **Dē Ōstiā.**     [6] far.     [7] foundations.     [8] hills.
[9] See sec. e of this chapter.     [10] + **terra** = world.     [14] port.
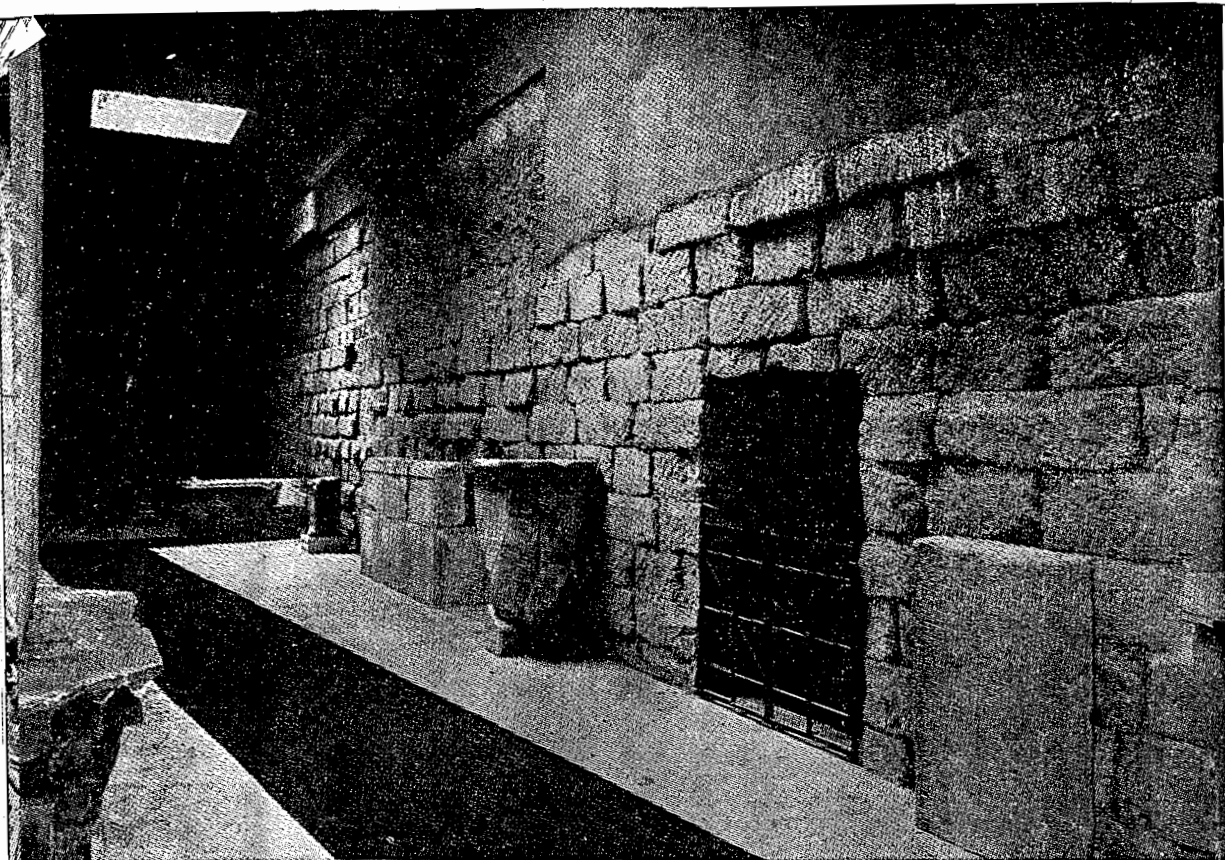
*Temple of Jupiter Capitolinus.* Part of the substructure wall inside the foundation.

85  Tarquinius numerum senātōrum duplicāvit[11]; circum aedificāvit quem posteā Rōmānī Circum Maximum appellāvērunt. In eō locō lūdōs habēbant; nam Rōmānīs lūdī grātī erant; nōn paucī in circum sē cōgēbant et lūdōs spectābant. Vīcit is etiam armīs Sabīnōs; prīmusque[12]
90 triumphum ēgit. Mūrōs novōs quoque aedificāvit et magnam cloācam[13]. Ea cloāca[13] suās aquās in flūmen Tiberim mittēbat. Cavum cloācae[13] erat magnum; nāvigia igitur ē flūmine in cloācam[13] auxiliō ventī nāvigāre poterant, et Rōmānī eam Cloācam[13] Maximam appellāvērunt.
95  Potestisne fābulam dē Rōmulō, prīmō rēge Rōmae, et dē tempestāte horribilī nārrāre?

---

[11] doubled.   [12] he was the first to.   [13] sewer.
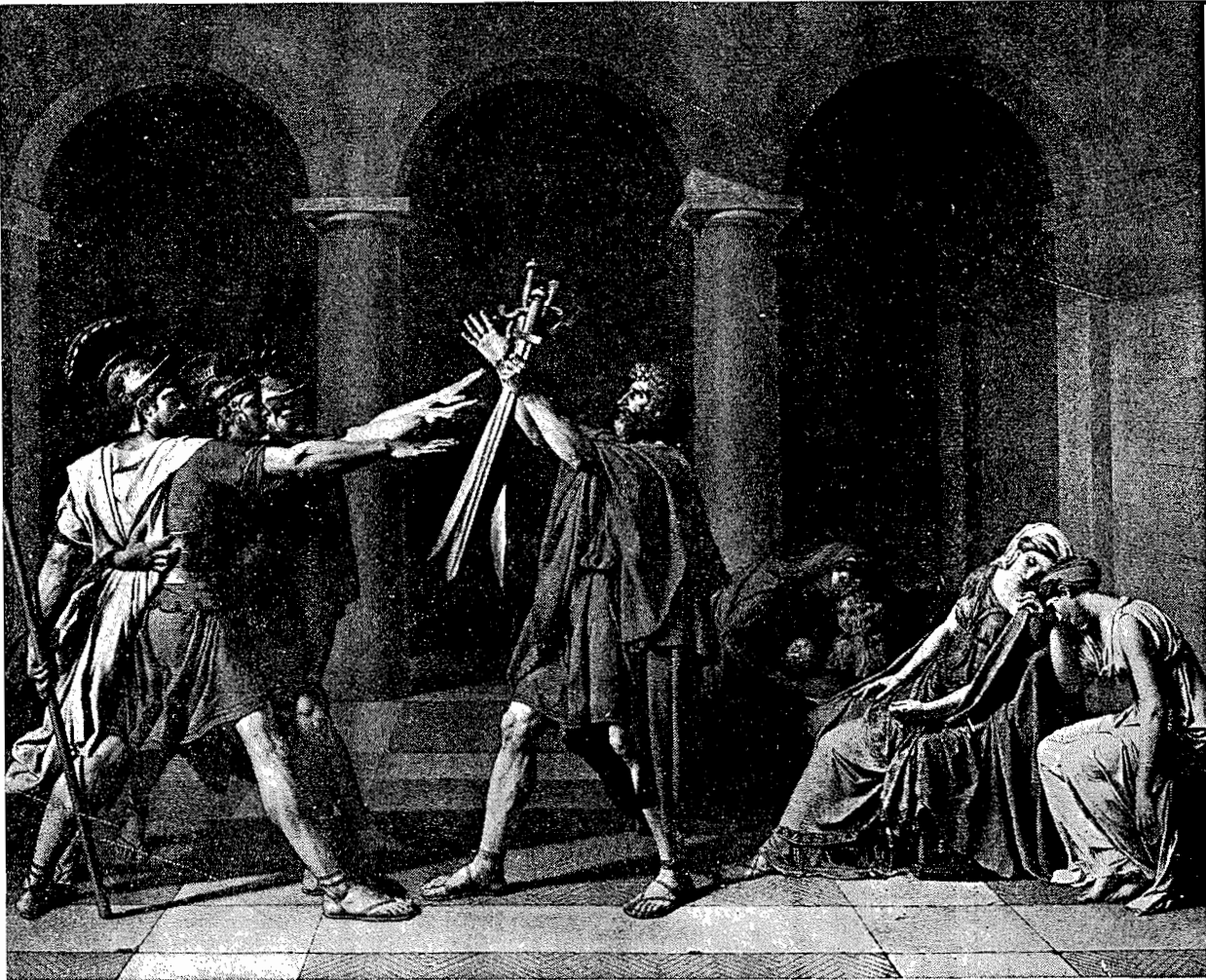
Painting by Jacques Louis David

**The Oath of the Horatii**

# LESSON FIFTY-ONE

*"*

## The Fifth Declension

===== PRELIMINARY REMARKS =====

You have now mastered the forms of four declensions of nouns and three declensions of adjectives. As the fourth declension of nouns is least familiar to you, review this carefully. Observe in the story the use of nouns which have forms of still another declension, the fifth.

### THE PROPOSAL OF THE BROTHERS HORATIUS

Sunt tempora aestīva.[1] Nōn jam Cornēlia ac līberī in urbe sunt. Ē domō[2] suā urbānā[3] ad vīllam rūsticam[4] in collibus Albānīs vēnērunt. Ibi per aestātem cum multīs familiīs

[ 376 ]

LAR

Rōmānīs manēbunt. Herī per viam Appiam, nōbilissimam
viam Rōmānam, merīdiē [1] iter ad vīllam fēcērunt. In viā 5
Appiā, inter alia[5] spectācula, multa sepulchra[6] virōrum ēgre-
giōrum vīdērunt. Fābulās multās dē hīs virīs Cornēlia līberīs
suīs nārrāvit. Nōtissima erant sepulchra Horātiōrum[7] ac Cūriā-
tiōrum.[8] Cupitisne fābulam audīre quam Cornēlia līberīs dē
hīs virīs nārrāvit? 10

Postquam oppidum novum, quod Rōma appellātum est, in
flūminis Tiberis rīpīs mūnītum est, multōs annōs imperium
in manibus rēgum permānsit. Hōrum rēgum prīmus erat
Rōmulus, Numa Pompilius secundus, Tullus Hostilius tertius.
Dum rēgnum ā Tullō possidētur, bellum grave inter Rōmānōs 15
et Albānōs, vīcīnōs Rōmānōrum, gerēbātur.

Erant forte in exercitū Rōmānō trēs frātrēs prūdentiōrēs
quam aliī mīlitēs, quī Horātiī appellābantur. Erant apud Al-
bānōs trēs similēs, virtūtis singulāris, quī Cūriātiī appellāban-
tur. Postquam vērō Rōmānī cum hostibus in aciē [1] diū at- 20
que ācriter pugnāvērunt, ūnus ex Horātiīs sociīs hoc cōnsilium
prōposuit. "Rēs difficillima erit Albānōs brevī tempore su-
perāre. Neque hostēs sine vulneribus gravibus et morte mul-
tōrum post multōs diēs vincentur. Sī autem eam rem quam
prōpōnam vōs atque ducēs Albānōrum nōbīs permittētis, bellum 25
exitū bonō, ut putō, paucīs diēbus facillimē fīniētur. Ego enim
et frātrēs meī prō cēterīs mīlitibus nostrīs cum tribus hostibus,
Cūriātiīs, pugnāre cupimus. Hōc modō proelium ā paucīs,
nōn ā multitūdine mīlitum, gerētur et mors multōrum prohib-
ēbitur. Ubi victōria erit, ibi erit imperium, sī ā vōbīs et 30
ducibus hostium hae condiciōnēs accipientur. Permittite nōbīs
bellum paucīs diēbus fīnīre."

[NOTES] 1. *tempora aestīva*, the summer season. 2. *domō*, ablative case
with second-declension ending. Note the simple ablative of place from
which. 3. *urbānus, -a, -um*, city. 4. *rūsticus, -a, -um*, country. 5. *alius, -a,
-ud*, other. 6. *sepulchrum, -ī (n.)*, tomb. 7. *Horātiī, -ōrum (m. pl.)*, the
Horatii. 8. *Cūriātiī, -ōrum, (m. pl.)*, the Curiatii.

Horatius carries out his clever plan

# LESSON FIFTY-TWO

*"*

## The Dative Used with Special Verbs

### HOW THE HORATII DEFEATED THE CURIATII

Diū prīncipēs Rōmānōrum et Albānōrum verba Horātī sēcum volvērunt.[1]  Hoc cōnsilium enim nōbilissimum esse sed etiam difficilius vidēbātur [1].  Tandem autem et Rōmānī et Albānī

[ 382 ]

condiciōnēs hujus pugnae novae accēpērunt. Dum prīncipēs
mīlitibus suīs hās condiciōnēs quae sibi prōpositae erant 5
ēnūntiant, illī sex virī, trēs Horātiī atque trēs Cūriatiī, arma
cēpērunt. Tum in medium spatium inter duōs populōs con-
tendērunt. Interim omnēs amīcī ac sociī eōrum in campō sē
coēgerant et pugnam spectāre parāverant.

Brevissimō tempore prīncipēs duōrum exercituum signum 10
dedērunt. Tum illī sex virī in campō lātō ācerrimē pugnāre
coepērunt. Statim duo ex Horātiīs gladiīs Cūriātiōrum inter-
ficiuntur. Manet ūnus Horātius, sōla spēs Rōmānōrum. Ille
vērō integer erat; trēs Cūriātiī vulnerātī erant. Dum cōpiae
Albānōrum gaudiō clāmant, animī Rōmānōrum timōre etiam 15
graviōre commoventur. Albānī enim virtūtī [2] trium mīlitum
suōrum cōnfīdēbant et victōriam certam esse putāvērunt [1].

Quamquam ille Horātius quī relictus est tribus hostibus pār
nōn erat, eīs singulīs[2] tamen pār erat; nam animō alacer et pedi-
bus celer erat. Itaque in fugam sē dedit. Celerrimē Horātius 20
fūgit, post quem trēs Cūriātiī vēnērunt sed magnīs intervāllīs[3]
quod illī vulnerātī celeritāte nōn erant parēs. Postquam autem
longum spatium discessit, subitō sē vertit et prīmum Cūriātium
interfēcit. Statim secundus aderat, quem quoque Horātius
facillimē superāvit. Rōmānī laetissimē clamāvērunt quod 25
ūnus hostis sōlus mānsit. Cūriātius contrā Rōmānum sē dē-
fendere nōn potuit. Ā Rōmānō, alacrī ob victōriās recentēs,
interfectus est. Itaque Horātius in campō victor mānsit et
cīvitās Albānōrum sub potestātem Rōmae redācta est.

[NOTES] 1. *sēcum volvērunt*, considered together. 2. *singulī, -ae, -a*,
separate, one at a time. 3. *magnīs intervāllīs*, at great intervals.

## GRAMMAR NOTES
[*Accusative Subject of Infinitive.*]
**1.** The infinitive with accusative as subject is used as object of
verbs which express an idea of saying, thinking, perceiving, or feeling.

[*The Dative with Special Verbs.*]
**2.** Certain Latin verbs that are transitive in English take an indirect
instead of a direct object; but the dative is translated as if it were the

## ᴀPPIUS CLAUDIUS

Ōlim erat vir Rōmānus, Appius Claudius nōmine. Magnum et longum aquaeductum aedificāvit. Rōmānī aquaeductum ab nōmine Appī appellāvērunt. Aquaeductus bonam aquam in urbem Rōmam portāvit.

Appius Claudius etiam longam et bonam viam ad Capuam oppidum Ītaliae, aedificāvit. Rōmānī viam "Appiam" appellāvērunt. Erant multae aliae viae in Ītaliā sed Via Appia praecipuē clāra erat.

In Viā Appiā multī Rōmānī ambulābant. Agricolae frūmentum portābant et amīcōs salūtābant. Inter fēminās et virōs erant puerī et puellae; cum amīcīs in viā clāmābant. Magnus numerus agricolārum in vīllīs prope Viam Appiam habitābat. Diū labōrābant, et multum frūmentum carrīs ad vīllās portābant. Vīta agricolārum erat bona.

Appius Claudius patriam amābat et cum hostibus Rōmānōrum semper pugnābat. Via et aquaeductus in Ītaliā hodiē manent.

J   early 500's

# CHAPTER XXV

## I.  SERVIUS TULLIUS ET TARQUI[]

Tarquinius Prīscus ē vītā cessit,
vēnit quae eum ad caelum[1] portāvit.  Ubi ē vītā cessit
populus Rōmānus Servium Tullium rēgem dēlēgit.  Servius
Tullius fīlius fēminae nōbilis, captīvae tamen et servae,
5 erat.  Multōs annōs in familiā Tarquinī Prīscī, rēgis,
habitābat servus.  Uxor tamen Tarquinī puerum amābat;
cum fīliīs igitur rēgis lūdere poterat.  Ōlim[2], ubi uxor
Tarquinī puerum parvum spectābat, in capite eius flam-
mam[3] vīdit.  Augurēs bis dīxērunt, "Id est bonum signum.
10 Servius Tullius Rōmam reget."

Servius Tullius erat rēx bonus.  Is quoque Sabīnōs vīcit.
Populō multās bonās lēgēs scrīpsit; servīs quidem auxil-
ium dedit.  Duās fīliās habēbat.  Ūnam ex[4] eīs fīliābus
Tarquiniō Superbō, fīliō Tarquinī Prīscī et frātrī suae
15 uxōris, dedit sed eam Superbus nōn amābat.  Puellam
igitur necāvit et eius sorōrem in[5] mātrimōnium[5] dūxit[5].
Tarquinius Superbus malus vir erat et posteā bonum
patrem suae uxōris necāvit.

Tum Tarquinius Superbus erat rēx.  Malus rēx sed
20 tamen bonus dux pugnārum erat.  Multās cōpiās in fugam
dedit et multōs populōs vīcit et multa oppida expugnāvit.
Sed senātum cōnsilium ūllum et auxilium nōn rogāvit.

Ōlim[2] fēmina ignōta ad Tarquinium Superbum novem[6]
librōs portāvit.  Nūntiāvit: "Eōs librōs tibi vēndere[7] volō."
25  Tarquinius bis rogāvit: "Quid est pretium[8]?"

Fēmina ignōta magnam cōpiam pecūniae dīxit, sed rēx

---

[1] heaven.　　[2] once.　　[3] flame.　　[4] ē or **ex** following a number is best expressed
in English, by, of.　　[5] marry.　　[6] nine.　　[7] sell.　　[8] price.

302

LWR

fēminam lūsit et dīxit: "Prō
eīs librīs magnam cōpiam
pecūniae nōn dabō. Eōs
emere nōn volō."                    30

Tum fēmina discessit et
trēs ē[4] novem[6] librīs dēlēvit.
Iterum ad rēgem vēnit et
sēcum sex librōs portābat.
"Quid," rēx rogāvit, "est 35
pretium[8] eōrum sex librō-
rum?"

Tum ea, "Prō eīs sex
librīs," respondit "pretium[8]
est idem[9] quod prō novem[6] 40
librīs dīxī."

Sed Tarquinius, "Nōn,"
iterum inquit, "prō librīs tuīs
magnam cōpiam pecūniae
dabō. Eōs nōn emam."          45

Iterum discessit et trēs ē[4]
sex librīs dēlēvit. Posteā



*Cumaean Sibyl.* Michelangelo's painting from Sistine Chapel at Rome.

tamen rēx auguribus dē fēminā ignōtā et librīs nārrāvit.
Augurēs nūntiāvērunt: "Ea fēmina est Sibylla. Eī librī
dīvīna ōrācula dē fortūnīs populī Rōmānī continent."      50

Rēx sibi, "Iam," inquit, "librōs dēsīderō sed fēmina ab
oppidō Rōmā abest."

Sed mox iterum fēmina venit et rēx est laetus. Trēs
librōs quōs nōn dēlēvit ad eum portat sed pretium[8] novem[6]
librōrum vult. Iam rēx fēminam nōn lūdit sed statim eī 55
pecūniam dat quam dēsīderāvit et librōs emit. Sibylla
discessit neque umquam posteā Rōmānī eam vīdērunt.
Eōs Rōmānī librōs Sibyllīnōs appellābant et in templō

[4] ē or **ex** following a number is best expressed in English by *of*.      [6] nine.
[8] price.      [9] same.

303

Iovis quod est in Capitōlīnō tenēbant. Mediīs in perīculīs
60 ad templum Rōmānī posteā saepe properābant et augurēs
auxilium cōnsiliumque rogābant. Augurēs dīxērunt: "Eī
librī multa et dīvīna ōrācula continent et in eīs bonum
cōnsilium semper invenīmus."

Malus homō nōn est laetus. Tarquinius perīculum
65 semper timēbat. Paucōs amīcōs habēbat. Magnus nume-
rus Rōmānōrum ē rēgnō eum pellere dēsīderābat, nam
pugnāre grātum nōn iam erat. Sed nōn habēbant ūllum
ducem quī cōpiās rēgis in fugam dare atque eōs ad vic-
tōriam perdūcere poterat. Sed mox invēnērunt virum
70 cuius nōmen Brūtus erat. Brūtus propter iniūriās rēgis et
eius fīliōrum saepe labōrābat. Eum igitur auxilium
rogāvērunt.

Populus Brūtum ducem dēlēgit. Ubi rēx mūrōs Ardeae
oppugnābat, Brūtus arma et virōs in oppidum Rōmam
75 cōgēbat. Tum dux novus uxōrem, fīliās, amīcōs rēgis ex
oppidō dīmīsit. Posteā mīlitibus dīxit: "Mox rēx dē suō
perīculō audiet et cōpiās ex mūrīs Ardeae ad oppidum
Rōmam dūcet. Sī portās claudēmus rēgem continēbimus
et pellēmus in exsilium." Mīlitēs quī in castrīs erant quae
80 prope flūmen erant mūrōs dēfendēbant et tenēbant. Ex
mūrīs lātīs spectābant et ubi rēgem eius fīliumque vidēre
poterant portās clausērunt. Tum rēx in fugam sē dedit et
nāvigiō quod ventus ēgit in terram Etrūscōrum pervēnit.
Cōpiae Rōmānae quās rēx ex oppidō Ardeā dūcēbat rēgem
85 relīquērunt et Brūtō auxilium dedērunt.

Populus Rōmānus dīxit: "Rēgem nōn iterum habēbi-
mus. Duo virī prō ūnō rēge nōs regent." Iam populus
Rōmānus Brūtō praemium dedit. Eum dēlēgērunt ūnum
ex[4] duōbus virīs, quōs cōnsulēs appellābant. Alter[10] cōnsul
90 Publius Valerius erat.

---

[4] ē or **ex** following a number is best expressed in English by *of*.     [10] other.

304

## *Supplementary Story*

### TARQUIN AND THE SIBYL (PART 1)

Ecce![1] Aliam[2] fābulam legētis quam mātrōnae Rōmānae puerīs puellīsque Rōmānīs saepe nārrābant. Haec fābula dē Tarquiniō[3] nārrātur, rēge septimō Rōmae. Attendite et vōbīs fābulam nārrābō.

5 Ōlim ad Tarquinium Superbum,[4] septimum et ultimum[5] rēgem Rōmae appropinquāvit fēmina senex.[6] Ab eā novem librī portābantur. Hōs librōs rēgī ostendit et "Hī librī, ō rēx," ēnūntiāvit, "sunt divīna ōrācula.[7] Da mihi satis pecūniae et tibi hōs librōs trādam. Nōnne eōs cupis?" Tum ille, postquam
10 librōs spectāvit, "Quantum est pretium?"[8] rogāvit. Tum fēmina pretium magnum prō novem librīs quaesīvit. Eī autem Tarquinius, "Illōs librōs ā tē nōn accipiam," respondit, "quod pretium nōn est aequum. Librōs tuōs cape ac discēde. Valē!" Tum illa senex quidem sine morā discessit et trēs ex novem
15 librīs exussit.[9] Post paucōs diēs[10] senex iterum ad rēgem vēnit et quaesīvit, "Nōnne tū hōs sex librōs jam accipere cupis?" "Quantum," rēx quaesīvit, "hodiē est pretium hōrum sex librōrum?" Tum illa, "Idem[11] pretium," respondit, "hodiē petō quod anteā petītum est." Sed rūrsus Tarquinius, "Minimē,"
20 inquit, "prō librīs tūis tantum pretium dabō. Tē tuōsque librōs ē rēgnō meō celeriter removē." Et ille rīsit.[12]

[NOTES] 1. *Ecce,* Look! 2. *alius, -a, -ud,* another. 3. *Tarquinius, -ī (m.),* Tarquin. 4. *Superbus, -a, -um,* the proud. 5. *ultimus, -a, -um,* last. 6. *senex,* old, aged. 7. *divīna ōrācula,* holy prophecies (*nom.*). 8. *pretium, -ī (n.),* price. 9. *exūrō, -ere, -ussī,* burn up. 10. *diēs,* days (*acc.*). 11. *idem,* the same (*acc. neuter*). 12. *rīdeō, -ēre, rīsī,* laugh.

**II**

Can you answer these questions on the story?

1. What does this story tell about? 2. Who was Tarquin? 3. How were the books first brought to Tarquin's attention? 4. How did he treat the old woman's offer? 5. What did she then do? 6. What was her second offer? 7. How did Tarquin treat this?

The Sibyl offers her books to King Tarquin

*Supplementary Story*

## TARQUIN AND THE SIBYL (PART 2)

Quid tum illa senex fēcit? Quaeritisne? Ego vōbīs nārrābō.

Ubi Tarquinius librōs emere[1] iterum recūsāvit[2] et eam rīsit, fēmina rūrsus[3] discessit et trēs ex sex librīs reliquīs exussit. Cum autem hōc tempore discessit, amīcī Tarquinī, quī illam vīderant 5 et audīverant, rēgī ita dīxērunt: "Illa fēmina est Sibylla[4] nōta. Librōs ejus emere dēbēs. Nam hī librī multa dē fortūnīs populī Rōmānī nārrant. Sī eōs emēs, tibi atque nōbīs praesidium dabunt."

Mox fēmina rūrsus adfuit et prō reliquīs librīs idem[5] pre- 10 tium petīvit. Hōc tempore autem rēx illam nōn rīdēbat, nam verba amīcōrum eum mōverant. Itaque fēminae pecūniam

[ 312 ]

LAR

# LI

Septimus et ultimus[1] rēx Rōmae fuit Tarquinius Superbus, quem populus Rōmānus nōn amābat.

Ōlim Rēx Tarquinius fēminam sōlam prō rēgiā vīdit. Ea rēgiam spectābat.

Rēx sibi dīxit, "Quis est illa fēmina?" 5

Vesperī eadem fēmina in rēgiā subitō appāruit. Jam novem librōs rēgī mōnstrāvit, prō quibus magnum pretium postulāvit.

Rīsit rēx. "Librī tuī sunt pretiōsiōrēs!" clāmāvit. "Tibi tantum pretium nōn dabō." 10

Statim fēmina trēs° librōs dēlēvit et ē rēgiā properāvit.

Postrīdiē iterum in rēgiam vēnit et rēgī sex librōs mōnstrāvit et dīxit, "Dā mihi pretium novem librōrum; tibi reliquōs dabō librōs."

Tarquinius iterum rīsit; iterum fēmina īrātissima trēs 15 librōs dēlēvit et discessit.

Tertiō diē° revēnit. Trēs librōs mōnstrāvit. "Ecce reliquī librī!" inquit. "Aut dabis mihi idem pretium aut trēs hōs librōs quoque jam dēlēbō."

Rēx sibi dīxit, "Dī eam mīsērunt. Īnfēlīx malumque 20 jūdicium fēcī."

Itaque fēminae pretium novem librōrum dedit et trēs librōs pretiōsissimōs accēpit.

Fēmina erat Sibylla; librī erant Sibyllīnī. Librōs, quī arcāna° multa mōnstrābant, Rōmānī sub ārā templī in arcā 25 aureā posuērunt. Posteā illī librī Rōmam saepe ex perīculō servābant.

## Brutus, the First Roman Consul

Rōma ā rēge inīquō multōs annōs regēbātur. Hic rēx appellātus est L. Tarquinius Superbus. Vī (*By force*) rēgnum occupāverat et vī rēgnum administrāvit. Multī cīvēs Rōmānī ab illō aut ex urbe expulsī sunt aut interfectī sunt. Omnēs fīliī sorōris Tarquiniae occīsī sunt quod eōs timuit. Ūnus puer, nōmine Jūnius, stultitiam (*foolishness*) simulāvit ac sē ā morte servāvit. Propter hoc Brūtus appellātus est.

Malus rēx nōn erat laetus. Amīcōs fīdōs nōn habēbat et perīculum semper timēbat. Eum omnī tempore cūstōdīrī ā mīlitibus suīs necesse erat. Māgnus numerus cīvium eum expellī ā rēgnō cupīvit, sed dux bonus invenīrī nōn potuit. Tandem virum quī (*who*) cōpiās rēgis in fugam dare (*put to flight*) poterat invēnērunt. Dux erat Jūnius Brūtus quī multōs annōs stultitiam simulāverat.

Lūcius Tarquinius erat malus, sed fīlius ējus, nōmine Sextus, erat pējor quam (*worse than*) rēx ipse. Is maleficia horribilia semper committēbat. Propter eum Lūcrētia, domina Rōmāna, sē occīdit. Brūtus aderat et patrī et conjugī (*husband*) ējus jūrāvit (*swore*): "Audīte mē! Lūcium Tarquinium cum uxōre et omnibus līberīs ex urbe Rōmā agam. Numquam Tarquinius Rōmae iterum rēgnābit!"

Brūtus dux ā populō Rōmānō dēlectus est. Rēgīnam, similem nātūrā rēgī, ex urbe expulsit. Cum illā erant fīliae ējus et amīcī rēgis. Tum rēx mūrōs Ardeae oppūgnābat, et ubi nūntium dē perīculō suō accēpit, cōpiās ex Ardeā ad urbem Rōmam dūxit. Mīlitēs dē mūrīs Rōmānīs exspectābant, et ubi rēx et fīliī ējus vīsī sunt, portae urbis clausae sunt (*were closed*). Tum rēx malus in Etrūriam fūgit et Sextus ab inimīcīs interfectus est.

Sīc rēgēs Rōmā expulsī sunt. Duo cōnsulēs creātī sunt, Lūcius Jūnius Brūtus et Tarquinius Collātīnus. Tamen pars populī novum rēgnum neque amābat neque laudābat. Paucī Tarquinium iterum rēgem esse cupīvērunt. Inter eōs ipsī fīliī Brūtī cōnsulis erant. Contrā cōnsulēs conjūrāvērunt (*conspired*) et rēgem in urbem nocte dūcere statuērunt. Servus cōnsilia eōrum audīvit et Brūtō cōnsulī omnia haec narrāvit. Ille omnēs cīvēs quī hoc cōnsilium cēperant gladiō statim interficī jūssit.

Prīmō Brūtus suōs fīliōs inter conjūrātōs (*conspirators*) nōn sēnsit, sed tandem eōs vīdit. Ubi puerī patrem auxilium rogāvērunt, eīs veniam (*pardon*) negāvit. "Mihi fīliī meī cārī sunt," inquit (*he said*), "sed lībertās patriae meae cārior (*dearer*) est." Rōmānī patrem propter lībertātis et patriae amōrem (*love*) laudāvērunt.

# CHAPTER XXIX

1. ### BRŪTUS ET HORĀTIUS

Propter eius ēgregium animum Brūtus cōnsul in grātiam multōrum Rōmānōrum veniēbat. Parva tamen pars populī amīcitiam cum rēge Tarquiniō, frātre malō uxōris Servī Tullī, etiam habēbat. In urbe erant paucī malī quī novum rēgnum neque amābant neque laudābant et quī 5 Tarquinium iterum rēgem esse dēsīderābant. Auxilium igitur Tarquiniō dedērunt ubi lēgātōs ad eōs mīsit. In eōrum numerō erant duo fīliī Brūtī. Eōrum cōnsilia servus audīvit et Brūtō nārrāvit. Dolor Brūtī magnus erat, nam fīliōs amābat. Ubi puerī dē servō audīvērunt, 10 statim patrem auxilium rogāvērunt, sed propter eōrum iniūriās neque auxilium ūllum dare neque eōs servāre poterat, nam officium cōnsulis erat hostēs Rōmae necāre. Brūtus igitur mīlitēs iussit suōs fīliōs necāre. Quid dē eō exemplō animī Rōmānī dīcis? 15

Posteā Tarquinius et amīcī eius ad urbēs Etrūriae quae prope mare sunt, ubi virī nāvigia auxiliō ventī nāvigant accessērunt et auxilium rogāvērunt. Veiī[1] eīs mīlitēs dedērunt et mox Rōmam iterum oppugnābant. In eā pugnā fīlius rēgis Brūtum ducem Rōmānum necāvit sed 20 Rōmānī tamen ex eā pugnā victōrēs discessērunt.

Nunc ūnus cōnsul Publius Valerius regēbat. Tum Rōmānī dēlēgērunt novum cōnsulem sed mox ē vītā cessit. Publius Valerius ūnus cōnsul iterum erat. Bonus vir erat et populō quī eum amābat lēgēs bonās scrībēbat. 25

---

[1] **Veiī, -ōrum,** m., pl., a city of the Etruscans.

313

*L. Junius Brutus, Founder of the Roman Republic*

Libenter nōn pugnābat, sed Rōmam dēfendere erat eius officium; Tarquinius igitur rēx, sī in urbem Rō-
30 mam cōpiās iterum perdū-cet, Valerium pugnāre cōget.

Nunc Tarquinius rēx nūntium ad Porsenam rē-
35 gem Clūsī, quae urbs Etrūriae prope mare nōn est dīmīsit et cibum[9] ēmit et auxilium rogāvit. Sta-tim Etrūscus Porsena lae-
40 tus magnās cōpiās coēgit et mox mīlitēs duōrum rē-gum ad urbem Rōmam discēdēbant.

Ignōta fēmina cōnsulibus dē Porsenā nūntiāvit et is
45 nūntius Rōmānōs terrēbat; nam etiam nōmen Porsenam populus timēbat. Rōma magnō in perīculō erat; nam Etrūscī celeriter prōcēdēbant. Iam ad arcem perveniunt quam Rōmānī in Iāniculō, monte[2] Rōmae aedificāvērunt. Mox id expugnāvērunt, et pars hostium ad pontem quī in
50 urbem Rōmam dūcit accēdit. Mīlitēs pontem nōn iam dēfendēbant. Cūnctī quī in agrīs lātīs erant in urbem sē in fugam dabant et frūmentum sēcum portābant, ubi Rōmānus, cuius nōmen erat Horātius, clāmāvit, "Cūr vōs in fugam datis? Sī pontem relinquētis, hostēs mox in
55 urbem Rōmam venient. Sī vōs pontem dēlēbitis, ego vōs dēfendam et nōs urbem nostram servābimus. Ā ponte, ad quem mīlitēs nunc accēdunt, gladiō meō hostēs pellam."

Statim duo ēgregiī mīlitēs, quōrum animus erat magnus,

[2] hill.    [9] food.

314

**Gold Fibula.** *This pin, found in an Etruscan tomb, is ornamented in Oriental fashion with rows of lions and griffins—7th Cent. B.C.*

"Nōs quidem quoque," inquiunt, "auxilium dare et pontem dēfendere volumus. Nōs quoque hostēs continē- 60 bimus et Etrūscōs armīs nostrīs necābimus et Rōmam servābimus."

Cum Horātiō igitur ad pontem quī erat prope castra hostium properāvērunt. Tum trēs in capite pontis hostēs quī ad eōs accēdēbant exspectābant et mox magnam 65 partem mīlitum in fugam dabant. In eōs tamen Etrūscī multa tēla[3] iactābant et multōs virōs mittēbant. Trēs ex cōpiīs hostium in parvum pontem prōcessērunt sed statim

---

[3] weapons.

315

trēs Rōmānī eōs necāvērunt. Iterum et iterum sex virī,
70 trēs ex Rōmānīs et trēs ex hostibus pugnābant, sed
Rōmānī semper erant victōrēs et pontem tenēbant.

Hominēs interim[4] quī prope rīpam erant pontem dēlēre
celeriter poterant. Iam pōns tremēbat[5]. Repente Horātius
amīcīs bis clāmāvit, "Pōns mox cadet. Nunc ad rīpam
75 prōcēdere potestis."

Statim duo discessērunt et ad Rōmānōs celeriter vēnē-
runt, sed Horātius pontem nōn relīquit; nam eum dēfen-
dere erat eius officium. Posteā quidem sōlus[6] Horātius
Etrūscōs pugnābat. Ūnus clāmāvit, "Pōns cadet et
80 Horātius necābitur[10]." Tum pōns in aquam cecidit et
Horātius statim sē in flūmen iēcit[7] et celeriter ad rīpam
pervēnit. Hostēs tamen multa tēla[3] iactābant.

Iam laetī erant Rōmānī. Etrūscī etiam magnum ani-
mum Horātī laudābant. Horātiō senātus magnōs agrōs
85 prope mare dedit et in Forō eius statuam posuit[8]. Duōbus
ēgregiīs Rōmānīs quoque, quī cum eō pontem dēfendērunt,
senātus praemia dedit. Etiam nunc parvī puerī Americānī
et eōrum sorōrēs legere possunt eam fābulam quam in
librīs nostrīs saepe vidēmus. Dē Rōmulō quoque et
90 tempestāte legere possunt.

---

[3] weapons.     [4] meanwhile.     [5] shook.     [6] alone.     [7] flung.     [8] placed.
[10] will be killed.

2.                                    VOCABULARY

| pars, partis, (partium) f., 3 | *part, side, direction* |
| urbs, urbis, (urbium) f., 3 | *city* |
| officium, officī, n., 2 | *duty, service* |
| hostis, hostis, (hostium) m., 3 | *enemy (a public enemy)*, usually pl. |
| mare, maris, (marium) n., 3 | *sea* |
| pōns, pontis, (pontium) m., 3 | *bridge* |
| cadō, cadere, cecidī, cāsūrus, 3 | *fall* |
| prō (prefix) | *forth, forward, in front of, for* |

316

**MOST NOUNS ENDING IN -tās AND -tūdō**
are feminine. These nouns have regular case endings, with
**-um** in genitive plural.

**potestās, potestātis** (F.), power

**multitūdō, multitūdinis** (F.), multitude

Similarly, nouns in **-tūs** (gen., **-tūtis**) and **-ūs** (ge~~
are also mostly feminine.

*Horātius defends the city.*

**virtūs, virtūtis** (F.), courage          **salūs, salūtis** (F.), g~~

**I** Add endings (both singular and plural, when sensible) to the
incomplete words, and make necessary changes to suit singular
and plural endings. Translate.

1 Cōnsul labōr- mīlit- castrōrum auxit.
2 Fīdus can- prope pedit- jacēbat.
3 Nūb- ātra fūmī urb- cēlāvit.
4 Multitūdō nautārum īrātōrum cīv- amīca nōn erat.
5 Cum uxōr- senātōr- ad forum properat.
6 Partēs nāv- longae dēlēbimus.

**II** Combine each noun from the numbered list with an adjective
from the lettered list to form a sensible phrase.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1 sorōrēs | 6 mīlitis | a) albī | g) validōrum |
| 2 pācem | 7 uxōre | b) tacitī | h) dūrī |
| 3 nāvibus | 8 corporum | c) altus | i) summae |
| 4 eques | 9 potestātī | d) cārā | j) aeternam |
| 5 mōns | 10 labōrēs | e) geminae | k) pulchrōs |
| | | f) longīs | l) perītus |

# XLVII

## THE TIBER

Flūmen Tiberis dē montibus per urbem Rōmam fluit. Inter-
dum flāvum est quod flāvam arēnam et lutum flāvum dēportat.
Hoc flūmen Jāniculum ā cēterīs regiōnibus Rōmae sēparat.

Hostēs autem fīnitimī flūmen facile trānsīre nōn poterant.
Rōmānī Jāniculum quoque mūrīs validīs mūnīvērunt.          5

UL

Rēx Ancus antīquitus prīmum pontem, Pontem Sublicium,
ex lignō cōnstrūxit. Posteā custōdēs pontem custōdiēbant.
Dē illō ponte Rōmānī hanc fābulam nārrābant.

Ōlim rēx Etrūriae cum Rōmānīs pugnābat. Magnīs cōpiīs
cēpit Jāniculum. Statim ad Pontem Sublicium properāvit; 10
flūmen Tiberim trānsīre in animō habuit.

Permōtī custōdēs fugere incēpērunt, sed Horātius, Rōmā-
nus ēgregius et firmus, clāmāvit, "Dēlēte pontem! Aliter
Rōmam dēfendere nōn poterimus!"

Duo° ex hominibus quidem cum Horātiō firmiter stetērunt, 15
dum aliī cīvēs pontem dēlent. Ubi pōns tremere incēpit, illī
hominēs fūgērunt. Horātius sōlus pontem angustum dēfendit.
Subitō in flūmen pōns cecidit, sed Horātius armātus in
Tiberim dēsiluit, et ad alteram rīpam natāvit ubi cēterī
Rōmānī eum expectābant.                                      20

Jam Rōma tūta erat, quod sine ponte hostēs urbem Rōmam
capere nōn poterant. Hostēs flūmen Tiberim trānsīre nōn
poterant.

°duo* two

| | |
|---|---|
| **lignum, -ī** | N., wood |
| **lutum, -ī** | N., mud, dirt |
| ***custōs, -ōdis** | M., guard, watchman |
| **flūmen, -inis** | N., river |
| **homō, -inis** | M., man, human being |
| ***hostis, -is (-ium)** | M., enemy |
| ***mōns, montis (-ium)** | M., mountain |
| ***pōns, pontis (-ium)** | M., bridge |
| [1]**alter, altera, alterum** | other, the other |
| **flāvus, -a, -um** | yellow |
| **permōtus, -a, -um** | alarmed, moved |
| ***dēportō, -āre, -āvī** | carry away, remove |
| **natō, -āre, -āvī** | swim |
| ***cōnstruō, -ere, -strūxī** | build, construct |
| ***tremō, -ere, -uī** | tremble, quake |
| **dēsiliō, -īre, -uī** | leap down |
| [2]***trānseō, -īre, -iī** | go across, cross over |

[1]The declension of this adjective is irregular; see page 428.

[2]A compound verb (**trāns**+**eō**); for conjugation of **eō** see page 438.

## A One-eyed Hero Saves Rome

Tarquinius, secundō annō postquam ex urbe expulsus est, contrā Rōmānōs bellum gessit. Eī auxilium ā Porsenā rēge Etrūscō datum est. Illō tempore Etrūscī erant hostēs Rōmānōrum, et Porsena cum multīs cōpiīs Rōmam prōcēdēbāt. Rōmānī, quī māgnopere perterritī sunt quod mōns Jāniculum ā Porsenā facile occupātus erat, ex agrīs in urbem fugiēbant. Līberī et fēminae et servī intrā mūrōs ductī sunt.

Inter montem Jāniculum et urbem Rōmam fluēbat Tiberis. Urbs multīs mūrīs et flūmine celerī mūnīta est. In hōc flūmine erat pōns sublicius (*wooden*) quī hostibus iter paene dedit. Pōns autem erat angustus et paucī eōdem tempore trāns eum ambulāre poterant.

Hostēs postquam Jāniculum cēpērunt, celeriter ad flūmen contendērunt. Vir fortis, Horātius Coclēs, quī illō nōmine appellātus est quod in proeliō oculum āmīserat, prīmus māgnum perīculum sēnsit. Coclēs, quī prope caput pontis forte positus erat, māgnā vōce ad sociōs suōs clāmāvit: "Cūr fugitis, virī Rōmānī? Nōlīte relinquere pontem. Nōnne perīculum sentītis? Sī pontem relinquētis, hostēs in urbem mox venient. Eum īgne et gladiō dēlēte! Contrā Etrūscōs pūgnābō! Ego corpore meō pontem dēfendam!"

Prōcessit in prīmam partem pontis ipsāque audāciā hostēs turbāvit (*confused*). Duo Rōmānī, Spurius Lārcius et Titus Herminius, clārī genere factīsque, cum eō stetērunt et trēs virī breve tempus hostēs ā ponte prohibuērunt. Tum Horātius duōs sociōs

214

OLH

salūtem fugā petere jūssit. "Pōns mox cadet. Ad rīpam statim properāte!"

Sed Horātius Coclēs pontem nōn relīquit. Etrūscī māgnō clāmōre undique in ūnum hostem tēla jēcērunt. Subitō pōns in flūmen cecidit. "Tiberīne Pater," inquit (*he said*), "tē, sāncte, ōrō! Haec arma et hunc mīlitem propitiō (*favorable*) flūmine accipe!"

Circum virum fortem multa tēla cadēbant ubi sē in Tiberim jēcit. Sed ad rīpam sine vulneribus pervēnit. Alacriter cīvēs eum accēpērunt cūjus factum forte laudem certē meruit (*deserved*). Horātiō populus Rōmānus māgnam partem terrae pūblicae dedit, et in Forō statua ējus posita est. Praemia idōnea duōbus mīlitibus Rōmānīs quī cum illō pontem dēfenderant quoque data sunt. Fortitūdō ūnīus virī cūnctam urbem servāvit.

# *Unit* XXXVIII

## CONVERSATION

CŌNSUL: Quis es, adulēscēns? Unde vēnistī? Cūr hīc es?

MŪCIUS: Gājus Mūcius, clārus propter genus atque audāciam meam sum ego.

CŌNSUL: Quid cupis, Mūcī? Senātōribus ac patribus dīc!

MŪCIUS: Multōs diēs jam prope urbem rēx Etrūscōrum cum māgnīs cōpiīs mānsit. Frūmentum in urbem portārī nōn potest. Nūllum cibum nunc habēmus. Ego bonum cōnsilium cēpī.

CŌNSUL: Nōbīs cōnsilium tuum celeriter narrā, fortis adulēscēns!

MŪCIUS: Sōlus sed armātus ad castra hostium trāns flūmen prōcēdere cupiō. Porsenam occīdere in animō habeō! Ita cīvēs Rōmānī morte ūnīus hominis tōtō perīculō līberābuntur!

CŌNSUL: Quid aliud facere possumus? Nēmō ex urbe excēdere potest. Populus neque aquam neque cibum habēre potest.

MŪCIUS: Neque perīculum neque dolōrem neque mortem timeō. Sī cōnsul mihi potestātem fēcerit, aut tūtus rēgem Etrūscōrum necābō aut nōn jam vīvam! Valēte, meī amīcī!

7. Mox ā mīlitibus armātīs circumdatus est neque discēdere potuit.
8. Porsena ipse virtūtem Mūcī laudāvit, sed hic erat tristis quod maleficium nōn perfectum erat.
9. Sī hīc manēbis, tūtus nōn eris neque diū vīvēs.
10. Aut ex urbe discēde aut tē occīdēmus. Multī adulēscentēs īrātī contrā tē conjūrāvērunt.

B. Translate into Latin:

1. Armed with one weapon, Mucius departed from the city.
2. There was no route by which he could escape alive.
3. The angered soldiers surrounded the daring young man.
4. Without any battle Rome was freed by one man from great danger
5. Mucius told his whole plan to the consul alone.

### Another One-Man Victory

Lārs Porsena postquam ita ab Horātiō expulsus est, nōn statim in patriam suam discesserat, sed cum māgnīs cōpiīs suīs in castrīs trāns flūmen manēbat. Quod agrōs Rōmānōrum occupāverat māgna inopia cibī in urbe erat. Aliī sociī Rōmae frūmentum in urbem portāre nōn poterant. Nāvēs etiam ex Ostiā quae erat prope mare dēlētae sunt quod frūmentum ad Rōmānōs portābant. Nēmō ex urbe excēdere poterat; nēmō in urbem prōcēdere poterat.

Incolae miserī Rōmae jam famem (*starvation*) sentiēbant et mortem exspectābant, ubi Gājus Mūcius, adulēscēns nōbilis, ad senātōrēs fortiter vēnit et audācter nūntiāvit: "In media castra hostium prōcēdam et rēgem Porsenam gladiō occīdam. Ego sōlus prōcēdere cupiō, et sōlus hōc perīculō cīvēs Rōmānōs līberābō!"

Senātōrēs cōnsilium illīus probābant quī statim trāns flūmen ad castra hostium discessit. Tum Mūcius gladiō armātus castra Etrūscōrum fūrtim intrāvit (*entered*) et rēgis scrībam (*secretary*), nōn rēgem ipsum, occīdit. Adulēscēns audāx currere temptāvit sed ā mīlitibus captus est et ad rēgem tractus est (*was dragged*).

"Cūr sine ūllā causā scrībam meum occīdistī?" māgnā cum īra rogāvit Porsena. "Rēgem, nōn scrībam, occīdere cupīvī. Id autem perficere eō tempore nōn potuī. Sed tē moneō, Ō rēx. Multīs perīculīs et īnsidiīs semper circumdāberis. Nec ego sōlus tē occīdere cupiō. Multī Rōmānī contrā tē conjūrāvērunt. Ūnus nostrum tē occīdet. Sī hīc manēbis, nōn diū vīvēs."

Porsena īrātus sed perterritus (*terrified*) respondit: "Nisi (*Unless*) mihi cōnsilia Rōmānōrum narrāveris, īgne cōnsūmēris."

"Cīvis Rōmānus neque dolōrem neque mortem timet," superbē nūntiāvit adulēscēns audāx, et posuit dextram in īgne quī prope in ārā erat. Ibi eam fortiter tenuit dum īgne cōnsūmitur.

"Tū es fortis!" clāmāvit rēx quī et animō et audāciā Mūcī mōtus est. "Tūtus ex castrīs meīs propter fortitūdinem tuam statim excēdere potes." Mox cum Rōmānīs pācem cōnfīrmāvit et omnibus cum cōpiīs suīs ex agrīs Rōmānīs excessit. In nūllō proeliō cum adulēscentibus Rōmānīs similibus Mūciō pūgnāre cupīvit.

Propter māgnum Mūcī animum Rōmānī eī agrōs lātōs ac praemia māgna dedērunt. "Scaevola" (*Lefty*) appellātus est quod dextra īgne cōnsūmpta erat. Bis (*Twice*) Rōma virtūte ūnīus virī servāta est. Alter ūnum oculum, alter ūnam manum (*hand*) habēbat. Utrīque praemium datum est, sed nūllum praemium virtūtī eōrum pār erat.

# *Unit* XXXIX

## CONVERSATION

| | |
|---|---|
| MAGISTER: | Apud Rōmānōs antīquōs erant duo māgna genera, plēbs ac patriciī. Quī erant patriciī, Paule? |
| PAULUS: | Aliī nōbilēs patriciōs, aliī patrēs appellāvērunt. Tōta potestās, agrī, pecūnia ā patriciīs habēbantur. |
| ROBERTUS: | Quae plēbs possēdit (*possess*), magister? |
| MAGISTER: | Postquam Tarquinius Superbus Rōmā expulsus est, condiciō plēbis erat mala. Plēbs erat pauper; nūlla jūra habēbat; patriciōs in mātrimōnium dūcere nōn poterat. |
| ROBERTA: | Cūr plēbs nūlla jūra habēbat? Nōnne erant lēgēs? |
| MAGISTER: | Patriciī omnēs lēgēs dedērunt, sed nūllae lēgēs prō plēbe scrīptae sunt. Plēbs ā patriciīs pressa est. |
| PAULA: | Num plēbī auxilium datum est ubi patriciōs rogāvit? |
| MAGISTER: | Praetereā plēbs ubi agrōs relīquit et prō patriā pūgnāvit nūllam pecūniam accēpit. Uxōrēs et līberī sine ūllō cibō erant. Post bella paene tōta plēbs aere aliēnō (*debt*) premēbātur. Etiam in servitūtem dūcēbātur. |
| PAULUS: | Plēbs īrātus contrā patriciōs incitāta est. |

## THE BOLD PLAN OF MUCIUS

Dē Horātiō, mīlite Rōmānō fortissimō, puerī et puellae, jam lēgistis et dē modō quō ille pontem contrā Etrūscōs[1] ācriter [1] dēfendit. Nōnne fābulam illam recordāminī[2]? Quamquam[3] Porsena, rēx Etrūscōrum, cum exercitū potentissimō ad Tiberis
5 rīpam pervēnerat, neque ultrā id flūmen prōcēdere[4] neque Rōmam capere potuit; Horātius enim pontem fortiter dēfendit et perīculum praesēns ab urbe prohibuit.

Urbs autem virtūte Horātī perīculō et timōre nōn diū līberārī [3] potuit. Brevī tempore magna erat inopia cibī[5] in urbe
10 quod Porsena, quamquam ad pontem superātus erat, tamen castra prope rīpās flūminis posuerat et Rōmam obsidēbat. Quam ob causam cibus et frūmentum in urbem facile [1] portārī nōn poterant.

Tum Mūcius, quī erat fortior cēterīs mīlitibus [4] Rōmānīs,
15 ad cōnsulēs properāvit atque ita dīxit: "Sī, cōnsulēs, longum tempus obsiderī nōn cupimus, cōnsilium prūdentius quam illud quod anteā habuistis ā vōbīs capī dēbet. Ego ipse cōnsilium cēpī, quod ā vōbīs audīrī cupiō. Castra Etrūscōrum nōn longē ā Rōmā absunt. Sī mihi facultātem dabitis, sine sociō in castra
20 hostium veniam et rēgem eōrum interficiam. Neque perīculum hujus generis ā mīlite fortī timērī dēbet. Auxiliō deōrum factum quod audēbō certē perficiam."

Cōnsulēs cōnsilium ejus bonum esse sēnsērunt et probāvērunt. Tum Mūcius gladium breve intrā vestīmenta[6] sua abdidit
25 et ex urbe celerrimē [2] discessit. Mente parātus erat aut rēgem interficere aut mortem certam sibi invenīre.

[NOTES] 1. *Etrūscī, -ōrum (m. pl.)*, the Etruscans.  2. *recordāminī*, you remember.  3. *quamquam (conj.)*, although.  4. *prōcēdō, -ere, -cessī, —,* advance.  5. *cibus, -ī (m.)*, food.  6. *vestīmentum, -ī (n.)*, clothing, garment.

## GRAMMAR NOTES

*[The Formation of Adverbs.]*

1. Adverbs are formed from adjectives of the first and second declensions by changing the ending -ī of the genitive singular to -ē. [As, **certē**, *certainly*, from **certus**, *certain*.] They are formed from adjec-

*"*

## Review of the Accusative and Ablative Cases

═══════════ PRELIMINARY REMARKS ═══════════

See whether you can give all the endings that you have learned for the accusative and ablative cases in the various declensions. Review the various uses of the accusative and ablative cases as you have learned them. See pages 26, 34, 158, 170, 176, 177, 192, 210, 230, 236, 275, 308, 323, 345, 367.

### MUCIUS BURNS OFF HIS HAND

Prīmā lūce Mūcius, quī gladium occultum gerēbat, ad castra Porsenae pervēnit et cum mīlitibus Etrūscīs sē jūnxit. Forte[1] rēx exercitum īnstruī et stīpendium[2] mīlitibus darī jusserat. Scrība[3] prope rēgem cōnstitit et stīpendium dabat. Diū Mūcius dubitāvit, quod rēgem numquam[4] vīderat. Tum gladiō scrībam 5 miserum prō Porsenā ignōtō interfēcit.

Magnus statim erat clāmor[5] illōrum quī factum Mūcī vīderant. Eum ad rēgem trāxērunt. "Quis tū es?" rogāvit Porsena īrā[6] maximē permōtus. "Cūr in castrīs meīs ades? Quō cōnsiliō scrībam meum interfēcistī?" 10

Tum Mūcius "Rōmānus sum," ācerrimē respondit. "Nōmen meum est Gāius Mūcius. Tē, nōn illum scrībam, interficere erat cōnsilium meum. Tē ipsum vērō frūstrā interficere temptāvī."

Hīs verbīs adulēscentis[7] fortis vehementer commōtus, Porsena ignem[8] in foculō[9] parārī et foculum prope Mūcium portārī 15 jussit. Nec etiam tum Mūcius propter timōrem cēdere coepit, sed "Ō rēx," magnā vōce clāmāvit, "ā tē nōn perterreor. Neque verbīs tuīs neque timōre poenae perterreor. Nōs Rōmānī, quod patriam amāmus, nōn facile vincimur. Etiam sī mē nunc interficiēs, multī sunt cīvēs Rōmānī quī propter perīculum com- 20 mūne mēcum contrā tē conjūrāvērunt.[10]"

Mūcius, simul atque haec dīxit, ad foculum appropinquāvit, et subitō ante oculōs omnium in ignem dextram suam posuit et tenēbat. Maximē permōtī erant Porsena et Etrūscī. Virtūtem tantam laudāvērunt illīus quī prō patriā manum āmittere 25

nōn timuit. Porsena sine morā Mūcium līberāvit et amīcīs reddidit. Ipse cum cōpiīs ex agrīs Rōmānōrum excessit.

Posteā, ob tantum beneficium, novum nōmen Muciō ā Rōmānīs datum est. Scaevola[11] appellābātur. Mūltōs per 30 annōs cīvis nōtissimus Rōmae erat.

[Notes] 1. *forte* (*adv.*), by chance.  2. *stīpendium, stīpendī* (*n.*), pay. 3. *scrība, -ae* (*m.*), clerk.  4. *numquam* (*adv.*), never.  5. *clāmor, -ōris* (*m.*), outcry, shout, noise.  6. *īra, -ae* (*f.*), anger.  7. *adulēscēns, -entis* (*m.*), youth. 8. *ignis, -is* (*m.*), fire.  9. *foculus, -ī* (*m.*), brazier.  10. *conjūrō, -āre*, take oath, conspire.  11. *Scaevola*, left-handed.

## EXERCISES

**1.** Learn the following vocabulary:

**commūnis, -e,** common
**dextra, -ae,** *f.,* right hand
**īnstruō, -ere, -strūxī, -strūctus,** draw up
**manus, -ūs,** *f.,* hand, band
**occultus, -a, -um,** hidden
**reddō, -ere, reddidī, redditus,** give back, restore

**2.** Point out in the story one example for each of the following uses of the accusative and ablative cases: the *accusative* to express the direct object of a verb, the object of a preposition, the subject of an infinitive, the place to which; the *ablative* to express the means by which, the agent by whom, the time of an action, that in company with which, the place where, the cause of an act, the object of a preposition.

**3.** Say in Latin:

1. Mucius was a man of great courage (*two ways*).  2. The Romans heard the story with great joy (*two ways*).  3. The king was not killed by the hand of Mucius.  4. The armies were surrounded by dangers. 5. For fifteen years the Romans fought against Porsena, but in the sixteenth year he was conquered.

**4.** Can you give an English verb and a noun formed from **cēdō** by using the prefix *re*? What is *manual* labor? Why is fortune-telling said to be an *occult* science?

Which of the meanings of **cēdō** is best in each of these sentences? 1. Exercitus celerrimē cessit.  2. Urbem nostram nōn cēdēmus. 3. Mūrī hujus domūs mox cēdent.

Which of the two meanings of **manus** is correct in each of these sentences?
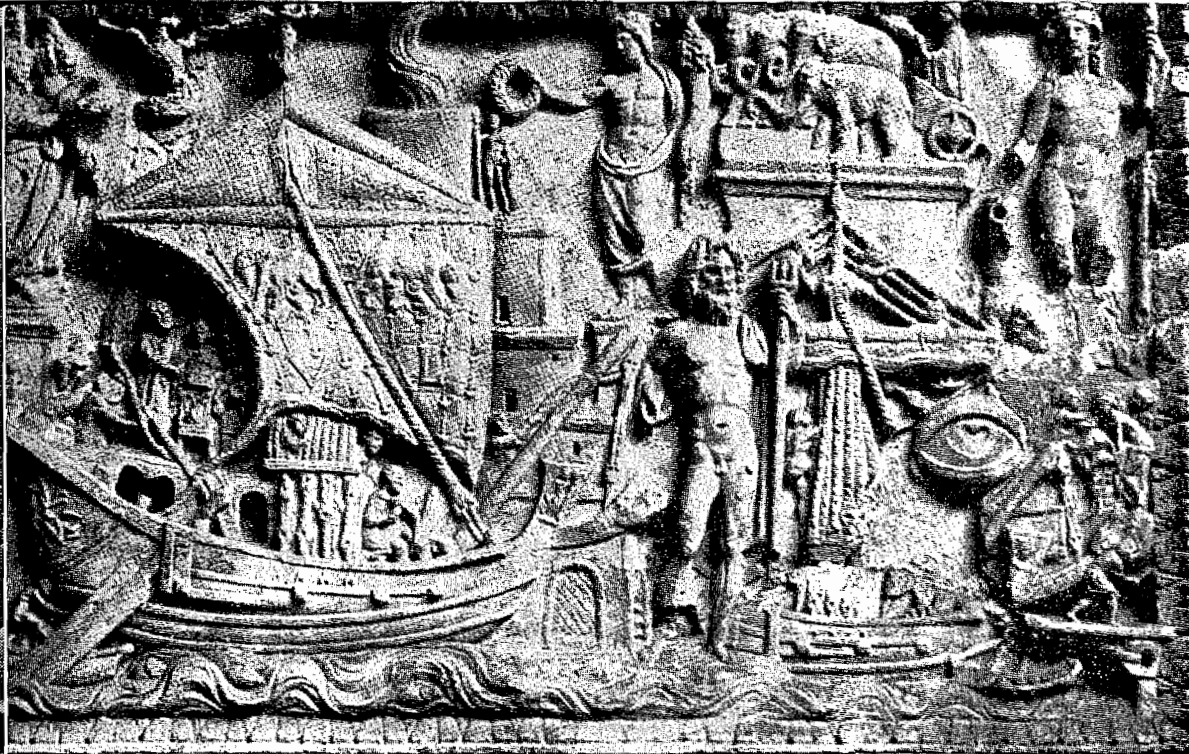
***Harbor of Ostia.*** *This bas-relief shows a big and a small merchant ship. On the roof of the cabin of the big ship the owner, his wife, and the captain are performing a sacrifice of thanksgiving. Beneath the sail of the smaller ship is seen a large eye — a charm against the evil eye. Note the Roman eagle and the figures of the wolf and twins on the sail of the larger ship.*

# CHAPTER XXX

1. ### MŪCIUS SCAEVOLA

Etrūscī et Tarquinius neque Rōmānōs in fugam dare neque Rōmam expugnāre potuērunt; nam Horātius cum magnō animō caput pontis quī posteā in aquam cecidit dēfendit. Porsena tamen dux Etrūscōrum mīlitēs ē terrā
5 Rōmānōrum nōn ēdūxit, sed cum suīs magnīs cōpiīs in castrīs trāns flūmen manēbat. Rōmānī, "Etrūscōs," inquiunt, "ē terrā nostrā expellere nōn poterimus; nam nōs paucōs mīlitēs habēmus et Etrūscī multōs habent."
Rōmānī igitur trāns flūmen in hostēs mīlitēs ūllōs nōn
10 mīsērunt.

Diū ho
nābant (
miserī; r
piam cil
oppidō n
minēs, I
bum ūll
tāre nōn
enim Po
auxiliō v
nāvigia I
riter exr
nāvigia
mānī in
bant qu:
ad Rōm:

Tum (
gius vir (
pellāba
quod u1
animō h
Rōmānu
cōnsiliur
prōcēda:
necābō,'
urbem r
nōmen .
nōs lībe

Senāt
Gladium
hostium
numerur

[1] approv

Diū hostēs urbem oppug-
nābant et Rōmānī erant
miserī; nam magnam cō-
piam cibī et frūmentī in
oppidō nōn habēbant. Ho- 15
minēs, Rōmae amīcī, ci-
bum ūllum in urbem por-
tāre nōn poterant; nāvigia
enim Porsenae in flūmine
auxiliō ventī nāvigābant et 20
nāvigia Rōmae amīca cele-
riter expellēbant, nam ea
nāvigia cibum quem Rō-
mānī in urbe Ōstiā emē-
bant quae prope mare est 25
ad Rōmānōs portābant.

Tum erat in urbe ēgre-
gius vir quem Mūcium ap-
pellābant et cōnsilium
quod urbem servābit in 30
animō habet. Ad senātum
Rōmānum properāvit et



**Roman Boy.** *A statue of a young boy,
much like Gaius Mucius.*

cōnsilium suum ēnūntiāvit. "In media castra hostium
prōcēdam et sī deī mihi auxilium dabunt, rēgem Porsenam
necābō," dīxit. "Sī enim ducem eōrum necābō mīlitēs 35
urbem nōn iam oppugnābunt; hostēs nostrōs igitur quī
nōmen Rōmānum dēlēre volunt expellere poterimus, et
nōs līberī erimus."

Senātus, quī lēgēs scrībēbat, cōnsilium eius probābat.[1]
Gladium igitur cēpit[2] et statim trāns flūmen in castra 40
hostium discessit. Ubi ad hostēs accēdēbat, magnum
numerum mīlitum in mediīs castrīs vidēbat. In eō numerō

---

[1] approved.        [2] took.

**Clay Vase from Clusium—Home of Porsena.** *Note black figures accented with white on terra cotta background, typical of the art of the 6th Cent. B.C.*

erat vir ignōtus quī mīlitibus pecūniam dabat. Diū
Mūcius manēbat et virōs spectābat; nam rēx eī erat
45 ignōtus. Tum eum virum ignōtum quī pecūniam dabat
dēlēgit et celeriter accessit et eum prō Porsenā necāvit.
Sed Mūcius erat miser. Is vir nōn erat Porsena!

Mīlitēs rēgis bis clāmāvērunt, "Ignōtus vir scrībam[3]
tuum necāvit." Mox eum per castra ad rēgem perdūxē-
50 runt. "Quis tū es?" rogāvit rēx. "Cūr tū in castra nostra
vēnistī? Cūr tū scrībam[3] meum necāvistī?"

Tum Mūcius celeriter cōnsilium ēnūntiāvit. "Rōmānus
sum. Gāium Mūcium mē appellant. Ego quī hostis sum
hostem necāre volō. Tē, igitur hostem patriae meae, nōn
55 scrībam[3] tuum iam diū necāre in animō habeō,[4] sed nōn

[3] secretary.          [4] present tense with **iam diū** = perf. tense.

326

potuī. Sed quod[5] Rōmānīs nōn grātus es, semper vīta tua magnō in perīculō erit; nam ūnus, duo, trēs, sex, etiam ad numerum CCC puerī Rōmānī venient. Tē necāre est officium eōrum CCC puerōrum Rōmānōrum. 'Rōma,' dīcunt, 'mox lībera erit.' Nōs Rōmānōs vincere nōn 60 poteris quod[5] patriam nostram amāmus."

Id quidem rēgem terrēbat. Statim Mūcium nōmina eōrum puerōrum rogāvit. "Ea nōmina tē mihi ēnūntiāre cōgam," clāmāvit. "Nisi[6] tū mihi ea nārrābis, in ignem tē iactābō." 65

"Neque tē neque ignem tuum timeō," respondit Mūcius. "Prō patriā Rōmānī laetī ē vītā cēdunt. Ē dolōre prō patriā labōrāre est Rōmānō grātum." Et statim in ignem quī prope rēgem erat dextram[7] suam iniēcit.[8]

Rēx Mūcium cum magnā admīrātiōne spectāvit et 70 dīxit, "Animus tuus mihi grātus est. Propter magnum animum tuum tē līberum dīmittam." Mox Etrūscī Mūcium ex suīs castrīs ēdūxērunt, et ad oppidum Rōmam vir discessit līber.

Posteā enim Porsena lēgātōs ad senātum Rōmānum 75 dīmīsit; nam in populī Rōmānī amīcitiam venīre dēsīderā- bat. Nōn iam in animō habēbat prope Rōmam manēre, sed cōpiās ē castrīs quae erant prope eam partem flūminis ubi Horātius pontem dēfendit ēdūcere et agrōs Rōmānō- rum relinquere. Eam amīcitiam semper tenuit. Mūciō 80 propter magnum animum Rōmānī agrōs lātōs praemium dedērunt. Et posteā eī novum nōmen dedērunt; Scaevo- lam[9] semper appellāvērunt.

Etiam nunc eam fābulam librī multārum terrārum con- tinent. Frātrēs sorōrēsque in Americā eam saepe legunt. 85 Nōbīs Mūcius nōn ignōtus est. Nōbīs quoque fābula dē Rōmulō et tempestāte nōn ignōta est.

---

[5] because.  [6] unless.  [7] right hand.  [8] thrust.  [9] left-handed.

# CHAPTER XXXI

I.                          **CLOELIA**

Iam lēgātī Porsenae quī Rōmam nōn iam dēlēre volunt
ad urbem prōcēdunt et cōnsulibus Rōmānīs, "Sī vōs,"
inquiunt, "nōbīs multōs puerōs et puellās obsidēs et
partem terrae vestrae dabitis, pācem habēbimus. Tum
Porsena copiās suās Etrūscās ē patriā vestrā ēdūcet."   5

Tum cōnsulēs populō Rōmānō: "Nōs nostrōs fīliōs
fīliāsque obsidēs Porsena rogāvit. Dabimusne eōs? Pā-
cemne habēbimus?" quaerunt. Rōmānī laetī dē pāce
audiunt; nam iam diū multum cibum et frūmentum nōn
habent[1] et multī Rōmānī ē vītā cēdunt. Līberōs igitur 10
suōs obsidēs in castra hostium mittunt. Nunc nāvigia ad
Rōmānōs cibum quem in urbe Ōstiā emunt celeriter
portant.

Porsena obsidēs bene habēbat, sed līberī patrēs suōs et
mātrēs et frātrēs et sorōrēs rūrsus vidēre dēsīderābant. 15
Ūnus ex obsidibus quōs lēgātī Porsenae sēcum ēdūxērunt
erat puella pulchra quam Cloeliam appellāvērunt. Cloelia
in castrīs ignōtīs captīva libenter nōn habitābat; tamen
manēbat. Tum bonum cōnsilium in animō habēbat.
Castra Porsenae prope urbem in rīpā flūminis erant. 20
Cloelia puellīs quae erant in castrīs cum eā ēnūntiāvit:
"Nōs cūnctae mātrēs nostrās patrēsque rūrsus vidēre
volumus. Sī mīlitēs nōn vidēbunt neque mē continēbunt,
vōs ex castrīs ad rīpam flūminis ēdūcam et trāns Tiberim
trānāre[2] poterimus. Amātisne cōnsilium meum?" quae- 25
sīvit.

---

[1] Pres. with **iam diū** = have had.        [2] swim.

*Etruscan Grave Stone—Early Fourth Century.* In the uppermost section, a fight is being carried on between a serpent and a sea horse; in the center section, a corpse is being driven to the Lower World in a chariot, drawn by winged horses, led by an angel; in the lowest section, a duel between an Etruscan horseman and a huge Gaul is shown.

"Bonum est, bonum est," bis clāmāvērunt puellae. Ubi tempestās bona erat, id ēgērunt.

Posteā mīlitēs eās vīdērunt et tēla[3] iactābant, sed 30 nūlla[4] cecidit. Cūnctae trāns flūmen celeriter trānāvērunt[2] et in patriae ōram salvae[5] pervēnērunt.

Tum ea puella et paucae amīcae quās sēcum ēdūxit in urbem properāvērunt. Mox Rōmānī per silvam caput Cloeliae vidēre poterant et prope Cloeliam capita duārum 35 puellārum, tum trium, tum sex. Mātrēs patrēsque erant laetī, nam fīliās quās amābant iterum vidēbant. Propter fīliae animum māter Cloeliae erat laeta.

"Quis vōs remīsit? Cūr vēnistis?" quaesīvērunt Rōmānī. "Quibuscum vēnistis? Quōcum lēgātō? In quō 40 nāvigiō? Quō ventō? Quid Porsena dīxit? Quī deī auxilium vōbīs dedērunt?"

---

[2] swim.    [3] weapons.    [4] no one.    [5] safe.

334

Sed ut
honōrem
Dīxērunt
Nostrōs l
magis[6] a
nostrōs r
    Id cōn
ad castr
    Ubi rē
iussit lēg
Cloeliam
ūllōs rēg
Porsenae
Porsena
animum
Mūcium
tium qu
    Poste
dere est
Rōmae
obsidum
    Nunc
dēlēgit,
Statim
cōpiās
Rōmānī
    Rōmā
Viā Sac
    Popu
in mult
propter
patriā s

[6] more.

Sed ubi dē fugā audīvērunt, laetī nōn iam erant; nam honōrem bene dēfendere semper erat officium Rōmānum. Dīxērunt: "Ad Porsenam vōs obsidem pācis mīsimus. Nostrōs līberōs sed tamen honōrem patriae nostrae etiam 45 magis[6] amāmus. Noster honor nōs vōs etiam ad hostēs nostrōs rūrsus remittere cōgit."

Id cōnsilium Cloeliae nōn grātum erat; obsidēs tamen ad castra hostium iterum accessērunt.

Ubi rēgī mīlitēs fugam puellārum nūntiāvērunt, statim 50 iussit lēgātōs trāns flūmen ad urbem Rōmam discēdere et Cloeliam et amīcās eius redūcere. Rōmānī tamen lēgātōs ūllōs rēgis nōn exspectāvērunt, sed mox puellās in castra Porsenae remīsērunt. Ubi Cloelia puellās in castra redūxit, Porsena cum magnā admirātiōne eās spectāvit. Et 55 animum Cloeliae et honōrem populī Rōmānī laudāvit. Mūcium quoque laudāvit quī ignem nōn timuit et Horātium quī pontem dēfendit.

Posteā Cloeliae, "Eius honōrem," inquit, "bene dēfendere est lēx Rōmae. Propter animum tuum et honōrem 60 Rōmae lībera eris et ad urbem Rōmam tēcum partem obsidum remittam."

Nunc Cloelia erat laeta et parvōs puerōs puellāsque dēlēgit, nam patrēs suōs matrēsque vidēre dēsīderābant. Statim eōs ad patriam redūxit. Tum Porsena cūnctās 65 cōpiās ē terrā Rōmānōrum ad mare ēdūxit; id quod Rōmānīs grātum erat.

Rōmānī Cloeliae praemium ēgregium dedērunt. In Viā Sacrā statuam puellae in equō sedentis[7] posuērunt.[8]

Populus dē fugā Cloeliae saepe nārrābat. Etiam nunc 70 in multīs librīs legimus dē Horātiō et Mūciō et Cloeliā quī propter magnum animum suum Porsenam et cōpiās eius ē patriā suā expulērunt et Rōmam servāvērunt.

---

[6] more.     [7] sitting.     [8] erect.

## LEGACY

Find out the meaning and origin of our words *martial, cereal, jovial, mercurial, January, June, March, Saturday, deify.*

You have learned how certain prefixes affect the meanings of words. (See page 84.) Some additional prepositions that you have learned which serve as prefixes are *per, circum, inter,* and *trans.* Show that you know the meaning of the prefix and also of the basic part of the word in each of the following words by using it correctly in a sentence: *permit, transmit, transport, circumscribe, intervene, permanent.*

## *Supplementary Story*

### CASTOR AND POLLUX AID THE ROMANS

Inter deōs Rōmānōs frātrēs[1] fuērunt Castor et Pollux. Ōlim[2] Rōmānī cum Latīnīs[3] fīnitimīs bellum gerēbant.[4] Dum Rōmānī atque Latīnī in proeliō contendunt adversa[5] fuit fortūna proelī: nam Latīnī numerum magnum virōrum armaque
5 valida habuērunt. Cum Latīnī multōs Rōmānōs interfēcērunt[6] et Rōmānī fugere parābant,[7] duo equitēs[8] apparuērunt[9] et Rōmānīs miserīs auxilium dedērunt. Tum fortūna proelī nōn jam adversa fuit atque Rōmānī Latīnōs vīcērunt. Equitēs deī Castor et Pollux fuērunt.
10 Intereā[10] Rōmae virī et fēminae magnopere timuērunt, nam nūntius ex proeliō vēnit et adversam fortūnam Rōmānōrum nūntiāvit. Dum populus Rōmānus ex oppidō fugere parat[7] et perīculum vītāre temptat, deī Castor et Pollux apparuērunt et victōriam Rōmānōrum nūntiāvērunt. Tum ad fontem
15 propinquum[11] contendērunt, ubi arma lāvērunt[12] et equīs aquam dedērunt. Tandem ē forō discessērunt[13] neque Rōmānī deōs posteā[14] vīdērunt. Rōmānī deīs templum pulchrum in forō aedificāvērunt.[15]

[NOTES] 1. *frātrēs,* brothers (*nom.*). 2. *ōlim* (*adv.*), once upon a time. 3. *cum Latīnīs,* with the Latins. 4. *gerēbant,* were carrying on. 5. *adversus, -a, -um,* unfavorable. 6. *interficiō, -ere, -fēcī,* kill. 7. *fugere parābant,* were getting ready to run away. 8. *equitēs,* horsemen (*nom.*). 9. *appareō, -ēre, -uī,* appear. 10. *intereā* (*adv.*), meanwhile. 11. *fontem propinquum,* a near-by

***Castor and Pollux.*** *An Etruscan clay vase — sixth century B.C.  At left Pollux is welcomed by his dog; Castor behind his horse turns to look at his mother who holds out a flower.  Their father at the right strokes the horse's head; near him stands a small slave.*

## CHAPTER XXXII

I.             CASTOR ET POLLUX

Porsena, ut[1] vōbīs nārrāvimus, animum Horātī quī pontem dēfendit, animum Mūcī quī ignem nōn timuit, animum obsidis Cloeliae ūnīus ex līberīs quī sē in fugam dedērunt ē castrīs Porsenae laudat.  Is igitur Rōmānōs magnō in honōre iam habet et amīcus eōrum esse dēsīderat. 5 Tarquiniō dīcit, "Honōrem patriae dēfendere et servāre est officium Rōmānum.  Rōmam dēlēre nōn iam mihi grātum est; ego quidem Rōmānōs esse līberōs volō.  Numquam cum Rōmā iterum pugnābō; nam nunc Rōmānī mihi grātī sunt.  Tuus socius nōn iam esse possum."  Is 10 igitur Tarquinium relīquit et eum nōn iam iūvit.

Tarquinius tamen Rōmam regere etiam dēsīderābat. Urbēs Latīnās igitur auxilium rogāvit et novōs sociōs

¹ as.

341
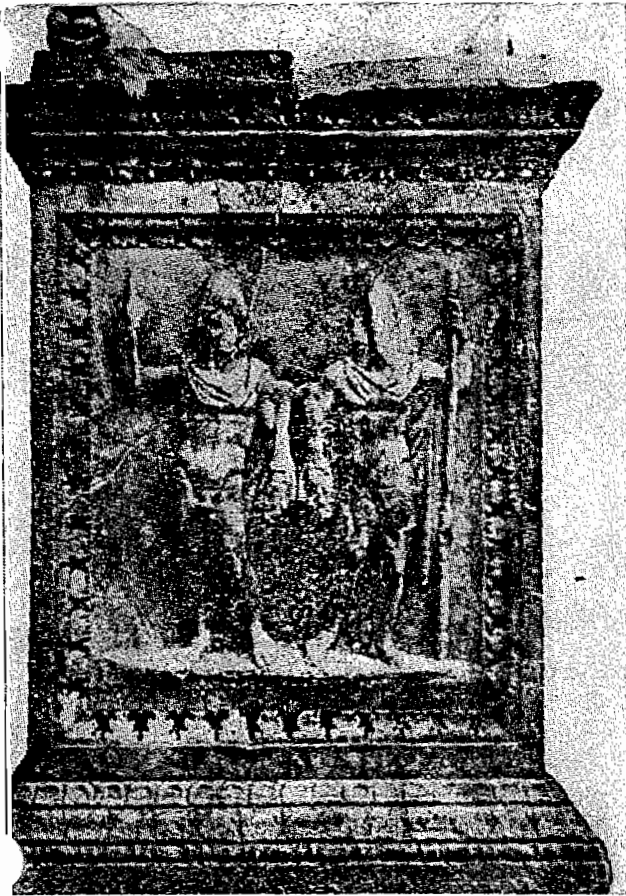
Altar of Castores

invēnit. Mox ad urbem
15 Rōmam cum magnīs cōpiīs
sociōrum novōrum iterum
prōcessit. Ubi Rōmānī eum
nūntium audīvērunt, terrē-
bantur.
20 Dīxērunt, "Poterimusne
eum magnum numerum
virōrum vincere? Magnō in
perīculō sumus."

Cōnsulēs nūntiāvērunt,
25 "Sī ūnī ēgregiō virō impe-
rium dabimus et is prō cōn-
sulibus reget et cūnctōs
hominēs iubēbit, tum vin-
cere poterimus neque līber-
30 tātem nostram āmittēmus.
Is caput imperī erit et etiam
cibum et frūmentum mī-
litibus emet et arma mīlitibus dabit. Eum virum dictā-
tōrem appellābimus. Sī perīculum erit, reget; sed sī
35 pāx erit, cōnsulēs rūrsus regent."

Novus dictātor quī imperium habēbat magnās cōpiās
statim ēdūxit et trāns flūmen ad Tarquinium et Latīnōs
prōcessit. Mox eōs prope Lacum[2] Rēgillum invēnit. Diū
pugnābātur et multī Rōmānī cecidērunt. Diū fortūna
40 Rōmānōrum erat mala; hostēs enim continēre et in fugam
dare nōn poterant. Mīlitēs tamen Rōmānī bene pugnābant
et dictātor iuvābat, sed Rōmānī Latīnōs et Etrūscōs
expellere nōn potuērunt. Valerius, ūnus ex cōnsulibus
Rōmānīs, necātur. In pugnā prope eius corpus[6] Herminius,
45 ūnus ex eīs quī cum Horātiō pontem dēfendit, ducem

_____
[2] lake.    [6] body.

342

***Castor and Pollux.*** *Roman coins; At the left: Castor and Pollux watering their horses at the old spring of Juturna—90 B.C. At the right: Castor and Pollux charging ahead on horseback—about 268 B.C.*

hostium necat. Multī et Rōmānī et hostēs necantur. Hominēs quī in urbe Rōmā sunt terrentur. "Lībertātem nostram āmittēmus," dīcunt.

Subitō duo equitēs ignōtī quī equīs albīs portābantur in mediīs mīlitibus Rōmānīs vidēbantur. Alba quoque erant 50 eōrum arma. Magnō cum animō prō Rōmānīs pugnāvērunt et eōs in hostēs prōdūxērunt. Rōmānī iam nōn timuērunt, nam ad victōriam mīlitēs prōdūcēbantur. Propter auxilium eōrum equitum fortūna Rōmānōrum nōn iam erat mala neque suam lībertātem āmīsērunt. Mox 55 Rōmānī hostēs in fugam dedērunt. Rēx etiam Latīnōrum et eius mīlitēs vincuntur. Duo equitēs nōn iam videntur. Tarquinius sē in fugam dat neque ad urbem Rōmam iterum venit. Rēgem Rōma numquam posteā habet.

Duo equitēs ex pugnā ad urbem Rōmam properāvērunt 60 et subitō in Forō vidēbantur. "Victōria est nostra," bis clāmāvērunt equitēs. Tum dē victōriā mātribus patri-

343

busque mīlitum et frātribus sorōribusque quī in Forō
65 erant nārrāvērunt. Ad fontem quī erat prope templum Vestae, deae ignis, et quī Iūturna dē nōmine deae aquae appellābātur accessē-
70 runt et equīs suīs aquam dedērunt. Tum subitō ē Forō ad mare discessērunt neque posteā umquam Rōmānī eōs vīdērunt.
75 "Quī sunt duo virī quī in Forō mānsērunt et victōriam ēnūntiāvērunt?" hominēs quaesīvērunt. "Quibuscum discessērunt?"
80 "Eī virī," dīxit dictātor, "quī nostrōs ad victōriam prōdūxērunt et hostēs in fugam dedērunt et posteā Rōmānīs nostram victōriam ēnūntiāvērunt sunt deī, frātrēs pulchrī, Castor et Pollux.
85 Numquam Castor sine[3] frātre Pollūce vidētur, nam puerī sunt Geminī[4]. Amīcī mīlitum sunt et eōs saepe iuvant."

Eīs templum igitur in eō locō prope fontem ubi deī equīs aquam dedērunt Rōmānī aedificāvērunt; nam deī Rō-
90 mānōs dēfendērunt et servāvērunt. In fonte statuam frātrum posuērunt[5]. Etiam nunc Americānī quī Forum spectant trēs columnās pulchrās eius templī et partem statuae vidēre possunt. In pictūrā in eō librō trēs columnās vidēbitis.



*Temple of Castor and Pollux by Moonlight*

---

[3] without.     [4] twins.     [5] erect.

Gnaeus Marcus
Coriolanus

Capture corioli
493

~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~

**Omnēs** and **omnia,** when used as nou
*everyone* and *everything.* Remember that
Latin.

Suntne omnēs in nave? *Is ever*

~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~

**C.** Translate.

1. The sons of the consul remained in the fields with the men.
2. The women are sitting on the bridge across the river.   3. The
brave messenger warned the citizens about the dangers.   4. The
small girls were afraid of everything.   5. The beautiful songs of
the British girls pleased the Roman soldiers.   6. The weapons of
the bold lieutenant are heavy.   7. Everyone was looking at the
powerful soldier.   8. The road from our farmhouse to your city
is not short.   9. Look at the wounds on the body of the horse,
father.   10. The Trojan soldiers fought with heavy swords.

—— *Reading* ——

## CORIOLĀNUS

Coriolānus malus cīvis erat sed bonus mīles. Rōmānī nūllum frūmen-
tum habēbant et timēbant magnam famem. Iam rēx in Siciliā Rōmānīs
multum frūmentum dederat sed Coriolānus frūmentum pauperibus
nōn dabat. Itaque pauperēs Coriolānum ex urbe exturbāvērunt.

Posteā Coriolānus dux Volscōrum erat et cum mīlitibus Rōmānīs
pugnābat. Rōmānōs multīs pugnīs superāvit. Rōmānī clāmāvērunt:
"Mox Coriolānus Rōmam occupābit."

Tum māter Coriolānī et uxor et fīliī fīliaeque ex urbe properāvērunt.
Māter Coriolānum ōrāvit et obsecrāvit: "Dā, fīlī, salūtem Rōmae."
Respōnsum Coriolānī erat: "Salūtem, māter, dabō urbī meae.
Servāvistī Rōmam sed tuum fīlium posthāc numquam vidēbis." Tum
Coriolānus cum mīlitibus ex urbe properāvit.

# CORIOLĀNUS

## LESSON OBJECTIVES
- To learn about the story of Coriolanus
- To learn the sequence of tenses in indirect statement

**M**ārcius, nōbilis Rōmānus, Coriolōs,[1] oppidum Volscōrum[2], expugnāverat. Ob hoc mūnus "Coriolānus" appellātus est.

Post bellum plēbs[3], ob variās causās īrā ācrī permōta, clāmāvit Coriolānum esse hostem. Is, sentiēns perīculum īnstāre, fūgit ad Volscōs quōs ipse superāverat. Volscī dīcuntur eum benignē[4] accēpisse, nam sēnsērunt eum 5 esse ducem fortem ac iūstum et Rōmam nōn iam amāre. Etiam spērāvērunt eum contrā Rōmānōs pugnātūrum esse.

Mox Coriolānus, dux ā Volscīs lēctus, ad urbem Rōmam contendit, omnēs in itinere superāns. Rōmānī, castrīs eius ad urbem positīs, bellō īnstantī territī sunt. Lēgātī dē pāce ad Coriolānum missī sunt, sed ubi pervēnērunt ab 10 eō remissī sunt.

"Mātrem eius ad eum mittēmus," putāvērunt Rōmānī; "sī cūra urbis cor eius nōn tanget, ille amōre mātris certē tangētur et īra eius frangētur; tum fīnem labōrum nostrōrum inveniēmus." Itaque māter et uxor Coriolānī cum duōbus parvīs fīliīs ad castra hostium pervēnērunt. 15

Coriolānus, verbīs ācribus mātris permōtus et lacrimīs[5] omnium tāctus, dīcitur clāmāvisse: "Quid fēcistī, māter? Tū sōla Rōmam servāvistī sed mē vīcistī[6]." Tum iussit Volscōs discēdere. Rōma lacrimīs[5], nōn armīs, servāta erat. Coriolānī facta semper in memoriā omnium haerēbunt.

[1] *Cori´olī* (the names of ancient towns are often plural)
[2] *Volsci (Vol´sī)*
[3] *the common people* (nom. sing. fem.)
[4] *kindly*
[5] *by the tears*
[6] *have beaten*

Coriolanus, wearing the red cloak of a general, is moved by the tears of his gray-haired mother, the kiss of his wife, and the sight of his children in the arms of their nurse. The

LFA
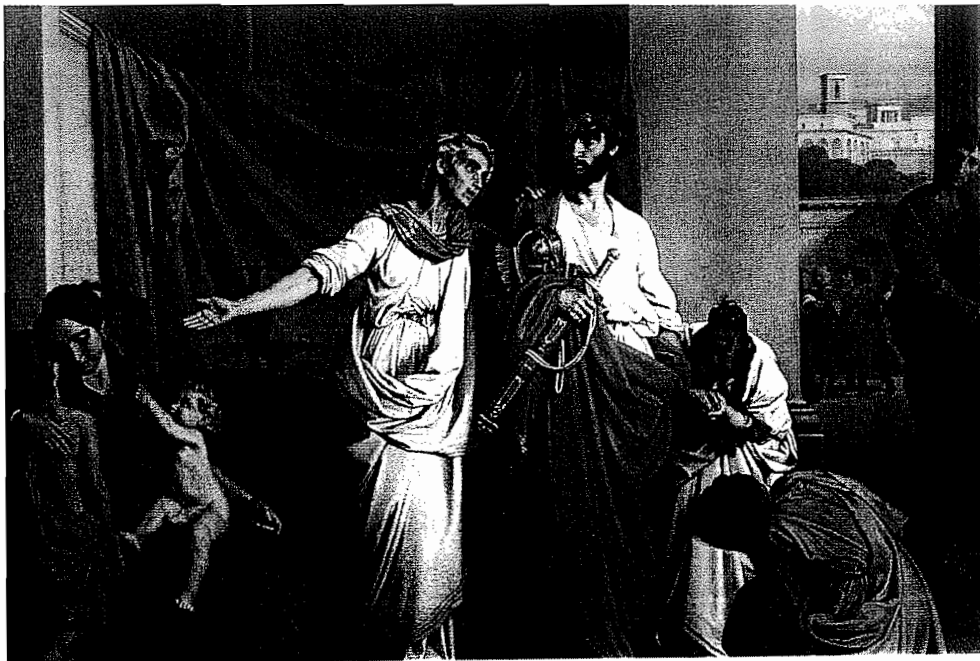
body of the state. Besides the regular offices there were many others, and foreign service required numerous additional officials.

Gradually Romans ceased to think of what they could give *to* the state and asked what they could get *out* of the state. Votes were sold to the highest bidder. Dictatorial power was exercised by ambitious statesmen who had the support of the army and who kept the favor of the city mob by free shows and free distribution of food. Yet the title of Roman citizen remained always the proudest one in the ancient world.

## LEGACY

*Patrician* and *plebeian* are good English words. What does each mean? What does a *plebe* signify in college slang?

When and how did you, or shall you, get the right to vote? In what ways may a person become a citizen of the United States? How do we vote? Compare our system of citizenship, voting, and office holding with that of the Romans. Which do you think is the better? Do we ever vote directly upon laws or measures as the Romans did in their assemblies? If so, when?

Many terms used in our political activities and in government are derived from Latin. Such are *vote, elect, election, candidate, nominate, convention, tribunal, senator, consul, consulate, legation, dictatorship, provincial, suffrage, state, territory, city, community*. Can you explain the significance of each and that of the Latin word from which it is derived?

### *Supplementary Story*

## HOW CORIOLANUS WAS DRIVEN FROM HIS COUNTRY

Nōn sōlus inter Rōmānōs Mettus Curtius ille, cujus dē factō nōbilissimō lēgistis, vītam prō rē pūblicā āmīsit. Simile erat factum Coriolānī.[1]

Gāiō Marciō, virō nōbilī et maximae dignitātis facultātisque, laus amplissima ā populō Rōmānō data est atque nōmen 5 Coriolānus, quod Volscōs,[2] vīcīnos Rōmānōrum, bellō vīcerat et oppidum eōrum Coriolōs[3] cēperat. Omnibus ā cīvibus autem nōn amātus est. Ūna pars populī enim, senātorēs,[4] Coriolānō erat amīcissima; sed altera pars, plēbs,[5] eī inimīcissima erat. Illō tempore plēbs, quae omnia jūra cīvium nōn tenēbat, po- 10

[ 393 ]

Entrance to an Etruscan tomb

**"**

testātem suam in rē pūblicā augēre temptābat. Causa plēbis autem apud Coriolānum minimē valēbat neque plēbī auxilium dedit. Itaque imperium, quod vehementer petīverat, eī nōn permissum est.

15 Posteā, ubi inopia frūmentī in urbe Rōmā fuit et omnēs maximē timuērunt, Coriolānus haec verba plēbī inimīca ēnūntiāvit. "Ō senātōrēs, frūmentum quod nāvēs vestrae ā Siciliā portābunt vōbīs ipsīs nōn plēbī dare dēbētis." Hac ōrātiōne commōta, plēbs Coriolānum ex urbe pepulit. Ille ex patriā pul-
20 sus in fīnēs Volscōrum excessit, quī anteā hostēs Rōmānōrum fuērunt. Tum, imperātor exercitūs eōrum dēlēctus, bellum contrā rem pūblicam gerere coepit.

[NOTES] 1. *Coriolānus, -ī (m.)*, Coriolanus. 2. *Volscī, -ōrum (m. pl.)*, the Volscians. 3. *Coriolī, -ōrum (m. pl.)*, Corioli. 4. *senātor, -tōris (m.)*, senator. 5. *plēbs, plēbis (f.)*, the common people.

parts of the world was not the citizen army of old Rome. Men from many a conquered and barbarous race served under the Roman eagles. Yet the army kept the traditions of bravery and discipline which had been handed down from the days when every citizen was ready to fight for Rome. These made the Roman legionary the symbol for all ages of the finest type of soldier.

## LEGACY

Do you not think that many of the ideas of military power that exist today show the persistence of Roman traditions? How do they? What parts of our modern military systems and what ways of creating an army form really a citizen army? What do you understand by the expression "Roman discipline"? What qualities has a Roman legionary soldier always symbolized? From what Latin words do the English words *conscription*, *militia*, *army*, *auxiliaries*, and *military* come?

## *Supplementary Story*

### HOW CORIOLANUS SPARED ROME

Exercitus Volscōrum, adventū[1] Coriolānī cōnfirmātus, ad mūrōs Rōmae sine difficultāte venīre potuit et nōn amplius quam quīnque mīlia passuum ā portīs urbis cōnstitit. Quod Rōma in perīculō magnō erat et omnēs cīvēs permovēbantur, lēgātī ad hostēs dē pāce missī sunt. 5

Coriolānus autem ōrātiōnibus lēgātōrum nōn mōtus est. Lēgātīs respondit: "Cīvis Rōmānus nōn jam sum. Mē enim ex urbe pepulistis. Nunc cum Volscīs pugnō, neque bellō dēsistam. Paucīs hōrīs cōpiās meās prōdūcam[2] et Rōma omnēsque cīvēs Rōmae in potestāte meā erunt. Quod Rōmā pulsus sum, 10 vōs poenam dare oportēbit. Atque poena gravissima erit. Cōnsulibus vestrīs haec nūntiāte!"

Posterō[3] diē autem māter Coriolānī et uxor[4] cum līberīs et multīs fēminīs prīmā lūce in castra Volscōrum contendērunt. Ad pedēs Coriolānī sē prōjēcērunt atque ita petīvērunt. "Nōs 15 servā! Mātrem et uxōrem et līberōs tuōs servā! Nōnne Rōmānus es? Dēbēsne contrā patriam pugnāre? Nōlī cōpiās prōdūcere. Perīculō Rōmam et patriam līberā!"

Coriolanus yields to his mother's plea

*"*

Tum Coriolānus, quī ōrātiōnibus lēgātōrum movērī nōn
20 potuerat, verbīs mātris permōtus subitō prōnūntiāvit: "Nōn
jam vōbīs resistere possum. Hunc exercitum ē fīnibus patriae
dūcam, neque Rōmānīs amplius nocēbō.[5] Ō māter! verbīs tuīs
Rōmam servāvistī. Mē autem morte līberāre nōn poteris."

Coriolānus quidem cum exercitū suō discessit et fidem[6]
25 tenuit. Vītam tamen āmīsit, quod ā Volscīs interfectus est,
quibus fidēlis nōn fuerat.

[NOTES] 1. *adventus, -ūs (m.)*, arrival. 2. *prōdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus*,
lead out. 3. *posterus, -a, -um*, next, following. 4. *uxor, -ōris (f.)*, wife.
5. *noceō, -ēre*, harm (*takes dative as object*). 6. *fidēs, -eī (f.)*, good faith.

*"*

Can you answer these questions on the story?

1. Tell in your own words all that happened after Coriolanus joined
the Volscians. 2. What kind of man did Coriolanus show himself to be?

[ 402 ]

ad-
ves:
*hose*

*by*

:ep-
lish
*hose*
*by*

this

1en.

# CHAPTER XXXV

## *THIRD REVIEW — CHAPTERS XXVII - XXXIV*

I.                          REVIEW STORY

*a.*              **CORIOLĀNUS ET PLĒBS**

Tarquinius cum Rōmānīs iam nōn pugnāvit. Sed pāx longa nōn erat. Mox Rōmānī cum Rōmānīs pugnābant, sed nūllum bellum erat. Duo magna genera Rōmānōrum antīquōrum, plēbs et patriciī, erant. Plēbs propter patriciōrum iniūriās labōrābat. Ubi rēx Tarquinius ex 5 urbe Rōmā expellēbātur, condiciō plēbis erat mala. Lēx cōnsulēs senātōrēsque plēbēiōs nōn permīsit. Plēbs patriciōs in mātrimōnium[1] dūcere[1] nōn poterat; neque multum agrum neque magnam pecūniam habēbat. Plēbī lēgēs quās cōnsulēs patriciī et senātus patricius populō scrībē- 10 bant grātae nōn erant. Plēbs pecūniam urbī Rōmae dabat, sed Rōma pecūniam et praedam plēbī prō eius officiīs nōn dabat ubi agrōs relīquit et cum hostibus prō imperiō pugnāvit. Sī plēbs in agrīs labōrāre nōn poterat, uxōrēs et līberōs sēque cūrāre nōn poterat, quod pecūniam nōn 15 habēbat neque cibum emere poterat. Haec eōs in patriciōs bene incitāvērunt.

Inter haec maior[2] terror erat: subitō Latīnī equitēs ad urbem venērunt et haec clāmāvērunt, "Volscī[3] prōcēdunt et mox Rōmam oppugnābunt."                                    20

Ubi senātus bellum in Volscōs[3] nūntiāvit, plēbs, quae iniūriā senātōrum incitābātur, ita clāmāvit, "Nōs nōn pugnābimus."

---

[1] marry.      [2] greater.      [3] a people of Latium which is a district of central Italy.

375

Tum senātus: "Cūr cum cōpiīs nōn iam incēdētis?"

Ita plēbs: "Vōs neque praedam neque pecūniam mīliti- 25
bus datis; nōs igitur nōn pugnābimus."

Iam patriciī plēbem convocāvērunt et haec nūntiāvē-
runt, "Sī vōs nōbīscum ad bellum prōcēdētis, posteā prō
vestrō genere dē lēgibus prōvidēbimus."

Plēbs igitur cum cōpiīs ad Latium accessit. Statim 30
Rōmānī oppidum Coriolōs, caput Volscōrum[3], oppugnant,
sed in fugam ab hostibus dantur.

Erat quidem inter mīlitēs Rōmānōs patricius ēgregius
cuius nōmen Gāius Mārcius erat. Sociīs bis clāmāvit,
"Cūr vōs in fugam datis? Vērī Rōmānī nōn estis." 35

Ubi mīlitēs hoc audīvērunt, ad pugnam incitābantur et
statim revēnērunt et diū pugnābātur. Iam Gāius hōs
prōdūcēbat et mox Volscī[3] continēbantur et ad oppidum
suum recēdēbant. Gāius hostēs ad portās urbis pepulit
quās Volscī[3] aperuerant. Ubi hoc vīdit, Rōmānīs clāmāvit, 40
"Portae nōbīs aperiuntur. In urbem incēdere in animō
habeō. Veniētisne mēcum?" rogāvit. Tum Gāius et
mīlitēs per portās properāvērunt et urbem celeriter ex-
pugnāvērunt. Paucī Rōmānī cecidērunt. Posteā Volscī[3]
obsidēs dedērunt et mox mīlitēs ex capite Volscōrum[3] ad 45
urbem Rōmam revēnērunt. Magna erat grātia cōpiārum
propter Mārcī vigiliam mīram.

Magna erat grātia quoque patriae quod vigiliā Mārcius
patriam servāvit. Senātus Gāium laudāvit et dīxit,
"Gāius Coriolōs expugnāvit. Est vērus Rōmānus. Corio- 50
lānus dē nōmine urbis quam vīcit semper appellābitur."
Multa praeda quoque Mārciō praemium dabātur; eam
tamen nōn accēpit[4]. Sed senātum ūnum dōnum, cōnsulis
equum, rogāvit. Propter illam victōriam eum Rōmānī
magnō in honōre habēbant. 55

---

[3] a people of Latium which is a district of central Italy.    [4] accept.

Erat etiam multus dolor inter patriciōs et plēbem.
Plēbs in Volscōs[3] prō patriā bene pugnāvit; lēgēs tamen eī
generī grātās patriciī nōn scrībent. Iam propter multās
iniūriās patriciōrum plēbs inter sē dīxit, "Ex urbe dis-
60 cēdēmus. Novum oppidum nōbīs aedificābimus." Statim
urbem relīquērunt et in monte nōn altō quī prope Rōmam
erat castra posuērunt. In hōc, quī posteā Mōns Sacer
appellābātur, diū manēbant.
Iam in urbe Rōmā nūllī agricolae relinquēbantur quī in
65 agrīs labōrāre et in urbem cibum et frūmentum portāre
poterant. Nūllī mīlitēs erant quī eōs iuvāre poterant ubi
hostēs Rōmam oppugnābant.
Ubi cōnsilium plēbis patriciīs ēnūntiābātur, terrēbantur.
"Nisi plēbs," inquiunt, "rūrsus reveniet, et līberī et urbs
70 nostra dēlēbuntur." Plēbī igitur cessērunt. Patriciī enim
eōs ita monuērunt: "Sī reveniēs, tibi tribūnōs dabimus,
quōrum officium erit plēbem dēfendere. Hīs tribūnīs
plēbis magna imperia dabuntur et eī magnō in honōre ā
Rōmānīs habēbuntur." Plēbs igitur revēnit.
75 Pāx quidem inter patriciōs et plēbem diū erat. Sed
Coriolānus et paucī patriciī libenter nōn habēbant
tribūnōs; nam tribūnī plēbī dabant magnum imperium.
Olim[5] Rōmānī nūllum frūmentum habēbant et pauperēs[6]
labōrābant. Magna cōpia frūmentī ā rēge Siciliae mittitur
80 et Rōmānīs datur, sed Coriolānus eam plēbī nōn dabit nisi
tribūnī dēpōnentur.[7] Hoc ubi plēbs audīvit, statim propter
multās causās hunc ex urbe expulit. "Plēbī numquam
amīcus fuit," inquit, "noster hostis est."
Ad Volscōs[3] quōs ipse[8] vīcerat sē in fugam dedit et in
85 exsiliō[9] manēbat. Volscī[3] hostēs Rōmae erant et pars terrae
eōrum ā Rōmānīs iam habēbātur. Eī laetī Coriolānum
ducem suum dēlēgērunt; nam bonus dux erat neque iam

[3] a people of Latium which is a district of central Italy.    [5] once.
[6] poor people.    [7] give up.    [8] himself.    [9] exile.

Rōmam amābat. Tum Co-
riolānus cōpiās et equitēs ē
terrā Volscōrum[3] ēdūxit et 90
ad urbem Rōmam incessit.
Agrōs et aedificia dēlēvit.
Ubi Rōmānī dē Coriolānō
audīvērunt, dīxērunt, "Qui-
buscum pugnābit? Rōmānī 95
cum Rōmānīs nōn pugnant."
Ubi tamen Rōmānī ignem
castrōrum vīdērunt quae
Coriolānus posuerat prope
flūmen Tiberim, terrēbantur. 100
Rōma enim in magnō perī-
culō erat.

Magnā cum vōce clāmā-
vērunt, "Mox Coriolānus et
Volscī[3] Rōmam occupābunt 105
et lībertātem nostram āmit-
tēmus. Id nōn permittēmus."
Sex ē senātōribus ad eum



*Vestal Virgin—Early second
century, A.D.*

nūntiī mittuntur, sed ubi pervēnērunt et dē pāce rogā-
vērunt, Coriolānus haec dīxit, "Rōmānus fuī, sed mē ex 110
patriā meā in fugam populus expulit. Nunc Volscus sum,
neque cum urbe vestrā pācem volō. Mox urbem oppug-
nābimus et mūrōs quōs cum gaudiō[10] vidēbam, dēlēbimus."
Tum senātus trēs Virginēs Vestālēs[11] ex eōrum casā vocā-
vit, quae erat prope fontem Iūturnae, ubi frātrēs Castor et 115
Pollux equīs aquam dederant. Eās quoque senātus dē
pāce ad Coriolānum mīsit. Ad locum properāvērunt ubi
Coriolānus castra posuerat, sed eās nōn audīvit.

"Mātrem eius ad eum mittēmus," inquiunt Rōmānī,

---

[3] a people of Latium, which is a district of central Italy.    [10] joy.    [11] See
Chap. XL, 5.

379

120 "nam etiam sī Rōmam nōn amat, eam amat." Mox eius
māter uxōrem duōsque parvōs fīliōs, et multās fēminās ex
urbe ad castra illīus ēdūxit. Ubi trāns pontem prōcessē-
runt, Coriolānus mātrem suam et uxōrem vīdit et ad eās
properāvit. Eius māter hunc ita appellāvit: "Rōmānusne
125 tū es? Videōne meum fīlium quī vērus Rōmānus fuit nunc
hostem Rōmae? Tibine ignōta sum? Habēsne nūllam
cūram dē patriā? Meusne fīlius es? Tuamne mātrem nōn
permittēs līberam in līberā terrā ē vītā discēdere?"

Coriolānus clāmāvit, "Quid fēcistī[12], māter? Tū ūna
130 Rōmam servāvistī, sed fīlium tuum servāre nōn poteris.
Eum vīcistī." Tum secundā[13] vigiliā cōpiās ad mare in
terram Volscōrum[3] redūxit neque umquam posteā mātrem
suam vīdit. Quod Volscī[3] Rōmam occupāre nōn potuerant,
Coriolānum necāvērunt.

135 Potestisne dare nōmina sex virōrum ēgregiōrum Rō-
mānōrum dē quibus lēgistis in hōc librō?

---

[3] a people of Latium which is a district of central Italy.    [12] done.    [13] second.

*b.*            **VOCABULARY**

| | |
|---|---|
| **bellum, -ī,** n., 2 | *war* |
| **praeda, -ae,** f., 1 | *booty, plunder, prey* |
| **quod,** conj. | *because* |
| **incitō, -āre,** 1 | *urge on, arouse* |
| **inter,** prep. with acc. | *between, among* |
| **vērus, -a, -um,** m., f., n., 1 & 2 | *true* |
| **vigilia, -ae,** f., 1 | *guard, watch* (one fourth of the night); *watchfulness* |
| **pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus,** 3 | *put, place, set; station* |
| **plēbs, plēbis,** f., 3 | *the common people, the "plebs"* |

*c.*       **NEW TYPES OF OLD FRIENDS**

  (1) **castra pōnere,** *to pitch camp* (idiom)
  (2) **reveniō:** re + veniō. What is the meaning?
  (3) **incēdō:** in, *on* + cēdō, *move* = *advance, march*

# HORĀTIUS

LESSON
OBJECTIVES
- To learn about Ror
  commitment to the
  community
- To learn the intens
  pronoun/adjective
- To learn about wor
  often confused

507 ?

**N**unc in locīs commodīs sedēbimus et legēmus dē Horātiō[1], virō fortī
nōbilīque genere. Sī haec fābula, nōn tibi nōta, tē dēlectābit[2], tū ipse lege
eandem sorōribus frātribusque tuīs parvīs (sī frātrēs sorōrēsque habēs), quī
circum tē sedēbunt et magnō cum studiō audient.

Tarquiniī[3], ā Rōmānīs pulsī, auxilium petīvērunt ā Porsenā[4], rēge 5
Etrūscōrum. Itaque Porsena ipse cum multīs mīlitibus Rōmam[5] vēnit.
Rōmānī, dē salūte commūnī incertī, territī sunt, quod magna erat potestās
Etrūscōrum magnumque Porsenae nōmen. Rōmānī quī agrōs colēbant in
oppidum migrāvērunt; portās clausērunt et oppidum ipsum praesidiīs
dēfendērunt. Pars urbis Tiberī[6] flūmine mūnīta est. Pōns sublicius[7] iter 10
hostibus dabat, sed ēgregius vir prohibuit, Horātius Coclēs[8], illō cognōmine
appellātus quod in proeliō oculum āmīserat. Is, extrēmā pontis parte
occupātā, sōlus sine auxiliō mīlitēs hostium intercēpit et sustinuit et
Rōmānōs quī fugiēbant pontem frangere iussit. Ipsa audācia[9] hostēs terruit.
Ponte frāctō, Horātius nōn dubitāvit sed armīs impedītus praeceps in Tiberim 15
dēsiluit[10] et per multa tēla[11] integer ad Rōmānōs trānāvit[12]. Eius virtūte
oppidum nōn expugnātum est et potestās Porsenae frācta est. Grāta ob
factum clārum eius cīvitās fuit. Multī agrī eī pūblicē datī sunt, quōs ad
terminum vītae coluit. Exemplum virtūtis ab eō prōpositum Rōmānī semper
memoriā retinuērunt.                                                    20

[1] *Horatius (Horā´shus)*
[2] translate by the present: *pl*
[3] *the Tar´quins*, Etruscan rule
  Rome in the sixth century
[4] *Por´sena*
[5] *to Rome*
[6] *Tiber River* (**Tiberis, -is** m. i
  "pure" i-stem; its acc. sing
  in **-im** [see line 15].)
[7] *bridge made of wooden pilii*
[8] *Cō´clēs ("One-Eye")*. Many
  Romans acquired a nickna:
  (**cognōmen**) from some e
  or physical characteristic (:
  page 467).
[9] *boldness*
[10] *jumped down*
[11] *spears*
[12] *swam across*

## Questions

1. What does the narrator of this passage want his audience to do?
2. If the reader enjoys the story, what is he or she asked to do then?
3. Why did Porsena go to Rome?
4. Why were the Romans frightened?
5. How was Porsena prevented from entering the city?
6. What natural barrier prevented the Etruscans from attacking Rome?
7. Who saved Rome? How?
8. How did the hero escape?
9. What was his reward?
10. How did Cocles get his name?

LFA

## HORATIUS SAVES ROME

"Illō tempore," ita Dionȳsius nārrāvit, "cum Porsena atque
Etrūscī in rīpā Tiberis cōnstitērunt, Horātius Cocles, validus
mīles Rōmānus, prope pontem forte stābat.[1] Simul atque
perīculum Rōmae et timōrem cēterōrum Rōmānōrum cognō-
5 vit, nōn diū dubitāvit sed ducibus Rōmānīs ita clāmāvit:
'Verba mea, ducēs, audīte. Cum illīs Etrūscīs sōlus pugnāre
et gladiō [1] meō pontem dēfendere cupiō, dum mīlitēs nostrī
ā tergō[2] pontem dēlent.[3]' Sine morā duo sociī, Larcius et Hermi-
nius, verbīs Horātī adductī [2], clāmāvērunt: 'Nōs[4] quoque
10 auxilium dare et cum Horātiō pontem dēfendere audēmus.'

"Tum Horātius cum sociīs trāns pontem ad Etrūscōs con-
tendit. Etrūscī statim multa tēla[5] mīsērunt, sed Horātium
et sociōs neque pīlīs[6] neque sagittīs vulnerāre potuērunt. In-
terim Rōmānī ā tergō pontem celeriter dēlēbant. Jam parva
15 pars sōla pontis in flūmine stat. Tum Rōmānī vocant: 'Nōlīte,
sociī, in ponte manēre, sed vōs[7] servāte!' Larcius et Herminius
Horātium relīquērunt et ad Rōmānōs celeriter vēnērunt. Rō-
mānī autem illīs verbīs Horātium nōn commōvērunt. In ponte
mānsit. Pugnāre nōn dēstitit.

20 "Nunc pōns reliquus in Tiberim dēcidēbat.[8] Tandem Horā-
tius armātus[9] in flūmen dēsiluit.[10] Vulnerātus inter tēla Etrūs-
cōrum ad sociōs vēnit. Hōc modō virtūs magna hujus virī
validī Rōmam servāvit. Rōmānī statuam[11] Horātī in forō
posuērunt. Magna erat fāma Horātī. Nōnne pontem quem[12]
25 Horātius dēfendit vidēre cupitis?"

[NOTES] 1. *stō, stāre, stetī*, stand. 2. *ā tergō*, behind me. 3. *dēleō, -ēre,- ēvī*,
destroy. 4. *nōs*, we (*nom.*). 5. *tēlum, -ī* (*n.*), weapon. 6. *pīlum, -ī* (*n.*),
javelin. 7. *vōs*, yourselves (*acc.*). 8. *dēcidō, -ere, -cidī*, fall. 9. *armō, -āre,
-āvī, -ātus*, arm. 10. *dēsiliō, -īre, -siluī*, leap down. 11. *statua, -ae* (*f.*),
statue. 12. *quem*, which (*acc.*).

## GRAMMAR NOTES

*[The Ablative Used to Express Means or Instrument.]*
**1.** In the sentence *We fight with swords*, the phrase *with swords* tells
the means or instrument with which the fighting is done. In Latin

# III.

# The Republic

## The First Sit-Down Strike

Prīmīs temporibus urbis Rōmae līberae māgna fuit discordia. Incolae Rōmae antīquae in duo genera dīvīsī sunt. Nōbilēs patrēs aut patriciī appellābantur; reliquī plēbs nōminābantur. Patriciī potestātem, agrōs, pecūniam habēbant; plēbs erat pauper nec ūlla jūra habēbat. Plēbs multās ā patriciīs injūriās accēpit. Patriciī lēgēs fēcērunt et administrāvērunt, sed lēgēs nōn scrīptae sunt. Plēbs patriciōs in mātrimōnium dūcere nōn poterat. Plēbs neque pecūniam neque agrōs possēdit (*possessed*).

Postquam ūltimus (*last*) rēx Rōmā expulsus est erat dissensiō inter patrēs et plēbem propter aes aliēnum (*debt*). Dēbitōrēs ā crēditōribus servī factī sunt. Paene tōta plēbs post bella aere aliēnō premēbātur quod plēbī, quae agrōs suōs relīquerat et cum hostibus pūgnāverat, pecūnia et praeda nōn datae sunt. Praetereā uxōrēs et līberī per tempus bellī sine cibō et cōpiīs erant.

Ubi plēbs cōnsulēs auxilium rogāvit, nūllum auxilium illī datum est. Subitō bellum cum Volscīs nūntiātum est. Plēbs māgnō gaudiō clāmāvit: "Nōn pūgnābimus. Ex agrīs nostrīs ad bellum nōn prōcēdēmus. Uxōrēs et līberōs et casās nōn relinquēmus."

Volscī erant hostēs ācrēs et jam prope urbem erant. Cōnsulēs et patriciī quī perterritī sunt plēbī nūntiāvērunt: "Sī prō Rōmā et patriā pūgnāveritis, praeda et pecūnia mīlitibus dabuntur et lēgēs scrībentur." Tum plēbs uxōrēs, līberōs, agrōs, casās relīquit et iterum cum hostibus pūgnāvit. Volscī victī sunt; tamen post bellum praemia plēbī nōn data sunt, mīlitēs sine stipendiō (*pay*) erant, dēbitōrēs in servitūtem ductī sunt, lēgēs nōn scrībēbantur.

Injūstitia et violentia cōnsulum ad īram plēbem incitāvērunt. Prīmō dē caede cōnsulum et senātōrum dēlīberāvērunt. Tum inter sē statuērunt: "Rōmam relinquēmus et novum oppidum aedificābimus." Māgna pars plēbis ex urbe ad Sacrum Montem sēcessit. Ibi diū manēbat.

Intereā (*Meanwhile*) Rōmae cōnsilium plēbis cōnsulibus et patribus nūntiātum est. Māgnus terror hōs occupāvit. Cibum et frūmentum nōn habēbant; nūllī agricolae in agrīs labōrābant. Perterritī sunt quod hostēs erant ācrēs et Rōmae paucī erant mīlitēs. Ad plēbem missus est Menēnius Agrippa, ipse plēbēius (*of the people*) et plēbī cārus.

The following are all derived from the fourth principal parts of verbs: *advent, cult, cant, habit, debit, event, exit, convent, congress, egress.* Add **-us** and you have a fourth declension noun. They are usually abstract nouns and denote action or the result of an action.

What English words are derived from these nouns of the fourth declension: **ūsus, gradus, lacus, senātus, spīritus, concursus?** Do not confuse **cōnsēnsus** and **cēnsus.** The former is derived from **con + sentīre,** *to think,* and the latter from **cēnsēre,** *to enroll.* Both **sentīre** and **cēnsēre** have several meanings, one of which is *to think.* Perhaps that is the reason the spelling of these two words is sometimes confused.

## SENTENCE PATTERNS

A. Translate into English:

1. Senātus populusque Rōmānus adventū hostium perterritus est.
2. Nōnne patria nostra multōs annōs tūta sine māgnīs exercitibus erat?
3. In cōnspectū Deī omnēs hominēs sunt līberī parēsque.
4. Nōnne Rōmānī impetum ācrem in hostēs fēcērunt?
5. Hodiē puer domī suae est sed crās domum frātris perveniet.
6. Cīvēs Rōmānī lēgēs novās legere et cōgnōscere ā magistrātibus jūssī sunt.
7. Ōs cibum accipere necesse est aut vīta ē corpore discēdet.
8. Manus mīlitum longum spatium per montēs iter fēcit.
9. Propter māgnum metum magistrātūs pater exercitum auxilium rogāvit.
10. Vir Scaevola appellātus est quod manum dextram āmīserat.

B. Translate into Latin:

1. Because of his great fear the leader of the right wing of the army did not attack the enemy quickly.
2. Two magistrates were chosen from the people.
3. It was the duty of the ten men to write the laws and of the citizens to read and to learn them.
4. If the mouth does not receive the food, the body will not be strong.
5. For many years they walked every day for many miles.

### The First Sit-Down Strike (continued)

Ubi Menēnius Agrippa ad castra pervēnit, adventus ējus plēbī grātus erat et eum bene accēpit. Populō (ita fāma erat) hanc fābulam narrāvit lēgātus. "Corpus humānum multa membra habet, inter quae sunt manūs, ōs, dentēs, venter *(stomach).* Ōlim reliquae partēs corporis īrātae erant, quod venter omnia accēpit sed nihil sibi ēgit. Tum inter sē hoc cōnsilium cēpērunt.

*229*

OLH

"Dentēs nūllum cibum mandere (*chew*), ōs nūllum cibum accipere, manūs nūllum cibum ad ōs ferre (*carry*) statuērunt. Itaque venter alī (*to be nourished*) nōn poterat, et tōtum corpus ē vītā discessit. Nōlīte, Ō cīvēs, propter discordiam vestram patriam eōdem modō (*manner*) dēlēre."

Necesse erat corpus hūmānum omnēs partēs habēre; ita necesse erat patriam et patrēs et plēbem habēre. Plēbs fābulam lēgātī intellēxit (*understood*) et condiciōnēs pācis accēpit. Novī magistrātūs creātī sunt quōrum erat officium contrā violentiam cōnsulum plēbī auxilium semper dare. Duo tribūnī ex genere plēbis dēlēctī sunt quī multōs annōs jūra cīvium Rōmānōrum dēfendēbant.

Post haec breve tempus inter patrēs plēbemque erat pāx. Cōnsulēs autem tōtam potestātem sibi tenēre cupīvērunt. Tribūnī auctōritātem jūraque plēbis augēre quoque cupīvērunt. Tandem trēs lēgātī dēlēctī sunt et Athēnās missī sunt. Officium erat lēgātōrum lēgēs Solōnis et mōrēs Graecōrum cōgnōscere.

Ubi lēgātī ē Graeciā revertērunt (*returned*), decemvirī prō duo cōnsulibus creātī sunt. Tōta potestās hīs decemvirīs ūnum annum data est. Officium decemvirōrum erat lēgēs scrībere. Erat inter decemvirōs Appius Claudius, prīnceps tōtius magistrātūs, quī prīmō senātuī et cīvibus grātus erat. Ille puellam, nōmine Verginiam, fīliam centuriōnis, amābat. Socius decemvirī puellam capere jūssus est. "Verginia erat," inquit (*he said*), "fīlia ūnīus ex servīs ējus." Puella serva nōn erat, sed hoc maleficium commissum est. Ad tribūnal Appī jūdicis (*judge*) ducta est.

Eō tempore exercitus erat in castrīs nōn longē ab urbe. Nūntius ad patrem puellae missus est quī Rōmam celeriter vēnit. Ubi patrem miserum nēmō juvāre cupīvit, quod omnēs decemvirum inīquum timēbant, fīliam suam occīdit et ad exercitum fūgit. Mīlitēs quibus omnia nūntiāvit cum ferē omnī plēbe ad Montem Sacrum prōcessērunt. Decemvirī ē magistrātū expulsī sunt, et cōnsulēs tribūnīque plēbis iterum creātī sunt.

# *Comprehensive Review: Units* XXXVI–XL

A. Write the dative singular, gender, base, and meaning:

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| ōs | plēbs | cornū | praesidium | servitūs | exercitus |
| mōs | poena | manus | cōnspectus | adventus | maleficium |
| jūs | metus | caedēs | auctōritās | impetus | magistrātus |
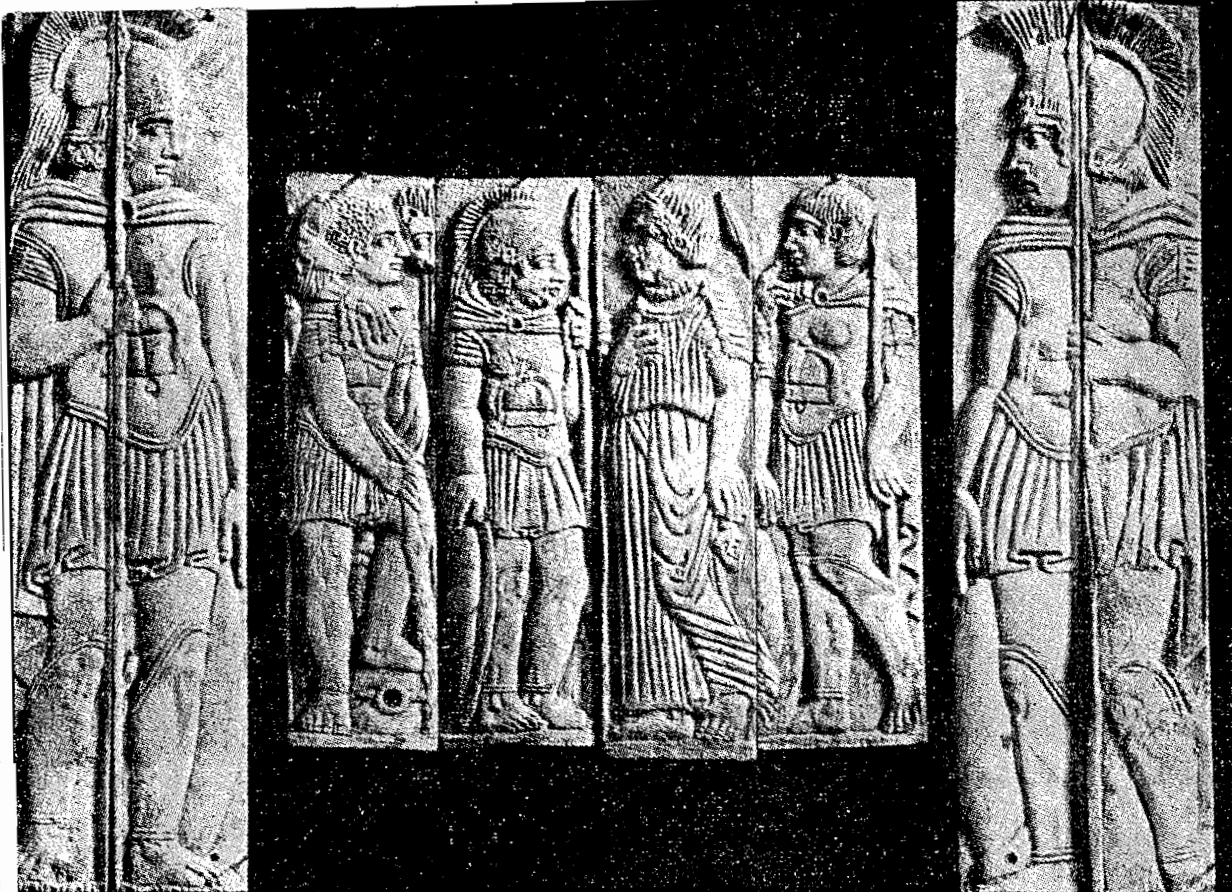
**Latin Warriors.** *Ivory plaques belonging to the adornment of a wooden box—third Cent. B.C.*

## CHAPTER XXXVI

1.                                    FABIĪ ET PLĒBS

Erat in urbe antīquā Rōmā gēns Fabia appellāta. Gēns
Fabiōrum magna erat et multās familiās habēbat. Familia
patrem et mātrem et fīliōs et fīliās quās virī in mātri-
mōnium[1] nōn dūxerant[1], et uxōrēs līberōsque fīliōrum
5 habēbat, sed gēns habēbat cūnctās familiās quae nōmen
Fabium habēbat. In eā gente magnus numerus virōrum
et fēminārum et līberōrum erat.

Fabiī erant patriciī et saepe cōnsulēs legēbantur. Quod
Fabiī cum tribūnīs semper pugnābant, Fabiī in grātiā

_____
[1] marry.

apud[2] 
vīcit et 
niam ne
Id genu
tempor
Caesō 
Hunc p
Mox  
Rōman
arma o
nābātu
Rōmān
  Sed 
Caesō 
Rōmān
discessi
dux er
equitēs
  Mīli
sumus
ducem
revenīr
ab hos
  Ubi
patrici
Rōmā
dēbēm
et mo
Rōmae
ūnus ē
magnā
cēdent

_____
[2] with.

LWR

apud[2] plēbem nōn erant. Ubi Quīntus Fabius Volscōs 10
vīcit et illōrum oppida occupāvit, mīlitibus neque pecū-
niam neque praedam dedit, neque vulnerātōs virōs cūrāvit.
Id genus praemī mīlitēs libenter nōn habēbant. Ex hōc
tempore Fabium igitur nōmen plēbī nōn grātum erat;
Caesō Fabius tamen ūnus ē nōvīs cōnsulibus dēligitur. 15
Hunc plēbs nōn amābat et in patriciōs rūrsus incitābātur.
Mox Volscī et Aequī, Rōmānōrum hostēs, ad urbem
Rōmam incēdēbant. Statim ūnō animō patriciī et plēbs
arma occupāvērunt et ad hostēs prōcēdēbant. Diū pug-
nābātur, et posteā hostēs victī sē in fugam dedērunt. 20
Rōmānī victōrēs ad urbem rūrsus revēnērunt.

Sed subitō Aequī cum Rōmānīs rūrsus pugnābant.
Caesō Fabius cōpiās Rōmānās in Aequōs prōdūxit quōs
Rōmānī timēbant. Ex urbe cum equitibus et mīlitibus
discessit et prō hostium castrīs cōpiās īnstrūxit. Bonus 25
dux erat et pugnam bene īnstrūxit. Sed ubi signum dedit,
equitēs sōlī[3], quī cūnctī patriciī erant, in hostēs incessērunt.

Mīlitēs quī erant plēbēs haec ēnūntiāvērunt, "Nōn
sumus timidī, sed nōn hostēs oppugnābimus quod nostrum
ducem cōnsulem nōn amāmus. Eum ad urbem Rōmam 30
revenīre victum volumus." Posteā ab suīs mīlitibus nōn
ab hostibus victus in urbem revēnit.

Ubi Rōmae multī hostēs audīvērunt dē negōtiō inter
patriciōs et plēbem, ita dīxērunt, "Condiciōnēs in urbe
Rōmā malae sunt; cōpiās nostrās in Rōmānōs dūcere 35
dēbēmus." Tum mīlitēs multārum urbium convocantur
et mox magnus numerus Veientium cum sociīs ad mūrōs
Rōmae prōcēdit. Hic nūntius senātum terrēbat quod
ūnus ē gente Fabiōrum nunc cōnsul erat. Cōnsulēs cum
magnā cūrā inter sē dīxērunt: "Quid mīlitēs agent? In- 40
cēdentne in hostēs an sē in fugam dabunt? Pugnābuntne

---

[2] with.      [3] alone.

*Etruscan Warrior*
*450 B.C.*

cum hostibus an in castrīs
manēbunt?" Mīlitēs tamen
ā cōnsulibus vocātī per por-
45 tās urbis apertās in hostēs
perdūcuntur. Cōnsulēs ubi
ad hostēs accessērunt, prope
montem altum castra posuē-
runt sed nōn pugnāvērunt.
50 Castrīs sē tenēbant.

Mīlitēs in castrīs diū ma-
nēbant. Hostēs Rōmānōrum
inter sē dīxērunt, "Est rūrsus
illud negōtium inter patriciōs
55 et plēbem. Mīlitēs nōn pug-
nābunt. Nōs victōrēs iam su-
mus." Saepe ad castra Rō-
māna accessērunt et mīliti-
bus clāmāvērunt, "Vōs nōs
60 timētis; nōn pugnābitis. Vōs
timidī estis. Vōs timidī estis.
Hoc est tempus pugnae."

Iam propter hās iniūriās mīlitēs quī pugnāre in animō
nōn habuerant pugnam rogāvērunt, sed Fabius hōs in
65 castrīs manēre coēgit. Dīxit, "Nōndum[4] tempus pugnae
vēnit."

Posteā cōpiās īnstrūxit et monuit: "Nisi hōc bellō
vincēmus, nōs servī erimus." Tum quaesīvit: "Quid
agētis, sī ego vōs in hostēs dūcam? Potestisne vincere?
70 Pugnābitisne an in castrīs manēbitis? Vincēminī an
vincētis? Numquam signum dabō nisi pugnābitis."

Ūnus ex mīlitibus cum magnā vōce clāmāvit, "Vērus
Rōmānus sum. Honōrem Rōmae dēfendam. Victor ex

---

[4] not yet.

agrō rev
Rōma r
vērunt.

Mīlitē
signum
occupan
bant; m
runt. 1
redūcun
patriciō
videt dē
quī mīli
amābat.

Sed ia
quod pl
"Patrici
dare pe
dēlēbim

Ubi
dīxērun
locum ι
urbem
Rōmam

---

[5] the sar

2.

gēns, ger
vulnerō,
īnstruō, -

tempus,
an, (conj
aut, (con
-idus, (a

agrō reveniam aut ab hostibus necābor. Lībertātem suam Rōma nōn āmittet." Tum idem[5] cūnctī mīlitēs clāmā-75 vērunt.

Mīlitēs statim ēductī et prope montem altum īnstrūctī signum exspectābant. Quartā[6] vigiliā datur signum; arma occupant, et in pugnam properant. Rōmānī bene pugnā-bant; mox hostēs in fugam sē dedērunt et in castra recessē-80 runt. Tum mīlitēs et obsidēs datī ad urbem Rōmam redūcuntur. Fabius inter virōs praedam dīvidit. Etiam patriciōs mīlitēs plēbēiōs vulnerātōs cūrāre iubet et prō-videt dē pecūniā, dōnīs. Laudāvit plēbs Fabiōs et patriciōs quī mīlitēs vulnerātōs cūrābant; iam gentem Fabiōrum 85 amābat.

Sed iam Fabiī cum patriciīs pācem habēre nōn poterant quod plēbem iuvābant. Fabiī inter sē multa dīxērunt: "Patriciī imperium habent et nōs plēbī nūllum auxilium dare permittent; nōs igitur relinquēmus Rōmam aut 90 dēlēbimur."

Ubi Rōmānī dē cōnsiliō Fabiōrum audīvērunt, dīxērunt, "Quibuscum habitābunt?" Mox tamen Fabiī locum ubi erat fōns aquae bonae invēnērunt et novam urbem aedificāvērunt." Flūmen Cremeram quod prope 95 Rōmam est dēlēgērunt.

---

[5] the same thing.          [6] fourth.

2.                          **VOCABULARY**

| | |
|---|---|
| **gēns, gentis, (gentium)** f., 3 | *clan, tribe, people, nation* |
| **vulnerō, -āre,** 1 | *wound* |
| **īnstruō, -ere, īnstrūxī, īnstrūctus,** 3 | *arrange, draw up, prepare, provide* |
| **tempus, temporis,** n., 3 | *time; right time* |
| **an,** (conj. in double direct questions) | *or* |
| **aut,** (conj. in statements) | *or* |
| **-idus,** (adj. suffix) | shows *state* or *condition* |

395

# CHAPTER XXXVII

**1.** <span>FABIĪ ET VEIENTĒS</span>

Etiam nunc Rōmānī pācem nōn habēbant; nam hostēs eōrum cūnctī arma capiēbant et in eōs rūrsus sē incitābant. Cōpiae ā Rōmānīs in Volscōs, Aequōs, Sabīnōs mittuntur et bellum in multīs locīs eōdem[1] tempore[1] geritur.

5 Mox neque pāx neque bellum cum Veientibus fuit. Veientēs in agrōs Rōmānōrum vēnērunt et frūmentum dēlēvērunt; tum sine morā discessērunt. Sī Rōmānī mīlitēs in eōs mittunt, Veientēs tēla nōn iaciunt sed in patriā suā manent. Sed sī Rōmānī nōn mittunt mīlitēs, 10 Veientēs arma occupant et in terram eōrum prōcēdunt. Id genus pugnae Rōmānīs nōn grātum est. Senātōrēs igitur magnā cum cūrā spectant, nam Veientēs pācem et amīcitiam cum Rōmānīs cōnfirmāre nōn volunt. Iam Fabiī, ut[2] dictum est,[2] cum patriciīs pācem habēre nōn 15 poterant quod plēbem iuvābant. Inter sē dīxērunt: nōs Rōmam relinquēmus et cum Veientibus bellum gerēmus.

Tum Caesō Fabius, fīlius familiae ēgregiae, cōnsul in senātum venit et magnā vōce dīcit; "Prō gente Fabiōrum dīcō. Cum multīs hostibus bellum geritis. Vōs pugnātis 20 cum Sabīnīs et Aequīs et Volscīs et Veientibus quī ex agrīs vestrīs praedam saepe agunt. Quod sunt multī mīlitēs vulnerātī, paucōs habētis quī cum illīs hostibus pugnāre possunt. Gēns Fabiōrum Rōmam iuvāre vult. Sī vestrum imperium cōnfirmāre grātum vōbīs est, nostrae gentī 25 hoc bellum permittētis quod cum Veientibus geritis. Fabia gēns et dē mīlitibus et pecūniā prōvidēbit. Nōn timidī

---

[1] at the same time.  [2] *as it has been said.*

402

sumus neque nōs hoc negō-
tium terret. Honōrem nōmi-
nis Rōmānī servābimus aut
ab hostibus necābimur." 30

Laetī senātōrēs hoc cōnsi-
lium ē Fabiō audīvērunt et
sine morā Fabiīs hoc bellum
permīsērunt. Cūnctī Fabiōs
laudāvērunt. Sunt trecentī[3] 35
sex virī quī arma capiunt et
quartā[4] vigiliā per portās
apertās ad flūmen Cremeram
ubi Fabiī novam urbem aedi-
ficāre in animō habent ince- 40
dunt. Ubi Fabiī ad flūmen
Cremeram pervēnērunt, quod

*Veii.* Hermes (Mercury)—500 B.C.

prope terram Veientium erat, castra prope fontem in eō
locō posuērunt ubi posteā parvam urbem et arcem aedifi-
cāvērunt. Tum Fabiī ā duce īnstrūctī statim in Veientēs 45
tēla iaciēbant et bellum cum hīs diū gerēbant. Posteā
Fabiī hostēs in fugam dedērunt. Sed ignōtī Rōmānīs
Veientēs cum sociīs revēnērunt et in agrīs quī erant post[5]
montem altum sē occultāvērunt. Subitō ex agrīs properā-
vērunt et castra Rōmāna oppugnābant. Diū pugnābātur. 50
Rūrsus Rōmānī Veientēs vīcērunt quī iam ex agrīs
Rōmānīs recessērunt. Ad suam urbem Veiōs revēnērunt
et ibi in pāce diū permanēbant. Sed Veientēs in animō
semper habēbant Fabium et eius virōs rūrsus oppugnāre.

Iam mōs[6] Fabiōrum erat quotannīs[7] ad montem quī erat 55
prope Rōmam incēdere et ibi in templō deīs dōna et sacri-
ficia dare. Sine armīs Fabiī semper incēdēbant quod etiam
in tempore bellī ad templum arma numquam portābant.

[3] 300.　　　　[4] fourth.　　　[5] behind.　　　[6] custom.　　　[7] yearly.

403

Ubi Veientēs dē sacrificiīs audīvērunt, animus eōrum
60 cōnfirmābātur et magnō cum gaudiō[8] haec inter sē ēnūn-
tiāvērunt: "Tum Rōmānōs oppugnāre dēbēmus; nam
erunt sine armīs." Mox Fabius cūnctōs virōs gentis Fabiae
ad templum prōdūxit. Veientēs armātī sē in silvā prope
viam quae ad templum dūcēbat bene occultāvērunt. Ibi
65 exspectābant Fabiōs quōs nūllus amīcus monuit. Ubi
Rōmānōs vīdērunt, sine morā ex silvā properāvērunt et
tēla iaciēbant. Quod Fabiī sine armīs erant sē bene
dēfendere nōn poterant sed tamen pugnābant. Timidī
hostēs quī armātī in silvīs sē occultāverant cūnctōs Fabiōs
70 quī sine armīs erant celeriter necāvērunt. Sed ex cūnctā
gente Fabiā ūnus parvus puer cuius pater frāter ducis erat
nōn necābātur; nam in castrīs cum fēminīs permanēbat.

Hoc bellum inter Veientēs et Rōmānōs nōn iam gerē-
bātur; nam Veientēs gentem Fabiōrum dēlēvērunt. Sed
75 Rōmānī cum Aequīs etiam pugnābant. Hoc Aequicum
bellum erat id in quō Cincinnātus ex agrīs vocātus honō-
rem nōminis populī Rōmānī dēfendit. Sed dē Cincinnātō
iam lēgistis. Eam fābulam in Capite XII invēnistis.

Veientēs saepe victī cum Rōmānīs in pāce numquam
80 diū permanēbant; cum hīs igitur bellum rūrsus gerēbant.
Rōmānī cum cūrā ita clāmāvērunt: "Numquam nostram
urbem servābimus nisi Veiōs dēlēbimus. Pugnābimusne
an vincēmur? Lībertātemne nostram āmittēmus?" Rō-
mānī igitur suās cōpiās bene armātās convocāvērunt et
85 sine morā in urbem Veiōs prōcessērunt et tēla iēcērunt.
Multōs annōs Rōmānī oppidum oppugnābant sed capere
nōn poterant. Tum Camillum dictātōrem, vērum Rō-
mānum, lēgērunt. Camillō imperium dedērunt et cum
paucīs equitibus eum ad cōpiās mīsērunt. In Capite
90 XXXVIII legētis dē Camillō duce.

_____

[8] joy.

404

iendly,

ᵥersonal

ᵥnsion)

difficulty

message

)

(*social*)

llowing

*n, im-*

*: argu-*

1 in

*sāncti-*

*–ium:*

*vestī-*

ᵥhat

*audī-*

*obser-*

*a, ant;*

*olum-*

erābat.

B. Translate into Latin:

1. The Romans did not always overcome (their) neighbors, did they?
2. The farmers had friendly allies, didn't they?
3. Why did the farmers remain in the towns after the wars?
4. The power of the allies was not great, was it?
5. Did the inhabitants of the village fear (their) hostile neighbors?

## Famous Roman Farmers

Cincinnātus, agricola clārus, Rōmae (458 B.C.) habitābat. Rōmānī cum Aequīs, fīnitimīs inimīcīs, pūgnābant. Aequī firmī (*strong*) Rōmānōs superābant. Rōmānī Aequōs timēbant. Nūntiī ad casam Cincinnātī properābant. Cincinnātum esse (*to be*) dictātōrem dēsīderābant. Ibi vir clārus cum fīliīs et servīs industriīs in agrīs arābat. Esse dictātor nōn dēsīderābat, sed Rōmam amābat. Cum nūntiīs ad oppidum properābat.

Cincinnātus cum multīs Rōmānīs, māgnīs et parvīs, in Aequōs pūgnābat. Rōmānī Aequōs terrēbant et superābant. Post bellum, Cincinnātus Rōmae manēre nōn dēsīderābat. Pecūniam et imperium nōn dēsīderābat. Terram bonam amābat, et ad parvum agrum properābat.

Mārcus Porcius Catō quoque agricola Rōmānus erat. Multīs bellīs vir clārus prō patriā Rōmā pūgnābat. Posteā māgnās terrās et multōs servōs habēbat. Rōmānōs multa dē agrīcultūrā docēbat.

Horātius, poēta Rōmānus, parvum agrum Sabīnum amābat. Vergilius, poēta Rōmānus quoque, terram bonam laudābat. Multa bona dē apibus (*about bees*) Rōmānōs docēbat. Varrō et Plinius librōs (*books*) dē agrīs et agricolīs parābant.

Multī Rōmānī villās rusticās et urbānās habēbant. Agricolae nōn erant, sed villās amābant et saepe vīsitābant. Hodiē in Ītaliā et in antīquīs prōvinciīs Rōmānīs ruīnās villārum māgnārum et pulchrārum spectāmus et laudāmus.

# Comprehensive Review: Units VI–X

A. Write in Latin the nominative and the base of each noun:

| man | word | field | master | trumpet | enemy | message | power |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| boy | town | slave | friend | command | nature | kingdom | lord |
| son | ally | grain | danger | village | comrade | children | sky |
| war | fame | water | teacher | messenger | business | neighbors | glory |

55

OLH

conquered in battle by the enemy.   8. Our messengers were sent into the town by the lieutenant.   9. The citizens will always remember the ancient battles.   10. In the towns and in the plains we shall fight with great daring against our enemies.

## —— Reading ——

### CINCINNATUS

In numerō virōrum Rōmānōrum antīquōrum est Cincinnātus. Ab Rōmānīs nōmen Cincinnātī memoriā semper tenēbātur. Acer dux mīlitum in bellō erat; in pāce agricola clārus. In parvā villā habitābat, et cūrā agrōrum dēlectābātur. Ubi in castrīs nōn erat, vītam in agrīs agēbat.

Rōmānī cum fīnitimīs bellum gerēbant. Cōnsul cum cōpiīs Rōmānīs in montibus miserē labōrābat. Quīnque ex mīlitibus nūntiī ad urbem contendērunt et cīvibus perīculum nūntiāvērunt:

"Sī auxilium ad cōnsulem nōn mīseritis, cōnsul cum reliquīs cōpiīs vincētur."

Tum ab cīvibus Cincinnātus dux dēlēctus est et cum novīs cōpiīs ex urbe contrā hostēs excessit. Mīlitēs cōnsulis servātī sunt; arma ab hostibus sunt trādita. Posteā Cincinnātus ad vīllam in triumphō reductus est.

*Model of a covered battering ram used against fortifications*
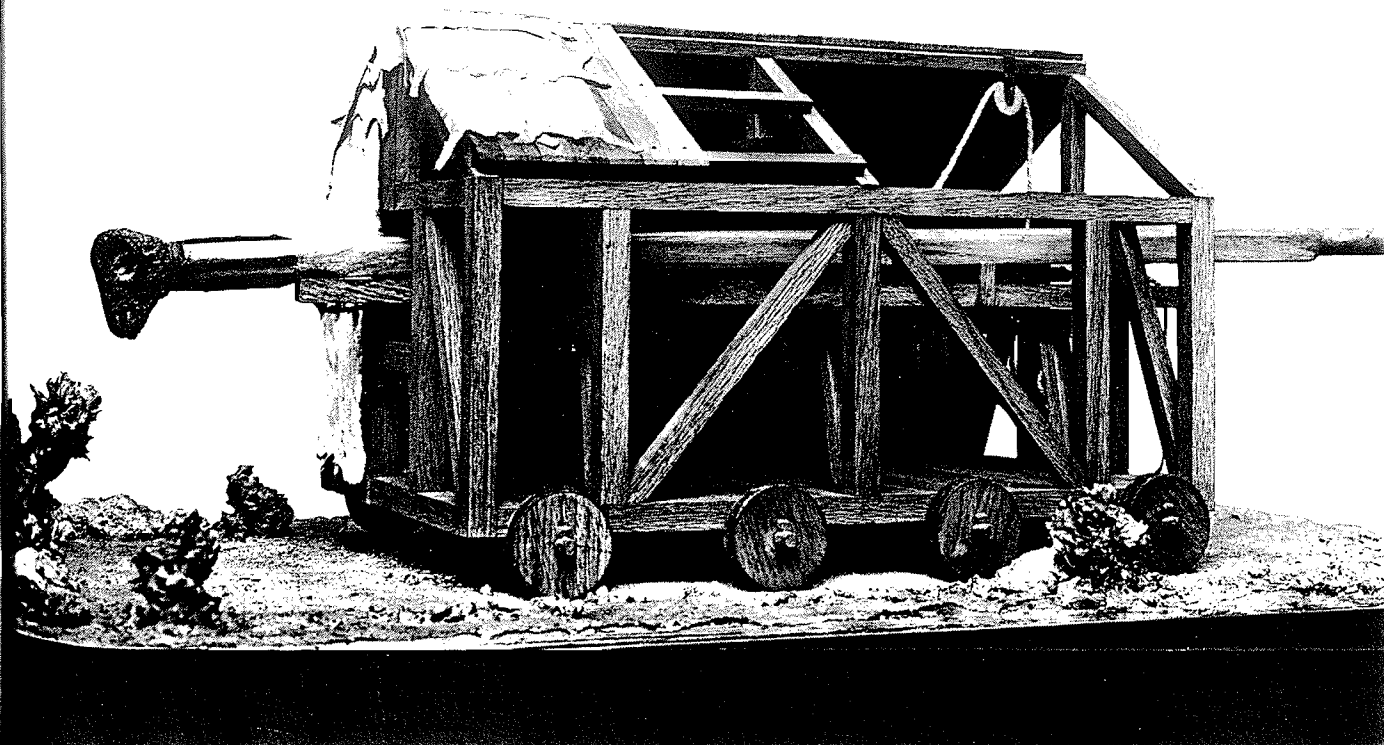
# CHAPTER XII

## I.          CINCINNĀTUS

Lesbia et Aspāsia, puellae Graecae Vibiam Tertiamque, amīcās firmās prope vīllam vident. Ad vīllam igitur amīcārum properant. Puellae Rōmānae, Vibia Tertiaque, rogant, "Amātisne silvās?"

5   "Silvās pulchrās amāmus," Lesbia et Aspāsia respondent.

Vibia Tertiaque igitur fīliae Sullae, amīcās novās in silvam propinquam dūcunt. Serva firma cum dominīs properat. Bēstiās audiunt sed bēstiae puellās nōn terrent.
10 Puerum etiam audiunt. Puer deum appellat et lingua puerī est pulchra. Deus est Apollō, filius Lātōnae. Apollō puerōs cūrat; dea lūnae Diāna puellās cūrat. Diāna et Apollō cum nymphīs in silvīs saepe habitant. Serva nunc rogat, "Audītisne libenter fābulās dē Graecīs
15 deīs deābusque?"

Aspāsia respondet, "Fābulās dē deīs et deābus Graecīs libenter audīmus. Cūr dē Graeciā Vibia et Tertia fābulās nōn nārrant?"

"Sumus Rōmānae neque dē Graeciā umquam nārrā-
20 mus, sed fābulās dē deīs et deābus Graeciae et īnsulīs pulchrīs quoque libenter audīmus. Fābulās mīrās nārrās," Vibia Tertiaque respondent.

"Nārrātisne fābulās dē deīs et deābus Rōmānīs?" Aspāsia rogat.

25   "Sunt multae fābulae dē deīs et deābus Rōmānīs," respondet Vibia. "Sed fābulam bonam dē Rōmānō ēgregiō et aequō, Cincinnātō, libenter nārrō."

*Bouzyges, the Inventor of the Plow, 1581 B.C.* In front of the bull is the sacred olive tree of Athena. Beyond the bull is a female figure with a long spear. The spear and the olive tree show that Athena is meant. Beyond the shaft of the plow stands an old man, who probably is conceived as the early king of Athens, living when the plow was discovered. He shows amazement at the plowman's achievement by the position of his hands. The six leaves in the background are suggestive of a future harvest.

Vibia igitur Aspāsiae et Lesbiae fābulam dē Rōmānō ēgregiō et aequō nārrat.

"Est fābula antīqua dē Cincinnātō. Cincinnātus bonus 30 dominus est et cum servīs in agrīs saepe labōrat. Aequī, populus Ītaliae antīquae, cum Rōmānīs prope Rōmam pugnant. Aequī firmī cōpiās Rōmānōrum iam vincunt. Lēgātī igitur ad populum Rōmānum properant et dē Aequīs nārrant. Populus lēgātōs audit. Audiunt, 'Aequī 35 Rōmānōs iam vincunt.' Fortūna cōpiārum Rōmānārum populum terret.

"Ad Cincinnātum Rōmānī lēgātōs dūcunt; Cincinnātus enim est magnus bonusque Rōmānus et Rōmānī vītam Cincinnātī laudant. In agrō Rōmānum ēgregium lēgātī 40 vident. Cum servīs labōrat et agrōs cūrat. Magnam pecūniam nōn habet, sed nōn miser est. Lēgātī bonum Cincinnātum dictātōrem appellant. Servus ē casā in agrum cum togā novā et albā properat et dominō togam dat. Iam Cincinnātus lēgātōs audit. Dē fortūnā Rōmānō- 45 rum nārrant. 'Aequī cum Rōmānīs pugnant et iam vincunt.'

109

" 'Num Aequī Rōmānōs terrent?' Cincinnātus rogat.

" 'Aequī Rōmānōs terrent,' lēgātī respondent. Cincin-
50 nātus dictātor igitur est, nōn iam agricola, nam patriam
amat. Multōs Rōmānōs magnōs et parvōs in cōpiās
Aequōrum dūcit. Rōmānī cōpiās Aequōrum terrent et
vincunt. Cincinnātus victor igitur ad casam properat.
Rōma ēgregiō sed modestō Rōmānō glōriam triumphō[1]
55 dat. Rōmānī Cincinnātum laudant. Sed Cincinnātus nōn
iam est dictātor; nunc est agricola et agrōs iam cūrat."

---

[1] Roman triumphs will be discussed in Chapter XIV.

2. ## VOCABULARY

| | |
|---|---|
| dū'cō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus, 3 | *lead; bring; construct* |
| au'di ō, audīre, audīvī, audītus, 4 | *hear, listen to* |
| ter're ō, terrēre, terruī, territus, 2 | *frighten, terrify* |
| li ben'ter, (adv.) | *gladly* |
| cō'pi a, cōpiae, f., 1 | *supply, abundance;* (pl.) *forces, troops* |
| vin'cō, vincere, vīcī, victus, 3 | *conquer* |
| lē gā'tus, lēgātī, m., 2 | *ambassador; lieutenant general* |
| ē gre'gi us, ēgregia | *outstanding, distinguished, remarkable* |

NOTE: The principal parts of verbs are given here complete.
They should be learned. See section 6, *g* in this chapter for an ex-
planation of each part. All verbs in section 1 are present tense.

3. ## NEW TYPES OF OLD FRIENDS

*a*. **dominus,** compare **domina.** What is the difference
in meaning? To what declension does **dominus** belong?

*b*. **fortūna, fortūnae,** f., l. This is an old friend because
you have used it so much in English. What does it mean?

*c*. **libenter** with the present tense of any verb means
*like to do something* as, **libenter audiō,** *I like to hear.*

110

## *Supplementary Story*

### CINCINNATUS THE FARMER

Nōnne fābulam dē Cincinnātō[1] audīre cupitis? Attendite!
"Cincinnātus," Orbilius inquit, "cōnsul[2] imperium Rōmā-
num bene administrāvit.[3] Vītam autem oppidī nōn amābat.
Itaque Rōmae nōn manēbat, sed in casā parvā cum marītā
5 trāns flūmen Tiberim habitābat. In illō locō cotīdiē in agrīs
laetus labōrābat. Neque glōriam[4] neque fāmam cupiēbat.

"Post paucōs annōs fortūna adversa[5] Rōmānōs commovēbat.
Aequī[6] enim cōpiās Rōmānās in castrīs continēbant.[7] Propter
hujus bellī perīculum Rōmānī Cincinnātum dictātōrem[8] prō
10 cōnsulibus bellum contrā Aequōs gerere jussērunt.

"Propter hoc lēgātōs[9] ad casam agricolae mīsērunt. Lēgātī
trāns Tiberim properāvērunt et ad Cincinnātum appropin-
quāvērunt. Ille sōlus illō tempore agrum arābat. Quod labō-
rābat tunicam sōlam gerēbat. Sine morā lēgātī virō bonō,
15 'Salvē!' dīxērunt. Tum imperia populī Rōmānī nūntiāre in-
cēpērunt. Sed Cincinnātus, 'Tacēte,[10]' respondit, 'togātus[11]
nōn sum. Sī nōn sum togātus, imperia vestra audīre nōn dēbeō.'
Tum marītam ex casā togam portāre jussit.

"Tandem togātus imperia lēgātōrum exspectāvit. Tum
20 lēgātī Cincinnātō agricolae imperia populī Rōmānī dīxērunt
et illum Rōmam dūxērunt. Cōnsilium atque auxilium Cin-
cinnātī cōpiās Rōmānās celeriter servāvērunt et bellum cōn-
fēcērunt.[12] Mox Cincinnātus in agrō rūrsus[13] arābat."

[NOTES] 1. *Cincinnātus, -ī (m.)*, Cincinnatus. 2. *cōnsul, cōnsulis (m.)*,
consul. 3. *administrō, -āre, -āvī*, manage. 4. *glōria, -ae (f.)*, glory. 5. *for-
tūna adversa*, misfortune. 6. *Aequī, -ōrum (m. pl.)*, the Aequians. 7. *con-
tineō, -ēre, -uī*, shut in, hem in. 8. *dictātōrem*, as dictator (*acc.*). 9. *lēgātus,
-ī (m.)*, envoy. 10. *taceō, -ēre, -uī*, be silent. 11. *togātus*, dressed in my toga.
12. *cōnficiō, -ere, -fēcī*, finish. 13. *rūrsus (adv.)*, once again.

**"**

Tell in your own words the story of Cincinnatus. 2. Do you know
what the famous American "Society of the Cincinnati" is? 3. Can
you find out why the name was chosen?

# CINCINNĀTUS

OBJECTIVES
- To learn the story Cincinnatus
- To learn how to f and use the perfe active infinitive

Hostēs Minucium[1], ducem Rōmānum, et mīlitēs eius in locō aliēnō magnā vī premēbant. Ubi id nūntiātum est, omnēs Rōmānī timentēs vim hostium cupīvērunt Cincinnātum[2] dictātōrem facere, quod is sōlus Rōmam ā perīculō nōn levī prohibēre et cīvitātem servāre poterat. Ille trāns Tiberim eō tempore agrum parvum colēbat. Nūntiī ā senātū missī eum in agrō labōrantem 5 invēnērunt et cōnstitērunt. Salūte[3] datā acceptāque, Cincinnātus uxōrem parāre togam iussisse dīcitur; nam nōn oportēbat[4] sine togā nūntiōs audīre.

Hī nūntiī eum dictātōrem appellant et dīcunt: "Mīlitēs nostrī ab hostibus premuntur et cīvēs terrentur. Perīculum nostrum nōn leve est. Hostēs nōn cōnsistent sed mox[5] ad portās nostrās ipsās venient. Auxilium tuum rogāmus." 10 Itaque Cincinnātus, vōcibus eōrum adductus, contrā hostēs contendit. Rōmānī, tēlīs[6] iactīs, hostēs opprimunt et castra expugnant. Minuciō servātō, Cincinnātus dīcitur hostēs sub iugum[7] mīsisse. Tum, nūllīs hostibus prohibentibus, mīlitēs ad urbem redūxit et triumphāvit. Vīs hostium frācta erat. Ductī sunt in pompā[8] ante eum ducēs hostium, capta arma ostenta sunt; 15 post eum mīlitēs vēnērunt praedam gravem ostendentēs. Et haec omnia Cincinnātus magnā celeritāte gessit: potestāte dictātōris in[9] sex mēnsēs acceptā, sextō decimō diē[10] ad agrōs discessit, nōn iam dictātor sed triumphāns agricola. Eōdem mēnse agricola et dictātor et iterum[11] agricola fuit.

[1] Minucius (Minū´shus)
[2] Cincinnatus (Sinsinā´tus)
[3] greeting
[4] it was not proper
[5] soon
[6] weapons, spears
[7] under the yoke, i.e., an ar of spears. This act signifi surrender.
[8] procession, parade
[9] for
[10] on the sixteenth day
[11] again (adv.)



Kaveler/Art Resource, NY

Cincinnatus, a Roman pː and ex-consul in the fift B.C., was chosen to help Rome against the Aequi nearby Latin tribe. Giveː supreme command as d he left his farm, drove o enemy, celebrated a triː laid down his power anː returned to his plow, alː sixteen days, unwilling ː his absolute power any than was necessary. His served as a model for eː presidents, who voluntː limited themselves to tː in office.

LFA

# XLVI

## THE TWELVE TABLES

Initiō Rōmānī lēgēs scrīptās° nōn habēbant. Tandem vērō
cīvēs lēgēs scrīptās postulāvērunt.

Senātōrēs igitur trēs° lēgātōs ad urbem Athēnās mīsērunt.
Hī lēgātī lēgēs Solōnis sapientissimī° explōrāvērunt et ad
urbem Rōmam revēnērunt.                                        5

Cīvēs Rōmānī tum cōnstituērunt, "Decem virōs dēligēmus
quī summum imperium habēbunt dum lēgēs novās parant."

Deinde cīvēs prō cōnsulibus decemvirōs dēlēgērunt, inter
quōs erant illī trēs lēgātī. Post ūnum annum° decemvirī
decem tabulās lēgum in forō posuērunt. Cīvēs lēgēs magnā  10
cum cūrā lēgērunt et probāvērunt.

Decemvirī autem labōrem nōndum perfēcerant.° Iterum
dēlēgērunt cīvēs Rōmānī aliōs decemvirōs.

Eī decemvirī autem, potestātis cupidī, neque lēgēs cēterās
parāvērunt neque imperium dēposuērunt. Quasi° paucī ty-  15
rannī multitūdinem cīvium rēgnābant.

Senātōrēs tandem decemvirōs imperium dēpōnere co-
ēgērunt. Cīvēs iterum dēlēgērunt cōnsulēs, quī mox duās°
tabulās lēgum parāvērunt.

Jam erant cōnsulēs jūstī; jam erant lēgēs bonae duodecim°  20
tabulārum.

UL

451-450 BC.

went on foot, while the rich used litters carried by bearers. Horses drawing chariots or wagons had to pick their way between the stepping stones. At night the darkness of the unlighted streets was broken only by the torches of slaves conducting their masters and mistresses home from dinner parties.

## LEGACY

If you will think of life in your own city or town and in others which you have visited, you will see that town and city life in Roman cities was not so different after all. We still have the contrast between small-town homes and big-city apartments, and the causes are much the same. We still advertise by street signs, although we do not paint them on the walls. Why do we not paint them on the walls, and why did the Romans do it? We still have small shops in our homes, and in some cities there are balconies over the sidewalks. Do you know of any? We used to have stepping stones. Why do we not have them now? What has lighting done for the streets? See how many other similarities and differences you can think of.

## *Supplementary Story*

=== HISTORICAL NOTE ===

In 390 B.C. barbarous Gauls from across the Alps invaded Italy, defeated a Roman army, captured Rome, and plundered the city. Finally they were driven off, and the city was rebuilt. It was a terrible experience for the Romans, which they never forgot.

### THE GAULS ARE SEIZING ROME

Quid, puerī puellaeque, in pictūrā vidētis? Spectāte! Quid Rōmae ēvenit?[1] Vidētisne virōs ferōs[2] atque[3] barbarōs?[4] Per viās Rōmae veniunt. Scūta[5] et hastās[6] longās habent. Ferī sunt oculī[7] virōrum et capillus prōmissus.[8] Quī[9] sunt virī ignōtī?[10]                                                                      5

Nōn Rōmānī sed Gallī[11] sunt. Cum domī sunt, in Galliā, terrā barbarā, habitant; sed domī nōn jam manent. In Italiā nunc sunt; nam cum populō[12] Rōmānō bellum[13] gerunt. Post[14] victōriam magnam oppidum Rōmam capiunt et in forum Rōmānum veniunt.                                                                      10

Ubi sunt validī[15] Rōmānī? Nōnne jam sunt validī? Validī nōn jam sunt. Cum Gallīs nōn pugnant[16] sed mūrōs oppidī relinquunt.[17] Cum fēminīs et puerīs et puellīs in agrōs et in oppida fīnitima properant. Paucī[18] virī et fēminae in arce[19] manent et Rōmam dēfendere[20] temptant.            15

Jam Gallī barbarī per viās ambulant. Praedam multam capiunt et ex oppidō portant. Praedam in Galliam mittere in animō habent.

1. *ēvenit*, is happening.  2. *ferus, -a, -um*, wild, fierce.  3. *atque (conj.)*, and, and also.  4. *barbarus, -a, -um*, uncivilized, barbarous.  5. *scūtum, -ī (n.)*, shield.  6. *hasta, -ae (f.)*, spear.  7. *oculus, -ī (m.)*, eye.  8. *capillus promissus*, their hair is long.  9. *quī*, who (*nom. plur.* of *quis*).  10. *ignōtus, -a, -um*, strange.  11. *Gallus, -ī (m.)*, a Gaul.  12. *populus, -ī (m.)*, people.  13. *bellum, -ī (n.)*, war.  14. *post (prep. with acc.)*, after.  15. *validus, a, um*, strong.  16. *pugnō, pugnāre*, fight.  17. *relinquō, relinquere*, leave.  18. *paucī*, a few (*nom.*).  19. *arce*, citadel (*abl.*).  20. *dēfendō, dēfendere*, defend.

**II**

Can you answer these questions on the story?

1. Whom do you see in the picture?  2. What do they look like? 3. What are these men doing?  4. What are the Romans doing all this time?  5. Why are these men plundering the city?

"Woe to the conquered!" When the Gauls sacked Rome

N O

Ub

nōn j

relinq

oppid

maner

Jan

capiu

in ani

1. ē

and, ar

shield.

their h

strang

-ī (n.)

16. pu

(nom.)

Ca

1. 

3. Wh

time?

B

# CHAPTER XXXIX

I.                          **GALLĪ IN ĪTALIĀ**

Iam diū hominēs Gallī appellātī in eā parte Ītaliae habitābant[1] quae in septentriōnēs[2] spectābat. Eī hominēs ē terrā vēnērunt quam nōs nunc "France" appellāmus sed quam Rōmānī antīquī Galliam appellābant. Tum cum[3] illī hominēs in Galliā habitābant, terrās et urbēs novās 5 saepe dēsīderābant. Suās urbēs et oppida habēbant, sed ea parva erant. Prīnceps Gallōrum dīxit: "Hominēs meī novās terrās occupāre volunt."

Cōnsilium eius modī igitur Gallī cēpērunt. Mox eōrum dux Brennus, quī paterfamiliās[4] erat, multās gentēs 10 Gallōrum montēs altōs quī Alpēs appellābantur in novam terram Ītaliam trādūxit. Ibi sub montibus in agrīs terrae novae manēbant et propter iniūriās ā nūllō populō poenās dare cōgēbantur.

Multōs annōs Rōmānī dē eīs barbarīs quī in Ītaliā 15 habitābant nōn audīvērunt, sed Gallī dē urbibus pulchrīs et agrīs bonīs Rōmānōrum audiēbant. Inter sē dīxērunt: "Eās urbēs pulchrās Rōmānōrum vincēmus aut ā Rōmānīs necābimur."

Mox Rōmam incēdēbant. In itinere Brennus urbēs 20 oppidaque dēlēvit quae invēnit et multōs hominēs et equōs necāvit. Nūlla urbs tūta erat. Permīsit Gallīs multam praedam ex agrīs agere et tantum[5] ruīnās undique relīquit. Hominēs Ītaliae et plēbs et patriciī bene incitā-bantur; nam Gallī iūre terram Ītalicam nōn occupāvērunt. 25

---

[1] with **iam diū**, had lived.    [2] north.    [3] when.    [4] head of the family.
[5] only.

*Gaul.* Note that Gauls wore mustaches, but showed the rest of their faces. Their hair was made thick by anointing.

Iam Rōmae dē novīs hostibus, Gallīs, undique audiēbant, sed dē cornibus[6] et tubīs nōn monēbantur. Mox 30 hī barbarī Clūsium pervēnērunt ubi ōlim[7] Porsena rēxerat. Etrūscī territī quī iam amīcī Rōmānōrum erant Rōmam nūntiōs mīsērunt et ro-35 gāvērunt Rōmam auxilium in hōs novōs hostēs propter condiciōnēs malās.

Trēs lēgātōs Rōmānī ad Etrūscōs mīsērunt et lēgātī 40 cum Gallīs ēgērunt. Rōmānī et Etrūscī Gallōrum principēs rogāvērunt, "Cūr vōs ın vestrā terrā nōn permānsistis? Cūr in terram vestram 45 nōn vōs removētis?"

"Vēnimus," principēs respondērunt, "quod novam terram volumus neque in nostram terram nōs removēre in animō habēmus. Terram nostrīs quī nūllam habent vōs dare volumus. Sī terram quam quaerimus nōbīs dabitis, 50 bellum nōn gerēmus. Dabitisne terram an dēlēbiminī?"

"Sed quō iūre rogātis Etrūscōrum terram et dīcitis: 'Nisi terram nōbīs dabitis, bellum gerēmus?'" Rōmānī clāmāvērunt.

"Nostrum iūs est nostrī gladiī. Virī quī nōn timidī sunt 55 cūncta vincere possunt armīs."

Populus Etrūriae hās iniūriās nōn amābat. Dīxērunt: "Nōn erimus tūtī nisi Gallī in suam terram sē removēbunt.

Terram nost
commīsērun
Iūre gent:
sed iūs hī tr
legem cum
quartā[10] vig
missum reli
dīxit: "Rō
poenās dab
Ubi Rōr
Cōnsulēs pc
Statim an
dēlēgērunt
ad arma c
Brennum
castra pōn
ad eōs ıar
perīculī er
bene armā
Gallī he
Rōmānī he
gerunt et
tur. Tēla
sed ā Gall
vulnerātu
Gallīs sıı
Rōmam ı
mīlitēs su
dedērunt
In hōc lo
Potesti
fābulās ā

---

[6] horns.     [7] once.

[6] horns.

dē novīs hosti-
ındique audiē-
cornibus[6] et tu-
ēbantur. Mox
īsium pervēnē-
[7] Porsena rēxe-
territī quī iam
5rum erant Rō-
mīsērunt et ro-
mam auxilium
hostēs propter
ıalās.

5s Rōmānī ad
ērunt et lēgātī
ērunt. Rōmānī
al[?]rum prīnci-
ıı, Cūr vōs ın
nōn permān-
terram vestram

"quod novam
ōs removēre in
ım habent vōs
s nōbīs dabitis,
n dēlēbiminī?"
ram et dīcitis:
us?" Rōmānī

ıōn timidī sunt

at. Dīxērunt:
ſē removēbunt.

Terram nostram Gallīs nōn dabimus." Sine morā proelium commīsērunt. Diū pugnābātur.

Iūre gentium lēgātīs pugnāre numquam permittēbātur, 60 sed iūs hī trēs lēgātī Rōmānī nōn cūrābant. Quod contrā[8] legem cum Etrūscīs pugnābant, Gallī erant īrātī[9]. Subitō quartā[10] vigiliā Brennus īrātus[9] proelium in Etrūriā commissum relīquit et virōs suōs Rōmam addūxit. In itinere dīxit: "Rōmānī propter lēgātōrum suōrum errōrem nōbīs 65 poenās dabunt." Posteā Rōmānī Gallīs poenās dedērunt.

Ubi Rōmānī dē hīs audīvērunt, statim prōvīdērunt. Cōnsulēs populō dīxērunt: "Gallōs sine negōtiō vincēmus." Statim animus eōrum cōnfirmātur. Dictātōrem nōn dēlēgērunt quod perīculum nōn timēbant. Cōpiae undique 70 ad arma celeriter convocātae ad hostēs incessērunt et Brennum prope flūmen Alliam invēnērunt. Rōmānī castra pōnere nōn poterant, nam Gallī horribilēs per agrōs ad eōs iam celeriter sē movēbant. Hoc tempus magnī perīculī erat. Statim ex itinere lēgātus Rōmānus mīlitēs 75 bene armātōs īnstrūxit et proelium committēbātur.

Gallī horribilēs mīlitibus Rōmānīs ignōtī erant. Ubi Rōmānī hōs altōs barbarōs vident quī in capitibus cornua[6] gerunt et eōrum tubās vocēsque magnās audiunt, terrentur. Tēla undique iaciunt et cum vērā virtūte pugnant, 80 sed ā Gallīs recēdere coguntur. Magnus numerus mīlitum vulnerātur aut necātur. Mox tubīs et cornibus[6] territī ā Gallīs sine negōtiō dīviduntur. Magna pars eōrum Rōmam revenīre nōn potest, nam Gallī inter Rōmam et mīlitēs sunt. Celeriter igitur sē remōvērunt et sē in fugam 85 dedērunt trāns flūmen et sē Veiīs relictīs occultāvērunt. In hōc locō tūtī erant. Paucī Rōmam perveniunt.

Potestisne nārrāre magistrō vestrō decem dē virtūte fābulās ā Rōmānīs nōbīs trāditās?

---

[6] horns.　　　[8] contrary to.　　　[9] angry.　　　[10] fourth.

419
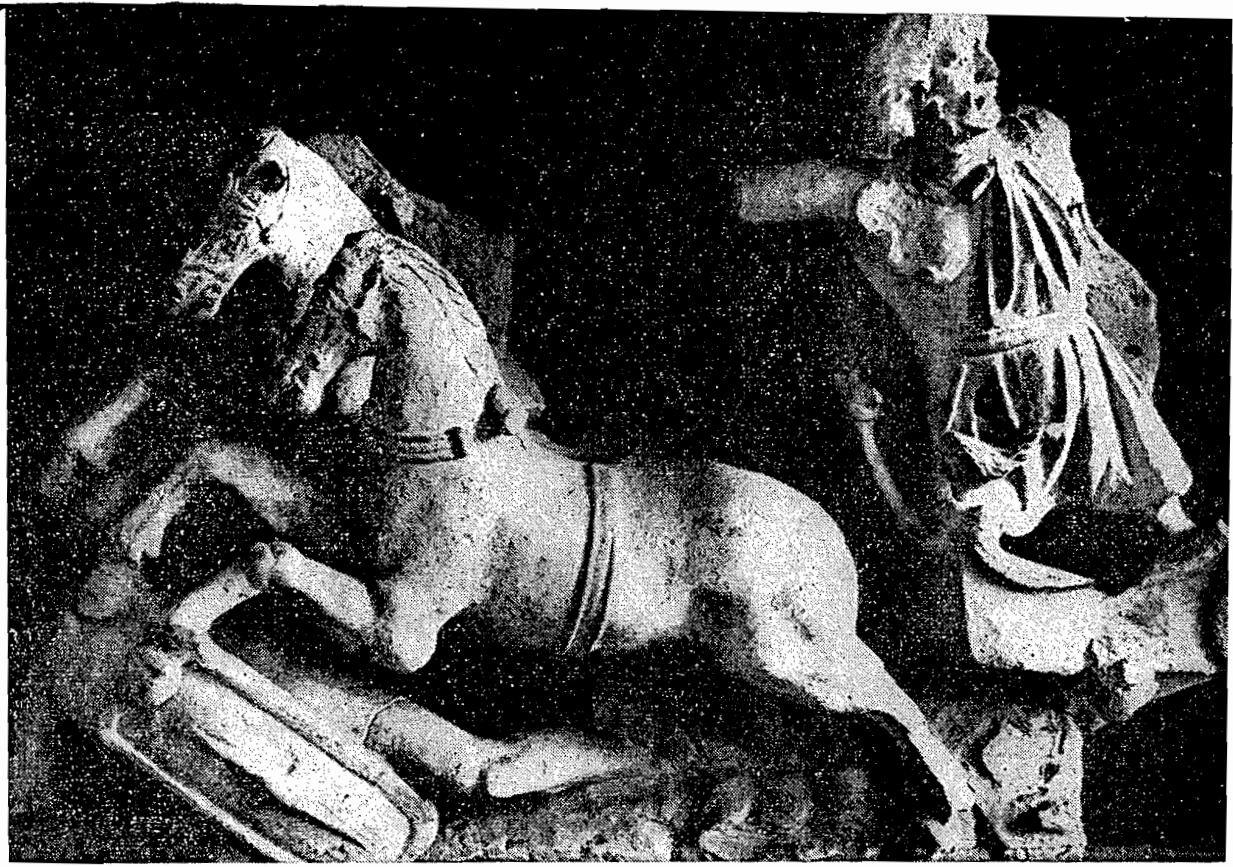
Gallic Warrior—225 B.C.

# CHAPTER XL

I.                    **GALLĪ IN URBE RŌMĀ**

Post proelium quō Gallī Rōmānōs prope flūmen Alliam
vīcerant, paucī mīlitēs Rōmānī victī in fugam sē dedērunt
et Rōmam pervēnērunt. Fābulā dē proeliō nārrātā,
hominēs et plēbs et patriciī terrēbantur. Mīlitēs populō
nūntiāvērunt: "Iūre Gallī nostram terram et urbem occu-5
pāre nōn dēbent sed tamen mox venient et Rōmam op-
pugnābunt, nam pācem amīcitiamque cum Rōmānīs cōn-
firmāre nōn volunt."

Rōmānī nōn timidī erant, sed paucī quī in urbe erant
longōs Rōmae mūrōs dēfendere nōn potuērunt. Prīncipēs 10

425

igitur dīxērunt: "Mūrōs nostrōs dēfendere nōn temptābimus. Barbarīs cūncta praeter Capitōlium trādēmus sed ibi cōnsistēmus."

Capitōlium altus mōns erat in quō Rōmulus arcem
15 aedificāverat. In eō erant templa deōrum. Cīvēs bene incitātī dīxērunt: "Sī templa deōrum dēfendēmus, deī nōs iuvābunt et dēfendent." Ibi erat fōns quī cōpiam aquae bonae dabat, sed nūllus cibus erat.

Ad hunc igitur locum cīvēs cōpiam armōrum frū-
20 mentīque celeriter portāvērunt. Hīc cīvēs tūtī erant, sed tamen nōn cūnctī cīvēs manēre potuērunt quod cōpia cibī parva erat. Fēminīs, līberīs, senibus quī arma gerere et arcem dēfendere nōn poterant hīc convenīre nōn permittēbātur.

25 Hīs nūntiātīs multī cum bonīs Rōmā in montēs aut in oppida fīnitima sē in fugam dedērunt. Barbarīs expulsīs in animō habēbant ē montibus et oppidīs fīnitimīs ubi sē occultābant Rōmam revenīre. Cum hīs Vestālēs Virginēs vēnērunt quae ignem sacram ē Vestae templō portābant.
30 Erant tamen multī senēs quī cōnsulēs fuerant sed pugnāre nōn iam poterant. Urbem quam amābant relinquere nōn dēsīderābant. Dīxērunt: "In animō habēmus in Forō permanēre et nōs sacrificia deīs prō patriā dare. Nōs ōrnāmentīs honōrum nostrōrum ōrnātī[1] in nostrīs sellīs[2]
35 curūlibus[2] hostēs exspectābimus." Quid dē hōc exemplō vērae virtūtis Rōmānae dīcitis?

Rōmānīs prope flūmen Alliam victīs Gallī Rōmam statim nōn properāvērunt. Prope flūmen Alliam diū manēbant. Armīs Rōmānīs et multā praedā coāctīs Gallī Rōmam
40 discessērunt. Post trēs diēs[3] quartā[4] vigiliā hae gentēs barbarae ad portās apertās urbis relictae pervēnērunt. Brennus in urbem nōn properāvit, sed prope hanc mānsit

---

[1] adorned.     [2] curule chairs.     [3] days.     [4] fourth.

*Temple of Vesta, Restored.*
*Originally this temple was made of reeds with a straw roof, in imitation of the ancient round hut of the Roman peasant and much like the hut of Romulus, page 247. It was not until 200 A.D., under Septimius Severus, that the temple was restored in the form from which we see the fragments today. In this temple the Vestal Virgins tended the sacred fire, which was renewed every first of March, originally New Year's Day.*
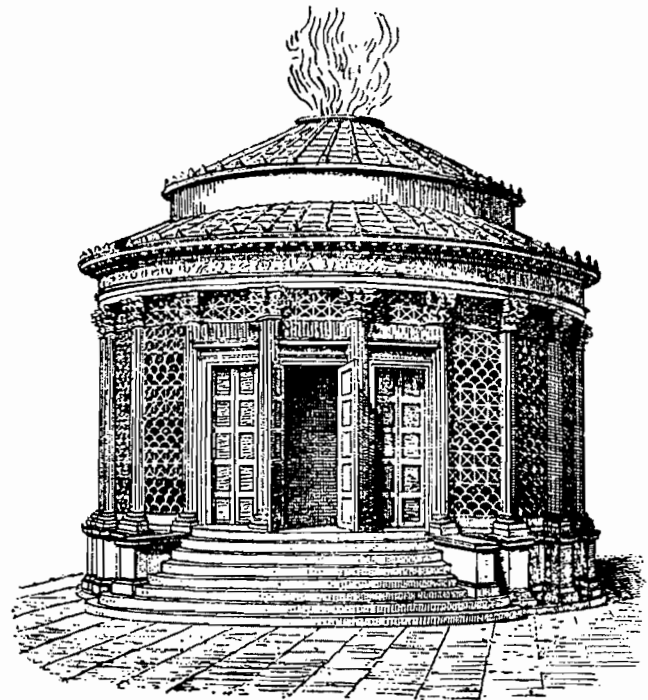
quod portās apertās invēnit et perīculum timēbat. Mox autem[9] suōs per viās dēsertās ad Forum addūxit. Hīc barbarī senēs vidēbant quī in sellīs[2] curūlibus[2] cōnstiterant 45 et diū spectābant. Senēs sē nōn mōvērunt etiam ubi tubās audiēbant et barbarōs horribilēs vidēbant. "Statuaene an virī sunt eī?" quaesīvērunt Gallī. Tum ūnus ex eīs ad Mārcum Papīrium, senem nōbilem, accessit et longam barbam[5] albam huius permulsit[6]. Statim Papīrius caput 50 Gallī incussit[7]. Senex Gallum nōn vulnerāvit, sed Gallī clāmāvērunt et sine morā senem et eius sociōs necāvērunt.

Praedā ē casīs et aedificiīs undique coāctā et urbe praeter Capitōlium igne dēlētā hostēs ad Rōmānōs quī in monte erant incessērunt. Haec poena erat magna quam 55 Rōmānī Gallīs dedērunt. Capitōlium, templum Iovis servābātur quod erat in locō altō et magnīs mūris ā Tarquiniō aedificātīs bene dēfendēbātur.

---

[2] curule chairs.     [5] beard.     [6] stroked.     [7] struck.     [9] however

427

Iam Brennus Capitōlium ubi Rōmānī cōnstiterant ex-
60 pugnāre temptābat sed semper expellēbātur. Gallī proe-
lium cum Rōmānīs committere numquam potuērunt quod
praeter mūrōs cēdere nōn potuērunt et quod Rōmānī ā
monte sē nōn remōvērunt. Inter sē igitur dīxērunt:
"Nōs expugnāre arcem nōn iam temptābimus, sed sub
65 montem castra nostra ponēmus et hunc montem oppugnā-
bimus quī ā Rōmānīs tenētur. Mox Rōmānī sine cibō erunt
et tum bellum nōn iam gerent sed arcem nōbīs trādent."

Mox nōn Rōmānī sed Gallī sine cibō erant. Brennus
propter cibum mīlitem cum parte cōpiārum in agrōs
70 fīnitimōs dīmīsit. Mīles virōs suōs flūmen prope oppidum
trādūxit ubi Camillus in exsiliō[8] habitābat et ibi castra sua
posuit. Ubi Camillus, fīlius nōtae familiae Rōmānae, dē
Gallīs audīvit, perīculō Rōmānōrum movēbātur. "Rō-
mānīs auxilium dare volō," dīxit. Hic igitur vērus Rōmā-
75 nus virōs armātōs puerōsque oppidī celeriter īnstrūxit et
per iter occultum[10] quod post montem erat ad Gallōs dūxit.
Hōc modō castra oppugnāvit et cūnctōs necāvit.

Cūr Rōmānī Camillum in exsilium[8] expulērunt? Potes-
tisne magistrō vestrō nārrāre fābulam dē Camillō? Estne
80 nātūra eius tibi grāta?

---

[8] exile.

2.                        VOCABULARY

| | |
|---|---|
| **post** (prep. with acc.) | *after, behind* |
| **temptō, -āre,** 1 | *try, attempt* |
| **praeter** (prep. with acc.) | *beyond; besides; except* |
| **cōnsistō, -ere, cōnstitī, cōnstitūrus,** 3 | *take a stand, take a position halt, stop* |
| **cīvis, cīvis, (-ium)** m., & f., 3 | *citizen* |
| **senex, senis, (-ium)** m., & f., 3 | *old man* or *woman* |
| **fīnitimus, -a, -um,** m., f., n., 1 & 2 | *neighboring* |
| **-īc** (adv. ending) | *in this place* |

[8] exile          [10] hidden.          428

pressed
re is an

e form

gs for

e

ntain.
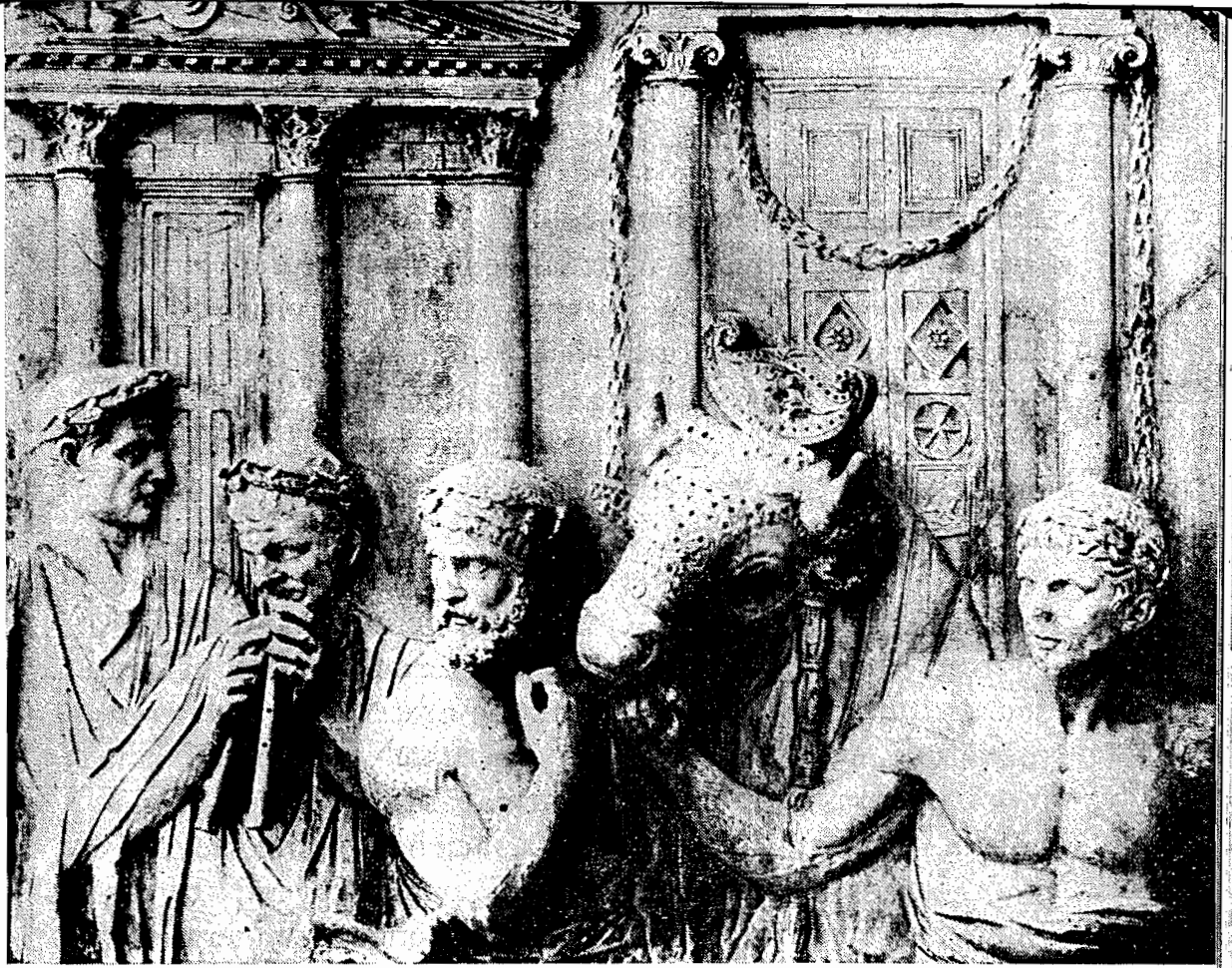


**Sacrifice of a Bull.** *First half of second Century, B.C.*

# CHAPTER XXXVIII

1.                                **CAMILLUS**

Decem annōs Rōmānī Veiōs oppugnābant[1], sed oppidum capere nōn potuērunt. Mārcum igitur Fūrium Camillum, fīlium familiae nōtae, dictātōrem dēlēgērunt. Camillus ūnus ex Fūriā gente ēgregius vir erat et magnus mīles. Hic dictātor dēlēctus statim magnās cōpiās coēgit et Veiōs[2] celeriter incessit. Mox quod altōs mūrōs urbis dēlēre nōn potuerat, novum cōnsilium cēpit. Ā cōnsiliīs recēdit

---

[1] had besieged.       [2] to Veii.

LWR

quibus Rōmānī decem annōs oppidum oppugnābant[1] et
mīrum in modum urbem cēpit. Virōs suōs cunīculum[3]
10 sub mūrōs agere iussit. Mox cunīculus[3] in mediam urbem
sub templō Iūnōnis agēbātur. Subitō ā virīs quī in
cunīculō[3] occultābantur, vōcēs quae erant in templō
audiēbantur. Servus templī ita dīcēbat: "Dea Iūnō
nūntiat: 'Hōc bellō vincet is quī hunc bovem[4] sacrificium
15 mihi dabit.' "

Camillus, ubi illud audīvit, virōs suōs convocātōs
terram super[5] capita sua aperīre iussit. Hoc sine morā
agitur et Rōmānī per cavum properant in templum.
Statim occupāvērunt bovem[4] et Camillus Iūnōnī hoc
20 sacrificium dedit. Tum is sociīque ex templō celeriter sē
mōvērunt et urbis portās aperuērunt. Hōc modō sine
morā magnus numerus bene armātōrum mīlitum Rōmā-
nōrum in urbem incessit et tēla iaciēbat. Nūllī Veientēs
sunt timidī; territī igitur bene pugnant, sed tamen
25 celeriter vincuntur. Paucī mīlitēs Rōmānī vulnerantur.
Iam ā Rōmānīs habētur Veientium magna et pulchra
urbs. Magna est grātia patriae quod vigiliā Camillus
Rōmam servāvit.

Ubi Camillus ad urbem Rōmam revēnit, magnum tri-
30 umphum ēgit. In Forum per Viam Sacram quae est prope
fontem Iūturnae ubi frātrēs Castor et Pollux equīs aquam
dedērunt ad montem Capitōlīnum cum praedā et captīvīs
miserīs suīs victor et mīlitēs prōcessērunt. Victor deīs
sacrificia iam dedit. Posteā magnī lūdī erant.
35 Mox Rōmānī iterum hostēs firmōs habuērunt. Faliscī
sociī Veientium bellum cum Rōmānīs gerēbant. Senātus
dīxit: "Rōmam numquam servābimus nisi vincēmus
Falēriōs. Vincēmurne an vincēmus?" Mox Camillus quī
dux iterum erat Falēriōs[6] cōpiās addūxit.

---

[1] had besieged.     [3] tunnel.     [4] ox.     [5] above.     [6] to Falerii.

410

Prō mūrīs urbis castra posuit et cōpiās īnstrūxit. Faliscī 40
Rōmānōs monuērunt: "Dē nōbīs prōvīdimus, nōn timē-
mus; nōs quoque decem annōs nostram urbem dēfendē-
mus." Diū Rōmānī ibi permanēbant et urbem bene
dēfēnsam cum magnā cūrā oppugnābant, sed propter
Faliscōrum virtūtem occupāre nōn poterant.      45

Iam in eō oppidō habitābat magister quī lūdum habēbat
ad quem multī puerī, fīliī prīncipum, mittēbantur. In
pācis et bellī quoque tempore fīliī prīncipum ā magistrō
ex urbe dūcēbantur et ibi per agrōs latōs saepe lūdēbant.
Nunc magister cōnsilium cēpit. Perfidiā[7] mōtus puerōs in 50
media castra ad ducem Camillum perdūxit. Ubi puerōs
Camillus vīdit, quaesīvit: "Quī sunt hī puerī?"

"Hī," inquit ille, "sunt prīncipum līberī Faliscōrum."

Hic rūrsus: "Cūr hōs addūxistī ad mē?"

"Tibi," respondit ille, "hōs trādere in animō habeō. 55
Tibi eōrum patrēs perīculō fīliōrum adductī urbem mox
trādent."

Camillus ubi haec audīvit, bene incitābātur et magnā
cum vōce clāmāvit: "Malus vir es.  Nōs Rōmānī bellum
cum virīs, nōn puerīs gerimus. Virtūte aut armīs nōn 60
perfidiā[7] vincimus. Hoc nōn permittēmus."

Puerīs statim malum magistrum Camillus trādidit.
Magistrum virgīs[8] quās Camillus eīs dedit laetī in urbem
agunt. Virtūte nātūrae huius Rōmānī adductī Faliscī
Rōmānōrum amīcī esse dēsīderābant. Rōmānīs igitur 65
urbem suam trādidērunt et mīrum in modum pācem et
amīcitiam cōnfirmāvērunt. Rōmānī Camillum laudābant;
nam hostēs virtūte nātūrae sine armīs vīcit. Nōn pugnā-
bātur. Virtūs ūnīus hominis amīcitiam mōvit. Hoc erat
novum genus bellī.      70

Sed nōn diū populus Rōmānus Camillum laudābat.

---

[7] treachery.      [8] switch.

411

Pars Rōmānōrum eum nōn amābat et multa inter sē dīxit, "Cūnctam praedam 75 quam occupāvimus ubi Veiōs expugnāvimus nōbīs Camillus nōn dedit. Nostram praedam volumus." Hoc nōn erat vērum sed tamen 80 iterum et iterum dīcēbant.

Tum tribūnī plēbis eum vocāvērunt, sed ad eōs numquam accessit. Ex urbe sē in fugam dedit. Sibi tamen 85 dīxit, "Mox erit malum et Rōmānī vocāre mē cogentur." Posteā hīc ā Rōmānīs vocātur et Rōmam servat. Mox eam fābulam legētis.

*Camillus. A bronze statue of a well-born youth—100 B.C.*

2.
## VOCABULARY

| | |
|---|---|
| decem | *ten* |
| modus, modī, m., 2 | *measure; manner, way* |
| sub, prep. with acc. to indicate direction toward which a thing moves, with abl. to show location | *under, close to; at the foot of; towards, shortly before* |
| moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtus, 2 | *set in motion, move; disturb; cause; influence* |
| virtūs, virtūtis, f., 3 | *manliness, courage, bravery* |
| magister, magistrī, m., 2 | *master, teacher* |
| prīnceps, prīncipis, m., 3 | *the leading man, chief, head, leader* |
| trāns- (trā-) (prefix) | *across, over; through* |

412

3.

*a.* **trādō**
*surrender,*
The
(**trā** + **dar**

NOTE 1:
NOTE 2:
placed before

*b.* **addū**
*c.* **trādū**
*d.* **cōnsi**

4.

Give th
italicized
words. B
Latin ro
*December,*
*terranean,*
*principal.*

5.

The R
thought
person of
eyes. Sh
at times
She was
Juno,
She was
special c

# LII

## THE ROMANS CAPTURE VEII

Cum Etrūscīs Rōmānī saepe bellum gerēbant. Etrūscī
Rōmānīs dissimilēs erant. Nōn longē ab urbe Rōmā erant
Veiī, oppidum Etrūscōrum. Mūrī oppidī erant altī et vali-
dissimī; nātūra locī erat difficillima; itaque incolae diū erant
tūtī. Per decem annōs Rōmānī Veiōs frūstrā oppugnābant. 5

Dēnique vir Etrūscus in mūrō urbis stetit. Superbē dīxit,
"Haec sunt verba ōrāculī! Dum aqua est in lacū° Albānō, dī
nōs dēfendent! Numquam nōs vincētis!"

Dux Rōmānus, Camillus, cēpit cōnsilium bonum. "Labor
difficillimus erit," inquit, "sed cunīculum° fodere° dēbēmus. 10
Aqua per cunīculum ē lacū fluet." Haec omnēs probāvērunt.

Tum sēcrētō Rōmānī cunīculum sub terrā fōdērunt.° Per
hunc cunīculum aqua ē lacū trāns campōs flūxit. Jam nūlla
erat aqua in lacū.

Mox ācrī proeliō Rōmānī Etrūscōs vīcērunt et Veiōs occu- 15
pāvērunt. Verba ōrāculī vēra erant.

°**lacū*** (abl. sing.) lake • **cunīculus, -i** M., tunnel • **fodere**
to dig • **fōdērunt** dug

| | |
|---|---|
| *****difficilis, -e** | difficult, hard, not easy |
| *****dissimilis, -e** | dissimilar, unlike, not like |
| *****frūstrā** | in vain |
| *****superbē** | proudly |

## COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES IN -lis

| Positive | Comparative | | Superlative |
|---|---|---|---|
| facilis, -e | facilior, | facilius | facillimus, -a, -um |
| difficilis, -e | difficilior, | difficilius | difficillimus, -a, -um |
| similis, -e | similior, | similius | simillimus, -a, -um |
| dissimilis, -e | dissimilior, | dissimilius | dissimillimus, -a, -um |
| humilis, -e | humilior, | humilius | humillimus, -a, -um |
| gracilis, -e | gracilior, | gracilius | gracillimus, -a, -um |

Superlatives of six Declension III adjectives ending in
-lis have **-limus, -a, -um** added to the base of the positive.

**274**

The A
is loc
of an
rock

## Manlius, the Giant-Killer

Rōmānī cum Gallīs, quī in Italiam dēscenderant, bellum gerēbant (381 B.C.). Jam ad pontem, ā quō nōn longē Gallī erant, pervēnerant. Et Gallī et Rōmānī castra prope flūmen Aniēnem (*Anio*) ita posuērunt ut pōns inter duōs exercitūs esset. Deinde māne quīdam Gallus, māgnitūdine corporis ingēns, scūtum gerēns et gladiōs duōs manibus tenēns, atque torque (*necklace*) aureō dēcorātus, in prīmam aciem prōcessit. Ille cēterōs Gallōs et vīribus et māgnitūdine et adulēscentiā atque virtūte superābat.

Commissō proeliō, atque utrīsque summō studiō pūgnantibus, Gallus et Gallīs et Rōmānīs manū sīgnificāre (*to make a sign*) incipiēbat. Pūgnae pausa facta est. Statim silentiō factō, cum vōce māximā ūnum ex Rōmānīs ad certāmen singulāre prōvocāvit. "Quis Rōmānōrum," rīsit, "tam fortis est ut mēcum sōlus pūgnet?"

Id Titō Mānliō, nōbilī adulēscentī Rōmānō, māgnō dolōrī erat. Is māximē īrātus quod ē tantō exercitū nēmō audēbat propter ējus māgnitūdinem ingentem et ācrem vultum (*expression*) cum Gallō pūgnāre. Hīs ā Gallō dictīs, Mānlius fortis prōcessit, neque passus est virtūtem Rōmānum ab hoste rīdērī. Scūtō pedestrī (*infantry*) et gladiō brevī cinctus (*girded*) contra Gallum cōnstitit. Timōre māgnō ea congressiō (*meeting*) in ipsō pontī, exercitibus utrōque latere pontis spectantibus, facta est.

Gallus suō mōre scūtum suum prōjēcit et impetum Mānlī exspectāvit. Mānlius, animō magis quam arte cōnfīsus (*trusting*), scūtō scūtum percussit. Dum Gallus locum suum recuperāre (*recover*) cōnātur, Mānlius iterum scūtum percussit et hominem ingentem dē locō iterum dējēcit. Hoc modō sub gladium Gallicum successit et gladiō suō hostem occīdit, torquem dētrāxit, et in collō (*neck*) suō imposuit.

## SENTENCE PATTERNS

### A. Translate into English:

1. Lēgātī vēnērunt ut pācem peterent.
2. Legiōnem tertiam ibi relīquit nē hostēs flūmen trānsīrent.
3. Nōlī spem tuam in dīvitiīs aut potestāte pōnere.
4. Duce juvante patriam nostram adjuvāre et servāre possumus.
5. Nōnne Caesar negāvit sē ūllī iter per prōvinciam datūrum esse?
6. Num Rōmānī Gallīs equitātū superiōrēs erant?
7. Mūrus tam altus factus erat ut oppidum bene dēfenderētur.
8. Magister rogāvit quid fēcissem.
9. Mīlitēs tantā virtūte pūgnāvērunt ut oppidum occupāre possēmus.
10. Ita vīxī ut nōn frūstrā mē vīxisse exīstimem.

### B. Translate into Latin:

1. So skilled was the leader, so brave were the soldiers that the Romans over-came the enemy within a short time.
2. Marius asked them who their brothers were.
3. Do you know who I am and from what city I have come?
4. The soldiers fought bravely that they might not be conquered.
5. No one understood why they had surrendered to the enemy.

## SIGHT TRANSLATION: SAVED BY THE GEESE

Ōlim Gallī ex fīnibus excesserant ut oppida vīcōsque Etrūscōrum raperent. Etrūscī perterritī auxilium ā Rōmānīs petīvērunt. Itaque cōnsul Rōmānus exercitum contrā Gallōs dūxit, sed mīlitēs Rōmānī ferōcissimō aspectū barbarōrum perterritī sunt et fūgērunt. Gallī corpora ingentis magnitūdinis habēbant et cornua pecorom (*cattle*) in capitibus suīs gerēbant.

Victōria Gallōrum erat tam facilis ut Rōmam ipsam expūgnāre cōnstituerent. Urbem intrāvērunt. Cīvēs Rōmānī cum uxōribus līberīsque in arcem ascendērunt ut sē ibi omnī modō dēfenderent. Arx erat in summō colle. Multīs domibus raptīs et incēnsīs, hostēs post paucōs diēs impetum in arcem ipsam facere cōnstituērunt.

Silentiō noctis, Gallī, aliī aliōs trahentēs, in arcem ascendere clam cōnātī sunt. Complūrēs ad summum collem tantō silentiō pervēnērunt ut cūstōdēs nihil sentīrent. Sed subitō anserēs (*geese*) Jūnōnis sacrī Gallōs audīvērunt et clāmōre suō Mānlium, ducem praesidī, excitāvērunt. Mānlius aliōs cūstōdēs vocāns statim in prīmum Gallum impetum ācerrimum fēcit et eum dē saxō (*rock*) dējēcit. Gallus cāsū aliōs quoque perturbāvit, et hostēs facillimē repulsī sunt. Sīc arx Rōmāna ab ānseribus sacrīs servāta est.

OLH

## MANLIUS AND THE GEESE SAVE ROME

Gallī barbarī et ferī ā portīs Rōmae nōn longē aberant. Magnum propter perīculum multī Rōmānī ad oppida propinqua fūgērunt.

Senātus Rōmānus tamen in arce° Capitōliī mānsit. In Capitōliō Juppiter et Jūnō et Minerva templa habēbant. In 5 templō Jūnōnis erant ānserēs° sacrī.

Portae Rōmae erant apertae, et mox Gallī tēcta dēserta dēlēvērunt. Rōmānī tamen, inter quōs erat Mānlius, defendē-bant Capitōlium.

Dēnique Gallī viam sēcrētam et angustam et dūram invē- 10 nērunt, quae ad mūrum arcis° dūcēbat. Noctū ad Capitōlium Gallī sēcrētō ascendērunt.

Quamquam Rōmānī ipsī nihil audīvērunt, tamen in templō Jūnōnis ānserēs sacrī strepuērunt° et Mānlium excitāvērunt. Statim ille cēterōs Rōmānōs vocāvit. 15

"Gallī adsunt! Servāte vōs! Properāte ad mūrum!" clā-māvit Mānlius.

Prīmus Gallus jam in mūrō stābat. Sē servāre temptāvit, sed celeriter Mānlius eum gladiō interfēcit. Multī sociī ejus post prīmum Gallum ascendēbant, sed statim corpus° mortuī 20 illōs dē viā angustā dēpulit. Sē servāre nōn potuērunt. Mox hōs Gallōs Rōmānī interfēcērunt. Capitōlium prō sē et cēterīs Rōmānīs servāvērunt.

°**ar'ce** (abl. sing.); **ar'cis** (gen. sing.) citadel • **ān'serēs** (nom. pl.) geese • **strepuē'runt** made a noise • **cor'pus** (nom. sing.) N., body, corpse

| | |
|---|---|
| *__mū'rus, -ī__ | M., wall |
| *__bar'barus, -a, -um__ | uncivilized, strange; (as noun) M., foreigner, barbarian; M. pl., the barbarians (all who were non-Roman) |
| *__dū'rus, -a, -um__ | hard, difficult |
| __dēpel'lō, -ere, -pulī__ | dislodge, drive away |
| *__lon'gē__ | far (away) |

**C.** Translate.

1. I say that I myself have seen that ancient building with my (own) eyes.   2. This work is very difficult, but we hope that our desire for glory will give us strength.   3. As soon as he arrived in the city he came to see his friend who was about to depart.   4. Fearing that his men would not be able to defend the town, he sent cavalry to guard (be a guard for) the bridge.   5. He tried to persuade the consul not to deliver (**habeō**) a speech in the senate that day.   6. Let's run to the forum as quickly as possible to watch the games.   7. If you hold this same course you will arrive at the island at sundown.   8. He said that that animal was very like a horse in appearance, but that its ears were much larger.   9. There was no one to defend us; therefore I feared that our town would be taken.   10. In the fourth watch Caesar ordered that all the soldiers should take arms.

## —— *Reading* ——

### THE SACRED GEESE

Gallī urbem Rōmam oppugnābant. Eōrum ducēs mīlitibus imperā-vērunt ut acerrimē pugnārent. Rōmānī timēbant nē tōta urbs dēlerētur. Sed Gallī eam expugnāre nōn poterant, quod mōns Capitōlīnus erat altus et moenia valida erant.

Circum Capitōlium Gallī statiōnēs disposuerant nē Rōmānī in monte cibum et aquam acciperent. Rōmānī autem Gallōs dērīsērunt; pānem etiam ad Gallōs dēiēcērunt.

Ūnā nocte tertiā vigiliā ūnus ex custōdibus Gallicīs vīdit nūntium Rōmānum nūdīs pedibus discēdere dē Capitōliō in forum. Statim custōs ad ducem Gallicum properāvit ut id nūntiāret.

Proxima nocte quartā vigiliā dum lūna obscūra est Gallī suīs mīlitibus imperāvērunt ut montem ascenderent magnō silentiō, nē Rōmānī eōs audīrent. Ānserēs autem sacrī excitātī sunt ubi Gallī ad summum montem appropinquāvērunt, et magnum strepitum ēmisē-runt. Mīles Rōmānus, Mānlius nōmine, ē somnō excitātus, prīmum Gallum in summum mūrum ascendentem petīvit et eum dē mūrō dēiēcit. Hic Gallus recidēns in Gallōs aliōs incidit, et eī cēterōs omnēs Gallōs ad īmum montem reiēcērunt.

Tālī modō Capitōlium ā Mānliō, virō fortī, et strepitū ānserum sac-rōrum servātum est. Posteā Mānlius "Capitōlīnus" appellātus est.

*The e₁*
*arran₂*
*centu₁*

J

**Capitoline Hill.** *Note the Rock of Tarpeia on which the fortress was situated.*

ēligō with all

edērunt.
it.
>roperāvit.
1) timēbant.
ant.
ē in fugam

express the
vriting them

en out, the

) _ ve them

the soldiers

>yed, never-

the Gauls

irned to the

which you

.

nīserant.
ant.

# CHAPTER XLI

1.
## ANSERĒS[1] SACRĪ[2]

Gallī tamen arcem in Capitōlīnō monte oppugnābant quam capere nōn poterant. "Rōmānī," dīxērunt, "mox sine cibō erunt. Tum eōs capere poterimus."

In castrīs igitur quae sub monte Capitōlīnō posuerant diū manēbant et tēla nōn iēcērunt. Gentēs Gallicae nōn 5 timidae erant neque id genus bellī eīs grātum erat. Multīs proeliīs bellum gerere dēsīderābant, sed Rōmānī in monte permānsērunt ubi cōnstiterant.

Interim barbarīs ab Camillō, fīliō familiae nōtae, necātīs animus Rōmānīs accessit quī Rōmā in locum tūtum 10 in fugam sē dederant. In urbem fīnitimam Veiōs convēnērunt et cōpiās parābant quibus cum Gallīs in animō pugnāre habēbant. Sed ducem nōn habēbant. "Quis," dīxērunt inter sē prīncipēs, "dux noster erit?"

Statim inter eōs dē duce convēnit. "Camillus noster 15 dux erit," ūnā vōce clāmāvērunt.

---
[1] geese.        [2] sacred.

LWR

Tum ūnus ē senibus dīxit: "Camillum ducem nostrum dēligere iūre nōn dēbēmus quod eum senātus dē exsiliō numquam revocāvit et ducem nōn dēlēgit."

20 Magna erat difficultās; nam senātus in monte Capitō-līnō ā Gallīs oppugnābātur. Mox inter eōs dē difficultāte convēnit. "Nūntium ad senātum dīmittēmus," dīxērunt. Puer cuius nōmen erat Pontius Cominius clāmāvit, "Nūntium portābō ad senātum aut necābor."

25 Nocte hic nūntius ad urbem iter tetendit. Mediā nocte in eam partem saxī[3] altī ubi hostēs nōn spectābant ascendit et magnā cum difficultāte ad summum montem pervēnit. Ubi cīvēs Rōmānī eum vīdērunt, nūntiō eius audītō, animus eīs accessit. Virtūtem eius laudāvērunt et senātus 30 dīxit: "Nōs laetī Camillum revocābimus dē exsiliō et eum dēligēmus dictātōrem." Tum Cominius dē monte dēscendit quō itinere occultō ascenderat et Veiōs iter tetendit.

Posteā ūnus ē Gallīs vēstīgia[4] invēnit ubi nūntius dē monte dēscenderat. Brennus, hōc nūntiātō, suōs statim 35 convocāvit. Inter sē dīxērunt: "Sī Rōmānus hoc saxum[3] ascendere potest, nōs quoque possumus." Illā nocte igitur id temptāre convēnit.

Iam erat nox. Cūnctīs parātīs Brennus paucōs virōs dēlēctōs ad iter occultum addūxit. Magnā difficultāte 40 saxum[3] ascendērunt sed tamen ad summum montem iter tetendērunt et mūrōs Capitōlī tenēbant.

Interim, hostibus ā nūllō audītīs, Rōmānī in Capitōliō sine cūrā dormiēbant.[5] Sed in Capitōliō erant anserēs[1] Iūnōnī sacrī.[2] Eī anserēs[1] Gallōs audīvērunt et clangōre[6] 45 suō Capitōlium servāvērunt. Nam clangōre[6] excitāvērunt[7] Mānlium mīlitem Rōmānum quī ad arma sociōs suōs magnā cum vōce vocāvit. Ūnum Gallum quī in summō monte cōnstiterat dē monte gladiō sine morā iēcit. Quod

---

[1] geese.　[2] sacred.　[3] rock.　[4] footprints.　[5] sleep.　[6] cackling.　[7] awake.

436

*Roman Coins.* At the left, Juno Moneta, who presided over the mint, which was in her temple on the Capitoline—75 B.C.; at the right, temple of Jupiter. Note three deities (See p. 431) between the pillars.

Mānlī sociī auxilium dedērunt, mox is cūnctōs Gallōs quī ascendere temptābant dēscendere coēgit. Rōmānī Mān- 50 lium laudāvērunt et huic dōna dedērunt. Mānlius appellā- bātur Capitōlīnus quod Capitōlium servāvit.

Iam Brennus Rōmānīs dīxit: "Sī mille[8] pondō[8] aurī[8] mihi dabitis, castra movēbō et Rōmā mē removēbō. Dabitisne mihi pecūniam an dēlēbiminī?" 55

Tum Rōmānī nūllum cibum habuērunt et sine cibō habitāre nōn iam poterant. Inter eōs igitur dē pecūniā convēnit. "Pecūniam dabimus," Gallīs dīxērunt. Inter sē tamen dīxērunt: "Gallī dēlēvērunt urbem nostram praeter Capitōlium et iam rogant mille[8] pondō[8] aurī[8]. Haec poena 60 est magna quam Gallīs damus. Id nōn est iūs." Sed aurum[8] ad Brennum portābātur. Eō tempore cum[9] lēgātus Brennō aurum[8] trādēbat, Camillus ad portās cum cōpiīs armātīs pervēnit. Statim animus Rōmānīs accessit.

Camillus dē exsiliō revocātus interim hās magnās cōpiās 65 quās ab urbibus fīnitimīs undique coēgerat parāverat et

[8] 1000 pounds of gold.     [9] when.

437

flūmen ad portās Rōmae celeriter trādūxerat. Ubi dē aurō[8] audīvit, cōpiīs īnstrūctīs statim ad Brennum incessit. Lēgātum Gallīs aurum[8] nōn dare sed id ad Capitōlium remittere iubet. Tum Brennō dīcit: "Nōs Rōmānī ferrō[10], nōn aurō[8] patriam nostram dēfendimus."

Statim proelium committitur. Multī vulnerantur et necantur. Rōmānī tubās Gallōrum nōn iam timent. Mox Gallī vincuntur et ex urbe expelluntur. Hōc modō 75 Camillus pācem rūrsus cōnfirmāvit. Post victōriam Camillus "pater patriae" appellātur. Temporibus Camillī magnum cavum mediō in Forō vīsum Rōmānōs terrēbat. Sed eam fābulam in Capite XIX lēgistis.

Potestisne magistrō vestrō eam fābulam nārrāre? 80 Potestisne decem fābulās nārrāre dē virtūte virōrum quī temporibus antīquīs vīxērunt?[11]

---

[8] 1000 pounds of gold.     [10] sword.     [11] lived.

2.                    **VOCABULARY**

| | |
|---|---|
| **interim**, adv. | *meanwhile* |
| **parō, parāre,** 1 | *get ready, prepare, get; determine* |
| **difficultās, -ātis,** f., 3 | *difficulty* |
| **nox, noctis, (-ium),** f., 3 | *night* |
| **tendō, -ere, tetendī, tentus (tēnsus),** 3 | *stretch, strain, direct, proceed* |
| **-scendō, -ere, -scendī, -scēnsus,** 3 | *climb* |
| **summus, -a, -um,** m., f., n., 1 & 2 | *highest, top of, very great, greatest* |

3.            NEW TYPES OF OLD FRIENDS

*a.* **ascendō:** **ad,** *up* + **-scendō,** *climb* = *climb up, ascend*

*b.* **dēscendō:** **dē,** *down from* + **-scendō,** *climb* = *climb down (from), descend*

438

The temples were imposing and beautiful with their marble columns and statues. In one, that of Saturn, was the treasury of the state. Courts were held in the great halls known as *basilicas*, to some of which shops were also attached. Through the Forum ran the Sacred Way (**Via Sacra**), along which passed the triumphal processions. Arches, columns, and statues stood everywhere.

As the Forum became more and more crowded, five additional ones were built, now known as the *Imperial Fora* because they were built by individual emperors. Each of these had an open space surrounded by colonnades or arcades. In each stood a magnificent temple and various memorial structures. In that of Trajan was a great basilica, where courts met. Two of them and probably a third contained groups of shops.

The Forum and the Imperial Fora were the very heart of Rome.

## *Supplementary Story*

=== HISTORICAL NOTE ===

Manlius Torquatus had won glory by killing a gigantic Gaul in single combat and carrying off the Gaul's necklace (**torquis**) in token of his victory. From this he received his nickname of **Torquātus**. Possibly his example inspired his son.

### A SOLDIER MUST OBEY

Manlius Torquātus cōpiās Rōmānās contrā Latīnōs[1] dūcēbat. Castra[2] Rōmānōrum ā castrīs Latīnīs nōn longē aberant.[3] Itaque Rōmānī facile verba[4] Latīnōrum audiēbant.

Tum quīdam[5] Latīnus iterum[6] atque iterum clāmābat et
5 dīcēbat, "Cūr, Rōmānī, in castrīs vestrīs manētis? Cūr ex castrīs nōn venītis? Cūr nōn gladiīs[7] Rōmānī castra dēfendunt? Quis pugnam committere[8] audet[9]?"

Propter imperia Manlī Rōmānī castra nōn relīquērunt. Tandem autem verba Latīnī īram[10] fīlī Manlī commōvērunt, quī[11]
10 mīles[12] in castrīs erat. Gladium cēpit et ex castrīs properāvit. Pugnam cum Latīnō commīsit. Latīnum superāvit et arma spoliāvit.[13] Tum in castra Rōmāna revēnit.

[150]

LAR

Manlius autem, cum arma Latīnī vīdit, fīlium nōn laudāvit sed "Sine imperiō meō, mī fīlī,"[14] clāmāvit, "pugnam commīsistī. Officium mīlitis est imperia ducis[15] memoriā tenēre.[16] 15 Officium ducis est mīlitem pūnīre[17] quī imperia ducis memoriā nōn tenet. Fīlium meum, lictōrēs,[18] ad mortem[19] dūcite."

[Notes] 1. *Latīnus, -ī (m.)*, a Latin.  2. *castra, -ōrum (n.)*, camp (*plural translated as singular*).  3. *longē aberant*, was far away.  4. *verbum, -ī (n.)*, word.  5. *quīdam*, a certain.  6. *iterum (adv.)*, again.  7. *gladiīs*, with their swords.  8. *pugnam committere*, to engage in battle.  9. *audeō, -ēre*, dare. 10. *īra, -ae (f.)*, anger.  11. *quī*, who.  12. *mīles*, soldier (*nom.; gen., mīlitis; acc., mīlitem*).  13. *spoliāvit*, stripped off.  14. *mī fīlī*, my son (*voc.*).  15. *ducis*, of the general.  16. *memoriā tenēre*, to remember (*literally*, to hold by memory).  17. *pūniō, -īre, -īvī*, punish.  18. *lictōrēs*, lictors (*voc.*).  19. *mortem*, death (*acc.*).

"

1. Can you tell the story about Manlius and his son?  2. What does the story show about the character of the Romans?

"

Manlius orders the execution of his own son

the fortress.

e of Juno

1ought that

the time of

1 something

:ions *in, on,*

sition regu-

*e middle of*

n phrases ex-

:pressing

ssed by the

2.

 night, the

t difficulty

top of the

r to defend

lieutenant

# CHAPTER XLII

1.

## RŌMA ITERUM AEDIFICĀTUR

Ubi, pāce cōnfirmātā, Gallī et tubae horribilēs Rōmā
sē remōvērunt adulēscentēs quī in Capitōliō cōnstiterant
dē monte dēscendērunt, et fēminae, līberī, senēs quī in
montibus et oppidīs fīnitimīs sē occultābant sine morā
revēnērunt. Nunc cīvēs tūtī erant, sed domicilia[1] nōn 5
habuērunt. Ruīnās sōlās vidēbant ubi viās et domicilia[1]
relīquerant et magnopere dolēbant, nam Gallī urbem
praeter Capitōlium undique dēlēverant. Capitōlium sōlum
in mediīs ruīnīs nigrīs[2] vidētur integrum. Rōmam dē
integrō aedificāre necesse est.                                10

Multī hominēs Veiīs revēnerant ubi in domiciliīs[1] bene
aedificātīs habitāverant. Prīncipēs eōrum hominum clā-
māvērunt: "Cūr hīc permanēmus? Summus labor est
Rōmam iterum aedificāre. Domicilia[1] Veiōrum iam aedi-
ficāta nōs exspectant. Iūre in illā urbe ā nōbīs captā 15
habitābimus." Haec ōrātiō prīncipum hominibus grāta
erat.

"Rōmam relinquēmus et Veiīs habitābimus," respon-
dērunt.

Sed ōrātiōne adulēscentis Camillī in oppidō Veiīs num- 20
quam habitāvērunt. Camillus dē exsiliō ā Rōmānīs revo-
cātus ubi dē cōnsiliīs hominum audīvit magnopere dolēbat.
"Quid est id," dīxit, "quod agere in animō habētis?
Nōnne terra haec quam mātrem appellāmus vōs tenet?
Nōn sine causā deī hominēsque hunc locum dēlēgērunt et 25
hīc hanc urbem prope id magnum flūmen Tiberim aedi-

---

[1] houses.        [2] black.

441

*LWR*

*Mounted Samnites.* At left, bronze statuette of a Samnite horseman
—5th century; at right, a victorious knight carrying on his spear the
shirt taken from a slain enemy—4th century.

ficāvērunt quō cibus ad nōs portātur et frūmentum
nostrum ad mare portātur. Nōnne vērī Rōmānī estis?"

Hominēs Camillī ōrātiōne mīrum in modum mōtī
30 Rōmae manent, et ūnō annō urbs dēlēta cum magnō
labōre dē integrō aedificātur. Interim tamen Rōmānīs
urbem suam aedificāre nōn saepe permittitur cum pāce.
Oppida fīnitima ita dīxērunt, "Rōmam iterum magnam
urbem esse nōn volumus." Tēla igitur iaciēbant et cum
35 Rōmānīs bellum gerēbant, sed Camillus virtūte suā
Rōmam servāvit. Iterum iterumque Camillus cōpiās
flūmen in Samnītēs et cēterōs hostēs trādūcēbat et semper
eōs vincēbat.

Post centum[3] annōs Rōmānī multa oppida occupāve-
40 rant et nunc cūnctās terrās inter montēs et mare regēbant.
Sed cōpiās suās numquam addūxerant in Ītaliam merī-
diānam.[4] Ōra merīdiāna[4] Ītaliae ā Graecīs, nōn Ītalicīs
inhabitābātur neque sub Rōmānīs erat. Eī Graecī nāvigiīs
ascēnsīs trāns mare nāvigāverant et urbēs tentās in ōrā

___

[3] one hundred.        [4] southern.

442

paenīns
Ūnum
Ōlim
tum ac
Propte
commīs
dedēru
Eō t
eīs bell
"Pyr
duce,
Graecō
"Co
Ītaliam
multōs
cēmus.

[5] once.
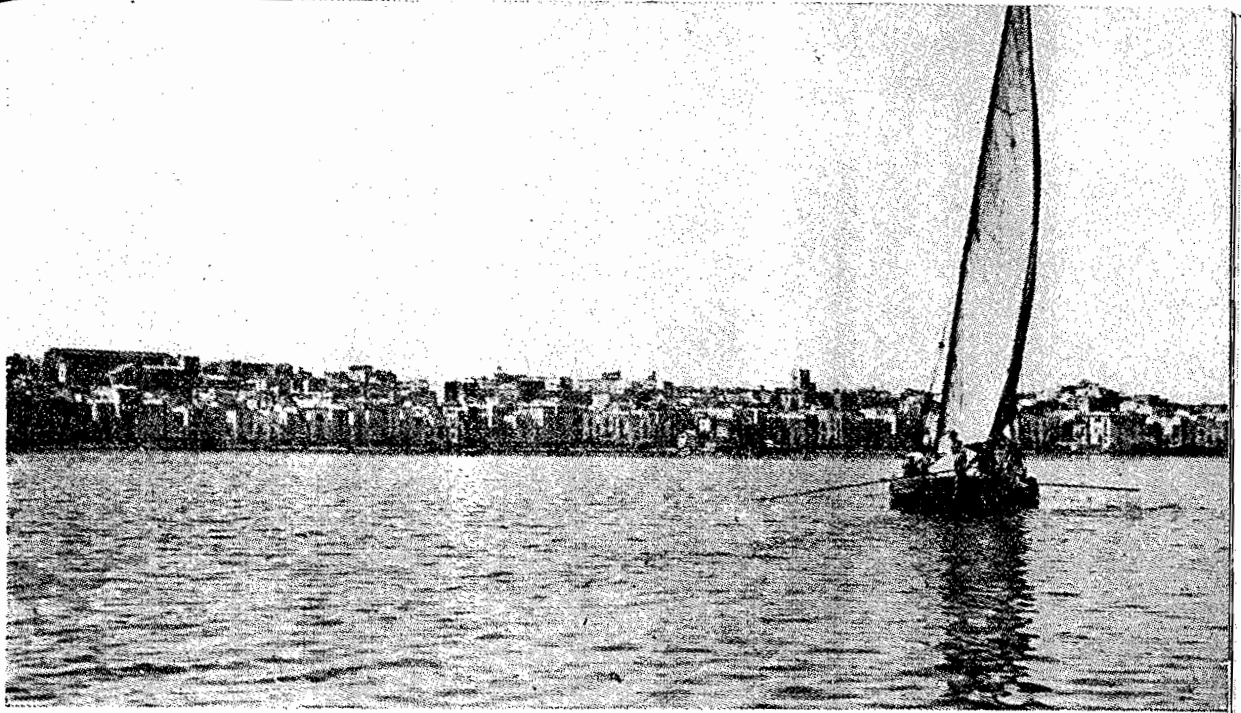
*Tarentum. View of the old town from the sea.*

paenīnsulae Ītalicae et in īnsulā Siciliā aedificāverant. 45
Ūnum ex oppidīs Graecīs Tarentum appellābātur.

Ōlim[5] ubi Rōmānī decem nāvigia ascendērunt et Tarentum accessērunt, sine causā oppidānī[6] ea oppugnāvērunt.
Propter eam iniūriam Rōmānī mox proelium cum Graecīs
commīsērunt et posteā Graecī Rōmānīs magnās poenās 50
dedērunt.

Eō tempore Tarentīnī nūllum ducem habēbant neque
eīs bellum grātum erat.

"Pyrrhus sōlus nōs dūcere potest," dīxērunt. "Pyrrhō
duce, Rōmānōs vincēmus." Cum Pyrrhō igitur rēge 55
Graecō et mīlite ēgregiō agere dē auxiliō necesse erat.

"Convenit," Pyrrhus clāmāvit, "ego vester dux erō; in
Ītaliam properābō. Mēcum magnās armātāsque cōpiās et
multōs elephantōs addūcam. Mē duce, Rōmānōs vincēmus." Graecīs haec ōrātiō grāta erat. 60

[5] once.    [6] townspeople.

443
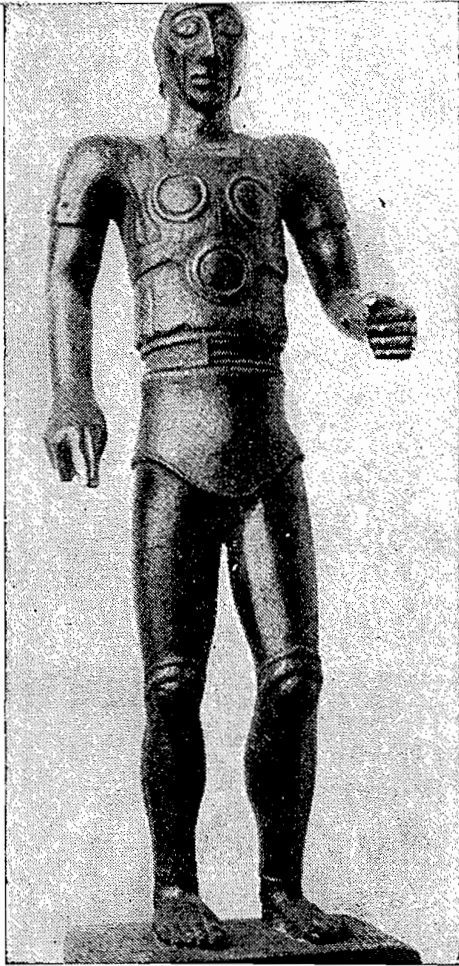
**Samnite Warrior.**
*Fifth Century, B.C.*

Statim Pyrrhus iter parat et
mox nāvigiō ascēnsō ad Ītaliam
nāvigat. Ubi pervēnit, animus
Graecīs accessit et mox Sam-
65 nītēs cum Graecīs sē iūnxērunt.[7]
Sed hanc fābulam iam lēgistis
(in Capite XVI). Nōnne po-
testis magistrō vestrō nārrāre
dē Pyrrhō et Claudiō et Fa-
70 briciō et Cineā?

Post bellum Graecum Rōmā-
nī cūnctam Ītaliam regēbant et
magnopere pācem dēsīderā-
bant. Sed mox dolēbant quod
75 magnum bellum cùm Carthā-
gine in īnsulā Siciliā gerere cō-
gēbantur. Ibi Carthāginiēnsēs
quī diū īnsulam vincere temp-
tāverant magnam partem nunc
80 tenuērunt. Ibi tamen erant
multae urbēs quās Carthāgi-
niēnsēs nōn vīcerant. Ūna ex
urbibus oppugnātīs auxilium Rōmānōs rogāvit. Rōmānī
inter sē ita dīxērunt: "Haec urbs prope Ītaliam est. Car-
85 thāginem hanc urbem regere nōn volumus. Auxilium
igitur rogātum mittere necesse est." Nocte Rōmānī in
īnsulam Siciliam pervēnērunt.

Carthāginiēnsēs erant dominī maris sed Rōmānōs in
terrā pugnāre nōn parābantur. Rōmānī, Appiō cōnsule
90 duce, gladiīs magnō labōre pugnāvērunt et victōrēs multīs
proeliīs discessērunt. Multa oppida quoque eīs sē trādidē-
runt. Carthāgō dolēbat propter Rōmae victōriās in terrā
sed in marī victōriam exspectābat.

---
[7] join.

444

Worship consisted primarily of sacrifices, offerings of all kinds, the making and fulfillment of vows (**vōta**), the holding of festivals with rites and games, and processions in which the images of the gods were carried around the city. Statues of the gods were often placed on couches outside the temples and food was presented to them. Various animals were sacrificed; particularly the bull, the sheep or lamb, the pig, and the kid. There were also bloodless offerings of fruit, food, and incense.

No important act was performed without consulting the gods. This was necessary before any public business could be transacted, and even before a battle could be fought. The practice extended into private undertakings as well. A favorite omen was the flight of birds. The omens were interpreted by special officials, the *augurs*, and the procedure was known as taking the **auspicēs**. When an animal was sacrificed, the body was opened and the entrails were examined and interpreted. A general on a campaign always carried with him a coop of sacred chickens and before going into battle observed whether they would eat or not. If they ate, the omens were regarded as favorable.

Thus religion entered into every phase of a Roman's life. For many it was a mere form. Yet we know that true respect for the gods persisted, and that in many a home and by many a Roman the practices handed down by the fathers were reverently observed.

### LEGACY

Note how many words have come into English from Roman religious practices. Thus we have *pontiff*, *pontifical*, *devote*, *devotion*, *vow*, *sacrifice*, *sacred*, *omen*, *ominous*, *augury*, *auspices*. Look up the meaning of each of these words.

*Supplementary Story*    340 BC

### DECIUS GIVES HIS LIFE FOR ROME

Decius, ūnus ē cōnsulibus, ubi haec verba deōrum audīvit, sē mortī vovēre[1] cōnstituit.[2] Nam putāvit: "Sī ego prīmus ex nostrō exercitū ab hostibus interficiar, īra deōrum ā populō Rōmānō āvertētur[3] et patria mea exercitusque servābuntur.
5 Spem certam victōriae exercituī nostrō reddam." Deinde sē armāvit et postquam legiōnēs[4] īnstrūctae sunt in equum suum

[ 386 ]

The consul Decius dies to win the victory for Rome. "Valor, opening heaven to those who have not deserved to die, tries to journey thither by a path denied to others." (HORACE)

**"**

ascendit. Tum magnā vōce clāmāvit, "Jāne,[5] Juppiter, pater
Mārs, et vōs deī deaeque, quī hanc urbem cūrātis ac dēfenditis,
mē spectāte! Nam mē mortī nunc voveō." Mox sōlus in mediōs
hostēs equitāvit.[6]                                                          10

Hostēs audāciā[7] tantā virī perterritī prīmō ē proeliō cēdere
coepērunt. Dum cēdunt autem omnibus ex partibus in Decium
tēla[8] jēcērunt. Brevī tempore ille multīs tēlīs vulnerātus inter-
fectus est. Interim mīlitēs legiōnum factum nōbilissimum Decī
vīderant atque ācriōre audāciā pugnābant. Tandem tōtam 15
manum Latīnōrum in fugam dedērunt.[9] Sīc Rōmānī exemplō
Decī Latīnōs vīcērunt.

Posteā fīlius Decī, quī quoque cōnsul exercitum Rōmānum
dūcēbat, simile exemplum amōris patriae praebuit.[10] Quod fac-
tum patris suī memoriā tenuit et mortī sē vōvit, exercitus Rō- 20

[ 387 ]

mānus iterum[11] hostēs vincere et potestātem cīvitātis augēre potuit.

[NOTES] 1. *voveō, -ēre, vōvī, vōtus,* dedicate. 2. *cōnstituō, -ere, -stituī, -stitūtus,* determine. 3. *āvertō, -ere, -vertī, -versus,* turn away, avert. 4. *legiō, legiōnis (f.),* legion. 5. *Jānus, -ī (m.),* Janus, a god of the Romans. 6. *equitō, -āre,* ride. 7. *audācia, -ae (f.),* daring. 8. *tēlum, -ī (n.),* weapon. 9. *in fugam dare,* to put to flight. 10. *praebeō, -ēre, praebuī,* furnish. 11. *iterum (adv.),* a second time.

"

Can you answer these questions on the story?

1. What did Decius decide to do? 2. What did he think? 3. What preparations did he make? 4. What prayer did he make? 5. What did he then do? 6. What happened? 7. What effect did this have upon the Romans? 8. Was Decius right in doing this deed? 9. Why? 10. What happened later to his son? 11. Was this family justly famous?

The Roman Forum as it looks today

W. M. Seaman

OBJECTIVES

To learn the story of
Fabricius
To learn the forms
and use of reflexive
pronouns and
adjectives

# PYRRHUS ET FABRICIUS

ricius (Fabrish´us)
irse (abl.)

**F**abricius[1], quī erat īnferior genere quam aliī Rōmānī, tamen ab omnibus amātus est quod optimus fortissimusque mīles erat. Neque amīcōs neque inimīcōs suōs fallēbat. Praemia numquam sūmēbat. Itaque Rōmānī cīvitātis suae salūtem eī crēdidērunt et eum inter aliōs lēgātōs ad Pyrrhum mīsērunt.

5    Multa quae dē Fabriciō et eius summā honestāte Pyrrhus audīverat vēra esse crēdidit. Itaque hunc lēgātum in castrīs suīs cōnspectum bene accēpit. Ad extrēmum eī dīxit: "Cūr nōn in Ēpīrum mēcum venīs et ibi manēs? Tibi quārtam rēgnī meī partem tribuam." Sed Fabricius respondit sē neque partem rēgnī sibi tribuī cupere neque sūmptūrum esse.

10    Proximō annō Fabricius contrā Pyrrhum pugnāvit. Medicus rēgis mediā nocte ad eum vēnit et dīxit sē prō praemiō Pyrrhum interfectūrum esse. Fabricius, quī nēminem fefellerat, respondit sē nūllum praemium prōpōnere et iussit hunc ligātum ad dominum redūcī et Pyrrhō omnia dīcī. Ubi rēx medicum ligātum cōnspexit, maximē mōtus dīxit: "Ille est Fabricius quī
15 nōn facilius ab honestāte quam sōl ā cursū[2] suō āvertī potest!"

## Questions

1. Why did the Romans have so much confidence in Fabricius?
2. What offer did Pyrrhus make to Fabricius?
3. What was Fabricius' reply?
4. What offer did the king's doctor make to Fabricius at a later time?
5. What was Fabricius' response?
6. What reason did Pyrrhus have for being grateful to Fabricius?
7. To what did Pyrrhus compare him?
8. What strength of character does the story of Fabricius illustrate?

LFA

# CĪNEĀS ET PYRRHUS

*us,* a region in northwest
ᵊce

*as (Sin´eas)*

*enant*

⸳m multā libertāte; the **cum** in
ablative of manner often
ds between the adjective and
noun (p. 260).

**⅃... animō** *what do you intend?*

ᴵry attack an elephant
ᵊe face and trunk are
ᵊcted by special armor and
a spear for offensive action.

**P**yrrhus erat rēx Ēpīrī[1]. Cīneās[2], quī erat lēgātus[3] in Pyrrhī castrīs et reliquōs lēgātōs auctōritāte et virtūte superābat, cōnsiliīs Pyrrhī nōn probātīs, multā cum lībertāte[4] rēgem monēbat. Quondam Pyrrhus Cīneae familiārī dīxit: "In Italiam prōcēdere et cīvitātem Rōmānam cum celeritāte superāre
5   parō."

Cīneās, "Superātīs Rōmānīs," rogāvit, "quid est tibi in animō[5] facere, rēx fortis?"

"Italiae fīnitima est īnsula Sicilia," inquit[6] rēx, "quam facile erit armīs occupāre."

10   Tum Cīneās, "Occupātā Siciliā," rogāvit, "quid posteā faciēs?"

Pyrrhus tum respondit: "Posteā trāns mare in Āfricam mīlitēs meōs celerēs trānsportābō et hostēs, quī celeritāte et virtūte mīlitibus meīs nōn parēs sunt, pellam."

Cīneās, "Pulsīs hostibus," rogat, "quid tum faciēs?" "Post haec[7] bella, Cīneā[8]," inquit Pyrrhus, "pāce cōnfirmātā, vītam in ōtiō agam."   15

Celer Cīneās respondit: "Familiāris meus es. Cūr nōn etiam nunc pācem cōnfirmāre potes atque mēcum in ōtiō vītam agere? Quid tē impedit?"

LFA
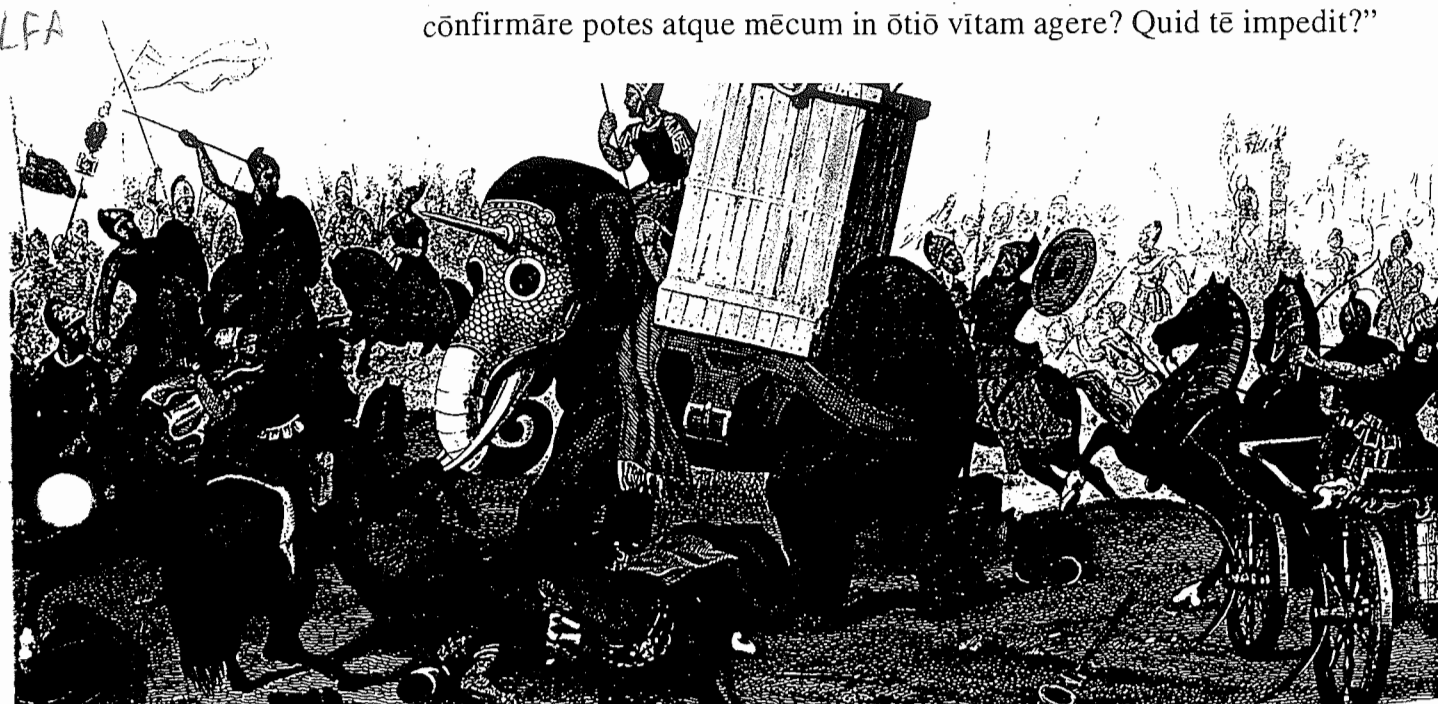
fēcimus.**   3. Hodiē, mīlitēs, prohibēte Gallōs castrīs nostrīs.
4. Populus Rōmānus ducēs cōnsulēs appellābat.   5. Magnā cūrā
līberābimur sī mīlitēs nostram urbem ab hostibus dēfenderint.
6. Cīvēs Rōmānī clārae victōriae memoriam servāvērunt.   7. Gallī
tēla coniciēbant et nostrī multa vulnera accēpērunt.   8. Iūlius Cae-
sar, nostrārum cōpiārum dux, imperātor factus est.   9. Aut hos-
tium oppidum capiēmus aut ab hostibus interficiēmur.   10. Sī
labōrābimus magnā cum dīligentiā multum cōnficiēmus.

**D.** Translate.

1. If we make a good plan, our sailors will capture many ships.
2. The leaders of the Roman people were called consuls.   3. Men
of Rome, shall we make Lucius our king?   4. The queen, because
she was good, received many beautiful gifts from the grateful
people.   5. Leave the forest, boys, and you will free me from
great care.   6. We hurled many weapons and kept the enemy
from our town.   7. Two boys and five girls were sitting on chairs
near the large table.   8. A thousand soldiers and a hundred aux-
iliary troops were marching from Italy to Gaul.   9. The neighbor-
ing tribes are both savage and hostile, but we shall defend our city
from the dangers of war.   10. A few bad boys were throwing
books through the teacher's window.

—— *Reading* ——

## PYRRHUS AND FABRICIUS

Rōmānī cum Pyrrho, rēge Epīrī, bellum gerēbant. Ab rēge multīs
proeliīs victī sunt. Multī mīlitēs Rōmānī captī sunt. Rōmānī captīvōs
ā Pyrrhō līberāre cupiēbant et ad rēgem lēgātōs mīsērunt. Ūnus ex
lēgātīs fuit Fabricius, vir bonus et in bellō fortis; clārum erat Fabricī
nōmen, sed vir nōn magnam pecūniam habuit. Pyrrhus Fabricium
benignē accēpit; fāma ducis Rōmānī rēgem dēlectāvit.

"Fabricī," inquit (*says*) Pyrrhus, "sī pacem cum meā patriā faciēs,
pecūniam accipiēs; captīvōs līberābō et meōs mīlitēs ab iniūriā prohi-
bēbō. Eris socius meus."

Sed Fabricius patriam, nōn pecūniam, amābat. Respondit, "Sī,
Pyrrhe, tua dona accēperō, meam amīcitiam nōn cupiēs. Et Rōmānī
et tuī magnō cum honōre bellum cōnficient. Tum amīcī erimus."

** **iter facere,** *to make a march, to march*
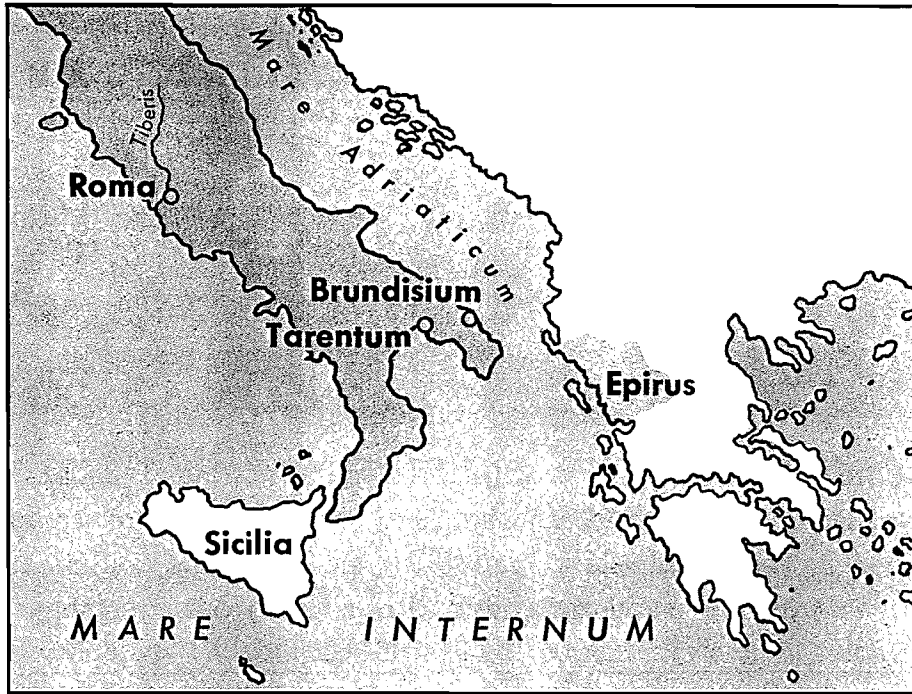
The map shows the relative positions of Rome and Epirus, the native land of Pyrrhus.

# XLIII

## SMALL BEGINNING OF A GREAT WAR

Prīmō Rōma erat parva urbs. Paulātim autem Rōmānī urbēs fīnitimās vincēbant et terrās suās augēbant; mox magnam partem Ītaliae tenēbant.

Multī incolae quoque ē Graeciā in Ītaliam migrāvērunt. Rōmānī colōniās eōrum appellābant "Magnam Graeciam." Maximum oppidum Magnae Graeciae erat Tarentum. Cum ₅ Tarentīnīs Rōmānī pācem fēcērunt.

Per lēgātōs Rōmānī Tarentīnīs dīxērunt, "Nostrae nāvēs longae numquam prope vestram ōram maritimam nāvigābunt; vōbīscum amīcitiam pācemque habēbimus perpetuam gerē-musque negōtia." ₁₀

Ōlim autem decem nāvēs longae Rōmānōrum prope oppidum Tarentum nāvigāvērunt. Rōmānī nōn petīvērunt bellum, sed negōtia pācis. Tarentīnī autem īrātissimī proelium commīsērunt et quīnque nāvēs Rōmānās dēlēvērunt.

Rōmānī bellum parāre incēpērunt. Tarentīnī ducēs, quod 15
parvās cōpiās habēbant, auxilium ā Graecīs fīnitimīs petī-
vērunt. Graecī autem satis magnās cōpiās nōn habēbant.

Forte erat in īnsulā Siciliā Pyrrhus, rēx Ēpīrī, quī in animō
habēbat rēgnum īnsulae obtinēre. Pyrrhus, ubi dē ducibus
Tarentīnīs īrātīs audīvit, magnīs cum cōpiīs in Ītaliam 20
prōcessit. Initium vērō bellī fuit!

| | |
|---:|---|
| +cōpiae,[1] -ārum | F. pl., troops, forces |
| lēgātus, -ī | M., representative; staff officer, lieutenant |
| proelium, -ī | N., battle |
| dux, ducis | M., leader |
| *nāvis, nāvis (-ium) | F., ship; (with **longa**) warship |
| *pars, partis (-ium) | F., part, portion |
| pāx, pācis | F., peace |
| *urbs, urbis (-ium) | F., city |
| fīnitimus, -a, -um | neighboring, adjacent; (as noun) M. pl., neighbors |
| *decem | ten |
| *quīnque | five |
| *augeō, -ēre, auxī | increase, enlarge |
| *obtineō, -ēre, -tinuī | possess, occupy, obtain |
| *committō, -ere, -mīsī | commit, entrust; (with **proelium**) begin |
| numquam | never |
| paulātim | little by little |
| satis | enough |
| *vērō | truly, surely, in fact |

T H I R D - D E C L E N S I O N   N O U N S   have many kinds
of endings in nominative singular. The declension to which
a Latin noun belongs, however, can always be determined
from the genitive singular ending, which is different for each
declension.

All Declension III nouns have genitive singular ending in
**-is.** (Declension I nouns have **-ae;** Declension II nouns
have **-ī.)**

[1]Beginning with this lesson the accented syllables of vocabulary words will not be in-
dicated. For help with accent and syllabication see page 398.

**III** Add appropriate endings to the incomplete words; then translate the sentences. When either singular or plural ending is correct, complete the word both ways.

1 Incolae urb- magnopere pāc- dēsīderābant.
2 Pont- in fluviō lātissimō fēcimus.
3 Agricola ursam timidam in obscūrā part- cavernae vīdit.
4 Pōns ab alt- arc- ad proxim- mont- pertinet.
5 Optim- duc- praemia splendida dedī.
6 Lēg- jūstae rēg- benign- incolīs grātae sunt.

**SCRAMBLED SENTENCE**    Rearrange the words of this sentence and translate.

| amīcitiamque | urbēs | cum | habēbant | īnsulīsque |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Graeciae | pācem | oppidīs | multae | fīnitimīs. |

# XLIV

## A PYRRHIC VICTORY

Mox Pyrrhus cum cōpiīs Graecīs in Ītaliam vēnit, ubi bellum gerere incēpit.

Mīlitēs Graecī gladiōs longōs, hastās longissimās, clipeōs° habēbant; galeās validās in capitibus gerēbant.

Praetereā Pyrrhus multōs elephantōs habēbat. Elephantī 5 erant maxima animālia; in tergīs elephantōrum erant parva tēcta, ubi mīlitēs armātī stābant.

Inter cōpiās Rōmānās erant multī peditēs equitēsque. Eō tempore Rōmānī quoque valida arma—hastās, gladiōs, galeās, scūta—habēbant. Nōn satis longī autem erant eōrum gladiī 10 et hastae.

Prīmō Rōmānī firmiter stetērunt; tum Pyrrhus elephantōs in proelium mīsit. Hī elephantī nova atque mīra animālia erant; tamen Rōmānī sē nōn recēpērunt.

°**clipeus, -ī** M., round shield (as opposed to the Roman **scūtum,** an oblong shield)

Equī autem Rōmānōrum timēbant elephantōs. Fūgērunt 15
et dominōs suōs interfēcērunt et per aciem° Rōmānam cu-
currērunt. Quā dē causā° Graecī prīmō proeliō Rōmānōs
vīcērunt.

Tamen victōria Pyrrhī pretiōsissima erat; nam in campō
proeliī corpora optimōrum mīlitum Graecōrum jacēbant. 20

°**aciem** (acc. sing.) battle line  •  **quā dē causā**  for this reason

| | |
|---|---|
| *caput, capitis | N., head |
| *corpus, corporis | N., body |
| *eques, equitis | M., horseman; pl., cavalry |
| *miles, militis | M., soldier |
| *pedes, peditis | M., foot soldier; pl., infantry |
| *tempus, temporis | N., time |
| *pretiōsus, -a, -um | costly, precious, expensive |
| *jaceō, -ēre, -uī | lie, recline |
| *firmiter | firmly |
| praetereā | besides |
| nam | for (introduces an explanation) |
| bellum gerere | to wage war |
| sē recipere | to retreat |

NEUTER NOUNS OF THIRD DECLENSION
follow "the Neuter Law"; as in all neuter nouns, nominative
and accusative are identical, and in the plural, nominative
and accusative end in **-a**.

Like other Declension III nouns, most neuters have **-um**
in genitive plural.

Exceptions are neuter nouns ending in **-e, -al,** or **-ar,** which
have **-ium** in genitive plural. These same nouns also have **-ī**
in ablative singular and **-ia** in nominative and accusative
plural.

Neuter nouns may cause confusion if they are not recog-
nized as such. A useful practice is to make a list of Declen-
sion III neuters as you meet them. They are not numerous.

**237**

# XLV

## A ROMAN STATESMAN

Post prīmum proelium magnum Pyrrhus pācem dēsīde-
rāvit et ad Rōmānōs nūntium mīsit. Oppida Rōmāna Magnae

Graeciae postulāvit. Multī ducēs Rōmānī Pyrrhō illa oppida
dare cupiēbant.

Ēgregius senātor et cōnsul erat Appius Claudius, quī cōn- 5
strūxerat° longum aquaeductum—Aquam Appiam. Viam
Appiam Appius Claudius quoque mūnīvit.

Appius, jam senex° caecusque, vītam agēbat quiētam et in
senātū° nōn saepe aderat.

Appius, quamquam ā senātū aberat, tamen ex amīcīs verba 10
nūntiī audīvit. Statim auxiliō servōrum in senātum pro-
perāvit.

Ibi Appius dīxit, "Interdum amīcī meī dolent quod sum
caecus. Sed hodiē sum laetus, quod hunc Graecum superbum
in senātū Rōmānō vidēre nōn possum. Hodiē mihi dolōrem 15
dant amīcī meī. Quam caecī vōs estis, Rōmānī! Rōma erit
tūta; illa oppida erunt tūta; nēmō° in fīnibus nostrīs nōs
vincet."

°cōnstrūxerat  had  built    ⊕    senex  (nom. sing.) aged, old
senātū*  (abl. sing.) senate    ⊕    nēmō  (nom.) no one

240

# CHAPTER XVI

## *FIRST REVIEW – CHAPTERS I-XV*

### REVIEW STORY

1.

*a.*
### PYRRHUS

Vibia Tertiaque in casam novam dominae aequae
Helenae properant. Helenam et fīliam Aspāsiam et servās
et rosās albās et ōrnāmenta pulchra vident neque Helena
fīliaeque puellās vident. Helena fīliābus fābulam mīram
5 dē ēgregiīs Graecīs et Rōmānīs nārrat et puellae audiunt.
Puellae Rōmānae linguam Graecam amant.

"Num Helena fīliaeque amīcās vidēre volunt?"

"Iterum et iterum amīcās vidēre volunt."

"Fābulam dē Graecīs ēgregiīs et Rōmānīs libenter
10 audīmus. Nōbīs[1] grāta est. Cūr fābulam iterum nōn
nārrās?" Tertia Helenam rogat.

"Fābulam iterum audīre nōn possum[6]," clāmat Aspāsia,
"litterās enim scrībere dēsīderō." Aspāsia discēdit[2] et
Helena fābulam nārrat.

15 "Est fābula nōta dē vītā Pyrrhī et victōriā Rōmānā.
Poētae glōriam et Pyrrhō et Rōmānīs saepe dant. Rōma
prōvinciās nōn habet, ubi Graecī ōram merīdiānam[3]
Ītaliae et īnsulam propinquam Siciliam habitant. Multa
oppida in ōrīs paenīnsulae pulchrae aedificant. Oppida
20 sunt magna et pulchra. Iam Rōmānī Ītaliam merīdiānam[3]
Magnam Graeciam appellant. Sed Rōmānī cum Graecīs
in grātiā nōn sunt; cōpiās igitur ē portīs Rōmae per
Ītaliam in Magnam Graeciam mittunt et Rōmae portās
claudunt.

[1] to us.  [2] departs.  [3] south.  [6] I am able.
Every word used in preceding vocabularies is repeated in this story.
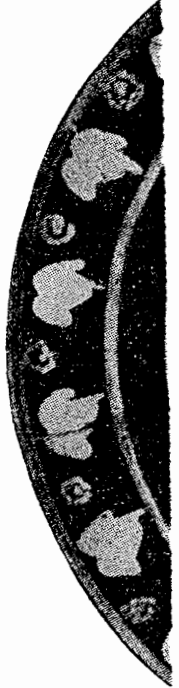
154

ae
ās
na
ım
ıt.

ter
ōn

ia,
et

nā.
ma
m³
lta
ida
m³
cīs
per
tās

*An Elephant of Pyrrhus.* This picture represents one of the elephants which Pyrrhus, the king of Epirus, brought with him to Italy. Note the soldiers in the tower on the elephant's back and her baby tied to her tail—a painted clay dish, third century, B.C.

"Graecī Magnae Graeciae nōn pugnant; lūdunt. Theā-25 tra et lūdōs amant. Lēgātōs igitur in Graeciam ad terram nōtam Ēpīrum ad Pyrrhum ēgregium mittunt; nam cōpiās Pyrrhī habēre volunt. Pyrrhus Ēpīrum iam regit sed cūnctam terram regere dēsīderat. Pyrrhus libenter pugnat. Lēgātōs igitur ad Magnam Graeciam remittit 30 et populō Graecō clāmant, 'Fortūna Magnae Graeciae est bona; Pyrrhus enim magnās cōpiās, multōs elephantōs, multum frūmentum in Ītaliam mittit.'

155
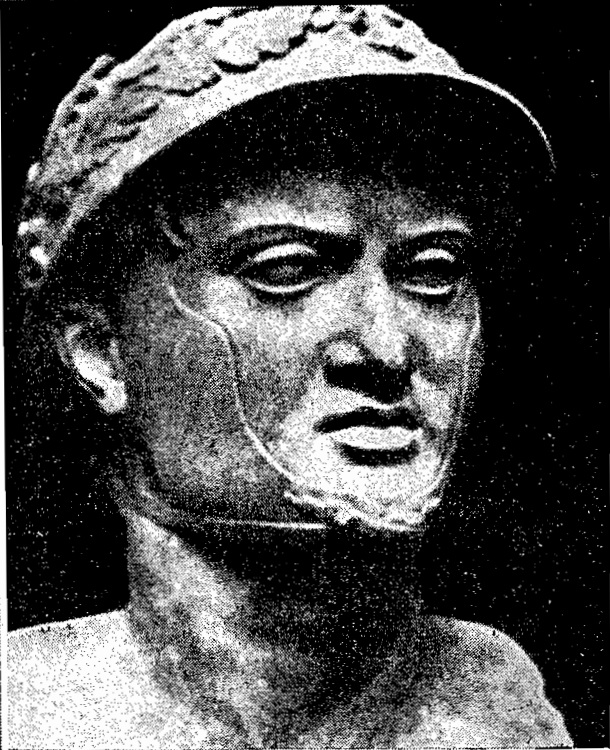
*Pyrrhus, King of Epirus.* A bust from *Herculaneum.*

"Pyrrhus in Ītaliam venit
35 et Graecōs in circō et theātrīs videt neque amat. 'Graecī pugnāre dēbent,' Pyrrhus clāmat. 'Cōpiās Graecās Ītaliae merīdiānae[3] habēre dē-
40 beō.' Pyrrhus dominus Magnae Graeciae iam est; circōs theātraque igitur claudit et cōpiae Magnae Graeciae cum cōpiīs Ēpīrī iam
45 labōrant.

"Rōmānī iam cum Graecīs prope oppidum Tarentum pugnant. Et Graecī et Rōmānī victōriam dēsīderant.
50 Sed sunt elephantī cum cōpiīs Pyrrhī et elephantīs Pyrrhus cōpiās Rōmānās Ītalicāsque terret. Elephantī equōs quoque terrent. Pugna est magna longaque. Pyrrhus vincit, sed miseram victōriam calamitātem[4] appellat. Rōmānōs spectat et cōpiās bonās ēgregiāsque Rōmān-
55 ōrum laudat. Sī[5] cōpiās Rōmānās habeō, cūnctam terram vincere possum,[6]' clāmat.

"Pyrrhus cum Rōmānīs iterum pugnāre nōn vult. Lēgātum Cīneam igitur dē amīcitiā ad oppidum Rōmam mittit, nam Pyrrhus amīcitiam firmam populī Rōmānī
60 vult. Cīneās eīs[7] grātus est. Pyrrhus igitur cum populō Rōmānō in grātiam venit.

"Sed Rōmae est Rōmānus ēgregius, Appius Claudius, quī[8] Pyrrhum nōn amat."

"Appius Claudius," clāmat Vibia, "agrōs, silvās, lūnam,
65 templa, vīllās amīcōrum bonōrum, agricolārum nōn videt;

---

[3] south.   [4] disaster.   [5] if.   [6] I am able.   [7] to them.   [8] who.

156



*Samnit.*
*mets, a*

nam est
"Quis
"Appi
antīquus
oppidum
appellan
Claudiō
"Cīn
nārrat.
venit. I
Claudiu
bonī Rō
cōpiīs es
"Senā
dominu
ad Pyrr
'Fabrici
niam h

[9] blind.
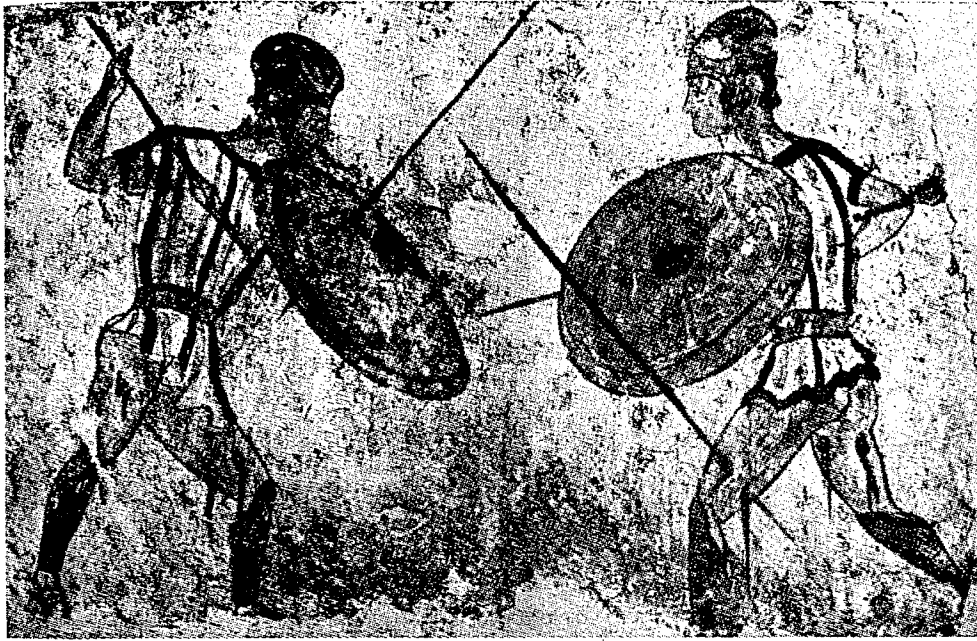
**Samnite Warriors.** A mural from a grave. Note short tunics, round helmets, and metal greaves. Both have been wounded—third century, B.C.

nam est caecus⁹. Servī Claudium dūcunt et cūrant."

"Quis est Appius Claudius?" Lesbia rogat.

"Appius Claudius," respondet Vibia, "est Rōmānus antīquus. Longam et bonam viam ē portā Rōmae ad oppidum Capuam dūcit. 'Viam Appiam' Rōmānī viam 70 appellant. Via est monumentum pūblicum et Appiō Claudiō glōriam dat."

"Cīneās cum Claudiō in grātiam nōn venit," Helena nārrat. "Claudius igitur cum servīs et fīliīs ad senātum venit. Fīliī in senātum Claudium dūcunt et senātus 75 Claudium iam audit. 'In Italiā cōpiae Pyrrhī nunc sunt; bonī Rōmānī alienō¹⁰ amīcitiam dare nōn dēbent ubi cum cōpiīs est in Italiā,' clāmat Claudius.

"Senātus igitur Graecīs amīcitiam nōn dat, sed ad dominum, Pyrrhum, Cīneam remittit. Rōmānī Fabricium 80 ad Pyrrhum dē captīvīs mittunt. Pyrrhō Cīneās nārrat: 'Fabricius est Rōmānus ēgregius, sed nōn magnam pecūniam habet.' Pyrrhus igitur Fabriciō pecūniam dat, sed

⁹ blind.    ¹⁰ foreigner.

157

Rōmānus ēgregius pecūniam Pyrrhī remittit. Iam Pyrrhus
85 Fabricium terrēre vult et magnum elephantum ad
Fabricium mittit, sed etiam elephantus Fabricium nōn
iam terret. Pyrrhus igitur Fabricium nōn regit, nam
Fabricius Rōmānus bonus est neque Rōmānus bonus
pecūniam Pyrrhī habēre dēbet. Graecī igitur in amīcitiam
90 populī Rōmānī nōn veniunt. Sed Pyrrhus nātūram
Fabricī amat; captīvōs igitur Rōmānōs cum Fabriciō ad
senātum Rōmānum remittit. Ubi in oppidum Rōmam
captīvī veniunt, portās claudunt Rōmānī et ad templa
deōrum properant atque sacrificia dant. Rōmānī cum
95 Pyrrhō prope ōram paenīnsulae iterum pugnant et iam
Rōmānī vincunt."

"Ubi igitur cōpiae Rōmānae ad oppidum Rōmam veni-
unt," nārrat Vibia, "in triumphō per Sacram Viam in
Capitōlium cōnsul Dentātus captīvōs miserōs et multōs
100 equōs et elephantōs dūcit. Cūnctae cōpiae Rōmānae
cum signīs in triumphō sunt. Novam togam cōnsul habet.
Rōmānī Dentātō palmam[11] dant et clāmant, 'Iō[12] trium-
phe! Iō[12] triumphe!' Puerī et puellae et populus cūnctus
adsunt atque triumphum spectant."
105 "Sed Pyrrhus," clāmat Helena, "cum cōpiīs parvīs ad
Ēpīrum iam properat neque cūnctam terram umquam
vincit."

[11] palm branch.     [12] Oh!

b.                    VOCABULARY

vo'lunt                                  *they wish (for)*
i'te rum                                 *again, a second time*
dē sī'de rō, dēsīderāre, 1               *desire, long for*
por'ta, portae, f., 1                    *gate, entrance*
clau'dō, claudere, clausī, clausus, 3    *close, shut*
re'gō, regere, rēxī, rēctus, 3           *guide, direct, rule*
vult                                     *he, she, it wishes (for)*
re-, red-, prefix, [explained in section b(2)]  *back or again*

# LESSON FIFTY-FIVE

*"*

## *Irregular Comparison*

══════ PRELIMINARY REMARKS ══════

In English, certain adjectives and adverbs are irregular in comparison.
[As, *good* (*well*), *better*, *best*; *much*, *more*, *most*; *little*, *less*, *least*.] Note that
in Latin the same thing occurs. Take this opportunity to review the forms
of the perfect and past perfect tenses, active and passive, of the four con-
jugations.

### HOW THE ROMANS FOUGHT WITH PYRRHUS

Plūrima [1] bella ab initiō reī pūblicae contrā populōs vīcīnōs
ā Rōmānīs gesta sunt. Rōmānī quod bellī cupidiōrēs erant et



King Pyrrhus

*"*

armīs potentiōrēs quam vīcīnī,
vīcīnōs sub potestāte suā redi-
gere et sibi imperium majus 5
obtinēre potuērunt. Tandem,
postquam major pars Italiae
superāta est, eōs contrā Taren-
tīnōs[1] pugnāre oportuit.

Tarentīnī, quī cōpiīs minus 10
potentēs erant et ā Rōmānīs
circumdatī erant, ā Pyrrhō,[2]
rēge Graecō, auxilium petīvē-
runt. Ille, cupiditāte imperī
maximī inductus, cum exercitū 15
et vīgintī elephantīs[3] in Italiam
nāvigāvit. Tum prīmum Rō-

mānōs ignōtō genere bellī pugnāre oportuit.

Simul atque adventus Pyrrhī nūntiātus est, Valerius[4] cōnsul,
vir alacerrimus, contrā Pyrrhum ā senātū praemissus est, quī 20
explōrātōrēs[5] Pyrrhī captōs per castra dūcī omnemque exerci-
tum ostendī et illōs dīmissōs magnitūdinem castrōrum cōpiā-
rumque Rōmānārum ducī Graecō renūntiāre jussit. Posteā
proelium cum hoste commīsit. Prīmō mīlitēs Pyrrhī, quam-
quam numerō plūrēs [2] erant, Rōmānōs sustinēre nōn potuē- 25
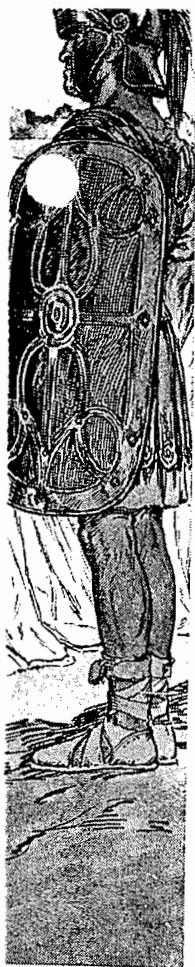
runt et fugere coepērunt. Tum rēx elephantōs quī post aciem abditī erant in prīmam aciem agī et ad Rōmānōs mittī jussit. Tum fortūna proelī mūtata est.[6]  Nam ubi hoc factum est, mīlitēs Rōmānī, magnitūdine corporum elephantōrum perter-
30 ritī, cēdere coepērunt.  Equitātus quoque, quī mīlitibus antecesserat, eādem causā terga vertit[7] et fūgit.  Nox fīnem huic proeliō fēcit.

Post paucōs mēnsēs, quod plūrimī mīlitēs Rōmānī, quī ex proeliō superfuerant, in manibus Pyrrhī tenēbantur, senātus
35 ad illum dē hīs captīvīs miserrimīs lēgātōs mīsit, inter quōs erat Fabricius,[8] cīvis optimus et in rē pūblicā dīligentissimus, quem Rōmānī propter virtūtem et dignitātem magnopere laudābant. Per tōtam vītam pauper[9] fuerat et in domō humilī habitāverat.

Tum Pyrrhus, ubi haec dē Fabriciō cognita sunt, fidem ejus
40 aurō[10] temptāvit ; sed frūstrā, nam Fabricius neque aurum neque cēterās rēs sibi prōpositās accēpit.

[NOTES] 1. *Tarentīnī, -ōrum (m. pl.)*, the people of Tarentum.  2. *Pyrrhus, -ī (m.)*, Pyrrhus.  3. *elephantus, -ī (m.)*, elephant.  4. *Valerius, Valerī (m.)*, Valerius.  5. *explōrātor, -ōris (m.)*, scout, spy.  6. *mūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus*, change.  7. *terga vertit*, turned their backs.  8. *Fabricius, Fabricī (m.)*, Fabricius.  9. *pauper, -eris*, poor.  10. *aurum, -ī (n.)*, gold.

## GRAMMAR NOTES

*[The Irregular Comparison of Adjectives.]*

1. The adjectives **bonus, magnus, malus, multus,** and **parvus** are compared as follows:

| POSITIVE | COMPARATIVE | SUPERLATIVE |
|---|---|---|
| bonus, -a, -um, good | melior, -ius, better | optimus, -a, -um, best |
| magnus, -a, -um, great | major, -jus, greater | maximus, -a, -um, greatest |
| malus, -a, -um, bad | pejor, pejus, worse | pessimus, -a, -um, worst |
| multus, -a, -um, many | ——, plūs, more | plūrimus, -a, -um, most |
| parvus, -a, -um, little | minor, minus, less | minimus, -a, -um, least |

Antīquīs temporibus Rōmānī contrā populōs fīnitimōs multa et ācria bella gessērunt. Etrūscī, Samnītēs, Latīnī ā Rōmānīs victī sunt quod Rōmānī erant armīs potentiōrēs quam fīnitimī. Propter haec bella illī sibi māgnam potestātem obtinēre potuērunt.

Ōlim Tarentīnī contrā Rōmānōs, quibuscum bellum gerēbant, Pyrrhum, rēgem Epīrī, auxilium rogāvērunt. Hic cum exercitū et vīgintī elephantīs ad Ītaliam statim nāvigāvit. Tum prīmum Rōmānī cum trānsmarīnīs (*from across the sea*) hostibus contendērunt. Contrā Pyrrhum et exercitum ējus Valerius cōnsul ā senātū missus est.

Cōnsul proelium cum hostibus commīsit. Prīmō mīlites Pyrrhī, quī impetum Rōmānōrum sustinēre nōn potuērunt, sē in fugam dedērunt. Statim Pyrrhus elephantōs in Rōmānōs agī jūssit. Jam fortūna proelī celeriter mūtāta est. Rōmānī, quī numquam anteā elephantōs aut vīderant aut audīverant, māgnopere commōtī sunt et ā Pyrrhō facile victī sunt. Nox fīnem huic proeliō fēcit.

Tamen mīlites cōnsulis fortiter pūgnāverant, et dux Rōmānus, quī partem exercitūs ā morte servāverat, mīlites suōs integrōs sēcum in castra dūxit. Pyrrhus erat victor sed mīlia mīlitum suōrum āmīserat. Tum vērō rēx māgnō cum dolōre manūs ad caelum levāvit et māgnā vōce clāmāvit: "Sī iterum eōdem modō illōs Rōmānōs superāverō, sōlus ego sine ūnō mīlite domum ad Epīrum discēdam."

Quod multī mīlites Rōmānī in manū Pyrrhī tenēbantur, senātus ad illum dē captīvīs lēgātōs mīsit. Ūnus ex lēgātīs erat Fabricius, cīvis bonus, quem Rōmānī propter integritātem māgnopere amābant. Per tōtam vītam pauper fuerat et in domō parvā habitāverat. Eī Pyrrhus mūnera et aurum dare cupīvit, sed frūstrā. Honor Fabriciō erat cārior quam vīta, et dōna nōn accēpit.

Posteā rēx Pyrrhus Fabricium terrēre temptāvit. Ūnus ex elephantīs jūssū (*order*) rēgis post aulaeum (*curtain*) prope Rōmānum stābat. Subitō aulaeum removēbātur, et elephantus strīdōrem (*noise*) horribilem ēmittēbāt (*let out*). Rēgī Fabricius ita dīxit: "Herī aurum et mūnera tua mē nōn temptāvērunt. Hodiē elephantus tuus mē nōn perterret."

# LESSON FIFTY-SIX

*"*

## Review of Sum and Possum

### THE INTEGRITY OF FABRICIUS

Tum Pyrrhus, quī Fabricium aurō[1] movēre nōn potuerat, illum timōre perterrēre temptāvit. Imperātō rēgis elephantus maximō corpore prope Fabricium sed post aulaeum[2] magnum abditus est. Tum signum subitō datum est et aulaeum remōtum est. Elephantus strīdōrem horribilem statim ēmīsit[3] et probos- 5 cidem[4] prope caput Fabricī ostendit. Virtūs autem Fabriciō nōn dēfēcit. Rēgī ita dīxit: "Herī aurum tuum mē non temptāvit, neque hodiē elephantus tuus mē perterrēre potest."

Eum tamen temptāre rēx nōn dēstitit. Fabriciō plūrima dōna prōposuit et, "Haec dōna vidē," inquit, "quae tē habēre 10 licet. Nōnne ea cupis? Nōnne ea accipiēs? Nōnne mēcum in Graeciam discēdere et ibi manēre cupis? Plūra sunt dōna quae tibi dabō. Tibi etiam quārtam partem rēgnī meī dabō." Cui Fabricius cum dignitāte respondit: "Sī mē virum bonum exīstimās, quā spē mē temptās? Sī vērō mē malum esse sēnsistī, 15 cūr mē amīcum habēre cupis? Tibi et praemiīs tuīs fidēs Rōmānī sē submittere nōn poterit."

Posteā Fabricius cōnsul dēlēctus Rōmānōs contrā Pyrrhum dūcēbat. Dum ipse et rēx castra vīcīna habent, medicus[5] rēgis in castra Rōmāna ad Fabricium vēnit et eum ita temptāvit: 20 "Sī mihi praemium dabis, ego rēgem facillimē interficiam cujus morte tē et Rōmānōs perīculō līberābō." Fabricius autem respondit: "Nōs Rōmānī tibi et reliquīs Graecīs similēs nōn sumus. Gladiō nōn perfidiā[6] pugnāmus." Tum medicum ad rēgem remittī jussit. Pyrrhus autem, ubi medicum remissum 25 vīdit, clāmāvit: "Sōl ā cursū[7] facilius movētur quam Fabricius ab integritāte."[8]

[ 411 ]

## LEGACY

Make a collection of photographs, postcards, or clippings showing modern buildings of the types mentioned in this lesson.

See how many architectural terms you can find which are derived from Latin. Some such words are *foundation, cellar, column, colonnade, arch, arcade, dome,* and *vestibule.*

## *Supplementary Story*

### GAIUS JULIUS CAESAR

Multī erant ducēs Rōmānī quī per omnēs annōs rem pūblicam Rōmānam dēfendērunt atque glōriam[1] cīvitātis auxērunt. Inter quōs nūllus[2] Caesare major erat et virtūte et cōnsiliīs. In pāce atque in bellō facta ejus fortissima ac prūdentissima erant. Galliam vīcit et tōtam terram Gallicam[3] 5 imperiō Rōmānō jūnxit. Ille vērō verba nōta scrīpsit: "Gallia est omnis dīvīsa[4] in partēs trēs." Dux maximus Rōmānōrum semper exīstimātus est.

Gāius Jūlius Caesar familiā nōbilissimā nātus est.[5] Stīpendia prīma in Asiā fēcit,[6] ubi ob virtūtem singulārem corōna 10 cīvica[7] eī data est. Artī dīcendī quoque operam vehementer dedit. Ōrātor bonus fuit, mēns ejus enim alacerrima fuit.

Ōlim, dum ad īnsulam Rhodum[8] nāvigat, Caesar ā pīrātīs[9] captus est, apud quōs plūrimōs diēs mānsit. Per omne autem illud tempus ā pīrātīs minimē territus est. Eīs vērō prōnūn- 15 tiāvit: "Vōs capiam et interficiam, postquam redēmptus erō."[10] Ille, simul atque pīrātīs satis pecūniae ab ejus amīcīs datum est, redēmptus ad urbem proximam[11] properāvit eōque nāvēs coēgit. Tum in eum locum ubi pīrātae relictī sunt celerrimē pervēnit. Cōpiās pīrātārum statim vīcit et nāvēs eōrum in fugam vertit. 20 Pīrātās omnēs quōs cēpit sine morā interfēcit sīcut[12] ipse eīs nūntiāverat.

Ā prīmā aetāte Caesar auctōritātis cupidissimus erat. Ōlim cum exercitū Rōmānō in Hispāniam per montēs Alpium[13] iter faciēbat et cum amīcīs multa oppida parva ac misera spectābat. 2⟨ Tum ūnus ē sociīs ā Caesare quaesīvit: "Num hīc est ambi-

tiōnī[14] locus?" Cui Caesar respondit: "Ego in illō oppidō parvō prīmus esse mālō[15] quam Rōmae secundus." Tantus erat animus Caesaris illīus quī tandem

30 dominus tōtīus imperī Rōmānī factus est.

[NOTES] 1. *glōria, -ae* (*f.*), glory. 2. *nūllus* (*m.*), no one. 3. *Gallicus, -a, -um,* Gallic. 4. *est dīvīsa,* is divided. 5. *nātus est,* was born. 6. *stīpendia prīma fēcit,* did his first military service (made his first pay). 7. *cīvicus, -a, -um,* civic. (The civic crown, a military decoration, was made of oak leaves.) 8. *Rhodus, -ī* (*f.*), Rhodes. 9. *pīrāta, -ae* (*m.*), pirate. 10. *redēmptus erō,* I have been ransomed (I shall have been ransomed). 11. *proximus, -a, -um,* nearest. 12. *sīcut* (*conj.*), just as. 13. *Alpium,* of the Alps. 14. *ambitiō, -ōnis* (*f.*), ambition. 15. *mālō,* I would rather.

**II**

Can you answer these questions on the story?

1. Who was Julius Caesar? 2. In what two things did he especially train himself? 3. Why was he successful in both? 4. What early distinction did he receive? 5. Can you tell the two stories that show his character? 6. What part of the world did Caesar conquer for Rome? 7. What high place did he finally hold?

Gaius Julius Caesar stands in his forum, recently brought to light once more. "The noblest man That ever lived in the tide of times." (SHAKE-SPEARE)

*BB*

1. Pronou of these word parts of all v adventu antecēd circumd committ

2. Give E Review the

2.

1. Turn to Spared Rom

1. With b the story.

2. Write (

3. Go car yourself whe

For each the significa

For each degree; and

For each

For each gender; the

For each son, and nu the gender;

sentence.

If you c well the yea

(In the st of the geniti ablative, an tive; the in

R

## LATIN AND THE ROMANS

Can you describe how you would have had to travel if you had lived in Britain or Greece and had wished to visit Rome? What were some of the things you would have seen on your trip and what experiences would you have had?

Can you describe the appearance of ancient Rome, name some of the important parts of the city, and tell what went on there?

Can you describe the clothes that the Romans wore?

Can you name some of the gods whom the Romans worshiped and describe the way in which they were worshiped?

What does each of these words or expressions signify?

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Appian Way | guild | Mercury | toga |
| litter | Vesta | raeda | basilica |
| Tiber | Imperial Fora | insula | vigilēs |
| forum | Jupiter | Campus Mārtius | lictor |
| tunic | Minerva | stola | fascēs |

## LATIN MOTTOES OF OUR STATES

Arkansas: Regnat populus. *The people rule.*

Connecticut: Qui transtulit sustinet. *He who transplanted still sustains.*

Kansas: Ad astra per aspera. *To the stars through difficulties.*

Massachusetts: Ense petit placidam sub libertate quietem. *With the sword she seeks quiet peace under liberty.*

Mississippi: Virtute et armis. *By valor and arms.*

Missouri: Salus populi suprema lex esto. *Let the welfare of the people be the supreme law.*

New Mexico: Crescit eundo. *It grows as it goes.*

New York: Excelsior. *Upward.*

North Carolina: Esse quam videri. *To be rather than to seem.*

Ohio: Imperium in imperio. *An empire within an empire.*

South Carolina: Animis opibusque parati. *Prepared in courage and resources.*

Dum spiro, spero. *While I breathe, I hope.*

[154]

5. Statim duo mīlia mīlitum salūtem fugā petīvērunt.
6. Rēgulus igitur ab hostibus crūdēlissimīs interfectus est quod Rōmānī cum Poenīs pācem nōn fēcērunt.
7. Nōnne jūdex inīquissimus injūriās graviōrēs commīsit?
8. Illō tempore Rōmānī prīmam classem nāvium aedificāvērunt.
9. Nautae celerrimī quīnque mīlia passuum prope terram nāvigāvērunt.
10. Hōrum audācissimus sibi glōriam aeternam cupīvit.

B. Translate into Latin:

1. The Romans were very unlike the inhabitants of Africa.
2. Was not the city many miles away from Rome?
3. Many thousands of captives, therefore, were transported to Italy.
4. Regulus, who delivered himself into the hands of the very cruel enemy, saved his fatherland.
5. Honor was dearer to him than riches or his own safety.

### Rome's First Naval Battle

Postquam rēx Epīrī ex Ītaliā discessit, Rōma domina tōtīus Ītaliae erat. Rōmānī jam aliud et gravius bellum cum Carthāginiēnsibus (*Carthaginians*) gessērunt. Urbs Carthāgō in Āfricā contrā Siciliam locāta est. Incolae Poenī quoque appellābantur quod ē Phoeniciā vēnerant.

Initiō trium bellōrum gravissimōrum, quae bella Pūnica appellāta sunt, et Rōma et Carthāgō erant urbēs potentēs. Rōmānī exercitum potentissimum sed nūllās nāvēs habēbant; Poenī māgnās dīvitiās et māgnam scientiam rērum (*affairs*) nāvālium (*naval*) sed nūllās validās cōpiās habēbant.

Illō tempore necesse erat Rōmānōs multa mīlia mīlitum nāvibus trādūcere ex Ītaliā ad Siciliam. Rōmānī igitur multās nāvēs longās celeriter aedificāvērunt simillimās nāvī longae quae in aquīs prope Ītaliam inventa erat. Mox prīmam classem Rōmānam nāvium longārum habēbant.

Quīntō annō bellī Pūnicī prīmī Gājus Duillius, cōnsul Rōmānus, Ōstiā nāvigāvit. Ille Poenōs in marī invēnit ubi jam diū imperium habēbant. Corvī (*Gangways*) in nāvibus Rōmānīs aedificātī erant. Poenī, quī proelium cum Rōmānīs commīsērunt, facillimam victōriam exspectāvērunt. Ubi nāvēs Poenōrum ad nāvēs Rōmānās appropinquābant, Duillius corvōs dēmittī (*to be let down*) jūssit. Rōmānī, quī rēs nāvālēs īgnōrābant (*did not know*) neque nāvēs bene regere poterant, trāns corvōs in nāvēs hostium cucurrērunt et gladiīs atque aliīs tēlīs māgnum numerum hostium occīdērunt.

OLH                                        1st punic war.

Quīnquāgintā (*Fifty*) ex nāvibus Poenōrum dēlētae sunt, et rōstra (*beaks*) nāvium quae captae erant Rōmam missa sunt ubi in Forō posita sunt et ubi diū manēbant. Haec vērō erat prīma victōria Rōmāna nāvālis; nūlla victōria Rōmānīs grātior erat. Illī sē validiōrēs in proeliō nāvālī quam hostēs ostenderant.

Nōnō annō bellī, Regulus, cōnsul Rōmānus, prīmus exercitum in Āfricam trādūxit. Poenī auxilium ā Graecīs petīvērunt, quī Xanthippum ducem ācerrimum mīsērunt. Ab illō Rōmānī māgnā caede victī sunt, et Regulus ipse captus est.

Posteā īdem Regulus obses ā Poenīs Rōmam missus est. Hī Regulum pācem et permūtātiōnem (*exchange*) captīvōrum cum Rōmānīs facere jussērunt. Ubi Rōmam pervēnit, senātum monuit: "Nōlīte facere pācem aut permūtātiōnem captīvōrum cum Poenīs." Statim vir fortis captīvus Rōmā discessit et post adventum suum in Āfricam ā Poenīs occīsus est. Fidem (*promise*) cum hostibus servāverat et sibi laudem aeternam obtinuit.

# *Unit* XLIII

## CONVERSATION

ROBERTUS: Post prīmum bellum Punicum tōta Sicilia prōvincia Rōmāna erat; post secundum, Hispānia in duās prōvinciās dīvīsa est; post tertium, Poenī Rōmānīs Āfricam, quae prōvincia Rōmāna facta est, cessērunt.

ANNA: Nōnne Hannibal in paucīs proeliīs Rōmānōs vīcit?

ROBERTUS: Hannibal postquam in Ītaliam vēnit Pūblium Scipiōnem cōnsulem apud flūmen Trebiam vīcit.

HENRĪCUS: Tum Gājus Flāminius cōnsul cum exercitū inter montēs et Lacum Trasumēnum ab Hannibale undique oppūgnātus est.

ROBERTUS: Flāminius suōs stāre ac pūgnāre jussit; sed tum quandō angustiās (*difficulties*) comprehendit, clāmāvit: "Per mediōs hostēs gladiīs viam facite et vōbīs salūtem fortitūdine petite."

ROBERTA: Subitō eques Gallus impetum ācerrimum per turbam fēcit, ac cōnsulem pīlō occīdit. Nūllum iter fugae erat, etsī per

# LESSON LI

# CAEDICIUS FORTIS

Prīmō bellō Pūnicō hostēs locum nātūrā mūnītum occupāverant, et perīculum mīlitum Rōmānōrum magnum erat. Aestās erat, nam Rōmānī semper aestāte, nōn hieme, bella gerēbant. Dux nihil facere poterat. Rogāvit: "Quod cōnsilium capere dēbeō?" Tribūnus[1] mīlitum Rōmānus cui[2] nōmen Caedicius[3] erat, ad ducem hōc tempore vēnit et sententiam prōposuit, locō 5 quōdam[4] mōnstrātō:

"Virōs tuōs servāre poteris sī ad illum locum CCCC mīlitēs currere iubēbis. Hostēs, ubi hōs mīlitēs vīderint, proelium committent et hōs omnēs interficient. Dum[5] haec faciunt, facile erit reliquōs mīlitēs ex hōc locō ēdūcere. Haec est sōla via salūtis."　　　　　　　　　　　　　　　10

"Bonum tuum cōnsilium probō," inquit dux, "sed tamen quis illōs praecipitēs in mortem certam dūcet?"

"Cūr mē nōn mittis? Mors mē nōn terret," respondit tribūnus. Itaque dux tribūnō magnās grātiās ēgit et hunc cum CCCC mīlitibus contrā hostēs mīsit. Fortēs illī Rōmānī nihil timuērunt. Neque cessērunt neque fūgērunt sed 15 magnō numerō hostium superātī sunt. Omnēs aut vītam āmīsērunt aut vulnera accēpērunt. Interim reliquī mīlitēs Rōmānī integrī salūtem petīvērunt.

Deī praemium tribūnō Caediciō ob ēgregium exemplum dōnāvērunt; nam vītam nōn āmīsit. Vulnera multa accēpit sed neque in capite neque in corde. 20 Illā aestāte hostēs expulsī sunt, et hieme Rōmānī hostēs nōn iam timuērunt.

[1] *tribune,* a junior officer
[2] *whose* (lit., *to whom*)
[3] *Caedicius (Sēdish´us)*
[4] *a certain* (abl.)
[5] *while*

## Questions

1. In what war did the battle take place?
2. What danger did the Romans face?
3. At what time of year did the battle take place and why?
4. What was Caedicius' suggestion?
5. How many Roman soldiers were wounded or died in the battle?
6. What happened to Caedicius?
7. What reward did he receive and from whom?
8. Which part of this story is hardest to believe and why?　　*LFA*

# CHAPTER XLV

## *FOURTH REVIEW — CHAPTERS XXXV - XLIV*

I.                       REVIEW STORY

*a.*                   **Dē Prīmō Proeliō Nāvālī**

Dē initiō magnī bellī quod inter Rōmānōs et Carthā-
giniēnsēs, ēgregiam gentem, quī Poenī quoque appellā-
bantur quod ē Phoeniciā ad Āfricam vēnērunt gerēbātur
iam lēgistis. Hoc erat prīmum trium bellōrum quae
5 Pūnica bella appellāta sunt.

Initiō huius prīmī bellī Pūnicī et Rōma et Carthāgō
erant urbēs potentēs, similī cupiditāte[1] victōriae adductae.
Rōmānī cōpiās bene exercitās et magnōs ducēs habēbant.
Cīvēs Rōmānī quoque mīlitēs fortēs erant et ācrēs; sed
10 Rōmānī nūllās nāvēs longās habēbant. Carthāginiēnsēs
autem erant nautae, maris dominī, sed cum Rōmānīs in
terrā pugnāre nōn parābantur. Eōrum cōpiae parvae
erant neque cīvēs mīlitēs bonī; ex terrīs fīnitimīs igitur
auxilium vocāvērunt et mīlitēs undique vēnērunt. Post
15 longum tempus in Siciliā pugnāre parātī sunt.

Interim Rōmānī prīmīs victōriīs in terrā relātīs[2] Poenōs
tamen nōn vincere potuērunt quod in marī sine nāvibus
longīs victōriās referre[2] nōn potuērunt. Etiam nāvibus
mīlitēs portāre ad Siciliam necesse erat. Rōmānī igitur
20 celeriter multās nāvēs aedificāvērunt et mox prīmam
classem Rōmānam nāvium longārum obtinuērunt. Tum
Rōmānī fortēs et alacrēs Ōstiā prīmā vigiliā nāvigāvērunt
et hostēs in marī invēnērunt ubi Carthāginiēnsēs dominī
diū fuerant. Poenī ubi classem Rōmānam vīdērunt, sē nōn

---

[1] desire.        [2] win.
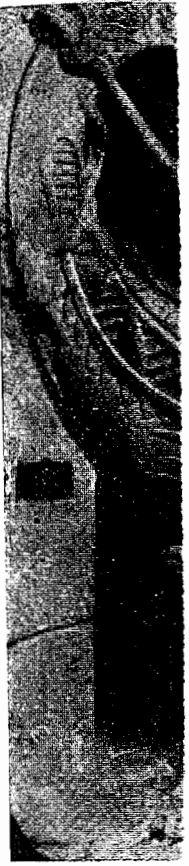
occu
ēgēr
mar
  Q
pote
nāv
tēla
mag
bus
iuss
nāv
Mo
[3]

LWR
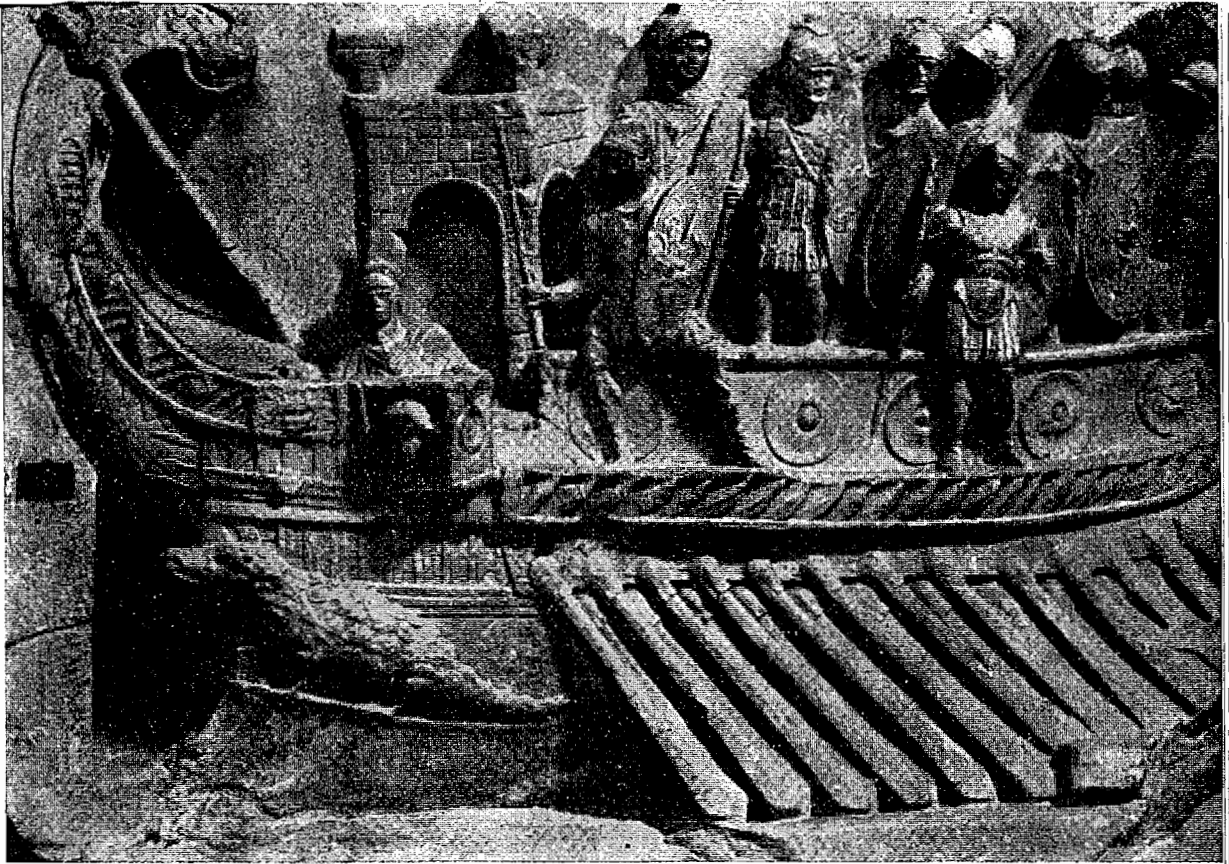
*A Roman Warship* — *First Century, B.C. This shows a fragment of a naval engagement. Note the one bank of oars and legionary soldiers. The form of the ship and the crocodile on the prow may point to the battle of Actium, won by Augustus (see page 642).*

occultāvērunt sed celeriter rēmīs[3] nāvēs ad Rōmānōs 25 ēgērunt et statim proelium commissum est. Poenī quī mare diū rēxerant facilem victōriam exspectābant.

Quod Rōmānī pugnāre poterant sed nāvēs regere nōn poterant, corvōs[4] in nāvibus novīs aedificāvērunt. Ubi nāvēs hostium sub nāvēs Rōmānās accessērunt, Rōmānī 30 tēla nōn coniēcērunt. Duīlius, ūnus ex cōnsulibus, quī magister classis Rōmānae erat mīlitēs corvōs[4] quī in nāvibus Rōmānīs positī erant in nāvēs Poenōrum dēmittere iussit. Tum statim corvīs[4] dēmissīs mīlitēs Rōmānī in nāvēs hostium properāvērunt et gladiīs bene pugnāvērunt. 35 Mox Rōmānī L ex nāvibus Poenōrum dēlēverant et eae

[3] oars.    [4] wooden gangway with spike on end.

469

quae relictae sunt laetae in fugam sē dedērunt. Haec vērō erat prīma victōria Rōmāna nāvālis. Mox Duīlius Rōmam iter fēcit et senātus eī dedit prīmum nāvālem triumphum.
40 Cum nautīs, mīlitibus, tubīs, praedā per urbem ad Capitōlīnum in triumphō hunc dūxērunt. Victōriā senātus in Forō Rōmānō columnam rōstrīs[5] victārum nāvium ōrnātam[6] aedificāvit.

Post hoc proelium nāvāle duo cōnsilia Rōmānīs relicta
45 sunt. Āfricam aut īnsulās oppugnāre poterant. Prīmō īnsulās dēlēgērunt sed mox Carthāginem oppugnāre dēsīderābant.

Nōnō[7] annō bellī senātus Regulō vērō Rōmānō, quī ab agrīs revocātus cōnsul iterum erat, imperium cōpiārum
50 exercitārum et classis permīsit. Ubi revocātus est, in humilī casā in agrīs habitābat; nam post multōs annōs officī ēgregī Rōmam relīquerat et sē ā vītā pūblicā remōverat. In agrīs semper labōrābat, sed eō Rōmam revocātō uxor et līberī in agrīs labōrābant quod mēnsam cōpiā cibī
55 īnstruere necesse erat. Eōrum vīta facilis nōn erat.

Regulus quoque Carthāginem oppugnāre dēsīderāvit. Prīmō in marī, tum in terrā bellum cum integrīs cōpiīs gerere in animō habēbat. Mox integrī mīlitēs et nautae nāvēs longās ascendērunt et ab Italiā nāvigāvērunt. In
60 mediō marī classis Rōmāna nāvēs hostium invēnit et proelium commissum est. Sine morā Regulus corvīs[4] dēmissīs mīlitēs Rōmānōs in nāvēs Poenōrum trādūxit et mox omnēs mīlitēs nautaeque necātī sunt aut vulnerātī sunt et classis victa est. Tum multā nocte in Āfricam
65 pervēnērunt et magnā cum difficultāte in ōrā castra posuērunt. Āfrica est patria Aethiopum quōrum color est niger[8] quod Phaethon eōs sōle incendit ubi quattuor equōs celerēs ab Apolline exercitōs ēgit.

---

[5] beaks (see page 486).    [6] adorned.    [7] ninth.    [8] black.
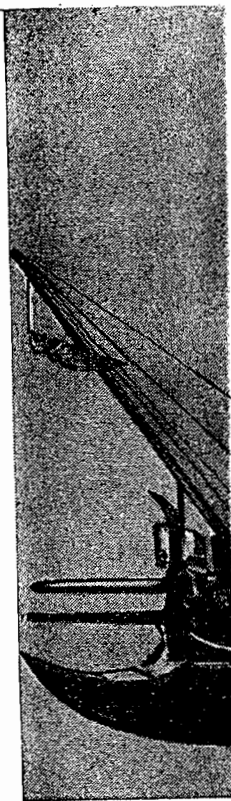
ec vērō
ōmam
phum.
[ Capi-
ātus in
ı ōrnā-

relicta
Prīmō
ugnāre

quī ab
ɔiārum
est, in
annōs
ˌ ᴑō-
vᴏᴄatō
ɔiā cibī
.

erāvit.
cōpiīs
nautae
nt. In
nit et
corvīs[4]
ūxit et
lnerātī
fricam
posuē-
niger[8]
equōs

.
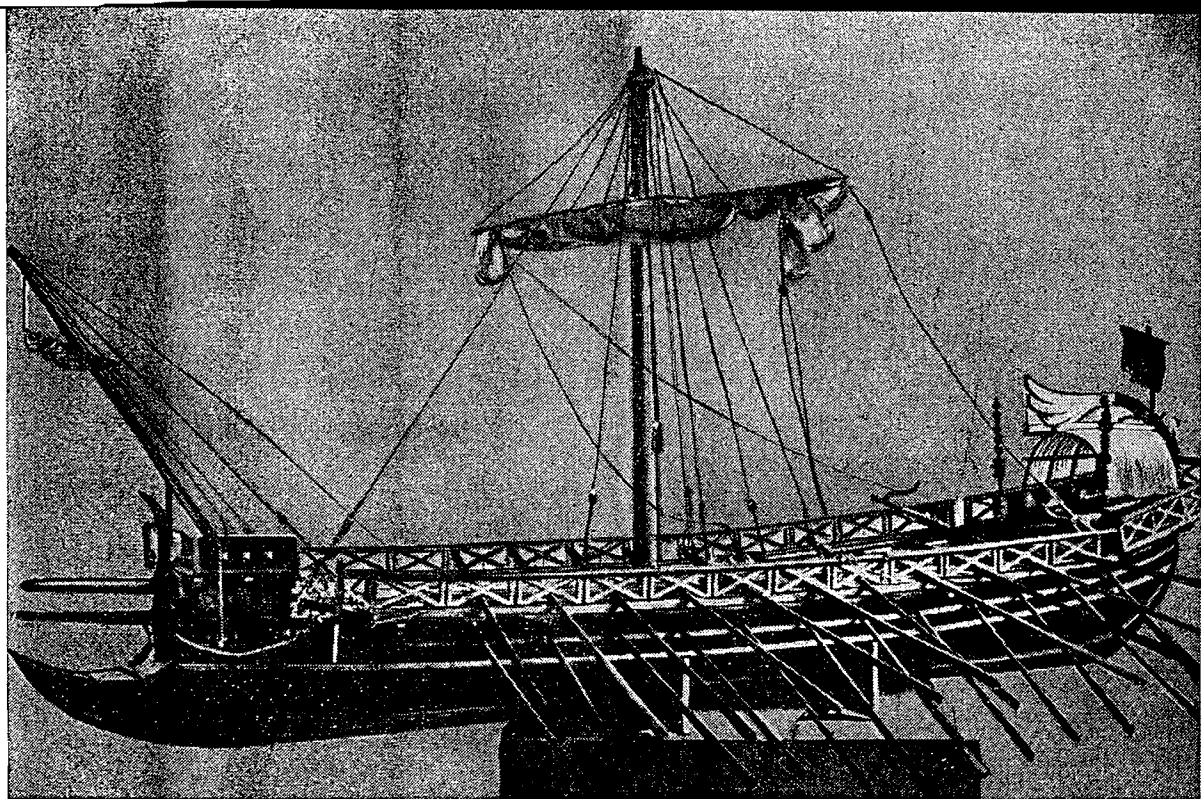


*Model of a Warship—Bireme.* A bireme was a galley propelled by two banks of oars, though generally having a mast with an oblong sail.

Hīc novum et horribile perīculum erat. Mox in castra serpēns magna quae Rōmānīs ignōta erat dēscendit. 70 Timor omnēs mīlitēs occupāvit et prīmō territī omnēs praeter Regulum in omnēs partēs in fugam sē dedērunt.

Dux autem perīculō incitātus in suō locō permānsit. "Nōnne tē in fugam dās?" Regulō ūnus ex mīlitibus dīxit. Nōn respondit sed statim suōs ad sē ūnam ē ballistīs[9] 75 quibus in Carthāginem lapidēs[10] conicere in animō habēbat portāre ıussit. Dīxit: "Ballistā[9] sine perīculō serpentem necāre possumus."

Iam animus virīs accessit. Regulī ōrātiōne et exemplō adductī ıllī revēnērunt et bonō labōre factīsque sē fortēs 80 nōn timidōs probāre temptāvērunt. Statim ballista[9] portāta est et lapidēs[10] in serpentem coniectī sunt. Hōc

---

[9] ballista (heavy machine).     [10] stones.

471

modō mox serpēns lapidibus[10] necāta est et mīlitēs tūtī
erant. Eī quī prīmō in fugam sē dederant poenās propter
85 fugam nōn dedērunt. Pellis[11] serpentis quae erat praeda
sōla huius pugnae ā mīlitibus servāta Rōmam mūnus
missa est. Ibi populus Rōmānus quī serpentem numquam
vīderat longam pellem[11] tentam cum admīrātiōne spectā-
bat et virtūtem virōrum ā quibus necāta erat magnopere
90 laudābat.

Post hoc factum Rōmānī Carthāginem incessērunt.
Initiō itineris huius frūmentīs igne gladiōque dēlētīs,
aedificiīs arboribusque incēnsīs, bonīs cibōque occupātō,
multa oppida sē trādidērunt. Multa oppida quoque ex-
95 pugnāta sunt.

Poenī magnum numerum mīlitum et equitum elephantō-
rumque quoque habēbant, sed equitēs et elephantī in
montibus summīs bene pugnāre nōn poterant in quibus
Poenī cōnstiterant.

100 Hāc causā prīmō facile erat Rōmānōs Regulō duce eōs
vincere. Multī adulēscentēs captī sunt et Rōmam ex hīs
regiōnibus missī sunt. Cōpiae Poenōrum quae nōn captae
erant Carthāginem reductae sunt.

Hōc tempore bellum iam decem annōs gerēbātur[12] et
105 Poenī erant miserī et pācem cōnfirmāre dēsīderāvērunt.
Cum Regulō igitur dē pāce agere coāctī sunt quod iūre
pācis condiciōnēs dīcere potuit. Condiciōnēs pācis autem
ā Regulō datae difficilēs erant. Prīncipēs Poenōrum dē
condiciōnibus pācis dolēbant; dē condiciōnibus igitur
110 inter sē convēnit. "Pugnābimusne an servī erimus?"
dīcēbant senēs. "Carthāginem nōn trādēmus etiam sī
urbs dēlēbitur. Servī nōn erimus. Bellum dē integrō
gerēmus."

Pāx petīta igitur nōn facta est.

---

[10] stones.   [11] skin.   [12] had been waged.

# CHAPTER XLVI

### 1.                  RĒGULUS

Mox Xanthippus, dux alacer, quī ā Graecīs Carthā-
ginem missus erat Poenīs auxilium dedit. Dīcitur cum
quattuor mīlibus equitum integrōrum et centum magnīs
elephantīs contrā Rōmānōs prōcessisse. Magnitūdō ele-
5 phantōrum tamen Rōmānōs nōn iam terruit; nē centum
quidem mīlitēs timuērunt. Hic dux ācer autem montēs
summōs nōn ascendit neque ibi contrā Rōmānōs cōnstitit,
sed in aperta loca dēscendit. Ibi in agrīs apertīs ubi milia
equitum exercitōrum et centum elephantī firmī bene
10 pugnāre poterant hostēs inventī sunt et proelium Xan-
thippō duce commissum est. Pugna difficilis erat. Ex eō
proeliō nē Rēgulus quidem prīmus dux illōrum temporum
cōnservātus est. Rōmānīs victīs Rēgulus captīvus Car-
thāginem ductus in carcerem[1] dēmissus est et ibi quīnque
15 annōs retentus est. Multīs mīlibus mīlitum necātīs, duo
mīlia tamen mīlitum in fugam sē dedērunt. Cum Rēgulō
D captī sunt.

Interim novus dux Rōmānus et novae cōpiae terrā
marīque bellum dē integrō gerēbant. Post quīnque annōs
20 huius novī bellī quod nōn in agrīs apertīs prope Carthā-
ginem sed in Siciliā gerēbātur, multīs oppidīs expugnātīs
et incēnsīs, Poenī magnō proeliō ā prōcōnsule Metellō
rūrsus victī dē pāce agere coāctī sunt. Lēgātōs igitur
Rōmam dē pāce mīsisse dīcuntur et Rēgulus cum eīs
25 missus est. Iussērunt Rēgulum pācem et commūtātiōnem[2]
captīvōrum cum Rōmānīs facere. Dē itinere inter Poenōs

---

[1] prison.          [2] exchange.

490

arthā-
: cum
nagnīs
ō ele-
entum
nontēs
istitit,
mīlia
bene
n-
eō
orum
Car-
inque
, duo
Rēgulō

terrā
annōs
arthā-
gnātīs
Ietellō
igitur
m eīs
ōnem²
oenōs
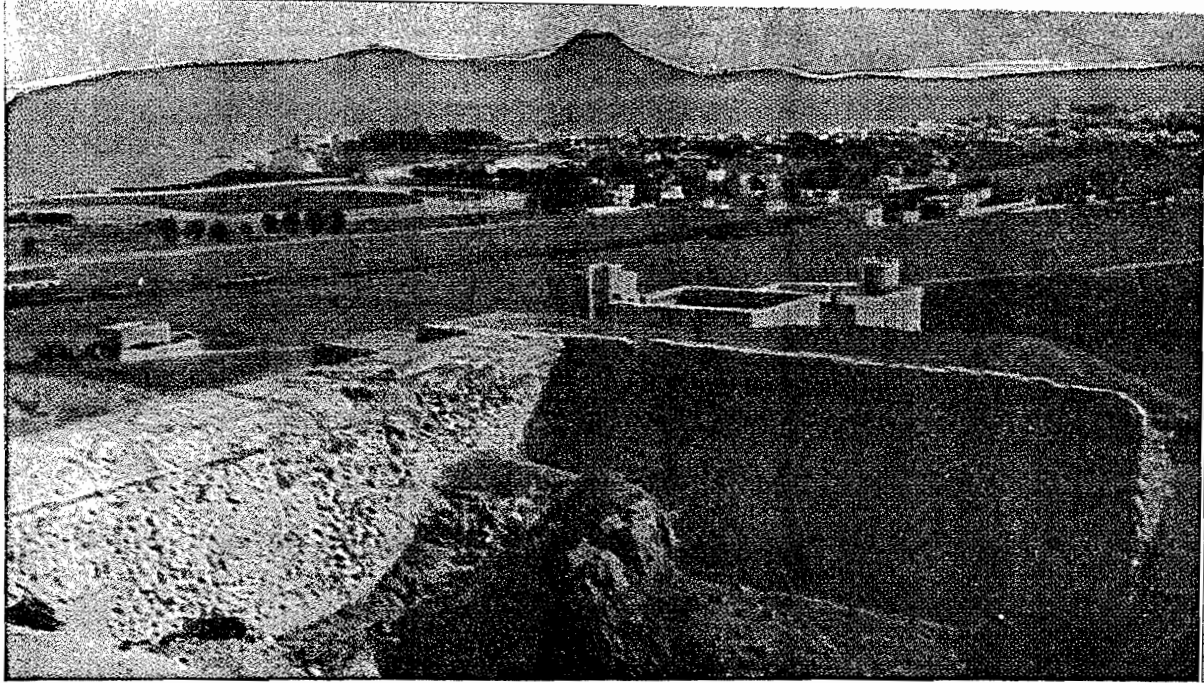


**Carthage, Africa.** *View of the harbor. Punic tomb in foreground.*

et Rēgulum convēnit. "Sī Rōmānī," Rēgulō dīxērunt, "nōbīscum pācem et commūtātiōnem² captīvōrum facient, tū līberāberis. Nisi pāx fiet³, ad nōs tē revenīre necesse erit." 30

Hōc cōnsiliō audītō Rēgulus respondit, "Sī Rōmānī Poenīs pācis condiciōnēs nōn dabunt, Carthāginem reveniam et vītā meā poenās dabō." Ita Rēgulus sē obsidem fēcerat.

Hōc dictō hic cum lēgātīs Rōmam discessisse dīcitur. 35 Mox in Ītaliam pervēnērunt. Itinere Rōmam factō Rēgulus ā populō Rōmānō magnō cum gaudiō⁴ vīsus est. Senātus, quī statim convocātus erat, ā lēgātīs condiciōnēs Poenōrum audīvit. Ubi cōnsul sententiam eius rogāvit, prīmō humilis Rēgulus nōn respondit sed tandem⁵: "Meam 40 sententiam dare nōn possum; nōn iam senātor, nē cīvis quidem Rōmānus sed et captīvus et obses Poenōrum sum." Senātus autem eius sententiam aperīrī iussit. Tum Rēgulus fortis ā prīncipibus Rōmae iussus Rōmānōs ita monuit,

---

² exchange.        ³ is made.        ⁴ joy.        ⁵ finally.

491

*A Coin of Carthage.*—Fourth Century, B.C. The obverse, Perse-
phone, daughter of Ceres (Demeter), goddess of agriculture. She
is surrounded by dolphins, symbols of Carthage's maritime power.
At the right is a reverse of the coin.

45 "Pācem et commūtātiōnem[2] captīvōrum nōn probō. Sī
pācem nōn faciētis mox Poenōs potentēs vincētis. Hoc
Poenī timent. Hāc causā pācem petunt. Negōtium facile
nōn erit. Magnitūdō labōris mīlitibus grāta nōn erit, sed
factīs fortibus et virtūte magnā vincent. Neque illī omnēs
50 armīs neque mēnsae cibō īnstruuntur. Magnam cōpiam
nē virōrum quidem habent. Propter mē vōs dolēre mag-
nopere nōn volō. Ego senex sum et prō patriā pugnāre
nōn iam possum. Captīvī Poenī autem adulēscentēs sunt
et diū pugnāre poterunt. Meum mūnus igitur est auxilium
55 patriae dare etiam sī vītā meā poenās dare necesse est."

Rōmānī vērō Rēgulī ōrātiōne adductī neque pācem
fēcērunt neque captīvōs remīsērunt. Rēgulus fortis igitur
cum lēgātīs Carthāginem revenīre parāvit. Eius uxor et
līberī ad flūmen convēnerant. Similī ratiōne[6] amīcī etiam
60 convēnerant et omnēs hunc Rōmae retinēre temptābant.
"Nōnne hīc cum uxōre et līberīs manēbis? Sōlī sunt,"
clāmāvit amīcus.

[2] exchange.        [6] plan.

492

robō. Sī
ī  Hoc
ım facile
erit, sed
lī omnēs
cōpiam
re mag-
pugnāre
tēs sunt
uxilium
sse est.''
pācem
is igitur
uxor et
cī etiam
tābant.
i sunt,''

"Quīnque annōs dolēbant quod captīvus retinēbāris."
Rēgulus autem, quem senātus ab agrīs in pūblicam vītam
revocāverat, ita dīxit: "Quod ego meam fidem[7] dedī 65
honōre obtineor vērī Rōmānī. Fidem[7] etiam cum hostibus
cōnservābō."

Hīs dictīs nāvem celerem ascendit. Magnō cum dolōre
omnēs nāvem discēdentem[8] spectābant. Ubi ea nōn iam
vidērī potuit, cīvēs ōram relīquērunt atque ad casās quae 70
apud[9] arborēs positae erant iter tetendērunt. Tum relictā
Ītaliā, Rēgulus in Āfricam cuius partem Phaethon dīcitur
sōle dēlēvisse revēnit et multā nocte se Poenīs trādidit ā
quibus celeriter necātus est.

Nōn sine honōre Rēgulus captīvus ē vītā discessit. 75
Vītam prō patriā dederat et fidem[7] cum hostibus cōn-
servāverat.

Posteā iterum iterumque Rōmānī tēla in Poenōs coni-
ciēbant atque multōs annōs contrā eōs pugnābant, sed
vincere nōn poterant. Post decem annōs huius bellī neque 80
Carthāgō neque Rōma pecūniam aut virōs habuit. Nōn
iam pugnāre potuērunt.

Horribilēs tempestātēs omnēs nāvēs longās et nautās
dēlēverant. Senātus nūllam pecūniam habuit quā nova
classis aedificārī et īnstruī poterat. Propter magnitūdinem 85
difficultātum timor Rōmānōs occupāvit, sed mox ā
timōre sē revocāvērunt et animus eīs accessit quod cīvēs
Rōmānī quī magnam pecūniam habēbant novam classem
aedificāverant. Hāc classe mox Rōmānī in marī prope
Siciliam hostēs vīcērunt. Tum Carthāgō et Rōma pācem 90
fēcērunt: Siciliam Carthāgō Rōmae trādidit et omnēs
captīvōs Rōmānōs remīsit et magnās pecūniās dedit.
Fīnis[10] prīmī bellī Pūnicī erat quod quattuor et vīgintī[11]
annōs gerēbātur.

---

[7] promise.    [8] departing.    [9] among.    [10] end.    [11] twenty.

But far more important was the *bulla*, an elaborate locket, made of gold if the parents were wealthy, or of leather if the parents were poor. The bulla contained charms against the power of the evil *numina*, vague, brooding spirits acting on the life of the child. The father himself hung this charm about the neck of the child. It was never removed permanently until the day the boy assumed the *toga virilis*, which proclaimed his Roman citizenship, or until the girl laid it aside on her wedding eve. The bulla, however, was carefully protected and kept throughout life.

## Roman Names

| Given Name | | Clan Name | Family Branch |
|---|---|---|---|
| PRAENŌMEN | | NŌMEN | COGNŌMEN |
| Name | Abbrev. | (Gens = Clan) | (Originally a nickname) |
| Mārcus | M. | Tullius | Cicerō: "with the wart" |
| Gājus | C. | Jūlius | Caesar: "sharp" |
| Gnaeus | Cn. | Aemilius | Albus: "white" |
| Lūcius | L. | Claudius | Barbātus: "with the beard" |
| Pūblius | P. | Cornēlius | Longus: "tall" |
| Quīntus | Q. | Horātius | Nāsō: "with the nose" |

About the first century B.C. only eighteen praenomina were in common use. The eldest son of each generation duplicated his father's name. Father and son were distinguished by adding *pater* or *filius* to the praenomen: Lucius pater or Lucius filius. A second son might be called Secundus.

## The Mighty African Warrior

Post prīmum bellum Pūnicum ubi pāx cōnfīrmāta est, Poenī Rōmānīs tōtam Siciliam et māgnās dīvitiās cessērunt. Sicilia igitur erat prīma prōvincia Rōmāna. Hamilcar, quī in hoc bellō imperātor fuerat, imperium et dīvitiās in Hispāniā augēre cupīvit. Trāns mare exercitum trādūxit, et sēcum Hannibālem, parvum fīlium suum, quī tum novem annōs habēbat.

Post mortem Hamilcaris, Hasdrubal [his son-in-law] dux dēlēctus est. Octō annōs hic exercitum Poenōrum rēxerat, et ubi ab hoste interfectus est, Hannibal imperātor creātus est. Illō tempore Hannibal vīgintī annōs habuit. Rōmānōs vincere cōnstituit, et trēs exercitūs potentissimōs comparāvit, ē quibus ūnum in Āfricam mīsit, alterum cum frātre Hasdrubāle in Hispāniā relīquit, tertium in Ītaliam sēcum dūcere statuit.

OLH

Erant duo itinera quibus imperātor Poenōrum exercitum in Ītaliam dūcere potuit, alterum terrā, alterum marī. Hannibal, quod victoriās Rōmānōrum in aliīs proeliīs nāvālibus memoriā tenēbat, terrā ad Ītaliam prōcēdere cōnstituit.

Postquam omnēs gentēs hostilēs Hispāniae et Galliae victae sunt, Hannibal trāns altissimōs Alpēs montēs māgnum numerum peditum, equitum, elephantōrum, equōrum trādūcere temptāvit. Tandem, etsī māgnam partem et exercitūs et equōrum et elephantōrum āmīsit, in Ītaliam pervēnit et complūribus (*very many*) proeliīs Rōmānōs vīcit.

Populus Romanus, ubi haec de Hannibāle cōgnōvit, perterritus est. Ūnā vōce cīvēs dictātōrem postulāvērunt, et dictātor, Quīntus Fabius, ā senātū creātus est. Mīlitibus Rōmānīs ille dīxit: "Nōlīte pūgnāre cum Hannibālis exercitū! Morā sōlā Hannibal vincētur!"

Cōnsilium erat bonum sed cōnsulī nōn grātum. Hic posteā proelium cum Poenīs commīsit, sed multa mīlia corporum mīlitum Rōmānōrum in agrīs relicta sunt et multa mīlia mīlitum Rōmānōrum Poenīs sē trādidērunt aut captīvī factī sunt. Nūllam calamitātem mājōrem (*greater*) quam hanc Cannīs Rōmāni accēpērunt.

Etsī Hannibal multās urbēs occupāvit, et multās partēs Ītaliae dēlēvit, Rōmānī pācem numquam petīvērunt. Postquam senātus Publium Cornēlium Scīpiōnem bellum gerere in Āfricā contrā Poenōs jūssit, Hannibal ad urbem Carthāginem revocātus est, et ā Scīpiōne in proeliō victus est. Secundum bellum Pūnicum fīnītum erat.

# *Unit* XLIV

## CONVERSATION

TIBERIUS: Ō miserrimī cīvēs, fēlīciōrēs quam vōs sunt bestiae Ītaliae; illī domicilia habent. Vōs, autem, quī prō Ītaliā pūgnāvistis ac vulnerātī estis, nūlla domicilia ubi habitāre potestis habētis!

GĀJUS: Undique per Ītaliam agrī ā paucīs tenentur, nec jam ā cīvibus līberīs sed ā servīs coluntur.
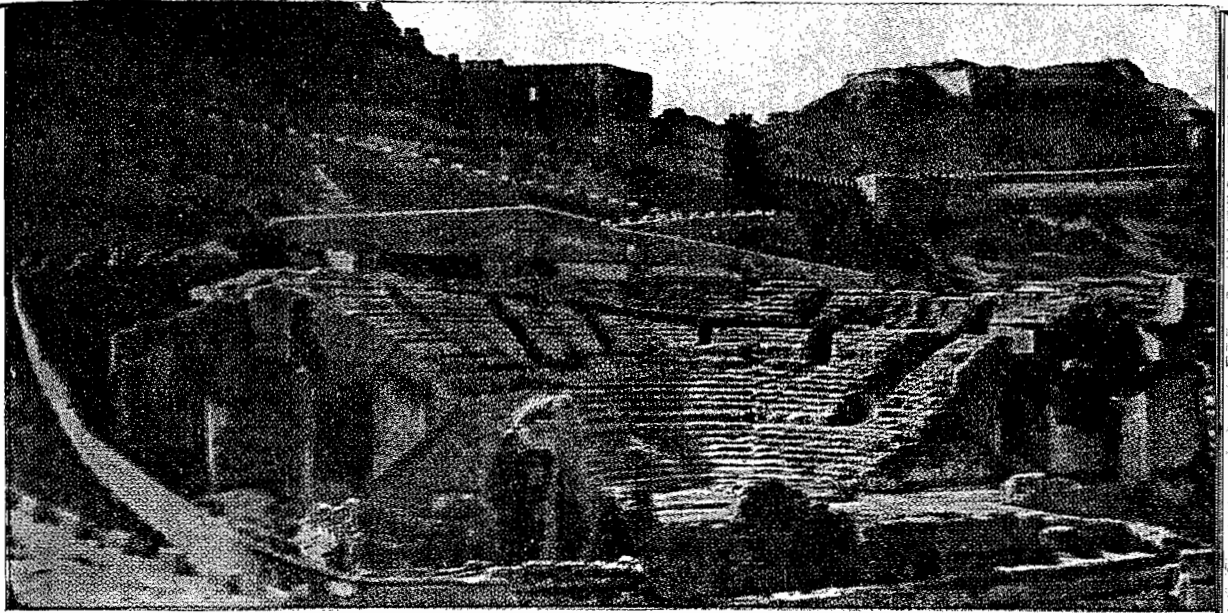
*Saguntum, Spain.* A beautiful, well-preserved Roman theater.

## CHAPTER XLVII

I.    DĒ RŌMĀ ET CARTHĀGINE POST PĀCEM

Neque Rōmae neque Carthāginī pāx grāta erat. Car-
thāginiēnsēs Rōmānōs nōn amāvērunt et iam dē integrō
pugnāre in animō habēbant. Prīncipēs Rōmae novās
terrās vincere dēsīderāvērunt. Itaque multōs annōs vērō
et Rōma et Carthāgō novum bellum parābant.                    5

Interim pāce in omnibus locīs factā Rōmānī laetī
templum Iānī clausērunt, nam templum Iānī in pāce
semper clausum est, sed in bellō apertum est.

Sed portae templī diū nōn clausae erant. Mox multī
praedōnēs[1] in omnibus partibus Hadriāticī maris inveniē- 10
bantur. Propter suōs sociōs Rōma praedōnēs[1] retinēre
coācta est. Classis celeris igitur nautaeque parātī sunt et
contrā praedōnēs[1] missī sunt. Pugna difficilis erat, sed
praedōnēs[1] arma et nāvēs longās potentis Rōmae sustinēre
nōn poterant itaque victī sunt. Post hanc victōriam 15
multae urbēs Rōmam laudāvērunt.

---

[1] pirates.

499
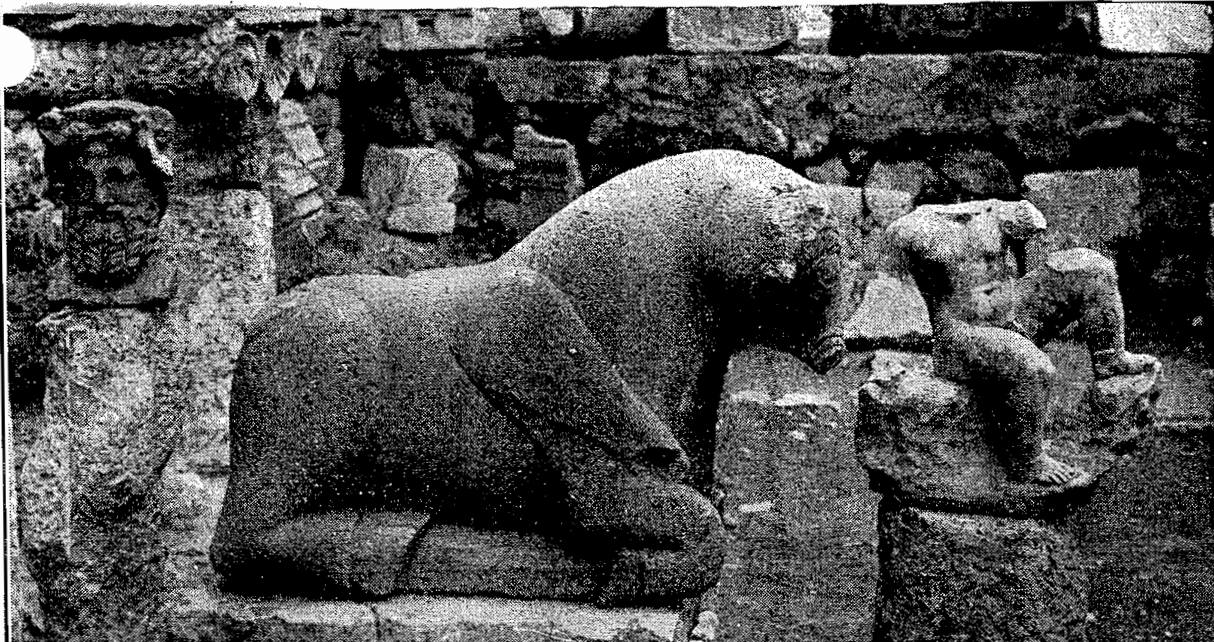
**Saguntum, Spain.** *Corner of Roman theater, where are kept remains found on the site, as the bull and the head with curls for beard.*
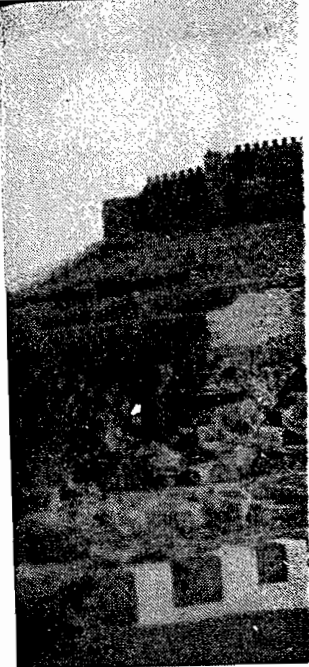
Praetereā post paucōs annōs Gallī sē dē montibus in Ītaliam rūrsus dēmīsērunt et Rōmam iter faciēbant. Hāc causā timor Rōmam et Ītaliam occupāvit. Statim Gallōs
20 continēre necesse erat et hoc negōtium nōn erat facile. Propter magnitūdinem perīculī omnēs terrēbantur et dē Rōmae fortūnā magnopere dolēbant. Statim multa mīlia mīlitum armīs captīs contrā hostēs processērunt et partem Gallōrum magnō proeliō vīcērunt. Multa mīlia hostium
25 necāta sunt et decem mīlia dīcuntur capta esse. Bellō trēs annōs gestō Gallī dē pāce cum Rōmānīs agere coāctī sunt. Ōrātiōne Gallōrum audītā Rōmānī pācem fēcērunt et posteā Gallī eīs cūnctam terram trādidērunt quam in Ītaliā occupāverant.
30 Dum haec in Ītaliā ita geruntur, Poenī prīmō, postquam cum Rōmānīs pācem fēcērunt et ex Siciliā cōpiās suās dēdūxērunt, trēs horribilēs annōs cum suīs sociīs et mīlitibus sustinuērunt; posteā rēs[2] sē bene habuērunt. Ubi mīlitēs quī ex gentibus fīnitimīs convocātī erant ex Siciliā

revēnērunt,
prīncipēs m
igitur cum
bant bellur
vāstābant[3]
oppida cēp
Inter cōr
car appellā
quattuor 1
victī sunt
Poenōrum
autem Rōr
silium", ir
Rōmānō fa
cere paenī
Cōnsiliō
um est cōr

Saguntum
coas

_____

[2] affairs.

[3] laid waste

500
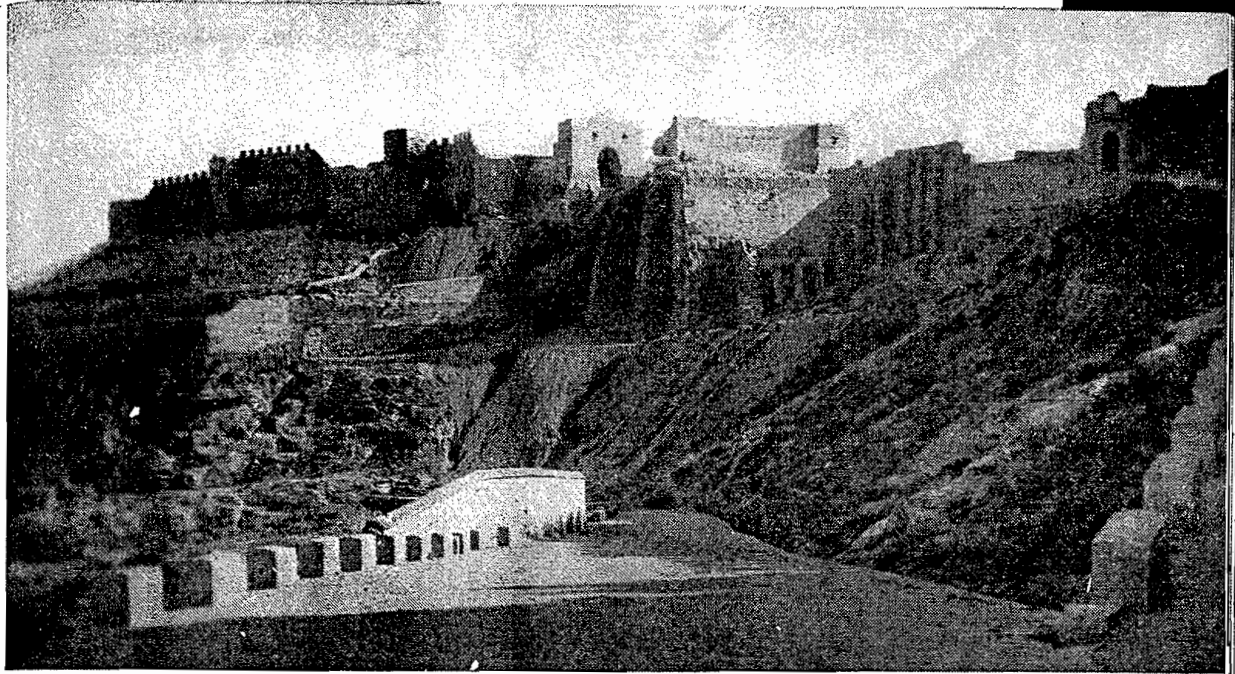
**Saguntum, Spain.** Fort of the town, situated three miles from the coast; now called Murviedro, which means "old walls."

revēnērunt, Carthāgō nūllam pecūniam habēbat itaque 35 prīncipēs mīlitibus pecūniam dare nōn poterant. Mīlitēs igitur cum sociīs Āfricānīs quī condiciōnēs malās sustinēbant bellum contrā Carthāginem gerēbant. Agrōs lātōs vāstābant[3] et aedificia arborēsque incendērunt et multa oppida cēpērunt. 40

Inter cōpiās Pūnicās adulēscēns alacer et fortis, Hamilcar appellātus, nunc cum imperiō erat. Tribus annīs et quattuor mēnsibus Hamilcare duce hostēs Carthāginis victī sunt. Eō tempore Hamilcarem sōlum omnium Poenōrum quī tum erant Rōmānī timēbant. Hamilcar 45 autem Rōmānōs magnopere ōderat.[4] Amīcīs suīs, "cōnsilium", inquit, "in animō habeō quō iniūriam populō Rōmānō facere et auxilium meīs cīvibus dare poterō. Vincere paenīnsulam Hispāniam volō."

Cōnsiliō suō ā prīncipibus Carthāginis audītō eī permiss- 50 um est cōpiās magnās trāns mare in Hispāniam trādūcere.

---

[3] laid waste.     [4] hated.

Mox nāvigāvit et dūxit sēcum virum ēgregium, Hasdru-
balem, cui fīliam suam in mātrimōnium dederat, et fīlium
parvum Hannibalem quī tum novem annōrum erat.

55 Hannibal dīcitur contrā populum Rōmānum iūs iūran-
dum[5] deīs dare ā patre coāctus esse et hoc iūs iūrandum[5]
semper obtinuit. Dum Hannibal cum Philippō V in exsiliō[6]
habitat, Carthāgine dēlētā, hanc fābulam dē patre nārrā-
vit. "Pater meus," inquit, "Hamilcar ubi puer novem
60 annōrum eram in Hispāniam dux discēdēns Carthāgine ad
āram[7] accessit et sacrificia fēcit Molochī, deō sōlis, prīncipī
deōrum Poenōrum cuius ministrī[8] igne hūmāna sacrificia
in templīs faciēbant. Quae[9] dīvīna dum geruntur, petīvit ā
mē, 'Nōnne vīs mēcum in castra discēdere?' Ubi laetus
65 huic respondī: 'Hoc facere magnopere volō,' tum ille,
'poteris', inquit, 'sī mihi fidem[10] quam rogō dabis.' Statim
mē puerum humilem ad āram[7] addūxit in quā sacrificābat
eamque tenentem mē iūs iūrandum[5] dare iussit: 'Num-
quam ego in amīcitiā cum Rōmānīs erō' ". Patrī similis
70 fidem[10] cōnservāvit.

Hamilcar, postquam in Hispāniam pervēnit, iterum
iterumque tēla in hostēs coniēcit atque multa proelia in
hīs regiōnibus bene pugnāvit et multās gentēs hostium
gladiīs et igne vīcit. Posteā equōs, arma, virōs, pecūniam
75 suīs remīsit. Haec mūnera patriae grāta erant. Bellō
novem annōs gestō Hamilcar ē vītā discessit et Hasdrubal
dīcitur dux dēlēctus esse. Octō annōs dux erat. Hōc
quoque necātō cūnctum corpus mīlitum Hannibalī integrō
imperium dedit. Praetereā id Poenī pūblicē[11] probāvērunt
80 quod equitum mīlitumque Poenōrum prīmus erat Hannibal
et poterat praetereā corpore exercitō magnum labōrem
sustinēre. Nūllō labōre aut corpus fatīgārī[12] aut animus
vincī poterat.

[5] oath.  [6] exile.  [7] altar.  [8] attendants.  [9] these.
[10] promise.  [11] adverb.  [12] fatigued.

;ium, Hasdru-
erat, et fīlium
.m erat.
um iūs iūran-
iūs iūrandum[5]
ō V in exsiliō[6]
ē patre nārrā-
puer novem
Carthāgine ad
sōlis, prīncipī
iāna sacrificia
itur, petīvit ā
?' Ubi laetus
lō,' tum ille,
labis.' Statim
ē crificābat
iussit: 'Num-
Patrī similis

ēnit, iterum
lta proelia in
ntēs hostium
ōs, pecūniam
erant. Bellō
et Hasdrubal
x erat. Hōc
nibalī integrō
probāvērunt
erat Hannibal
ium labōrem
? aut animus

[9] these.

Hannibal propter fidem[10] quae patrī dederat incēnsus novās cōpiās et equitēs parābat quibus in animō Rōmam 85 vincere habēbat. Hic adulēscēns ācer quīnque et vīgintī[13] annōrum, postquam magnam partem Hispāniae vīcit, dīcitur cōpiās Saguntum, ad urbem līberam in ōrā Hispāniae positam, sociam populī Rōmānī, multā nocte dēdūxisse et id octō mēnsēs oppugnāvisse. 90

Itaque ad Hannibalem Saguntum oppugnantem Rōmānī, ab Saguntīnīs monitī, lēgātōs mīsērunt, sed nē hī quidem dē eius sententiā dēdūcere potuērunt. Quod mēnsae Saguntīnōrum cibō nōn iam prōvīsae sunt, Hannibal post octō mēnsēs urbem expugnāvit. 95

Id erat initium novī et difficilis bellī cum Rōmā.

[10] promise.    [13] twenty.

2.                       VOCABULARY

**praetereā,** adv.                   *besides; in addition, moreover*
**dum,** conj.                        *while*
**postquam,** conj.                   *after*
**mēnsis, mēnsis,** m., 3 **(ium)**   *month*
**novem,** indecl. adj.               *nine*
**octō,** indecl. adj.                *eight*
**corpus, corporis,** n., 3          *body*
**sub** (prefix)                      *under; up* (from beneath), *closely*

3.              NEW TYPES OF OLD FRIENDS

*a.* **dēdūcō:** dē + dūcō = ? Name other members of this family.

*b.* **sustineō:** sus (sub), *up from under* + **teneō,** *hold* = *hold up, uphold, sustain; endure*

*c.* **itaque:** ita + **-que** = ?

*d.* **labor:** add *exertion* to the meanings you already know for this word.

503

# CHAPTER XLVIII

**I.** HANNIBAL

Saguntō, Rōmānōrum sociō, ab Hannibale captō senātus Rōmānus magnopere commovēbātur. Nam Hannibal adulēscēns quīnque et vīgintī annōrum imperātor factus tribus annīs omnēs gentēs Hispāniae bellō vīcerat et
5 Saguntum, Rōmānōrum socium, expugnāverat.

Itaque quod Hannibal condiciōnēs pācis nōn cōnservābat, senātus lēgātōs Carthāginem statim mīsit et hunc imperātōrem postulāvit. Carthāginiēnsēs autem hunc Rōmānīs nōn dedērunt. Tum prīnceps lēgātōrum Rō-
10 mānōrum, sinū[1] ex togā factō, "Hīc," inquit, "vōbīs bellum et pācem portāmus. Utrum hōrum vōbīs dabimus?"

"Utrum illōrum Rōmānīs grātum est?" postulāvērunt Poenī.
15 "Bellum nōbīs grātum est. Itaque bellum vōbīs dō," clāmāvit Rōmānus dum togam excutit.[2]

Ita secundum bellum inter Rōmam et Carthāginem inceptum est. Ubi Hannibal dē bellō audīvit, trēs cōpiās magnās comparāvit ex quibus ūnum in Āfricam mittere,
20 alterum cum Hasdrubale frātre in Hispāniā relinquere, tertium[3] in Ītaliam sēcum dūcere statuit. Nam in Rōmānā neque in terrā Pūnicā id secundum bellum contrā Rōmānōs pugnātūrus erat. Prīmum bellum in terrā Pūnicā pugnātum erat.
25 Erant duo itinera quibus Hannibal in Ītaliam cōpiās addūcere poterat, ūnum terrā, alterum marī. Is imperātor

---

[1] fold.  [2] shook.  [3] third.

**Cemetery at Cannae, Italy.** *Below Cannae on the right bank of the Aufidus, the Roman army fought its greatest battle against Hannibal in 216 B.C. and only now, after centuries of investigation, has the scene of the conflict been discovered.*

sibi dīxit: "Aut terrā aut marī ad Ītaliam accēdere possum. Utrum hōrum itinerum dēligam? Facile est trāns mare nāvigāre, sed sī marī cōpiās meās ad Ītaliam dēdūcam, dē celeribus nāvibus longīs prōvidēre necesse erit. Sciō 30 potentem classem Pūnicam ā Rōmānīs victam esse et magnum numerum nautārum necātum esse; itaque Rōmānōs dominōs maris esse; hāc causā Rōmānōs sine difficultāte omnēs mīlitēs meōs expugnātūrōs esse. Putō mē marī in Ītaliam numquam perventūrum esse. Terrā 35 igitur prōcessūrus sum."

Postquam magnus numerus mīlitum et equitum et elephantōrum et equōrum comparātus est, prīmō per Hispāniam ad montēs quī sunt inter Hispāniam et fīnitimam terram, Galliam, magnā difficultāte prōcēdere inci- 40 pit. Cum gentibus hostilibus diū pugnābat. Posteā omnibus Hispāniae gentibus victīs trāns montēs in Galliam

511

cōpiās trādūcere poterat et L mīlia mīlitum et novem mīlia
equitum et multī elephantī ad flūmen Rhodanum sine
45 magnā difficultāte celeriter pervēnērunt. Gallī autem
gēns hostilis, dum ille per terram eōrum iter facit, magnās
cōpiās coēgerant et ad flūmen Rhodanum properantēs
hostēs vincere temptābant. Sed Gallī celeriter ab
Hannibale expulsī sunt et cōpiīs trāns illud flūmen quod
50 pontem nōn habēbat nāvigiīs portātīs Hannibal sub Alpēs
mox pervēnit.

Alpēs montēs summī sine arboribus sunt quī Italiam
ab Galliā dīvidunt. Necesse erat cōpiās trāns hōs montēs
trādūcere et is erat labor difficilis. Itaque magnā cum
55 difficultāte Hannibal eiusque cōpiae et elephantī Alpēs
ascendere incipiēbant. Sed quod Hannibal ab omnibus
mīlitibus magnopere amātus est et facta eius probābantur,
laetī magnum labōrem sustinēbant.

Multae gentēs quae in montibus habitābant saepe hunc
60 fortem imperātōrem oppugnābant. Eī barbarī in locīs
summīs cōnstiterant et tēla in Poenōs magnā cum virtūte
coniciēbant, sed multīs mīlitibus, equīs, elephantīs necātīs
hic tamen adulēscēns potēns et ācer barbarōs similī virtūte
oppugnāns semper vīcit. Neque frūmentum neque cibus
65 in hīs regiōnibus invenīrī poterat. Multī barbarī igitur
victī auxilium et cibum Poenīs dedērunt. Postquam
novem diēs[4] ascendērunt, ad summum montem pervēnē-
runt. Hīc Hannibal duo diēs[4] manēre statuit, nam sciēbat
condiciōnem cōpiārum miseram esse. Posteā cōpiae sē dē
70 summīs Alpibus magnā cum cūrā dēmīsērunt in agrōs
humilēs et apertōs Italiae. "Hīc," inquit Hannibal,"sunt
amīcī quī vōs exspectant. Sciō hōs vōbīs auxilium contrā
tyrannam Rōmam datūrōs esse. Sciō quoque vōs hīc
mēnsās cibō īnstrūctās inventūrōs esse."

---

[4] days.

512
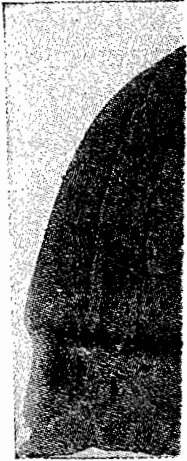
Sub Al
runt, sed
vēnērunt.
labōrēs d
quiēscere
hic impe
ēgit. M
accessit.
Ubi R
movēbar
dīxit nūl
mīlitēs e
Statin
mīsērun
Rōmānī
sunt.
Rōm
Rōmān
postulā
Quīntu
silium c

---

[4] days.

mīlia
ı sine
.utem
agnās
antēs
r ab
quod
Alpēs

ıliam
ontēs
cum
Alpēs
ıibus
ntur,

hu..c
locīs
·tūte
cātīs
·tūte
ıibus
ʒitur
uam
ēnē-
ēbat
ē dē
grōs
ʒunt
ıtrā
hīc
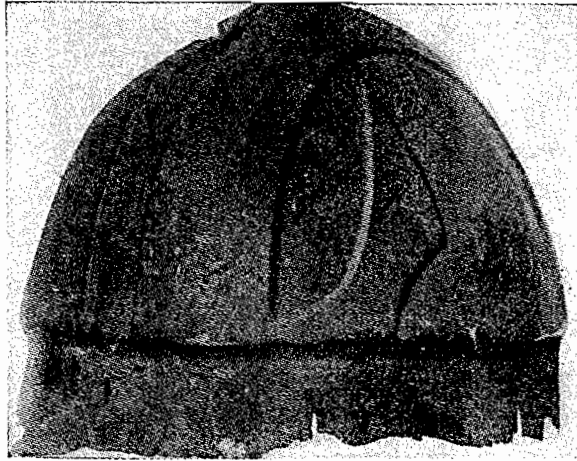


*Helmet from Cannae.* The helmet was once crested. It is probably either Roman or Carthaginian as it was found on the battlefield of Cannae.

Sub Alpēs inter gentēs amīcās Gallōrum castra posuē- 75 runt, sed vīgintī sex mīlia sōla hominum in Ītaliam per- vēnērunt. "Sciō," inquit imperātor fortis, "vōs multōs labōrēs diū sustinuisse. Nunc volō vōs multōs diēs[4] con- quiēscere[5] et sciō vōs animōs revocātūrōs esse." Interim hic imperātor alacer vērō multa mūnera mīlitibus suīs 80 ēgit. Mox corporibus cibō cūrātīs animus eīs rūrsus accessit.

Ubi Rōmānī dē Hannibale audīvērunt magnopere com- movēbantur. Magnitūdō perīculī eōs terruit, sed cōnsul dīxit nūllam esse causam timōris; Rōmam multōs et fortēs 85 mīlitēs et bene exercitōs habēre.

Statim magnās cōpiās comparāvērunt et in Poenōs eās mīsērunt, sed illōs retinēre nōn poterant. Multīs proeliīs Rōmānī victī sunt. Multa oppida ab Poenīs occupāta sunt. 90

Rōmae dolor et timor erant magnī. Imperātōrēs populō Rōmānō grātī nōn erant. Ūnā vōce dictātōrem cīvēs postulāvērunt. Itaque sententiā omnium cīvium senātus Quīntum Fabium dictātōrem dēlēgit. Hoc bonum cōn- silium cēpit. Proelia magna in agrīs apertīs nōn fēcit, sed 95

[4] days.          [5] to rest.

513

prope hostium castra mānsit.  Mīlitēs hostium quī castra relinquēbant et cibum in agrīs fīnitimīs petēbant semper cēpit.

Mox Hannibalis cōpiae sē altīs montibus clausōs in-
100 vēnērunt. Erat ūnum iter quō prōcēdere poterant. Fabius, nātūrā locī vīsā ad montēs fīnitimōs cōpiās addūxit et quattuor mīlia eōrum iter obtinēre iussit.  Fabius virīs suīs dīxit Poenōs nunc captīvōs esse et sē trādere cōgī posse.

105 Fabius autem hunc imperātōrem ācrem nōn retinēre poterat.  Hannibal bonum cōnsilium cēpit.  Virōs suōs bovēs[6] quī cum cōpiīs suīs erant cōgere et sarmenta[7] in cornibus[8] eōrum dēligāre[9] iussit.  Tum Poenī multā nocte duo mīlia boum[6] incēnsīs cornibus[8] in montēs ēgērunt.
110 Mox arborēs et montēs incēnsī erant.

Prīmō Rōmānī, ubi ignēs vīdērunt, putāvērunt Poenōs aut sē in fugam dare aut castra Rōmāna in monte fīnitimō posita oppugnāre in animō habēre.  Itaque quod putābant necesse esse auxilium sociīs suīs dare, iter relinquere sta-
115 tuērunt et ad summum montem fīnitimum celeriter properāre.

Interim omnibus cōpiīs per iter relictum trāductīs, Poenī līberī erant.  Tum Hannibal in Apūliam iter fēcit et Cannās pervēnit.  Ibi contrā hunc vēnērunt duo cōnsulēs,
120 Terentius Varrō et Aemilius Paullus.  Eōrum cōpiās ūnō proeliō in fugam dedit, Aemilium cōnsulem et multōs praetereā cōnsulārēs[10] necāvit.  Mīlia et mīlia corporum in agrīs relicta sunt et vīgintī mīlia mīlitum erant captīvī.

Mīlibus mīlitum necātīs et cōpiīs novīs contrā Hanni-
125 balem comparātīs octō tamen mīlia hominum integrōrum in Hispāniam missa sunt; nam Hasdrubalem, Hannibalis frātrem in Hispāniā retinēre necesse erat.  Hannibal

---

[6] oxen.    [7] brush-wood.    [8] horns.    [9] fasten.    [10] of consular rank.

f̄rātrem in Ītaliam cum cōpiīs integrīs prōcēdere et auxilium sibi dare dēsīderābat. Posteā in Ītaliam vēnit sed Hannibalem numquam vīdit. Rōmānī cōpiīs suīs inter 130 huius et Hannibalis cōpiās īnstrūctīs magnum proelium fēcērunt in quō Hasdrubal et mīlia mīlitum necāta sunt. Mox Rōmānī victōrēs proeliō discessērunt.

Hannibal nēscīvit[11] frātrem in Ītaliam pervēnisse. Post proelium Rōmānī Hasdrubalis caput in castra Hannibalis 135 iēcērunt et duo captīvī dē proeliō eī nārrāvērunt. Hannibal magnopere commōtus est, nam caput frātris vidēns statim scīvit Rōmam sine Hasdrubalis auxiliō vincī nōn posse. "Quid factūrī sumus?" clāmāvit. "Aut maiōrem[12] numerum mīlitum obtinēre aut in Āfricam nōs[13] recipere[13] 140 necesse est."

Rōmānae cōpiae autem ab Hannibale iterum et iterum vincēbantur et dēlēbantur; nē ūnum quidem proelium facere secundum poterant.

Postquam senātus bellum in Āfricā cuius pars ab fīliō 145 Apollinis, deī sōlis, dēlēta esse dīcitur contrā Carthāginem gerī iussit, Hannibal ad urbem suam revocātus est. Hōc Secundō Bellō Pūnicō duo frātrēs, Hasdrubal Hannibalque magnō cum studiō[14] pugnāvērunt; ūnus necātus est, alter in Āfricam sē[13] recēpit[13]. 150

---

[11] =nōn scīvit.    [12] greater.    [13] withdraw.    [14] eagerness.

2.                          HANNIBAL

One might say that Hannibal was the inventor of the *envelopment*, as indeed he was, since his tactics were carefully studied by the German General Staff. The battle of Cannae was used as the basis for the tactics in engagements in both World Wars. Hannibal is regarded by all students of military tactics as one of the really great strategists of all times.

qui castra
ant semper

clausōs in-
nt. Fabius,
addūxit et
abius virīs
ādere cōgī

ōn retinēre
Virōs suōs
rmenta[7] in
iultā nocte
ēs ēgērunt.

ī Poenōs
te fīnitimō
d putābant
iquere sta-
n celeriter

ictīs, Poenī
er fēcit et
ō cōnsulēs,
cōpiās ūnō
iultōs prae-
ōrporum in
ē captīvī.
trā Hanni-
integrōrum
Hannibalis
Hannibal

ōf consular rank.

dēbant.  8. Lēgātī officia quam diligentissimē facere dēbent. 9. Prīmā aestāte nostrī cum hostibus in Galliā diū atque ācriter pugnābant.  10. Fēmina aquam minus facile quam servus portāre poterat.

**C.** Translate.

1. You will never be able to see my friends if you do not run as quickly as possible.  2. She had not yet seen a more friendly woman than Julia's mother.  3. After you finished your work, what did you do next?  4. The animals on the top of the mountain immediately ran toward the river as soon as they saw the fires. 5. As there was danger of war, Caesar led the troops very quickly from Italy into Gaul.  6. They broke camp at daybreak and marched many miles through the territory of the Romans.  7. On the next night we remained in the city and watched the games. 8. The Germans were much larger than the Gauls, but the latter fought more bravely.  9. A few days later, the right wing of our army easily forced the enemy to leave the camp.  10. Our commander ought to wage war as fiercely as possible.

## —— *Reading* ——

### HANNIBAL CROSSES THE RHONE

Hannibal, nōtissimus Carthāginiēnsium imperātor, postquam urbem in Hispāniā, Saguntum, cuius populus erat socius Rōmānōrum, cēpit, bellum cum Rōmānīs in Ītaliā gerere cōnstituit.

Multīs cum equitibus et peditibus et elephantīs itineribus maximīs per Pȳrēnaeōs montēs ad flūmen Rhodanum tandem pervēnit. Ibi cōnsul Rōmānus ad ostium flūminis castra posuerat et hostēs cotīdiē exspectābat.

Hannibal nāvēs quam celerrimē coēgit et exercitum trāns flūmen dūcere parābat. Sed prīmō Hannōnem cōpiārum partem quam prīmum flūmen trādūcere et ā tergō impetum in Rōmānōs facere iussit.

Simul Hannibal nāvibus reliquās cōpiās trādūxit et partem equitum ad castra Rōmāna mīsit. Simul atque Rōmānī hostēs vīdērunt, proelium equestre statim commīsērunt. Illī hostēs nōn facile vīcērunt, sed tandem Carthāginiēnsēs in fugam dedērunt.

## HANNIBAL ENCAMPS AT THE TICINUS

Post proelium equestre cum Rōmānīs ad Rhodanum Hannibal cōpiās Carthāginiēnsēs trāns Alpēs maximā cum difficultāte dūxit. In hīs montibus altissimīs aliae gentēs Gallōrum Hannibalī amīcae, aliae inimīcae erant. Ubi ad summās Alpēs exercitus pervēnit, in castrīs biduum remānsit et imperātor ipse mīlitibus campōs Ītaliae quī sub

montibus vidērī poterant dēmōnstrāvit. Posteā omnēs ad flūmen Ticīnum brevī tempore pervēnērunt.

Hōc locō Hannibal cōpiās convocāvit. "Mīlitēs," inquit, "sī eundem animum habueritis quem quisque vestrum habēbat in priōribus rēbus, vincētis. Ab ultimīs fīnibus terrārum vīgintī annīs hūc pervēnistis. Hōc annō per montēs flūminaque tōtīus Hispāniae magna itinera fēcistis. Mox fortūna vōbīs labōrum fīnem dabit. Atque vestra erunt praemia quibus ampliōra dī hominibus numquam dedērunt."

J.

**D.** Translate.

1. The centurion ordered the captured messenger to say where the buildings were.   2. Do you know whether that ship is equal in size to our ships?   3. My friends asked me why the children had remained in the forum for five hours.   4. Will you ask the captive to what place the barbarian chief will lead his army?   5. The consuls knew that the enemy were in the city, but they did not know how many there were.   6. He sent a boy to find out who had led the animals from the field.   7. I know that you are all asking whether he did it or not.   8. She hesitated to ask the men if they would lead her to the city.   9. Let them not ask what we have given to the wounded foot soldiers.   10. The small boy asked his father what the name was of the man who had stood on the moon.

— *Reading* —

### HANNIBAL AT CANNAE

Pessima calamitās armōrum Rōmānōrum erat in proeliō quod Varrō et Paulus, cōnsulēs Rōmānī, contrā Hannibalem fēcērunt. Pugnātum est apud oppidum quod appellātur Cannae. In hōc proeliō tōtus paene exercitus Rōmānus captus aut interfectus est. Paulus occīsus est.

Ante eam pugnam cōnsilia bellī duōrum cōnsulum erant vērō inter sē dissimillima. Varrō dīxit sē longum bellum cum Hannibale ūnō proeliō statim perfectūrum esse. Sed Paulus crēdēbat malam esse audāciam Varrōnis et meliōra cōnsilia Fabiī Maximī. Timēbat nē cōnsilia Varrōnis Rōmam opprimerent. Ille scīvit in quot proeliīs Fabius bellum cum Hannibale gessisset. Itaque ad Fabium accessit et ab eō quaesīvit quid ipse facere dēbēret. Fabius respondit: "Tua rēs, Paule, difficillima est; et cum Varrōne et cum Hannibale pugnāre cōgeris."

Sed cōnsilium Varrōnis, nōn Paulī, vīcit. Exercitus Rōmānus superātus est et multī Rōmānī timēbant nē Hannibal brevī tempore ipsam Rōmam oppugnāret.

sint.   5. Cōnsul efficiet ut ille senātor malus ab urbe discēdat.
6. Virtūs peditum nostrōrum tanta erat ut vincī nōn possent.
7. Accidit ut nēmō mitterētur quī nōbīs auxiliō esset.   8. Meus
frāter tam validus est ut tuum gladium frangere possit.   9. Erant
in hostium castrīs tot mīlitēs ut satis cibī et aquae nōn esset.
10. Tantam multitūdinem equitum habēmus ut omnēs hostēs nōs
oppugnāre dubitent.

C. Translate.

1. Our city is so beautiful that many people come to see it.
2. Marcus was so strong that he was able to defeat the rest of the
boys.   3. The Romans had such a large army that they were able
to conquer the Gauls.   4. It is necessary that we find enough food
to give to this crowd.   5. She was so terrified that she asked her
father to guard her.   6. He reads in such a loud voice that the
rest of the children can hear every word very easily.   7. The
consuls brought it about that all enemies were driven out of the
city.   8. The dangers were so great that they did not want to leave
the town.   9. It happened that the merchants, who were nineteen
in number, were sailing to Britain at that time.   10. That river is
so wide that we cannot see the enemy's camp.

*——Reading——*

## ROMAN SUCCESSES

Annō quartō postquam Hannibal in Ītaliam vēnit, M. Claudius Mār-
cellus, cōnsul, contrā Hannibalem bene pugnāvit. Hic tantam īnsulae
Siciliae partem cēpit ut Poenī auxilium dē īnsulā in Ītaliam mittere
nōn possent. Syrācūsās, nōbilissimam urbem, expugnāvit. Et dē hāc
urbe tot signa (*statues*) ad urbem Rōmam mīsit ut haec in Forō posita
eum locum pulcherrimum facerent.

Interim in Hispāniam missus est P. Cornēlius Scīpiō. Hic, puer
duodēvīgintī annōrum, in pugnā ad Tīcīnum tantā cum virtūte pug-
nāverat ut omnēs scīrent hunc futūrum maximum imperātōrem.
Atque ita accidit. Nam in Hispāniā tam bene rēs gessit ut omnēs ferē
Hispāniae cīvitātēs in fidem Populī Rōmānī venīrent.

tamen maximā cum audāciā impetum faciunt.   9. Cum sagittās suās āmīsisset, Gallōrum ducem petere nōn potuit.   10. Cum Caesar esset in Galliā, multa cōnsilia eī prōposita sunt ā lēgātīs.

C. Translate.

1. When all of the infantry had assembled, Caesar gave the signal for battle and led the troops forward.   2. Although we have found out many things about the stars, yet we do not know how far away they are.   3. When I see (shall have seen) the senator I shall report to him everything which you said to me.   4. Since the enemy saw that they could not take our city, they were devastating our fields with fire and sword (**ferrō et igne**).   5. Since he thinks that the enemy are unable to withstand our attacks, he will draw up a line of battle.   6. Although reports of a disaster had been brought to us, yet we did not cease to hope.   7. When the legions had been left in camp, the general led the rest of the soldiers through the territory of the enemy.   8. As soon as we arrived at the town, we came immediately to find our friends.   9. At that time when I saw Caesar himself, I was living in the city.   10. Although they have received many serious wounds, nevertheless they are fighting very bravely.

—— *Reading* ——

## THE BATTLE OF ZAMA

Annō decimō tertiō postquam Hannibal in Ītaliam vēnit, Scīpiō cōnsul creātus est. Hic cum posterō annō in Āfricam missus esset exercitum Hannōnis, ducis Carthāginiēnsium, pepulit. Cum prīmum haec victōria renūntiāta est, Hannibal omnēs ferē suōs amīcōs sociōsque in Ītaliā āmīsit. Tot annīs bellī tam dēfessae erant cīvitātēs Ītaliae ut in fidem Rōmānōrum venīrent.

Carthāginiēnsēs permōtī Hannibalem cum exercitū ab Ītaliā in Āfricam discēdere iussērunt. Cum Hannibal optimē pugnāret, Scīpiō tamen eius exercitum maximō proeliō quod ad Zamam commissum est vīcit. Post hoc proelium pāx cum Carthāginiēnsibus facta est. Cum multae partēs Ītaliae vastātae incēnsaeque essent, Rōmānī tamen Scīpiōnem maximō cum studiō in patriam recēpērunt.

**LESSON OBJECTIVES**

To read the story of a famous Roman general
To learn the use of the present infinitive as direct object

= Quintus
ative: *in __.*
s *able*
ative
*us,* the Roman general respon-
le for defending the city
; (abl.)
*idel* (acc.)
ort

**B**ellō[2] Pūnicō secundō Hannibal virōs cum Rōmānīs pugnāre iubēbat sed Q. Fabius Maximus semper discēdēbat neque in ūnō locō manēbat. Sine victōriīs Hannibal Italiam in prōvinciam redigere nōn poterat[3].

Maximus perpetuō labōre[4] etiam Tarentum, oppidum Italiae, recēpit.
5 Līvius[5] in hōc[6] oppidō fuerat sed oppidum āmīserat et ad arcem[7] virōs remōverat. Maximus ad portās oppidī virōs prōcēdere iussit et oppidum recēpit; tum is etiam ad arcem prōcessit. Ibi Līvius, superbus quod arcem retinuerat, Fabiō dīxit: "Meā operā[8] Tarentum recēpistī." Fabius respondit: "Vērum est, Līvī: ego recēpī oppidum quod tū id[9] āmīsistī."

10 Statuās deōrum ex oppidō Tarentō Maximus nōn remōvit sed, quod deī inimīcī Tarentīnīs erant, Tarentīnōs in oppidō statuās retinēre iussit.

## Questions

1. How did Maximus weaken Hannibal?
2. How did Maximus recover Tarentum?
3. How did Livius help in recovering Tarentum?
4. What did Maximus say to Livius' claim?
5. Why didn't Maximus remove the statues of the gods from the town?

LFA
hants, both African and
an, were the "tanks" of
ent warfare. At first they
fied the Romans in the early
ounters with Pyrrhus before
First .nic War (third
ury B.C.). This sixteenth-
ury painting by Jacopo
nda shows Hannibal routing
op of Roman cavalry during
Second Punic War (218–201

C. Read the Latin and translate.

1. Quis vīdit prīncipem cuius amīcus ex oppidō expulsus est?
2. Quibus pecūniam et dōna commīsistis? 3. Quam legiōnem dū-
cēbat ex castrīs ad flūmen? 4. Cum quibus proelium crās com-
mittēmus? 5. Cīvis malus cīvitātem āmīsit, sed posteā eī reddita
est. 6. Quid in hortō post vīllam vīdistī? Nihil vīdī. 7. In quam
partem fēminae ambulābant? 8. Cuius equī in nostrō agrō cur-
runt? 9. Quō modō ex urbe expulistis hostēs quī eam oppugnā-
bant? 10. Quī agricolae bibunt vīnum et aquam in vīllā?

D. Translate.

1. Who gave back freedom and citizenship to the unhappy cap-
tives? 2. To whose father did you owe that money? 3. By whom
was the little girl frightened? 4. What gift did the farmer's daugh-
ter give to the consuls? 5. To whom were you giving those books
I wrote? 6. In which direction were those boys whom you saw
running? 7. What was the judge saying to the citizens? 8. How
did you lose the wine you were carrying? 9. What did she write
in the letter which you have? 10. Which general will lead the
infantry into battle?

## — Reading —

### SCIPIO AFRICANUS MINOR

Ōlim in hortō Cicerō et Q. Mūcius, iūdex Rōmānus, sedēbant. Hic illī
multa dē C. Laeliō, clārō virō Rōmānō, et dē verbīs nārrābat, quae
verba Laelius dē Scipiōnis virtūte cum amīcīs fēcerat.

AMĪCUS: Quō modō, Laelī, mortem tuī cārī amīcī Scipiōnis accēpistī?

LAELIUS: Sine, amīce, dolōre. Quid is quī vītam bonam ēgit dē morte
timet? In caelō Scipiō malum nōn habēbit. Sed quid dē eius vītā
dīcam: dē pietāte in mātrem, līberālitāte in sorōrēs, bonitāte in
servōs? Scipiō erat vir bonus et fortis quī patriam amābat. Quī
imperātor antīquus omnēs hās virtūtēs habēbat?

AMĪCUS: Vēra dīcis, Laelī. Sed hunc bonum quis malus interfēcit?

LAELIUS: Is quem lēx et pax nōn dēlectant, vir inimīcus patriae, Carbō.

AMĪCUS: Quam bonus vir interfectus est!

maximum imperātōrum fuisse intellegunt.   8. Cōnsulī ipsī agrōs Helvētiōrum mīlia passuum duo ā flūmine abesse nūntiant. 9. Ītaliam patriam poetārum magnōrum esse sciunt.   10. Mīlitēs in summō monte manēre iussōs esse audīvimus.

**D.** Translate.

1. I hope to sail to Italy next summer; I hear that the cities there are very beautiful.   2. The leaders know that the enemy is approaching and that many soldiers have left the camp from fear of death.   3. We understand that the best wines by far are always placed on the table at Marcus's house.   4. The people hoped that the consuls would lead the army around the enemy's camp that day.   5. We said to him that we were unable to sail because of the large waves.   6. We all believe that many good books have been written by that poet; but which of us has read them? 7. Everyone knows that Rome has always been and is now a very great city.   8. We bade our comrades farewell and said to them that we hoped to see them within a few years.   9. He himself says that the ambassadors have been sent to the Gauls.   10. Our native land is like our mother, for which reason we think that we ought to fight on her behalf.

— *Reading* —

## FABIUS APPOINTED DICTATOR

Ubi in urbe nūntiātum est Rōmānōs graviter superātōs esse, multitūdō fēminārum in Forō stābat circum eōs quī ā proeliō vēnerant et nūntium dē virīs et filiīs petēbat. Sed nihil certī cognōvērunt.

Illō tempore patrēs Q. Fabium Maximum dictātōrem ob perīculum facere cōnstituērunt. Fabius dīxit cīvēs Rōmānōs multa sacra deīs facere dēbēre. Haec illī fēcērunt.

Fabius nova cōnsilia bellī cēpit. Nam scīvit Hannibalem esse imperātōrem meliōrem quam cōnsulēs Rōmānōs. Itaque exercitum Rōmānum proelium cum hostibus committere prohibēbat; itinera in summīs montibus magnā cum cūrā faciēbat.

Haec autem cōnsilia cīvibus nōn grāta erant. Multī enim Rōmānī exīstimābant Fabium hostēs proeliō superāre posse, et exercitum Rōmānum in collēs fugere vidēre nōn cupiēbant.

4. Helvētiī nūntium mīsērunt magnam suārum cōpiārum partem ē fīnibus excessisse.   5. Suae mātrī sē pecūniam invenīre nōn potuisse dīxit.   6. Sōlis occāsū prīma aciēs ā lēgātīs in castra reducta erat.   7. Gallī et Germānī quī trāns flūmen habitant inter sē contendunt.   8. Lūcius "Senātōrī," inquit, "auxiliō cupiō esse in urbe."   9. Puella sē litterās ab ipsō poētā accēpisse dīxit.   10. Puerī nihil vidēre poterant, nam nox sine stellīs aut lūnā erat.

**D.** Translate.

1. As soon as they saw his horse, they began to retreat.   2. The senator was saying that he desired to read that poet's books.   3. We hope that the men from Britain will arrive in our land tomorrow.   4. He hesitated to say to his father that there would be a delay.   5. I have heard that the winds are very strong, and I do not think that we shall reach the island.   6. My business today is very difficult, but I hope to see you after noon.   7. "Fight as bravely and as fiercely as possible," said the general to his troops, "and we shall defeat our enemy today."   8. Eagerness for money has compelled many men to do unfair things.   9. The bravest foot soldier had been sent from the town as an aid to the messengers.   10. As soon as they realized that the enemy was approaching, the soldiers ran to the top of the tower.

## —— *Reading* ——

### MINUCIUS LEFT IN CHARGE

Hannibal sē trāns collēs recēperat et Fabius sōlus in urbem Rōmam discesserat et exercitum cum magistrō equitum, nōmine Minuciō, relīquerat, quī sē in agrō Lārīnātī tenēbat et praesidiō fīnitimīs oppidīs erat. Sed Minucius, quod nōn crēdēbat cōnsilia Fabī victōriae esse idōnea, ob cupiditātem glōriae suōs mīlitēs contrā hostēs ēdūcere cupiēbat.

Castra Rōmānōrum in colle altō et tūtō locō posita erant. Sōlis occāsū ea Minucius in campōs proximōs hostibus mōvit. Hannibal ipse intellēxit sē proelium commissūrum nōn cum eōdem duce; castra sua propius hostēs mōvit et proelium parābat. Alter exercitus vidēbat alterum aciem īnstruere et magna erat cupiditās pugnae.

Nocte Hannibal equitēs ad castra Rōmāna mīsit. Hās cōpiās autem equestrēs nūllō negōtiō suīs castrīs Rōmānī prohibuērunt.

**D.** Translate, using participles wherever possible.

1. He reported that he had seen near the bridge the bodies of four men killed in the battle.   2. Having observed the camp closely, he decided to attack it.   3. We shall easily be able to surround those soldiers who were wounded in the battle.   4. The lieutenant, because he had been dismissed by the general, decided to desert from the army.   5. I hope that the little girls who have been frightened by those noises will come to our farmhouse in a short time.   6. He said that that part of the river was filled up with large stones.   7. The right wing, near the river, was equal to the enemy in courage, but the left wing, fighting in the plain, was being overpowered.   8. Having been influenced by the words of the senator, the Roman people praised its faithful generals who were about to depart.   9. Holding the sword with his wounded hand, the brave boy was waiting for his brothers.   10. At midnight Caesar gave the letter to the messenger who was standing in front of the camp.

## —— *Reading* ——

### FABIUS RESCUES MINUCIUS

Adductus hāc minōre victōriā Minucius, magister equitum, imperium simile eī dictātōris Fabiī petēbat. Ā populō convocātō hoc imperium Minuciō datum est. Hic cum suīs mīlitibus ē castrīs ēductīs impetum Hannibalis exspectābat. Fabius tamen suōs in castrīs tenēns rem cōnspiciēbat.

Collis parvus erat inter castra Rōmānōrum et Poenōrum. Hannibal sēnsit sē dēbēre eum occupāre. Itaque cum paucīs ex mīlitibus ad collem accessit et eum occupāvit. Prīmum Minucius ipse equitibus* impetum in hostēs fēcit, sed Hannibal labōrantibus suīs subsidiō plūrēs mīsit et Rōmānōs circumveniēbat. Deinde Minucius commōtus legiōnēs īnstrūctās in proelium ēdūxit. Hannibal mittēns auxilia peditum equitumque mox tōtam aciem complēverat. Aciēs Rōmāna maximē labōrābat. Tum legiōnēs Fabiī velut caelō dēmissae ad auxilium sē ostendērunt et aciem Poenōrum oppressērunt.

* Ablative of means; people are often treated as instruments in military writings.

# RĒGULUS

st Punic or Carthaginian War,
4–241 B.C. These wars were for
mination of the Mediterranean.
rthage was in northern Africa,
ar present-day Tunis.

_atin, a relative is often used
:he beginning of a sentence
connect with the preceding
tence. In English, a demonstra-
: is used instead. Translate: *this
ace treaty).*

ırtans

hange

ıe

ept (if not)

**C**ontrā Carthāginiēnsēs quī partem Āfricae incoluērunt arma ā Rōmānīs sūmpta erant.[1] Rēgulus, dux Rōmānōrum, imperiō acceptō, ad Āfricam nāvigāvit et hostēs superāvit. Multa mīlia captīvōrum in Italiam mīsit sed ipse, opere difficilī nōn perfectō, in Āfricā remānsit. Contrā trēs Carthāginiēnsium
5 ducēs pugnāns victor fuit. Hostēs ā Rōmānīs pressī pācem petīvērunt. Quam[2] Rēgulus dīxit sē dūrissimīs condiciōnibus datūrum esse. Itaque Carthāginiēnsēs auxilium ā Lacedaemoniīs[3], quī Graeciam incoluērunt, petīvērunt. Dux quī ā Lacedaemoniīs missus erat cum quattor mīlibus mīlitum et centum elephantīs contrā Rōmānōs prōcessit. Rōmānīs victīs, Rēgulus captus est.

10 Rēgulus in Āfricā mānsit sed quīntō annō Carthāginiēnsēs, graviter pressī, eum ad urbem Rōmam mīsērunt. Eum iussērunt pācem ā Rōmānīs obtinēre et permūtātiōnem[4] captīvōrum facere. Is dīxit, pāce nōn factā, sē ad eōs reversūrum esse. Illī crēdidērunt eum sē traditūrum esse.

Itaque Rēgulus in Italiam pervēnit. Ductus in senātum Rōmānum dīxit sē
15 esse captīvum, nōn iam Rōmānum. Itaque etiam uxōrem, quae eum cōnspexerat et ad eum cucurrerat, ā sē remōvit. Dīxit hostēs, frāctōs multīs proeliīs, spem[5] nūllam nisi[6] in pāce habēre; nōn esse ūtile multa mīlia

ded by Phoenicians in the
ı century B.C. at the
ıwest passage through the
terranean, wealthy
ıage had an ideal site to
ol seaborne commerce.
defending herself for
ries against Etruscans and
ıs, she was finally destroyed
e Romans in 146 B.C. But
·cation was too valuable to
occu· `ɔd, and the Romans
ɔnize. ıt in 46 B.C. The ruins
ı here are of Roman baths
third century A.D.
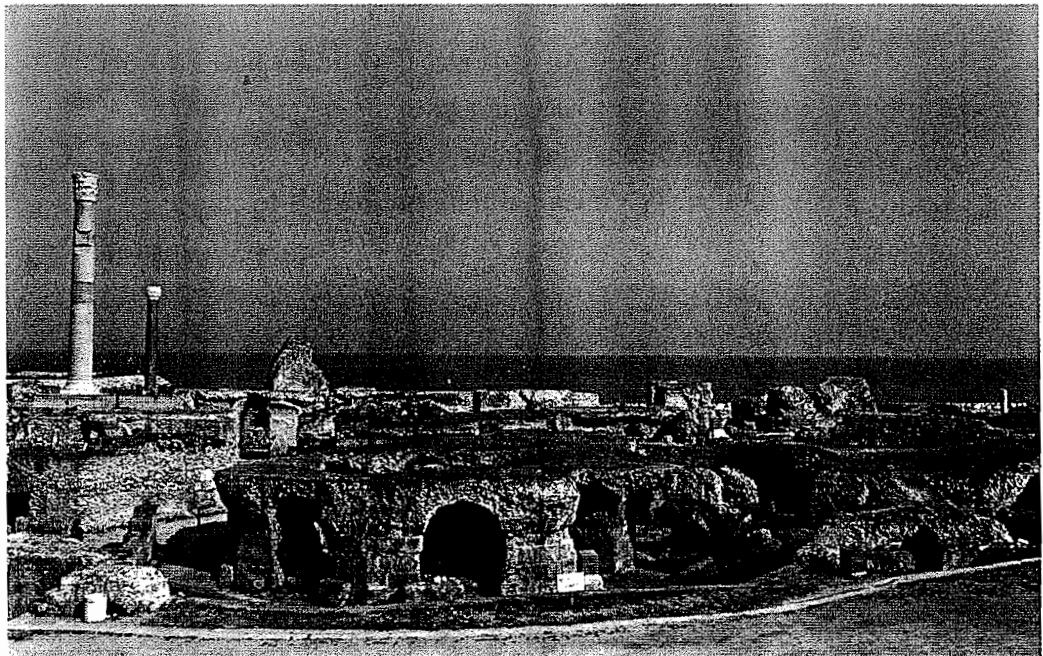


Nik Wheeler/CORBIS

LFA

captīvōrum prō sē ūnō, aetāte cōnfectō, hostibus reddī. "Captīvōs Rōmānōs aurō emere nōn dēbēmus," explicāvit; "nam virtūs eōrum āmissa est, nec vēra virtūs aurō emī potest." Senātus hōc cōnsiliō numquam ante datō permōtus 20 pācem cum hostibus nōn fēcit. Itaque Rēgulus, opere perfectō, Carthaginiēnsēs nōn fefellit sed in Āfricam revertit et sē Carthāginiēnsibus trādidit, ā quibus omnibus suppliciīs interfectus est. Posteā Rōmānī eī honōrēs tribuērunt.

Haec prīmō bellō Pūnicō accidisse dīcuntur. Posteā Rōmānī, pāce frāctā[7], duo alia bella cum eīsdem hostibus gessērunt et imperium suum maximē 25 auxērunt.

### Questions

1. After Regulus' first victories, what was the fate of the defeated Carthaginians?
2. Why did Regulus remain in Africa?
3. How many Carthaginian generals did Regulus defeat?
4. What sort of peace terms did Regulus offer?
5. Who caused his later defeat?
6. Why was Regulus sent to Rome?
7. What did Regulus do when he saw his wife? Why?
8. Why did he urge the Romans not to make peace?
9. Did Regulus keep his promise with the Carthaginians?
10. How did the Carthaginians treat him?

# VOCABULARY

### Nouns

impe´rium, impe´rī n. *command, power*      (imperial, empire)

*mī´lia, mī´lium n. pl. *thousands*      [mīlle]

### Adjectives

cen´tum (indeclinable) *hundred*      (centennial, centipede)

du´o, du´ae, du´o *two*      (duality, double)

mīl´le (indeclinable) *thousand*      (millennium)

trēs, tri´a *three*      (trio, triplet)

### Verbs

e´mō, -ere, ē´mī, ēmp´tus *take, buy*      (redemption)

in´colō, -ere, inco´luī, incul´tus *live, inhabit*      [colō]

perfi´ciō, -ere, -fē´cī, -fec´tus *finish*      [faciō]

trā´dō, -ere, trā´didī, trā´ditus
     *give* or *hand over, surrender*      [dō]

omnēs Aeduī sibi tēla et arma omnia trādant.   10. Cīvēs mīlitēs rogāvērunt nē castra prope urbem pōnerent.

C. Translate.

1. The senators had instructed the consuls to defend the state from all dangers.   2. She is asking her father to give her the money. 3. The leader with great difficulty persuaded the soldiers to fight in that valley.   4. He begged his mother not to send him to that school.   5. The tribune has ordered grain from the farmers and wine from the merchants.   6. The messenger demanded of the boys that they lead him through the great forest.   7. We command you to complete this work; therefore it ought to be begun at once.   8. Caesar let some farmers go away, but he warned others to carry the grain to the camp in carts.

## —— *Reading* ——

### THE STORY OF REGULUS

Rōmānī antīquī bella longa cum Carthāginiēnsibus gerēbant. Haec gēns erat audāx et potēns, quam Rōmānī maximē timēbant. Senātus Rōmānus putābat hostēs ē Siciliā urbem Rōmam ipsam oppugnātūrōs esse. Propter hoc perīculum Rōmānī cōnsilium audācissimum cēpērunt. Cōnsulem Rēgulum cum exercitū in Āfricam mīsērunt ut Carthāginem caperet.

Carthāginiēnsēs paucīs proeliīs victī celeriter pācem rogābant. Sed Rōmānī eōs inīquās condiciōnēs accipere coēgērunt. Mox autem rursus pugnāre cōnstituērunt; nōn sōlum Rōmānōs superāvērunt sed etiam Rēgulum cēpērunt. Ducem captum Rōmam redīre iussērunt ut pax meliōribus condiciōnibus cōnstituerētur. "Lībertātem tibi reddēmus," inquiunt, "sī nostrī captīvī ā Rōmānīs remittentur. Si nōn remittentur, ad nōs quam celerrimē venīre dēbēs."

Itaque quid fēcit Rēgulus? Sē haec factūrum esse cōnfirmāvit, et sine morā ad senātum discessit. Senātōribus, "Captīvōs," inquit, "reddere nōn dēbētis. Sunt enim fortēs, ego autem nōn iam validus sum. Vōs sine mē facile eōs superātūrōs esse existimō. Hostēs autem sine mīlitibus captīs bellum diūtius gerere nōn poterunt."

Brevī tempore Rēgulus Carthāginem rediit, et ab Carthāginiēnsibus crūdēlissimē interfectus est.

# SCĪPIŌ

## LESSON OBJECTIVES
- To learn about the exploits of the Roman general Scipio
- To learn the fifth declension
- To develop "word sense"

**P.** Cornēlius Scīpiō nōmen glōriamque meruit quod suum patrem, impetū hostium graviter vulnerātum, servāvit.[1] Tum, post pugnam Cannēnsem[2], in quā Rōmānī interclūsī et gravissimē victī erant, omnibus probantibus, Scīpiōnī, puerō vīgintī annōrum, summum imperium datum est. Ille spem salūtis Rōmānīs reddidit. Postquam sex annōs in Italiā exercituī [5] praefuit, Rōmānī eum exercituī Hispānō praefēcērunt. Ille urbem Carthāginem Novam diē quō vēnit expugnāvit; ita celer erat. Quīntō annō exercitūs hostium ex Hispāniā expulit. Dēmōnstrāverat cīvibus suīs potestātem Carthāginiēnsium frangī posse. Neque aurum rapuerat neque miserīs nocuerat. [10]

Hispāniā victā, hic prīnceps in Āfricam prōcēdere mātūrāvit et ibi Carthāginiēnsēs victōriīs terruit. Tum senātus Carthāginiēnsium Hannibalem ad patriam revocāvit. Sed Scīpiō eum Zamae[3] vīcit, et ille, clārissimus et maximus omnium ducum quī contrā Rōmānōs pugnāvērunt, ex patriā suā fūgit. Scīpiō ob hanc victōriam Āfricānus[4] appellātus est. Nōn iam Hannibal, [15] cuius nōmen līberōs Rōmānōrum terruerat, īnstābat.

[1] In the Second Punic War (218–201 B.C.), greatest of the three wars against Carthage

[2] *of Cannae (Căn´ē),* 216 B.C. This Carthaginian tactic of encirclement, with the right and left flanks closing in around the enemy like pincers, was imitated with great success by both sides in World War II.

[3] *at Zama* (203 B.C.) in modern Tunisia

[4] Thus, with the addition of this honorary **cognōmen** (see page 467), his full name became **P. Cornēlius Scīpiō Āfricānus.**



Scipio Africanus the Elder (216–184/3 B.C.) returns to Rome in triumph after his victory over Hannibal (202 B.C.) in the Second Punic War. One can imagine that the woman with the garland is his wife Aemilia and, skipping along beside her, their daughter Cornelia, mother of the Gracchi.

Bettmann/CORBIS

Multae rēs dē Scīpiōne Āfricānō trāduntur. Quondam, dum exercituī praeest, ille ad oppidum mūnītum in quō erant multī mīlitēs interclūsī exercitum addūxit. Scīpiō crēdidit oppidum capī posse, sed paucī eandem
20 spem habuērunt. Cāsū ūnus ē mīlitibus hominem ligātum, quī alterī mīlitī nocuerat, ad Scīpiōnem trāxit et rogāvit: "Quō diē locōque iubēs hunc hominem ad tē ad[5] supplicium venīre?" Tum Scīpiō manum ad oppidum ipsum tetendit et iussit eum hominem in illō oppidō tertiō diē esse. Ita rēs facta est; tertiō diē, impetū ācriter factō, oppidum expugnātum est eōdemque
25 diē ibi ille suppliciō hominem affēcit.

Saepe ante prīmam lūcem hic prīnceps populī Rōmānī domum relinquēbat et in Capitōlium veniēbat et ibi sōlus multās hōrās sedēbat. Aliī putāvērunt Scīpiōnem, deīs dēspectīs, hanc rem ad[5] speciem facere; aliī autem crēdidērunt eum dē salūte cīvitātis deōs cōnsulere.

### Questions

1. How old was Scipio when he went to Spain?
2. What did he accomplish there?
3. Why was Scipio called *Africanus?*
4. What did he force Hannibal to do?
5. What was Scipio's answer to the soldier who wanted to know when a prisoner would be punished? What was the point?
6. What explanations were given for Scipio's visits to the Capitol?

## VOCABULARY

### Nouns

| | |
|---|---|
| **dí´ēs, diē´ī** m. *day* | (diary, diurnal) |
| **lūx, lū´cis** f. *light* | (lucid, translucent) |
| **prīn´ceps, prīn´cipis** m. *leader, chief* | [**prīmus + capiō**] |
| **rēs, re´ī** f. *thing, matter, affair, situation* | (real) |
| **spe´ciēs, speciē´ī** f. *appearance* | [**spectō**] |
| **spēs, spe´ī** f. *hope* | [**spērō**] |

### Verbs

| | |
|---|---|
| **interclū´dō, -ere, -clū´sī, -clū´sus** *cut off* | [**claudō**] |
| **no´ceō, nocē´re, no´cuī, nocitū´rus** | (innocent) |
|    *do harm (to)* (with dat.) | |
| **praefi´ciō, -ere, -fē´cī, -fec´tus** | [**faciō**] |
|    *put in charge of* (with acc. and dat.) | |
| **prae´sum, -es´se, prae´fuī, praefutū´rus** | [**sum**] |
|    *be in charge of* (with dat.) | |

**Fifth Declension**

The last of the no
and **diēs,** however, (
nouns of the fifth de
which is usually ma

Nominative
Genitive
Dative
Accusative
Ablative

Nominative
Genitive
Dative
Accusative
Ablative

Observe that **-e-** a
**diēs** the **-ē-** is long i
vowel, while in **reī** (
the only difference i

**Oral Practice**

1. Decline **rēs fortis**
2. Give each of the f
   **prīnceps noster** (
   (acc. pl.); **manus**
3. Give the correct fo
   *deceived hope* (ac
   *all appearances,* (
   *charge of things.*

[6] In fifth declension nou

## OBJECTIVES
- To learn about the conflict between Cato and Scipio
- To learn the genitive and ablative of description

# CATŌ ET SCĪPIŌ

¹ *Antí´ochus,* a Syrian king

² **mihi... erat,** *I intended*

³ *tore in pieces*

**M.** Catō, vir humilī genere, ad summōs honōrēs per sē ascenderat. Hic Scīpiōnī, virō nōbilissimā familiā, inimīcus erat et eum dēspexit. Itaque familiārem suum Petīlium iussit in senātū explōrāre ratiōnēs pecūniae praedaeque captae in bellō cum Antiochō¹ ā Scīpiōne gestō. Hōc modō Catō,
5 cīvis magnae auctōritātis, senātum in duās partēs dīvīsit, alteram quae Scīpiōnī nocēre cupiēbat, alteram quae eum prīncipem maximae virtūtis esse crēdēbat. Tum Scīpiō, cuius īra ex speciē gravī frontis clārē cernī poterat, librum prae sē tenuit et dīxit:

"In hōc librō ratiōnēs scrīptae sunt omnis pecūniae omniumque rērum
10 quās accēpī. Hic est diēs quō mihi in animō erat² ratiōnēs apud vōs legere atque explicāre. Nunc autem, quod Petīlius eās explōrāre et mihi imperāre cupit, apud vōs eās nōn explicābō."

Hōc dictō, librum suīs propriīs manibus dīscidit³.

Cato the Elder *(right),* in his eighties, discusses the good and bad points of old age to an attentive audience. The two young men are C. Laelius the Younger and Scipio the Younger. Cato's feud with Scipio's adoptive grandfather, Scipio Africanus, has apparently been forgotten. In this illustration from a fifteenth-century French translation of Cicero's *Dē Senectūte,* the artist has added a dog, a servant *(left),* and another old man to the cast of characters.



Gianni Dagli Orti/Musée Condé Chantilly/The Art Archive

*LFA*

# CHAPTER XLIX

## 1. PUBLIUS CORNĒLIUS SCĪPIŌ MAIOR[1] ET MINOR[1]

Dum Hannibal in Ītaliā bellum gerit, Scīpiō, adulēscēns quī tum quattuor et vīgintī annōs habēbat in Hispāniam ab senātū missus est. Duo exercitūs Rōmānī in Hispāniā victī erant itaque novum ducem dēligere necesse erat. Nēmō
5 illud difficile bellum gerere cupīvit, sed mox Scīpiō vēnit et, "Ego," inquit, "in Hispāniam prōcēdam et impetum in Poenōs faciam." Huic igitur senātus laetus summum imperium omnibus probantibus dedit. Nunc populō Rōmānō animus accessit.
10 Postquam Scīpiō nāvem longam celerem magnō cum studiō ascendit in Hispāniam cum frātre prōcessit. Ubi ille pervēnit prīmō mīlitēs laudābat, nam dīxit eōs prōvinciam cōnservāvisse; tum impetum comparāvit.

Propter victōriās obtentās ducēs Carthāginiēnsēs putā-
15 bant Rōmānōs impetum nōn factūrōs esse. Scīpiō autem scīvit trēs exercitūs hostium in regiōne urbis Carthāginis[2] Novae[2] nōn esse. Itaque statuit impetum in hanc urbem statim facere. Urbs impetum sustinēre nōn potuit itaque hanc urbem in quā hostēs sua arma, cibum, frūmentum, et
20 pecūniam obtinēbant mox cēpit. Hoc proelium erat facile.

Tum Hasdrubalem, frātrem Hannibalis oppugnāvit. Vīgintī mīlia hominum interfecta esse dīcuntur, sed Hasdrubal tamen in Ītaliam discēdere potuit. Scīpiōnis adventus Rōmānīs grātus erat, sed nēmō putāvit Scīpiōnem
25 Poenōs victūrum esse. Sine Hasdrubale autem quīnque annīs omnēs Poenōs ex Hispāniā expulit. Dux grātus erat

---

[1] elder and younger.  [2] city in Spain.

524

mīlitibus Rōmānīs, sed corpus octō aut novem mīlium eōrum proelium nōn fēcit quod eōrum pecūnia retenta est.

Hispāniā victā Scīpiō Rōmam revēnit et cōnsul dēlēctus [30] est. Eius cōnsilium erat exercitum in Āfricam dūcere, sed sententia senātūs erat contrā hoc cōnsilium, nam magnitūdō perīculī eum terruit. Populus Rōmānus autem in Āfricā bellum pugnārī dēsīderāvit quod putāvit hoc Hannibalem in suam patriam revenīre coāctūrum esse, et [35] Rōmam impetū līberam futūram esse. Itaque hic prīnceps ā populō in Āfricam, fīnēs sōle incēnsōs, discēdere iussus est. Mox cum magnīs cōpiīs in Āfricam magnō cum studiō processit.

Scīpiōnis adventus hostēs commōvit. Mīlia passuum [40] quīnque aut sex ab hostium castrīs castra posuit et mox castra Carthāginiēnsium incendit. Ignis mīlitēs expulit et tum multī interfectī sunt. Hōc proeliō prīmam victōriam tulit[3]. Tum erat secunda victōria et tertia. Poenī territī sunt. Statim novum exercitum senātus Carthā- [45] giniēnsium comparāvit. Tum Hannibalem ad patriam revocāre coāctus est et eum Rōmānōs expellere iussit.

Ubi Hannibal cui nōmen Rōmānum inimīcum erat cum exercitū pervēnit, exercitum in apertōs agrōs ad oppidum Zamam dēmīsit quae ducenta mīlia passuum ab Carthā- [50] gine aberat. Hic exercitum īnstrūxit et adventum hostium exspectābat. Ācre proelium factum est. Hannibal multōs elephantōs praetereā habuit quibus Rōmānōs retinēre cupiēbat, sed igne et tēlīs Rōmānī eōs ē proeliō expulērunt. Et Poenī et Rōmānī magnō cum animō diū pugnābant. [55] Mox equitēs Rōmānī Poenōs in fugam dedērunt et victōrēs proeliō Rōmānī discessērunt. Hannibal cum paucīs amīcīs sē in fugam dedit.

---

[3] won.

Poenī nunc pācem petī-
60 vērunt. Rōmānī eōs mag-
nam pecūniam et pauca
oppida et multōs fīnēs trā-
dere coēgērunt et bellum
numquam rūrsus gerere
65 iussērunt. Nē classem
quidem nāvium longārum
retinēre potuērunt, etsī[4]
Poenī erant nautae exer-
citī. Ubi Scīpiō ad urbem
70 Rōmam revēnit triumphus
et multī honōrēs eī datī
sunt. Hic adulēscēns Āfri-
cānus ob ēgregiam victōri-
am appellātus est. Hic
75 fīnis secundī bellī Pūnicī
erat.



*Scipio Africanus*

Tertium bellum Pūnicum necesse nōn erat, sed Rōmānī
novam pugnam exspectābant, nam Carthāginem dēlēre
cupīvērunt. Erat ūnus in urbe Rōmā, Mārcus Porcius
80 Catō nōmine, quī Carthāginī inimīcus erat quod erat
magna et florēns[5]. Multās nāvēs ob negōtium magnum
aedificātās esse vīdit et Carthāginem magnum numerum
hominum et pecūniam magnam habēre scīvit. Hae con-
diciōnēs eum commovēbant itaque fīnis omnium eius
85 ōrātiōnum in senātū erat "Carthāgō dēlenda est[6]," nam
Poenōs fortēs timēbat. Post multōs annōs Rōmānī quoque
putābant Carthāginem dēlendam[6] esse.

Interim Poenī, quod Masinissa rēx Numidiae, socius
Rōmae iniūriās magnās in Carthāginem coniēcerat et quod
90 Rōma ab iniūriīs Poenōs nōn dēfenderat sine Rōmae

[4] although.　　　[5] prosperous.　　　[6] must be destroyed.
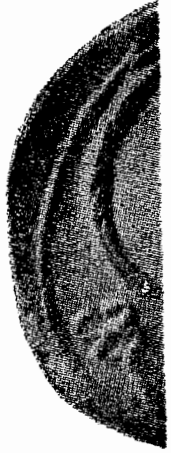
526

*Scipio Africanus, the Elder.* At the left he is shown on the obverse
of a coin, wearing a crested helmet; behind him is a caduceus
(snake entwined staff). At the right the reverse shows the Capitoline
Trio. Jupiter stands facing between Juno and Minerva—B.C. 91

auxiliō exercitum in fīnēs Numidārum dūcere et bellum
cum rēge malō gerere statuērunt. Statim senātus laetus
cōpiās contrā Carthāginem mittī iussit.

Hoc initium tertī Pūnicī bellī erat. Mox lēgātī Carthā-
gine Rōmam missī sunt et pācem petīvērunt, nam tertium 95
bellum incipere nōn cupīvērunt. Senātus trecentōs līberōs
principum obsidēs postulāvit quī statim Rōmam missī
sunt dum mātrēs dolent.

Ubi exercitus Carthāginem pervēnit, imperātor Poenōs
omnia arma tēlaque trādere coēgit. Hōc factō, ūnus 100
cōnsul nūntiāvit, "Urbem vestram dēlēre necesse est et
vōs mīlia passuum decem ab marī movēre." Nunc Poenī
vident sē ab malīs ducibus Rōmānīs dēductōs esse; itaque
indūtiās[7] ūnīus mēnsis petunt. Datur. Eōrum timor est
magnus. Inter sē dīcunt, "Aut bellum aut pācem no- 105
vamque urbem dēligere cōgimur. Utra eārum iniūriārum
erit? Ūnam aut alteram dēligere necesse est." Tum portās
claudunt et sē suaque dēfendere statuunt. Nunc virī,

[7] armistice.

527

fēminae, līberī magnō cum studiō labōrābant; urbem
110 dēfendere parantēs arma tēlaque faciēbant.

Fīlius Aemilī Paulī ā P. Cornēliō Scīpiōne, fīliō Scīpiōnis
Āfricānī quī Hannibalem vīcit adoptātus[8] erat, itaque P.
Cornēlius Scīpiō Aemiliānus appellātus est. Hic ēgregius
adulēscēns quem Cicerō, ōrātor, laudābat imperātor factus
115 statim cum duōbus amīcīs ad Āfricam nāvigāvit. Erat
mūnus eius Carthāginem dēlēre quod difficilis labor erat.
Sine sociīs, sine nāvibus, sine multīs armīs, haec urbs
fortis magnā virtūte diū sē dēfendit.

Post quattuor annōs Scīpiō mūrīs dēlētīs et multīs
120 aedificiīs incēnsīs in urbem incēdere potuit et cīvēs sē
trādere coāctī sunt. Omnēs virī interfectī sunt et fēminae
līberīque erant captīvī. Postquam magna praeda com-
parāta est, urbs ignī dēlēta est. Ubi Scīpiō urbem pul-
chram incendentem vīdit, dolēbat et dē Rōmā timēbat.
125 Hoc fīnis tertī bellī Pūnicī erat. Senātus Scīpiōnī ob mag-
nam victōriam Āfricānam triumphum et nōmen Āfricā-
num quoque dedit. Nunc Scīpiōnis nōmen erat Publius
Cornēlius Scīpiō Aemiliānus Āfricānus Minor[9].

Posteā Scīpiō ab cīve Rōmānō necātus est, sed Scīpiō
130 inimīcus Rōmānīs nōn erat. Nēmō putāvit Rōmam ita
barbaram esse posse.

---

[8] adopt.      [9] younger.

2.       HUMAN RELATIONS OF THE ROMANS

a. Were the Romans justified in waging the third
Carthaginian War?

(b) What important psychological principle did Cato
use?

c. Do you admire the Carthaginians? What qualities
did they display?

d. Was Rome's final disposition of Carthage justified?

*Isons.* Lesson LXIX will tell
nore about the great
ın general *Scipio Africanus
o Afrikā´nus).*

**ribūnus plēbis** was an official
ed by the common people to
ct their rights, property, and
He could veto measures voted
ɛ Senate and other magistrates.
lection of Tiberius as tribune
3 B.C. and his attempts at
n began a period of political
nilitary strife which ended
vhen Augustus gained
me power in 27 B.C.
. 482.

*a (Nasī´ka)*

*re   ´c*

*ʒupersum*

Ti. et C. Gracchī erant Scīpiōnis Āfricānī nepōtēs[1]. Dīligentiā Cornēliae mātris puerī doctī sunt. Cornēlia crēdidit eōs certē summam potestātem obtentūrōs esse. Quondam hospita, domō Cornēliae petītā, ōrnāmenta sua pulcherrima manū prae sē tenēns dēmōnstrābat. Tum Cornēlia līberōs suōs,
5 quī cāsū aderant, manū tetigit atque eōs hospitae dēmōnstrāns dīxit: "Haec sunt mea ōrnāmenta!"

Tiberius iam vir plēbī amīcus erat. Tribūnus plēbis[2] factus populō agrōs dare cupiēbat. Hī agrī pūblicī erant sed multōs annōs ā nobilibus occupātī erant, quī dīxērunt sē eōs nōn reddit ūrōs esse. Tamen Tiberius populō eōs
10 reddidit. Tum senātus convocātus dē Tiberiō cōnsuluit. Multī eum dēspicientēs interficere cupīvērunt. Tiberiō accēdente, Scīpiō Nāsīca[3], senātor, clāmāvit: "Venīte mēcum sī reī pūblicae[4] salūtem cupitis." Tum ille et aliī quī circum eum stantēs incitātī sunt, impetū factō, Tiberium interfēcērunt.

Postēa in somnō Gāius dīcitur vīdisse frātrem suum dīcentem: "Cūr
15 dubitās, Gāī? Tū, quī superes[5], hoc negōtium perficere et vītam tuam populō dare dēbēs." Itaque Gāius opus Tiberī sē perfectūrum esse statuit neque eius cōnsilia dēsertūrum. Tribūnus factus plēbī frūmentum dabat et cīvitātem

omnibus quī Italiam incolēbant. Mīlitēs autem exercēre nōn potuit et intellēxit sē sine exercitū nihil efficere posse. Ā multīs dēspectus et dēsertus et sine praesidiō fugere coāctus, interfectus est.   20

Itaque senātus mortem Gracchōrum effēcit. Sed cōnsilia hōrum mānsērunt, et Rōmānī multōs annōs eōs et eōrum cāsūs memoriā tenuērunt.



*Museum of Fine Arts, Budapest, Hungary/The Bridgeman Ar*

**paedagōgus** *(left)* waits
them to school, the two
i bʲ   ɛrs are presented
· mother Cornelia's
led and elaborately
I guest.   LFA

8. Plūrimum frūmentum pecūniā pūblicā ēmit et plēbī dedit.
9. Optimum cōnsilium cēpit, sed opus erat difficilius.
10. Nōnne cīvēs pessimī ducēs optimōs occīdērunt?

B. Translate into Latin:

1. Where did the soldiers come from, and where are they hastening?
2. In time of peace, a Roman citizen wore a toga.
3. The condition of many citizens was unfortunate because they had no land.
4. Come here.   There is less danger here.
5. All the best leaders feared the very great works of the brothers.

*Gracchi   133-121*

### Might Is Right at Rome

Ōlim Rōmae habitābant duo frātrēs, clārissimī et integerrimī. Tiberius Gracchus et frāter ējus Gājus fīliī erant Semprōnī Gracchī et Cornēliae, Scīpiōnis Āfricānī fīliae.  Post mortem patris duo puerī ā mātre doctī sunt.  Ipsa puerōs esse fortēs, jūstōs, fīdōs docuit, et saepe fābulās dē factīs Rōmānōrum fortissimōrum et optimōrum, quī vītam prō patriā dederant, narrābat.

Illō tempore condiciō plēbis miserrima erat.  Dum cōnsulēs ducēsque Rōmānī bella gerunt, plūrimī rēgēs, urbēs, gentēs victī sunt.  Cīvitās Rōmāna mājor et potentior facta erat, sed in secundō bellō Pūnicō agrī agricolārum pauperum dēlētī sunt. Undique per Ītaliam agrī ā paucīs nōbilibus tenēbantur.  Nūllī cīvēs līberī sed plūrimī servī agrōs colēbant.

Multī cīvēs in urbēs fūgērunt ubi neque cibum neque casās habēbant.  Necesse erat pecūniam pūblicam illīs darī, sed fēlīcēs nōn erant.  Agrōs et alia jūra māximē cupīvērunt.

Tiberius et Gājus Gracchus, postquam togam virīlem accēpērunt et cīvēs Rōmānī factī sunt, erant benīgnissimī agricolīs et pauperibus.  Tiberius tribūnus plēbis creātus est, et suscipere causam pauperum cōnstituit.  Ille lēgēs jūstās scrīpsit quibus agrōs pūblicās dīvīsit et agricolīs pauperibus dedit.  Sīc fortūnās omnium aequāre poterat.

Sed agrōs dīvidī et pauperibus darī senātōribus erat nōn grātum.  Eō tempore lēx Rōmāna virum esse tribūnum ūnum annum jūssit.  Contrā illam lēgem Tiberius iterum tribūnus creātus est. Dum cīvēs inter sē in viīs contendunt, Scīpiō Nāsīca senātōribus clāmābat: "Vōs quī lēgēs servārī cupīvistis mēcum venīte!" Armātī Tiberium quī erat sine tēlīs invēnērunt, et illum cum plūrimīs amīcīs interfēcērunt!  Corpora in flūmen Tiberim jacta sunt.  Tum nōbilēs pessima cōnsilia cēpērunt et agrōs quī inter plēbem dīvīsī erant occupāvērunt.

OLH

Decimō annō post Tiberī mortem Gājus Gracchus tribūnus plēbis creātus est, et similis frātrī causam plēbis suscēpit. Multās lēgēs optimās prō plēbe scrīpsit. Mīlitibus et pauperibus agrōs et pecūniam dedit. Colōniās ad loca idōnea mīsit, viās mūnīvit, horrea (*barns*) pūblica aedificāvit. Hoc opus difficillimum erat, sed nihil eī erat difficilius. Nōbilēs autem īrātissimī erant et Gājum interficere cōnstituērunt. Fūgit, sed posteā servum suum eum interficere jūssit; quod fēcit.

# *Unit* XLV

## CONVERSATION

JŌSĒPHUS: Cūr certāmen pessimum inter Marium ac Sullam erat?

MAGISTER: Prīmō certāmen inter plēbem ac nōbilēs Rōmae erat. Utraque factiō sibi multō plūs auctōritātis cupīvit.

PHILIPPUS: Nōnne utraque factiō illō tempore multō plūs ōtī et dīvitiārum quam Rōmānī superiōribus temporibus habuit?

MAGISTER: Paucī nōbilēs magistrātūs gessērunt; ducēs plēbis potestātis amōre (*love*) commōtī sunt. Multae aliae causae discordiae cīvīlis erant.

ROBERTUS: Quōmodo Marius māximus dux factus est?

MAGISTER: Marius, humillimus homō dē plēbe, adulēscēns cum exercitū Scīpiōnis in Hispāniam prōcessit. Scīpiōnī erat cārus.

JŌSĒPHUS: Nōnne Marius cīvitātem Rōmānam ex summō perīculō saepe servāvit? Eī Rōmānī plūrimōs honōrēs dedērunt.

MAGISTER: Tribūnus, legātus, cōnsul creātus est. Quam prīmum bellum cum Jugurthā cōnfēcit; in Galliā Teutōnēs vīcit; Cimbrōs quī in Ītaliā cōnsīdere postulāvērunt expulit.

PHILIPPUS: Posteā Sullae, ducī nōbilium, quam inimīcissimus erat.

## SECTION 1 Comparison of Regular Adverbs

▶ DISCUSSION

Most ordinary adverbs are derived from adjectives and therefore depend upon them for comparison. Observe the following:

257

**The Mother of the Gracchi.** Painting by the artist Shopin, entitled "These are my jewels!"

## CHAPTER L

1.                                   GRACCHĪ

Inter secundum et tertium bellum Pūnicum Rōmae habitābant duo frātrēs, Tiberius et Gāius Gracchus saepe Gracchī appellātī. Bonī virī erant et amīcī plēbis.

Māter Gracchōrum erat nōmine Cornēlia, fīlia Scīpiōnis
5 Āfricānī imperātōris magnī ā quō Poenī superātī erant. Haec ā Semprōniō Gracchō, fīliō nōbilis sed humilis familiae in mātrimōnium[1] ducta est. Is erat mīles ēgregius et bonus vir, et haec puella pulchra quae nātūrās omnēs magnae familiae suae habēbat. Laeta familia erat.
10 Quod Rōmānī putāvērunt officium mātris Rōmānae esse līberōs suōs docēre, magnā cum cūrā Cornēlia ipsa duōbus fīliīs parvīs dē initiīs Rōmae et dē classibus nāvium comparātīs et dē factīs Rōmānōrum ēgregiōrum quī vītam

---

[1] marriage; with **dūcere** = *to marry.*

prō patriā dederant saepe nārrābat. Ita puerōs esse fortēs, vērōs, iūstōs docēre potuit et eōs magna facta facere 15 cupere coēgit postquam ex puerīs excessērunt. Eōs humilēs hominēs amāre etiam docuit. Magistrōs quoque et Graecōs et Rōmānōs habuērunt. Cornēlia ipsa linguam Graecam scīvit.

Olim[2] fēmina quae in oppidō fīnitimō habitābat ad vīllam 20 Cornēliae vēnit. Dum inter sē loquuntur[3], haec fēmina quae ex oppidō fīnitimō vēnit Cornēliae multa ōrnāmenta quae gerēbat ostendēbat. Ōrnāmentīs vīsīs et laudātīs, eadem fēmina Cornēliae ōrnāmenta vidēre magnopere cupiēbat.                                                                         25

Cornēlia duōs puerōs suōs quī eō ipsō tempore prope vīllam lūdēbant ad sē vocāvit et fēminae ostendēns, "Haec," inquit, "mea ōrnāmenta sunt."

Ubi Tiberius ex puerīs excessit, nāvem longam ascendit et ad Āfricam nāvigāvit. Nōn nauta sed mīles bonus erat 30 et sociōs virtūte superābat. Dum Rōmānī tertium Pūnicum bellum pugnant, hic nūllum timōrem ostendēns prīmus in Carthāginis mūrum ascendit. Hic, autem, quod mīles exercitūs erat, memoriā nōn tenēbitur sed quod humilēs hominēs amābat. Rōma nunc Carthāginis timōre 35 līberāta potēns erat ob gentēs victās, sed condiciō plēbis erat misera et plēbem auxilium habēre necesse erat. Rōmānī agricolae bonī semper fuerant et in agrīs laetī erant. Postquam mīlitēs Rōmānī ab bellō prīstinīs[4] temporibus revēnērunt, agrī cupitī semper datī sunt. Dē 40 illīs agricolīs in Capite IX, 1, 7 huius lībrī lēgistis. Secundō autem Pūnicō bellō quod Rōmānī multōs annōs cum Hannabile in Ītaliā pugnābant, ager agricolārum quī nōn magnam pecūniam habēbant dēlētus est; itaque eī agri-

---

45 colae in urbem fugiēbant, sed laetī nōn erant quod neque
cibum neque vīllās habuērunt. Vīta nōn erat facilis.

Lēgēs iūstās et partem agrōrum postulābant, sed senā-
tōrēs nōn audīvērunt, nam nēmō dē sententiā suā dēdūcī
potuit. "Vōs nōbīs aut cibum aut agrum dare necesse
50 est," clāmābant agricolae. "Utrum nōbīs dabitis?" Hōc
bellō cōnfectō ager nōn humilibus agricolīs, sed senā-
tōribus nōbilibusque datus est neque hoc hominibus
humilibus grātum erat. Nunc erant paucī agricolae inter
nōbilēs quī multum agrum et nūllī agricolae inter humilēs
55 quī ūllum agrum habēbant. Eī quī nūllum agrum habuē-
runt in nōbilium agrīs labōrāre nōn potuērunt quod
nōbilēs servōs habuērunt.

Bellīs cōnfectīs Rōma novōs agrōs habuit quod multās
gentēs superāverat quārum quīnque nunc erant prō-
60 vinciae, Hispānia, Sicilia, Āfrica, Macedonia, Syria, sed
Graecia prīmō erat socia, posteā prōvincia. Hic ager,
pūblicus quoque appellātus, nōbilibus datus est. Tiberius
Gracchus dē iniūriīs plēbis dolēns tribūnus dēlēctus
causam humilium suscēpit et eōs ā nōbilibus dēfendit;
65 nam officium tribūnī erat plēbem dēfendere. Iūstam
lēgem scrīpsit quā partem captōrum agrōrum ā nōbilibus,
quī dīxerant sē nōn trāditūrōs esse, cēpit et agricolīs quī
nūllum habēbant dedit. Hōc factō, malī nōbilēs eum
interficere magnopere cupiēbant. Tum lēx Rōmānum
70 ūnum annum esse tribūnum iussit, sed Tiberius tribūnum
alterum annum esse cupiēbat. Quod īdem ā lēge discessit,
senātōrēs dīcere incipiēbant eum rēgem esse cupere, sed
rēgem Rōmānōs numquam rūrsus rēctūrum esse. Post
paucōs mēnsēs dux nōbilium senātōrumque cum multīs
75 amīcīs in Tiberium impetum fēcit et mox hic et trecentī ex
amīcīs firmīs interfectī sunt. Corpora in flūmen Tiberim
dēmissa sunt.

538

Tiberi
cessērun
Tum Gā
quae ā re
novem a
Rōmam
Statuit :
et iūra ɛ
factus p
necesse
facere n
rem plēk
hominib
dedit et
omnibus
haec lēx
et rēgen
    Senāt
līberāre
trādere
Itaque
Exercitu
huic dec
nōn cup
sulis in
Gāius
Amīcīs
Amīcī ɛ
plēbem
sunt, sɛ
fūgit.

5 imp. ·

od neque
cilis.
sed senā-
ıā dēdūcī
ɔ necesse
s?'' Hōc
ed senā-
ɔminibus
ɔlae inter
· humilēs
n habuē-
nt quod

d multās
ınt prō-
yr˚˙ sed
Iı˷ ager,
Tiberius
dēlēctus
dēfendit;
Iūstam
ōbilibus,
colīs quī
ilēs eum
ōmānum
ribūnum
discessit,
ɔere, sed
se. Post
n multīs
ecentī ex
Tiberim

Tiberiō interfectō, nōbilēs timōre līberātī ā lēge dis-
cessērunt et agrōs quī plēbī datī erant occupāvērunt.
Tum Gāius Gracchus eius frāter erat in īnsulā Sardiniā, 80
quae ā regiōne Rōmae multa mīlia passuum aberat, sed post
novem aut decem annōs Gāius quī ex puerīs iam excēdēbat[5]
Rōmam vēnit. Eius adventus senātuī grātus nōn erat.
Statuit sē plēbis causam contrā nōbilēs susceptūrum esse
et iūra eōrum cōnservātūrum esse. Hic quoque tribūnus 85
factus putāvit sē ad fīnem cōnsilia frātris suī addūcere
necesse esse. Hoc labor difficilis erat. Nōbilēs eum id
facere nōn cupīvērunt; multa tamen cōnfēcit, nam dolō-
rem plēbis sustinēre nōn potuit. Viās dūxit et labōrem eīs
hominibus humilibus dedit. Frūmentum et agrum quoque 90
dedit et sē potentem fēcit. Praetereā īdem cīvitātem[6]
omnibus quī Ītaliam habitābant dedit. Nē plēbī quidem
haec lēx grāta erat. Nōbilēs dīcēbant hunc ā lēge discēdere
et rēgem esse cupere et iniūriās in hunc coniciēbant.

Senātus convocātus cōnsulēs duōs patriam perīculō 95
līberāre iussit et cōnsulis nūntius missus Gracchum sē
trādere iussit, sed īdem dīxit sē hoc nōn factūrum esse.
Itaque ob magnitūdinem perīculī fugere coāctus est.
Exercitum nōn habuit, sed multī amīcī commōtī auxilium
huic dedērunt. Īdem autem quod contrā inimīcōs pugnāre 100
nōn cupīvit, amīcōs suōs retinuit. Tum pars cōpiārum cōn-
sulis in populum impetum fēcit et proelium factum est.
Gāius numerō hominum, nōn animō superātus est.
Amīcīs suīs dīxit, ''Sī mē ipse interficiam, servābiminī.''
Amīcī eius autem dolentēs hoc nōn permīsērunt. Nōbilēs 105
plēbem superāvērunt et ducentī sexāgintā octō interfectī
sunt, sed Gāius cum servō ad Tiberim in locum apertum
fūgit. Ibi servum suum eum interficere coēgit. Vītam

[5] imp. + **iam** = plup.       [6] citizenship.

539

suam quoque populō dedit, sed duo Gracchī memoriā
110 semper tenēbuntur et summō in honōre inter populum
Rōmānum semper habēbuntur quod causam plēbis
suscēpērunt.

Posteā Rōma magnō studiō statuās duōbus frātribus et
mātrī Cornēliae eōrum posuit. In Cornēliae monumentō
115 scrīptum est "Māter Gracchōrum."

Etiam nunc in Amēricā Gracchōs et mātrem eōrum
memoriā tenēmus.

## 2.     LIVING WITH THE ROMANS

*a.* What do you think of the plan of the Gracchi for
giving land and grain to the poor?

*b.* What do you think about their plan of using the
unemployed in building roads?

*c.* Can you think of any examples which have occurred
in recent years that used the social and economic pro-
gram of the Gracchi?

*d.* What difficulties are involved in bringing about social
reforms?

## 3.     VOCABULARY

| | |
|---|---|
| superō, -āre, 1 | *surpass, excel; overcome, conquer* |
| ipse, ipsa, ipsum, m., f., n., intens. pron., and adj. | *self, himself, herself, itself; very* |
| ostendō, -ere, ostendī, ostentus, 3 | *(stretch out), show, display; declare* |
| īdem, eadem, idem, m., f., n., dem. pron. and adj. | *same* |
| memoria, memoriae, f., 1 | *memory* |
| fugiō, -ere, fūgī, fugitūrus, 3 iō | *flee, escape* |
| doceō, -ēre, docuī, doctus, 2 | *teach, inform, show;* doctus, *learned, skilled* |

540

;ON
ECTIVES

learn about Gaius
.rius and his rise to
ver in the first cen-
y I
learn how to
iress extent of time
l space in Latin
learn the differences
ween **post, posteā,**
l **postquam**

*a*
*ŝim ´brī), Teu´tons*

*y* (indeclinable)
*´tēs*

# MARIUS ET SULLA

**C.** ■ Marius, vir humilis generis, ob ēgregiam virtūtem cōnsul ā Rōmānīs factus est. Plūrimī cīvēs putāvērunt eum esse maximum imperātōrem aetātis suae.

Iugurthā[1], rēge Numidiae quae terra in Āfricā est, victō, Marius bellum
5 contrā Cimbrōs et Teutonēs[2] suscēpit. Hī, quī extrēmōs fīnēs Germāniae incoluerant, Cimbrīs sē iūnxerant. Multōs mēnsēs hae duae gentēs novās terrās petīverant et ad prōvinciam Rōmānam pervēnerant. Tribus ducibus Rōmānīs ā barbarīs repulsīs, Marius mīlitēs trēs annōs exercuit. Posteā Teutonēs sub Alpibus proeliō superāvit ac super centum mīlia interfēcit.
10 Cimbrī autem, quī nihil dē victōriā Rōmānōrum audīverant, per lēgātōs praemissōs ācriter sibi et Teutonibus agrōs petīvērunt. Marius rīdēns[3], "Illī tenent," inquit, "semperque tenēbunt terram ā[4] nōbīs acceptam." Proximō annō is cum mīlitibus bene exercitīs contrā eōs pugnāvit. Nec minor erat pugna cum uxōribus eōrum quam cum virīs. Illae quae supererant sē
15 līberōsque suōs interfēcērunt.

Multōs annōs Rōmānī hōs barbarōs īnstantēs timuerant, sed Alpēs post hanc victōriam Rōmam ā perīculō prohibēbānt.

Postquam Rōmānī intellēxērunt necesse[5] esse bellum cum Mithridāte[6] gerere, hoc negōtium Sullae commīsērunt. Sed postquam Sulla ex urbe
20 discessit, Marius, quī ipse cupīvit hoc negōtium super omnia suscipere, summam potestātem obtinuit. Posteā Sulla cum mīlitibus quōs circum sē habuit Marium in fugam dedit. Mīlitibus praemissīs, paucōs mēnsēs Rōmae[7] Sulla mānsit. Postquam autem ad bellum discessit, Marius Rōmam occupāvit.
25 Quattuor annōs Sulla cum Mithridāte bellum gessit. Post mortem Marī in Italiam revertit. Omnēs hostēs prae sē agēns, circum multa oppida mīlitēs suōs dūxit. Dictātor factus, multa mīlia cīvium interficī iussit. Amīcus eum monuit: "Nōnne intellegis hoc nōn tibi ūtile esse? Sī omnēs interficiēs, et nēmō supererit, quōrum cīvium dictātor eris?"

LFA

Post Gracchōrum mortem condiciōnēs Rōmae pējōrēs factae sunt. Certāmen pessimum inter plēbem et nōbilēs erat. Uterque sibi omnia cupīvit. Paucī nōbilēs negōtium cīvīle ac mīlitāre administrāvērunt; paucī nōbilēs omnēs agrōs et dīvitiās habēbant; paucī nōbilēs cūnctōs magistrātūs, praedam prōvinciārum, laudem, glōriam obtinuērunt. Et nōbilēs et plēbs multō plūs ōtī et bonōrum quam Rōmānī antīquī habuerant.

Gājus Marius, vir humilis generis, mīles erat in exercitū Scīpiōnis cui grātissimus fuit. Postquam tribūnus plēbis creātus est, causam populī contrā nōbilēs suscēpit; hinc grātus erat neque nōbilibus neque senātōribus.

Paulō post Rōmānī cum Jugurthā, rēge Numidiae, in Āfricā bellum gerēbant. Marius lēgātus ad Āfricam nāvigāvit, sed ille imperātor esse māximē cupīvit. Rōmam revēnit ubi cōnsul creātus est et bellum fīnīre jūssus est. Ūnō annō bellum cōnfēcit et rēgem Jugurtham captīvum Rōmam dūxit.

Dum haec in Āfricā geruntur, duae potentissimae gentēs Germānicae novōs agrōs et domūs petēbant, quārum altera, Teutōnēs, ad Galliam pervēnerant, altera, Cimbrī, in Ītaliā cōnsīdere cupīvērunt. Rōmānī summō perīculō perterrēbantur et quam prīmum contrā hostēs ācerrimōs exercitum mīsērunt. Quīnque exercitūs Rōmānī dēlētī sunt.

Virtūte et arte mīlitārī Marius Rōmae clārissimus erat. Populus ā lēgibus discessit et hunc cōnsulem iterum creāvit. Cum exercitū ad Teutōnēs quam celerrimē contendit. Teutōnēs fortissimē et ācerrimē pūgnāvērunt sed ā Rōmānīs victī sunt. Multī captīvī factī sunt apud quōs rēx ipse erat. Marius, postquam quīntum cōnsulātum accēpit, in Ītaliam revēnit. Cimbrī in Ītaliā cōnsēderant et ad Marium lēgātiōnem superbam mīsērunt.

"Nōbīs et amīcīs nostrīs terram et urbēs dā. In Ītaliā cōnsīdere cupimus." Hic erat nūntius Cimbrōrum audācissimōrum.

"Quī sunt amīcī vestrī?" postulāvit Marius.

"Teutōnēs sunt amīcī et sociī nostrī," superbē respōnsum est.

"Illī *erant* amīcī et sociī vestrī," Marius dīxit et rīsit (*smiled*). "Plūrimī eōrum terram quam ā nōbīs accēpērunt nunc tenent et eam semper tenēbunt." Tum reliquī ducēs Teutōnum in catēnīs (*chains*) prōductī sunt. Dēnique Marius caedem Cimbrōrum māximam fēcit et apud plēbem Rōmānam plūrimīs victōriīs māximō in honōre fuit.

## SENTENCE PATTERNS

A. Translate into English:

1. Nōnne Sulla cōnsul exercitum Rōmam paucīs diēbus redūxit?
2. Tabulae nōminum plūrimōrum in Forō locātae sunt.
3. Post trēs annōs summum imperium subitō dēposuit.
4. Domus imperātōris incēnsa est atque uxor fugere coācta est.
5. Nēmō ex eīs quī amīcī Marī putābantur ūllam spem fugae habēbat.
6. Victōriīs et scientiā reī mīlitāris Sulla anteā laudābātur.
7. Posteā facta pessima ējus semper memoriā tenēbantur.
8. Cūr imperium tantī bellī Sullae trāditum est?
9. Sine fidē et spē certāmen intrāre nōn dēbēmus.
10. Num Marius, etsī ācerrimus in aciē erat, doctus habēbātur?

B. Translate into Latin:

1. There were very many brave soldiers in that battle line, weren't there?
2. The first leader was bad, the second was worse, but the third was worst of all.
3. With faith and hope we can accomplish very great things.
4. He was a very learned man, but he loved himself more than the commonwealth.
5. After a few days he led the army back to Italy and a little later entered Rome.

### A Struggle for Supremacy (continued)

Annō ultimō bellī cum Jugurthā Gājus Marius erat cōnsul et imperātor; Lūcius Cornēlius Sulla quaestor ējus erat. Hic gentis patriciae potentissimus mīles et doctissimus vir erat sed inimīcissimus Mariō; ille humilis generis fortissimus et audācissimus imperātor erat. Hic senātuī et nōbilibus semper fuerat amīcus; ille causam plēbis pauperis suscēperat.

Marius postquam rem pūblicam ā Teutōnibus et Cimbrīs līberāvit apud populum Rōmānum māximō in honōre erat et cōnsul iterum creātus est. Hōc annō sextī cōnsulātūs erat initium bellī sociālis. Sociī, quod cīvēs Rōmānī esse cupīvērunt, cum Rōmānīs bellum gerere cōnstituērunt. Inter imperātōrēs clārōs reī pūblicae quī eō tempore cum sociīs pūgnābant erat Sulla. Virtūte et scientiā reī mīlitāris ille ā Rōmānīs laudātus est et cōnsul creātus est. Tandem sociī ā Sullā superātī sunt, sed posteā Rōmānī eīs jūra quae petīverant dedērunt.

Paucīs post annīs Rōmānī cum Mithridāte, Ponticō rēge, quī multa mīlia cīvium Rōmānōrum in Āsiā occīderat, bellum gerēbant. Ubi perīculum gravissimum factum est, Sulla cōnsul ā

OLH

senātū dēlēctus est et in Āsiam cum exercitū quam celerrimē prōcēdere jūssus est. Mariō autem nōn grātum erat imperium tantī bellī Sullae trādī. Itaque postquam Sulla ad exercitum prōcessit, Pūblius Sulpicius, tribūnus plēbis, lēgem scrīpsit quā Gājus Marius dux hūjus bellī creātus est. Sulla, quī Rōmā sed nōn ab Ītaliā discesserat, exercitum Rōmam redūxit, urbem paucīs diēbus occupāvit, Marium cum fīliō multīsque amīcīs fugere coēgit.

Dum Sulla in Graeciā et in Āsiā contrā Mithridātem contendit, Marius Rōmam ab ūnō ē cōnsulibus revocātus est. Ille omnēs amīcōs Sullae quīnque diēs noctēsque in templīs, in domibus eōrum, in viīs petīvit et eōs crūdēlissimē occīdit. Domus Sullae incēnsa est atque uxor līberīque fugere coāctī sunt. Alter cōnsulum et plūrimī nōbilēs interfectī sunt, et corpora in viās jacta sunt. Subitō Marius ipse ē vītā excessit postquam septimum cōnsulātum suscēpit.

Ubi haec Sullae narrāta sunt, ex Asiā excessit et in Ītaliam ad bellum cīvīle properāvit. Mithridātem etsī hic pācem cōnfīrmāre coāctus est nōn vīcit. Cōnsulēs superāvit et victor Rōmam intrāvit. Amīcīs Marī erat nūlla spēs. Sulla mīlia cīvium occīdī jūssit. Dictātor ā senātū creātus est et lēgēs reī pūblicae statim mūtāvit. Tribus post annīs summum imperium dēposuit et in villā propinquā marī reliquam vītam ēgit.

# *Unit* XLVII

## CONVERSATION

ROBERTUS: Cūr Pompējus, Rōmānōrum legiōnum imperātor, ā populō Māgnus appellātus est, magister?

MAGISTER: Pompējus ab omnibus Māgnus appellārī poterat quod māgnās rēs optimē gessisse dīcitur. Ut (*As*) Cicerō, ōrātōrum Rōmānōrum clārissimus, dīxit: "Pompējus quattuor hās rēs habēbat: scientiam reī mīlitāris, virtūtem, auctōritātem, fēlīcitātem (*good luck*)."

PHILIPPUS: Quandō Cicerō prō Pompējō ōrātiōnem clāram habuit?

MAGISTER: Cicerō praetor prō Pompējō prīmam ōrātiōnem habuit.

# CHAPTER LI

**I.**  **MARIUS ET SULLA**

Tempore mortis G. Gracchī Rōmae habitābat magnus
vir, humilis generis, nōmine C. Marius. Hic altus erat et
potēns. Praetereā magnās difficultātēs superāre potuit et
bene pugnāvit. Ubi ex puerīs excessit in Hispāniā in
cōpiīs eiusdem Scīpiōnis quī Carthāginem tertiō bellō 5
Pūnicō superāvit exercitus est. "Magnus," inquit Scīpiō,
"mīles futūrus est quod perīculum semper petit." In eō
bellō Scīpiō ob virtūtem ēgregiam multōs honōrēs eī dedit.
Posteā tribūnus plēbis factus causam populī contrā
nōbilēs suscēpit; itaque nōn grātus erat nōbilibus et 10
senātōribus.

Post octō aut novem annōs Rōma cum Iugurthā rēge
Numidiae quae terra in Āfricā erat bellum gerere incipiē-
bat. Iugurtha, fīliīs rēgis interfectīs, rēgnum occupāverat.
Imperātōrēs Rōmānī in Āfricam missī sunt et multa proelia 15
cum Iugurthā facta sunt, sed ille rēx malus aut armīs aut
pecūniā semper superāvit. Post trēs annōs tribus imperā-
tōribus victīs Q. Metellus, alacer et fortis dux, cōnsul
dēlēctus cum C. Mariō, lēgātō ācrī, nāvem longam
ascendit et ad Āfricam nāvigāvit. Mīlitibus bene exercitīs 20
post longum tempus pauca oppida capta sunt et Iugurtha
proeliō victus est. Tum rēx in patriam amīcī fugere
coāctus est et mox novus exercitus convēnit. Nunc
Metellus magnam spem victōriae habuit; Marius autem
imperātor esse cupiēbat; itaque Marius Rōmam revēnit et 25
dīxit sē ūnō annō bellī fīnem facere posse. Paucīs diēbus
cōnsul factus est et bellum cōnficere iussus est. Postquam
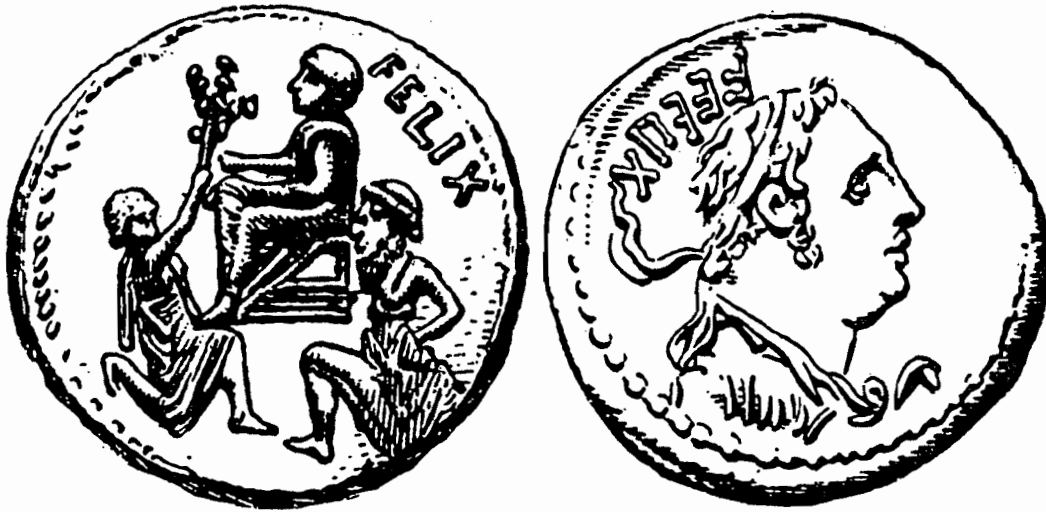
*Jugurtha.* At left a coin showing the surrender of Jugurtha by Bocchus, his father-in-law, king of Mauretania. Bocchus kneels before Sulla, the quaestor of Marius. The captive king, Jugurtha, kneels on the side. The other coin shows Jugurtha—62 B.C.

in Āfricam pervēnit multa proelia fēcit et ūnō annō rēgem malum ipsum cēpit et eum captīvum Rōmam dūxit. Ibi
30 rēx propter iniūriārum magnitūdinem Rōmānīs mortis poenam dedit. Id fīnis secundus erat bellī.

Dum haec in Āfricā ita geruntur, Rōma novō perīculō perterrēbātur. Multitūdō Teutonōrum Cimbrōrumque, barbarōrum gentium quae ā regiōne Germāniae vēnerant,
35 in Galliā novōs agrōs et domūs petēbat. Rōmānī perterrē-bantur quod putāvērunt barbarōs in Ītaliam mox per-ventūrōs esse. Itaque senātus exercitum Rōmānum in hostēs impetum facere iussit. Prīmō barbarī victōrēs erant. Quīnque magnīs exercitibus Rōmānīs dēlētīs popu-
40 lus ob rēs ā Germānīs gestās perterritus Marium imperā-tōrem postulāvit. Itaque eius adventus Rōmae omnibus grātus erat. Nunc et senātus et populus spem suam in hōc posuit. Populus ā lēgibus discēdēns hunc cōnsulem iterum fēcit et cum exercitū in Galliam properāre iussit.

550

Hic alter
Marius ii
prōcēdere
mēnsibus
docuit et
barōrum
Ītaliam i
ad Ītalia:
dere nece
Marius c
nam sper
et ad hc
Alpēs dīr:
magnā v
mox sup
rum, lībe
in quibu:
Mariu:
Ītaliam
Ītaliam i
pervēnit.
agrōs pc
Marius.
inquit M
illōs terr
'tūrōs es:
captīvōs
Iam l
vī eam
et Cim'
xērunt ε
rum ma

---

Hic alter consulātus[1] eius erat. Eō ipsō tempore, cum[14] 45
Marius in Galliam iter faciēbat, barbarī in Hispāniam
prōcēdere statuērunt et ibi duōs annōs remānsērunt. Eīs
mēnsibus Marius mīlitēs quōs circum sē habuit multa
docuit et bene exercuit. Post duōs annōs multitūdō bar-
barōrum in Galliam revēnit; Cimbrī circum Alpēs ad 50
Italiam iter statim fēcērunt; Teutonī autem per Galliam
ad Italiam prōcessērunt. Teutonōs ad Marī castra accē-
dere necesse est. Sex diēs praeter[2] castra iter fēcērunt, sed
Marius cōpiās castrīs tenuit et hostēs nōn oppugnāvit,
nam spem victōriae nōn habuit. Mox īdem castra mōvit 55
et ad hostēs properāvit. Posteā exercitum in eōs sub
Alpēs dīmīsit et magnum proelium cum eīs fēcit. Teutonī
magnā virtūte studiōque pugnāvērunt, sed ab Rōmānīs
mox superātī sunt. Hīc ducenta mīlia virōrum, fēminā-
rum, līberōrum interfecta sunt et multa mīlia erant captīvī 60
in quibus rēx ipse erat.

Marius quī nunc quīntum[3] cōnsulātum[1] accēperat in
Italiam revēnit et alterī cōnsulī Cimbrōs quī iam in
Italiam incesserant pugnantī auxilium dedit. Ubi Marius
pervēnit, nūntiōs ad eum mīsērunt et sibi amīcīsque suīs 65
agrōs postulāvērunt. "Quī sunt amīcī vestrī?" rogāvit
Marius. Cimbrī dīxērunt eōs esse Teutonōs. "Ubi,"
inquit Marius rīdēns[4], "sunt amīcī vestrī? Nōnne scītis
illōs terram ā nōbīs acceptam tenēre et eam semper ten-
tūrōs esse? Corpora illōrum in Galliae agrīs sunt." Tum 70
captīvōs suōs ostendit.

Iam hī Marium nūllam terram datūrum esse scientēs
vī eam occupāre statuērunt. Mox omnibus comparātīs
et Cimbrī et Rōmānī in locō apertō mīlitēs īnstrū-
xērunt et terribile proelium fēcērunt. Multitūdō Cimbrō- 75
rum magnō cum animō pugnāvit sed vim impetūs susti-

---

[1] consulship.　　[2] past.　　[3] fifth.　　[4] laughing.　　[14] when
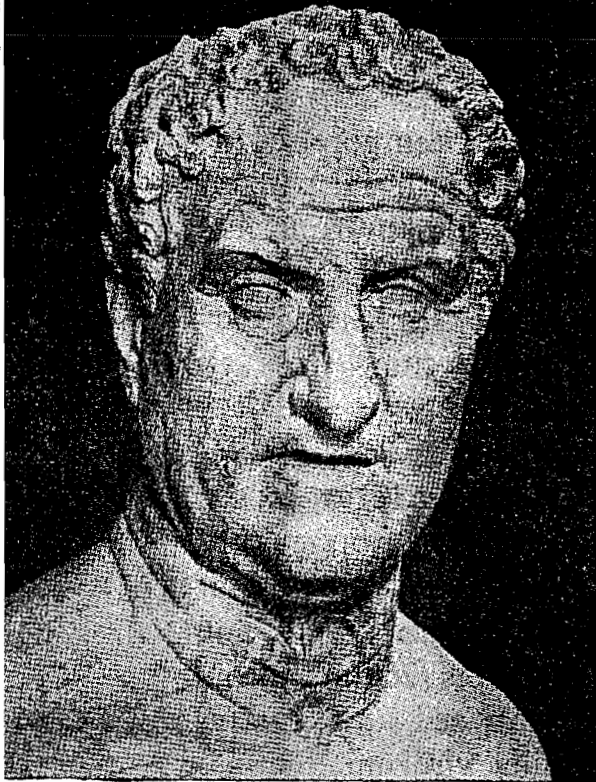
*Sulla.* Roman general, politician, and dictator.

nēre nōn potuit et mox in fugam data est. Centum et vīgintī mīlia virōrum inter-
80 fecta sunt, et multa mīlia captīvī erant. Praetereā fē- minae līberōs suōs sēque in- terfēcērunt quod sē trādere noluērunt[5].

85 Quod Marius rem pūbli- cam ā barbarīs līberāverat apud populum Rōmānum magnō in honōre erat. Ita- que eundem cōnsulem rūrsus
90 fēcērunt. Iam sextum[6] cōn- sulātum[1] accēperat.

Hōc annō bellī sociālis ini- tium erat quod duōs annōs gestum est. Hoc bellum "so-
95 ciāle" appellātum est quod Rōmānī cum sociīs pugnābant. Populī illārum gentium ab Rōmā sēparārī nōlēbant[5]. Nōn sociī sed cīvēs esse dēsīderāvērunt. Rōmānī negāvērunt[7] sē ea iūra datūrōs esse itaque sociī bellum iūstum gerere statuērunt. Rōmānī
100 exercitum centum mīlium hominum comparāvērunt. Omnēs ēgregiī imperātōrēs reī pūblicae in eō bellō pugnā- bant inter quōs erat Lūcius Cornēlius Sulla, vir nōbilis generis. Magnus et potēns et doctus vir erat et inimīcus Marī. Bonus mīles erat et victor multīs proeliīs discessit.
105 Sociī superātī sunt, sed Rōma eīs iūra quae petīverant mox dedit. Rōmānī Sullam ob ēgregiās victōriās laudā- bant et eum cōnsulem fēcērunt; apud enim populum Rōmānum magnō in honōre erat.

---

[1] consulship.     [5] did not wish.     [6] sixth.     [7] = dīcō nōn.
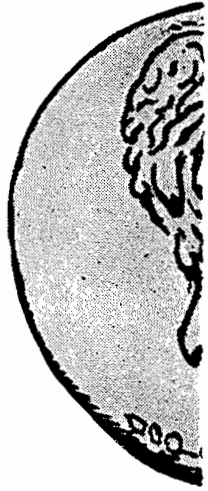
mox in
ntum et
n inter-
a mīlia
ereā fē-
que in-
trādere

ı pūbli-
erāverat
mānum
at. Ita-
n rūrsus
m[6] cōn-

i ini-
ıs annōs
um "so-
st quod
gentium
vēs esse
datūrōs
Rōmānī
āvērunt.
ı pugnā-
r nōbilis
inimīcus
ıiscessit.
tīverant
s laudā-
ıopulum

ıōn.



**Sulla.** *At left a coin issued by Sulla's grandson in 57 B.C. At right a coin showing Sulla dressed in a toga in a triumphal chariot. Note the laurel branches in his right hand and above, Victory flying and bearing a wreath.*

Posteā bellum cīvile apud Rōmānōs erat. Nōbilēs
Sullam ducem habuērunt, plēbs Marium. Mox Rōma 110
bellum cum Mithradāte gerere coācta est quod multa
mīlia cīvium Rōmānōrum interfecta erant. Sulla imperā-
tor ā senātū dēlēctus in Asiam cum exercitū currere[15] iussus
est. Mariō autem nōn grātum erat negōtium huius bellī
Sullae committī. Itaque postquam Sulla pauca mīlia 115
passuum Rōmā discessit cīvēs imperium Mariō dedērunt.

Ubi Sulla haec audīvit, omnēs mīlitēs quōs circum sē
habuit statim convocāvit et cōnsilium eīs ostendit.
"Servīne," inquit, "Marī esse cupitis? Utrum nostrum
habēbitis? Mēne an Marium?" 120

"Tē, tē," clāmāvērunt mīlitēs. "Tē nōs Rōmam redū-
cere cupimus. Ab inimīcīs ob iniūriās poenam petēmus."
Quod Marius vim hostium retinēre nōn potuit, mox Rōma
capta est et Marius in fugam datus est. Agricola cibum eī
dedit et nāve in Āfricam eum mīsit, sed post paucōs 125

---

[15] run.

**Marius.** At left is a coin showing Marius in a triumphal chariot. It relates to his triumph after the expedition against the Teutons and Cimbri. Note his adopted son on nearest horse—101 B.C. **Mithradates.** The coin at the right shows Mithradates, King of Pontus, Asia.

mēnsēs ab ūnō ē cōnsulibus revocātus est. Quod Sulla nunc in Graeciā et Asiā cum Mithradāte pugnābat et eum virum malum retinēre nōn potuit, Marius omnēs amīcōs Sullae quīnque diēs in templīs, in eōrum domibus, in Forō
130 petīvit et hōs crūdēliter[8] necāvit. Domus Sullae incēnsa est et nēmō ex eīs quī amīcī Sullae appellātī sunt cōnservātus est. Nē uxor quidem eius līberīque Rōmae manēre potuē-runt, sed fugere coāctī sunt. Īdem nunc septimum[9] cōn-sulātum[1] accēpit, sed diū mūnus nōn gessit, nam mox hic
135 labōribus multōrum bellōrum cōnfectus tertiā[10] decimā[10] diē cōnsulātūs ē vītā cessit.

Post mortem Marī Sulla bellum quod quattuor annōs cum Mithradāte gesserat ad fīnem addūxit et ad Ītaliam revenīre comparāvit. Dīxit, "Ubi Rōmam pervēnerō[11] ab
140 eīs quī meam uxōrem līberōsque expulērunt et omnēs amīcōs meōs necāvērunt poenam petam." Eam ob rem Rōmānī commōtī sunt et dē Sullā pācem petīvērunt. "Tē

---

[1] consulship.     [8] cruelly.     [9] seventh.     [10] thirteenth.     [11] I arrive.

554

contrā cīvē
sed dē sent
"Amīciti
Mox pe
victor mul
pūblicam
Mariō amī
perium dēj
vītam ageı
et Sullae sı

[12] lay down.

**2.**

mors, mortis
spēs, speī, f.
diēs, diēī, n
domus, dom
rēs, reī, f., ₅
circum, prej
vīs, vīs, f.; j
irreg.
apud, prep.

**3.**

*a.* mul
Therefore
XLVI)
*b.* pert
prefix)
*c.* acci
*receive*
*d.* rēs

contrā cīvēs tuōs bellum gerere nōn cupimus," dīxērunt, sed dē sententiā eum nōn dēdūxērunt.

"Amīcitiam cum inimīcīs nōn faciam," respondit. 145

Mox per Ītaliam cum exercitū incessit. Postquam victor multīs proeliīs discessit Rōmam prōcessit et rem pūblicam occupāvit. Dictātor factus omnēs eōs quī Mariō amīcī fuerant necārī iussit. Post trēs annōs imperium dēpōnere[12] et in vīllā suā prope mare reliquam[13] 150 vītam agere subitō statuit. Populus Rōmānus facta Marī et Sullae semper memoriā tenuit.

---

[12] lay down.          [13] rest of.

**2.**                          **VOCABULARY**

| | |
|---|---|
| **mors, mortis,** f., 3 (**mortium**) | *death* |
| **spēs, speī,** f., 5 | *hope* |
| **diēs, diēī,** m., 5 | *day* |
| **domus, domūs,** f., 4 | *house, home* |
| **rēs, reī,** f., 5 | *thing; matter, affair, fact* |
| **circum,** prep. with acc. | *around* |
| **vīs, vīs,** f.; pl., **vīrēs,** vīrium, irreg. | *force, power, violence;* pl. *strength* |
| **apud,** prep. with acc. | *in the presence of, among, with; at the house of, at* |

**3.**                   NEW TYPES OF OLD FRIENDS

*a.* **multitūdō**: Of what Latin words is it composed? Therefore what does it mean?  cf. **magnitūdō** (Chapter XLVI)

*b.* **perterreō**: = ?  (See Chapter XVIII, (2) for force of prefix)

*c.* **accipiō**: = **ad,** *to* + **capiō,** *take* = *take to* (oneself), *receive*

*d.* **rēs pūblica**: *republic, state* (idiom)

555

### Hero: Spartacus or Telemachus?

Ōlim Rōmae fuit servus clārus, captīvus Rōmānōrum. Sociōs convocāvit et nūntiāvit: "Ō gladiātōrēs, sumusne virī? Cūr prō dominīs malīs amīcōs sociōsque nostrōs necāmus? Cūr servī sumus? Nōn semper servī fuimus. Nōn semper servus fuī. Ōlim fuī līber! Ōlim domicilium pulchrum, agrōs lātōs, patriam, amīcōs habēbam.

"Tum Rōmānī domicilia, agrōs, patriam vāstāvērunt. Virōs et puerōs ad Ītaliam portāvērunt. Ego (*I*) et Mārcus, amīcus meus, captīvī, servī, gladiātōrēs mox erāmus. Cotīdiē in arēnā contrā amīcōs et sociōs gladiīs pūgnābāmus. Hodiē in arēnā Mārcum necāvī. Nunc contrā Rōmānōs gladiō pūgnābō. Rōmānōs necābō. Līberī erimus! Ad arma! Pro servīs et prō patriā pūgnāte!"

Sīc Spartacus miser māgnō cum studiō gladiātōrēs incitāvit. Per duōs annōs servī contrā dominōs Rōmānōs pūgnābant. Multōs agrōs et multa oppida cūnctae Ītaliae vāstāvērunt. Tum Crassus et Pompējus servōs miserōs superāvērunt et necāvērunt. Spartacus servōs, amīcōs et sociōs, nōn līberāverat.

Post multōs annōs Tēlemachus, vir bonus, in amphitheātrō Rōmānō sedēbat. Gladiātōrēs tristis (*sad*) spectābat. Servōs amāvit quod cūnctōs virōs amāvit. Subitō in arēnam dēsiluit (*leaped*). Gladiātōrēs īrātī (*angered*) factum Tēlemachī nōn comprehendērunt (*did not understand*) et virum necāvērunt. Sed multī spectātōrēs Rōmānī factum comprehendērunt et laudāvērunt. Tēlemachus prō servīs vītam dederat. Numquam iterum gladiātōrēs pūgnāvērunt. Mox multī Rōmānī servōs miserōs līberāvērunt.

# *Unit* XVIII

## CONVERSATION

| | |
|---|---|
| SEXTUS: | Herī in scholā esse nōn poteram. Ad Circum ambulāvī. |
| MĀRCELLUS: | Poterāsne subsellium (*seat*) idōneum obtinēre? |
| SEXTUS: | Māgnus numerus virōrum puerōrumque paene cūncta subsellia tenēbat, sed prope terminum arēnae sedēbam unde lūdōs spectāre poteram. Diū exspectābam. |
| MĀRCELLUS: | Quōs gladiātōrēs nōtōs vidistī? |
| SEXTUS: | Herī gladiātōrēs nōn aderant. Equōs et quadrīgās (*chariots*) et aurīgās (*charioteers*) spectāvimus. |

2. WI
3. WI
4. WI
5. To
6. WI
7. WI

# SPARTACUS

Spartacus fuit clārus servus, captīvus Rōmānōrum. Sociōs ēvocāvit et ad bellum incitāvit: "Ō sociī, Rōmānī nōn sunt aequī. Puer fuī in oppidō meō, et vīta grāta semper erat. Magna erat concordia in patriā nostrā. Popùlus aequus erat. Silvās magnās et agrōs lātōs amāvī. Dominum nōn habuī; līber
5 ibi fuī. Vērum amīcum habuī, puerum bonum et grātum. Sed Rōmānī patriam meam occupāvērunt; mē et amīcum meum ex patriā portāvērunt.

Nunc post[1] multōs annōs vir sum, et in arēnā pūblicā pugnō. Hodiē[2] in hōc[3] oppidō virum quem[4] nōn cognōvī[5] occīdī[6]—et erat amīcus meus!

Estisne virī? Populum Rōmānum et dominōs malōs nōn amātis. Iniūriās
10 nōn merēmus. Causa nostra est aequa. Nōnne nunc hōra est? Ad arma! Pugnāte! Animum vestrum mōnstrāte! Vocāte sociōs vestrōs ad auxilium! Servōs līberābimus, līberī erimus, ad patriam nostram sacram migrāre mātūrābimus et ibi in agrīs nostrīs labōrābimus et in concordiā habitābimus."

ear Capua
w in ruins
e Roman
tifies to
diatorial
e revolt of
llowers in
ombat was
truscan
to honor a
icrifices to
he Romans
e of ' sh
f cruelty,
tlawed in
D.

Mimmo Jodice/CORBIS

Nour
ca
do
op
po

Adje
ae
lā´
pū
vē
ve

Pror
qu
qu

Adv
u

Encl
-n

Ask
In
type
ask f
(quis

Sisters, who alone could help him in his task. The Three Sisters, who had been gray from birth, possessed only one eye, which they passed from one to the other. As the eye was being passed, all three were blind.

Perseus, standing silent nearby, watched for his opportunity and snatched the eye. He would not return it until they told him the hiding place of the Gorgons, as well as the place where he could obtain three things: the helmet of Pluto, which would render him invisible; the winged shoes with which he could fly with the speed of the wind; and the pouch used to carry the Medusa's head after he had severed it from her body. Reluctantly they granted all his demands.

Then Minerva gave Perseus her highly polished shield so that he could see the Medusa as in a mirror; for if he looked at the monster directly, he would turn to stone. Mercury lent his finely sharpened sickle with which Perseus could cut off the Medusa's head. Quickly the deed was done, and Perseus was on his homeward journey with the Medusa's head in his pouch.

## The Great Pompey

Per annōs bellī cīvīlis senātus Rōmānus paene omnem auctōritātem potestātemque dēposuit. Ducēs, quī exercitūs potentissimōs et māximam scientiam reī mīlitāris habēbant, summum imperium Rōmae habēbant. Inter eōs fuit Gnaeus Pompējus, quī in Sullae exercitū lēgātus fuerat.

Mox post Sullae mortem, ubi pīrātae plūrimī omnia maria īnfēstābant et urbēs Ītaliae dēlēbantur, contrā eōs Pompējus missus est. Pīrātās statim superārī necesse erat quod nāvigātiō nōn erat tūta et frūmentum ē prōvinciīs Rōmam trānsportārī nōn poterat. Brevissimō tempore Pompējus omnia maria illā peste līberāvit. Nihil hāc victōriā erat celerius, nam ante quadrāgēsimam (*fortieth*) diem tōtō marī expulsī sunt pīrātae.

Dum Pompējus contrā pīrātās bellum gerit, Mithridātēs, quī ā Sullā annīs ante paucīs paene victus erat, iterum contrā Rōmānōs bellum in Āsiā gerēbat. Pompējus Mithridātem vīcit, quī in Pontum fūgit et ibi ā mīlite interfectus est. Tum ille Tigrānem, rēgem Armēniae, vīcit. Posteā ad Jūdaeam prōcessit et prīmus Jūdaeōs superāvit. Hierosolymam (*Jerusalem*), caput gentis, cēpit, et templum jūre victōriae intrāvit.

Ubi rēs Āsiae cōnfectae sunt, Rōmam revēnit, nōn cum exercitū suō, ut (*as*) plūrimī timuerant, sed sine legiōnibus. Rōmae

per spatium duōrum diērum māgnus imperātor triumphāvit, id quod nēminī anteā acciderat. Cohortēs Sertōrī in Hispaniā, pīrātās Ciliciae, Mithridātem, rēgem Pontī, Tigrānem, rēgem Armēniae, Jūdaeōs Palaestīnae Pompējus māgnus vīcerat.

Posteā Pompējus, etsī tantum imperium jam habēbat, multō mājōrem auctōritātem et honōrēs dēsīderāvit. Senātuī erat grātissimus, sed erat ūnus dux potēns quem māximē timuit. Ille homō erat Gājus Jūlius Caesar, quī ipse esse prīmus Rōmae māgnopere cupīvit.

Itaque hī duo ducēs, Pompējus et Caesar, cum Mārcō Crassō, quī māximās dīvitiās habēbat, societātem (*alliance*) inter sē jungere statuērunt. Hōc modō rēs cīvitātis administrāvērunt. Eōdem annō Pompējus et Caesar erant cōnsulēs. Posteā hic Galliam, ille Hispāniam obtinēbat. Caesar māximō cum gaudiō cum legiōnibus ad Galliam contendit; Pompējus autem Rōmae mānsit quod illī esse prope senātum et nōbilēs erat grātum. Ubi Caesar Rōmā discēdere statuit, senātus laetus erat quod nōbilēs eum memoriā tenērī nōn cupīvērunt.

# *Unit* XLVIII

## CONVERSATION

MAGISTER: Exīstimāsne Jūlium Caesarem māgnum imperātōrem fuisse?

JŌSĒPHUS: Complūrēs dīcunt Caesarem māximum imperātōrem omnium saeculōrum esse. Hoc nōndum exīstimō.

MAGISTER: Quibuscum dīcunt illum societātem (*alliance*) fēcisse?

HENRĪCUS: Ille societātem cum Pompējō ac Crassō fēcit.

MAGISTER: Quam ob rem societātem fēcit?

ROBERTUS: Caesar ferē omnēs nōbilēs sibi inimīcissimōs esse et futūrōs esse scīvit. Pompējum auctōritāte, Crassum pecūniā eum adjuvāre posse intellēxit. Sē dīvitiīs Crassī et imperiō Pompējī rem pūblicam bene administrātūrum esse spērāvit. Sē vocāvērunt triumvirōs.

MAGISTER: Nihil agī potuit dē rēbus cīvitātis nisi trēs virī probāvērunt. Quam prōvinciam Caesar post cōnsulātum cēpit?

# CHAPTER LII

*FIFTH REVIEW – CHAPTERS XLV- LI*

I.                           REVIEW STORY

*a.*                    **POMPĒIUS MAGNUS**

Mox post Sullae mortem novī hostēs Rōmae in Medi-
terrāneō marī aderant. Multitūdō hominum quī in Asiae
ōrīs maritimīs habitābant classēs nāvium aedificāvit
armāvitque et circum Ītaliam nāvigāns multās urbēs et
hominēs ab ōrīs rapiēbat atque nāvēs Rōmānās oppugnā- 5
bat.

Eī nautae, praedōnēs[1] maritimī[1] ab Rōmānīs appellātī,
mīlle nāvēs bene aedificātās et celerēs habuērunt. Nāvēs
Rōmānās quae frūmentum ab Siciliā portābant saepe
occupābant et, postquam omnēs nautās interfēcērunt, 10
nāvēs rapuērunt. Saepe etiam praedōnēs[1] in ōrās mari-
timās mīlitēs ē nāvibus exposuērunt et omnēs agricolās quī
in regiōne erant interfēcērunt et eōrum agrōs rapuērunt.

Populus perterritus est itaque contrā praedōnēs[1]
maritimōs[1] bellum gerere statuit. Adulēscēns fortis 15
Gnaeus Pompēius appellātus quī eō tempore in grātiā
magnā apud populum erat dux dēlēctus est. Populus
omnem spem suam in hōc posuit et postulāvit hunc im-
perātōrem.

Pompēius pulcher vir erat et mīles ēgregius cuius pater 20
imperātor magnus fuerat. Puer in castrīs saepe habitā-
verat et ab patre doctus in bellō saepe fuerat. Postquam
ex puerīs excessit cum Sullā contrā Marium sociōsque
multa proelia fēcit. Sulla putāvit eum magnum ducem

---

[1] sea robbers = pirates.
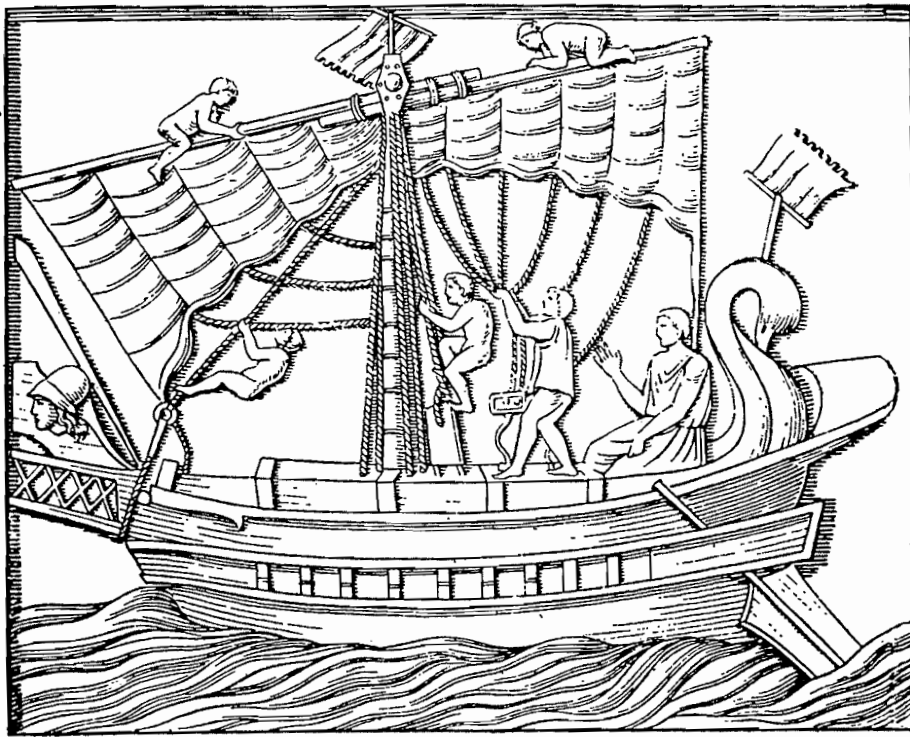
**Roman Merchant Ship.** *Relief from Pompeii.*

25 esse. Senātus Rōmānus ōlim[2] exercitum Pompēiō duce in Hispāniam mīserat et hic multa proelia cum Sertōriō amīcō Marī quī adventū Sullae Rōmā fūgerat pugnāverat. Sertōrius ipse ab ūnō ex suīs interfectus erat, exercitus autem ā Pompēiō superātus erat quī hāc victōriā bellum 30 cīvīle ad fīnem secundum addūxerat.

Dum Pompēius cum Sertōriō pugnat Rōmae bellum novum incipiēbat. Centum mīlia servōrum Spartacō duce in montibus convēnerant et sē in agrōs apertōs saepe dēmittentēs cibum et animālia rapuērunt. Mox Rōmam 35 iter facere magnō studiō incipiēbant, nam illam urbem expugnāre in animō habēbant. Rōmānī commōtī sunt et timōre magnō Crassō, ūnī ex ducibus Sullae quī tum prīvātus erat, magnum exercitum dedērunt et hunc servō-

rum impetu
pēium ex F
tendere iuss
poterant it:
mīlium serv
Bellō His
celeritāte cc
dederant or
summam g
Rōmam rū:
populus ā lē
inquit ūnus
magnās rēs
tātis et po
perium iter
Mox ob
et Pompēic
novī bellī t
et eius ōrā:
rēgere et
Negōtiu
longās ber
que mīlia
et mīlitu
mēnsium,
dēpressīs[4]
Rōmānōr
captīvī e
spatiō tri
Dum P
Pontī rē:
superiōril

[1] sea robb

[2] once.

562

rum impetum retinēre iussērunt. Eōdem tempore Pom-
pēium ex Hispāniā domum magnā cum celeritāte con- 40
tendere iussērunt. Servī exercitum Crassī sustinēre nōn
poterant itaque mox superātī sunt, sed corpus quīnque
mīlium servōrum sē in fugam dedit.

Bellō Hispāniae cōnfectō Pompēius ad Ītaliam summā
celeritāte contenderat et servōs inveniēns quī sē in fugam 45
dederant omnēs interfēcit. Facilis victōria erat, sed hāc in
summam glōriam vēnerat. Et Pompēius et Crassus, ubi
Rōmam rūrsus vēnērunt, grātiam populī quaesīvērunt et
populus ā lēge discēdēns eōs cōnsulēs creāvit[3]. "Magnum,"
inquit ūnus ex prīncipibus, "Pompēium vocābimus quod 50
magnās rēs bene gessit." Sed nōn satis glōriae et auctōri-
tātis et potestātis habēbat Pompēius, nam cupiēbat im-
perium iterum accipere. Neque fortūna eī inimīca erat.

Mox ob eās causās iūstās senātus Rōmānus populō cessit
et Pompēiō, quī prīvātus duōs annōs mānserat, imperium 55
novī bellī trēs annōs trādidit. Hunc Mediterrāneum mare
et eius ōrās omnēs spatium quīnquāgintā mīlium passuum
regere et contrā praedōnēs[1] maritimōs[1] prōcēdere iussit.

Negōtium statim suscēpit et mox quīngentās nāvēs
longās bene armātās, centum vīgintī mīlia mīlitum, quīn- 60
que mīlia equitum comparāvit. Hostēs numerō nāvium
et mīlitum superiōrēs erant, sed tamen spatiō trium
mēnsium, omnibus nāvibus hostium aut captīs aut
dēpressīs[4], mare ā praedōnibus[1] līberāverat et lībertātem
Rōmānōrum cōnservāverat. Vīgintī mīlia praedōnum[1] 65
captīvī erant. Nēmō putāvit eum cīvitātem perīculō
spatiō trium mēnsium līberātūrum esse.

Dum Pompēius cum praedōnibus[1] pugnat, Mithradātēs
Pontī rēx potēns quī, ut[5] memoriā tenēbitis, ā Sullā
superiōribus annīs victus erat contrā Rōmānōs bellum 70

---

[1] sea robbers = pirates.  [3] elect.  [4] sink.  [5] as.

563
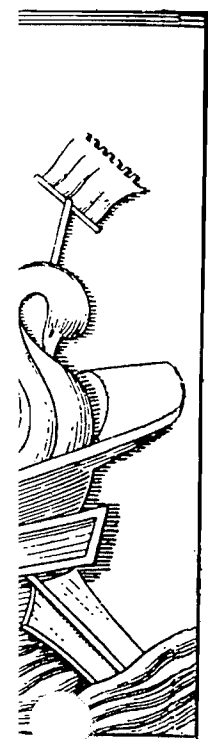
pēiō duce in
ım Sertōriō
pugnāverat.
.t, exercitus
ōriā bellum

nae bellum
artacō duce
ertōs saepe
[ox Rōmam
llam urbem
ıōtī sunt et
ιe quī tum
hunc servō-

_i._

*Pompey the Great*
*First Century, B.C.*

alterum incipiēbat. Rēgnō expulsus erat Ariobarzānēs rēx, socius populī Rōmānī atque amīcus. Praetereā cīvi-
75 tātēs omnēs in cūnctā Asiā atque Graeciā Rōmānōrum auxilium exspectāre propter perīculī magnitūdinem coāctae sunt. Itaque Rōmā-
80 nōs magnum exercitum et imperātōrem in Asiam mittere et sociōs iuvāre necesse est. Lūcullus cum imperiō missus erat et multīs oppidīs mūnītīs
85 oppugnātīs prīmō victor multīs proeliīs discessit, sed nunc fortūna illī inimīca erat itaque illum revocārī et Pompēium mittī cupiēbat populus. Cicerō, ūnus ē prīncipibus Rōmae, causam Pompēī
90 ōrātiōne exposuit. Nē senātus quidem quem Pompēius scīvit sibi inimīcum esse dē eā sententiā populum dēdūcere potuit.

Pompēius, in quō erant magna virtūs, summa auctōritās, ēgregia fortūna, erat magnus imperātor. Hunc quidem
95 fortūna reī pūblicae omnī genere bellī exercuerat et iam Rōmae prīvātus nōn erat, sed in eīs ipsīs locīs cum exercitū aderat. Senātus igitur Pompēiō, maritimō bellō cōnfectō, imperium iterum trādidit et Pompēius in Asiam magnā celeritāte contendit. Impetū in Mithradātem quī in
100 locō mūnītō erat, vī magnā armīsque factō mox |hostēs in fugam coniēcit et victor proeliō discessit. Initiō impetūs Mithradātēs ipse cum corpore octingentōrum equitum sē in fugam dedit. Pompēī negōtium difficile nōn erat, nam animī hostium iam cadēbant.

564

*War Galley*—38 B.C. The coin at the left depicts the type of galley used by Pompey to clear the Mediterranean of pirates. The coin at the right shows a trophy of arms. At the base are a chariot, an oblong shield, and two spears—49 B.C.

Statim nūntius Rōmam litterās portāvit in quibus 105 scrīptum est Pompēium contrā Mithradātem exercitumque impetūs fēcisse et hōs superāvisse; victum Mithradātem ipsum in Pontum fugisse.

Pompēius in Asiā quīnque annōs manēbat et multās natiōnēs vīcit. In eīs terrīs mīlle loca mūnīta, nongentās 110 urbēs atque in eō marī octingentās nāvēs praedōnum[1] maritimōrum[1] cēpit et ūndēquadrāgintā oppida condidit[6]. Syriā, Phoenīciā, Palaestīnā superātīs et omnibus rēbus Asiae cōnfectīs multōs rēgēs captīvōs sēcum dūcēns Rōmam rūrsus revēnit, nōn, ut[5] multī timuerant, armātus, 115 sed dīmissō exercitū. Mox tertium triumphum spatium duōrum diērum ēgit quī summa glōria eius erat, nam ex tribus orbis[7] partibus triumphāvit, prīmum ex Āfricā, deinde[8] ex Eurōpā, tertium ex Asiā.

---

[1] sea robbers = pirates.    [5] as.    [6] founded.    [7] world.    [8] next.

120 Pompēius nunc in grātiā magnā erat apud Rōmānōs, nam victōriīs suīs grātus populō erat et ab multīs laudātus est. Hanc grātiam continēre cupiēbat et hāc maiōrem[9] potestātem obtinēre, nam nōn satis glōriae et auctōritātis habēbat Pompēius.

125 Hīs temporibus senātus illam auctōritātem potestā-temque quam superiōribus temporibus habuerat nōn iam ostendēbat. Nunc nōn senātus, sed dux quī exercitum habuit et in grātiā magnā apud hominēs erat rem pūblicam rēxit. Prīmus in cīvitāte Pompēius esse cupiēbat, nam 130 nunc satis potestātis et auctōritātis nōn habuit; sed ūnum ē prīncipibus nōmine Iūlium Caesarem quī quoque in summam grātiam populī venīre et cīvitātem regere cupiē-bat magnopere timuit. Eī ducēs multōs annōs dē potestāte cīvitātis inter sē contendēbant. Utrum eōrum putātis 135 vīcisse? Mox audiētis nam mox fābulam expōnēmus.

---

[9] greater.



*Pompey the Great—* Here Pompey is represent- ed on this coin as Nep- tune. Note the trident and dolphin—38 B.C.

*b.*

rapiō, -ere,
satis, inde
auctŏritās,
spatium, s
mūniō, -īre
-gintā

-gentī, ae,

*c.*

(1)
need no
*taining*
(2)

*put out;*
parts a
(3)
(4)

of this
*sion, at*

intensiv
*eagerly*
where)
(Conte
omittec
(5
to the
possun

Do you know that the prefix **per-** is disguised in *pilgrim?* Originally a *pilgrim* was a **peregrīnus,** a foreigner who journeyed through the land (**per** + **agrum**), foreign land, outside Rome.

## SENTENCE PATTERNS

A. Translate into English:

1. Cicerō cōnsul factus Catilīnae conjūrātiōnem praesidiīs, vigiliīs, cūstōdiīs oppressūrus erat.
2. Ōrātor dīxit Catilīnam quemque nostrum ad caedem dēmōnstrāvisse.
3. Sēnsistīne urbem praesidiīs mūnītam futūram esse tūtam?
4. Ō deī immortālēs! In quā urbe vīvimus? Quam rem pūblicam habēmus?
5. Nōnne Cicerō Catilīnam priōre nocte domum socī intrāvisse scīvit?
6. Habēmus senātūs cōnsultum in Catilīnam ācre et grave.
7. Ōrātiōnēs bene habēre erat ars quam Cicerō ex puerō habēbat.
8. Catilīna bellum gerere in animō habēns ūnā cum virīs pessimīs in patriam prōcessit.
9. Sociī ējus comprehēnsī paucīs post diēbus sine jūdiciō interfectī sunt.
10. Cicerō rem pūblicam, bōna, fortūnās, conjugēs līberōsque, urbem pulcherrimam omnīnō ex īgne atque gladiō ēripuit.

B. Translate into Latin. Use participles where possible.

1. About to wage war against Rome, he went on the following day to the army which had been prepared.
2. His allies, after they had been overwhelmed, were killed in the city.
3. Did you think you would destroy the city fortified by my guards?
4. The senate and the Roman people, who had been rescued from fire and sword, called Cicero the father of his country.
5. Catiline, while he was fighting bravely, fell in battle.

### Rome's Greatest Orator

Dum Caesar et Pompējus inter sē dē summō imperiō contendunt, Rōmae vivēbat clārissimus ōrātor nōmine Mārcus Tullius Cicerō. Ille erat vir humilis generis quī per sē ad summōs magistrātūs ascenderat. Rōmam ā patre missus, studiīs et jūrī tōtō sē animō dedit. Ab optimīs magistrīs doctus est inter quōs erant Mūcius Scaevola et Archiās.

Paucīs post annīs in īnsulam Rhodum nāvigāvit ubi multa dē arte rhētōricā ā Molōne, Graecō magistrō nōtissimō, didicit (*learned*). Apud ōrātōrēs clārissimōs erat optimus. Postquam Rōmam revēnit, ōrātiōnēs clārās habēre incēpit. Sextum Ros-

*291*

cium dēfendit et Sullam dictātōrem offendit.  Melius igitur erat Cicerōnem Rōmā discēdere.

Post Sullae mortem Cicerō magistrātūs petere incipiēbat. Omnēs magistrātūs, alium post alium, sibi obtinuit.  Quaestor, aedīlis, praetor, cōnsul creātus est.  Paulō post cōnsul creātus rem pūblicam ē māximō perīculō ēripuit.  Lūcius Sergius Catilīna, vir pessimus ōrdinis senātōriī, cōnsul creārī cupīvit, sed nōn potuit.  Postquam Cicerō et Antōnius cōnsulēs factī sunt, Catilīna ūnā cum cēterīs sibi similibus, conjūrātiōnem fēcit et senātum occīdere, cōnsulēs interficere, urbem incendere, dīvitiās rapere cōnstituit.  Cicerō, dē perīculīs ab amīcīs monitus, omnīnō quattuor ōrātiōnēs in Catilīnam habuit.

Catilīna, ubi post ōrātiōnem prīmam Cicerōnis in senātū intellēxit omnia cōnsilia sua cōgnita esse, Rōmā ad exercitum quem parāverat fūgit.  Aliī sociī ējus quī in urbe mānserant captī sunt et paucīs post diēbus sine jūdiciō interfectī sunt.  Catilīna ipse fortissimē pūgnāns in proeliō occīsus est.

Post mortem Catilīnae Cicerō multōs honōrēs accēpit.  Posteā inimīcī ējus sub duce Clodiō, pessimō virō, ex urbe eum expulērunt quod cīvēs Rōmānōs sine jūdiciō interficī jūsserat.  Per labōrēs autem multōrum amīcōrum Cicerō Rōmam revocātus est.

Cicerō nōn jam negōtiīs pūblicīs sē dedit, sed trēs annōs multōs librōs dē rēbus philosophīcīs et rhētorīcīs scrīpsit.  Post mortem Caesaris multās ōrātiōnēs ācerrimās contrā Mārcum Antōnium scrīpsit.  Posteā ubi Antōnius, Octāvius, Lepidus secundum triumvirātum fēcērunt, Antōnius Cicerōnem prōscrīpsit (*listed for death*).  Hic fugiēns ā Antōnī mīlitibus captus et occīsus est. Caput et manūs māximī ōrātōris et scrīptōris Rōmānī in Rōstrīs, ubi Cicerō ōrātiōnēs clārissimās habuerat, positae sunt.

## *Comprehensive Review:  Units* XLVI–L

A. Write the ablative singular, the gender, and meanings of these nouns.  Indicate the declension to which each belongs.

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| rēs | fidēs | ōrātor | conjūnx | juventūs | cōnsultum |
| ars | diēs | aciēs | tabula | invidia | cūstōdia |
| spēs | legiō | cohors | ōrātiō | saeculum | conjūrātiō |

B. Write the Latin:

| | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| when | above | former | several | following | in all | certain one |
| ever | again | learned | immortal | so great | the others | on account of |
| how | thence | almost | perpetual | each one | how great | of what kind |

Painting by Maccari
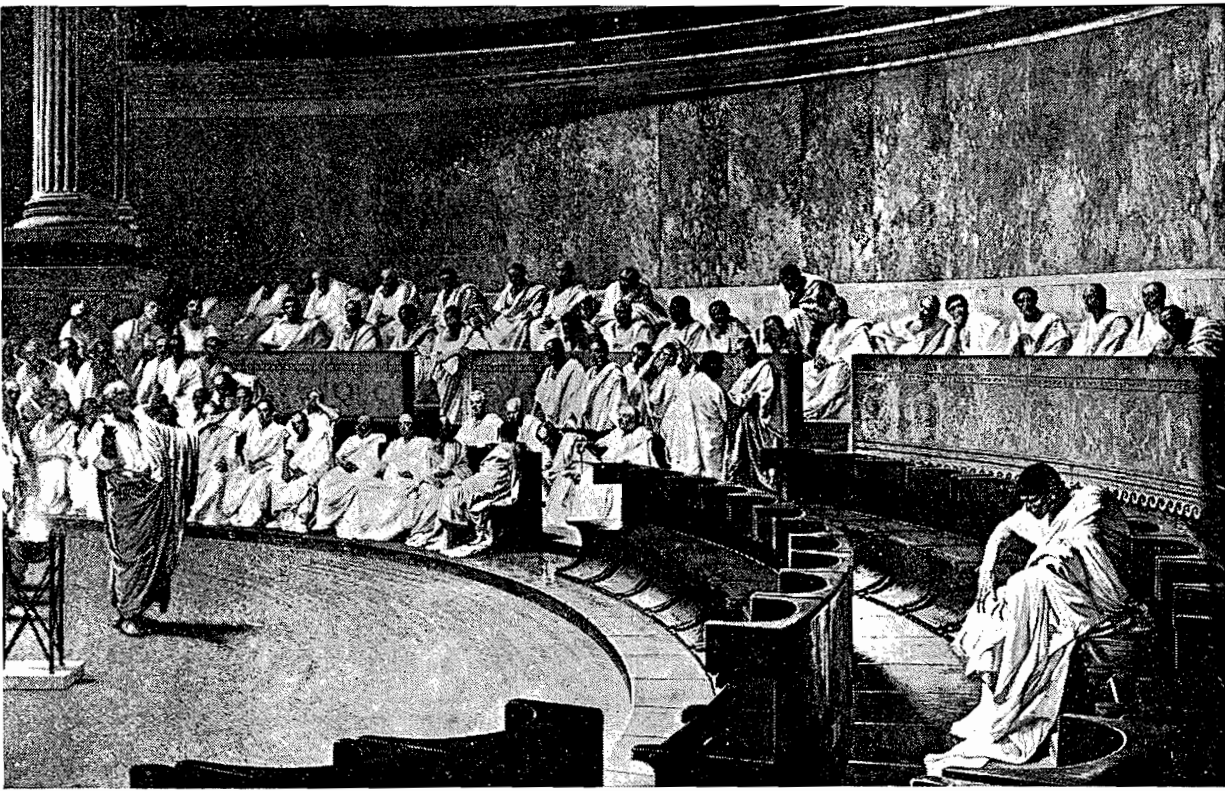
**Catiline scorned by his fellow senators**

"

*Supplementary Story*

### HOW AN ORATOR FACED A REBEL

Mārcus Tullius Cicerō erat omnium ōrātōrum Rōmānōrum clārissimus. Cīvis maximī ōrdinis nōn erat; pater ejus enim eques[1] erat. Puer tamen Rōmam missus ā magistrīs optimīs doctus est. Quod nūlla[2] rēs ad maximōs in rē pūblicā Rōmānā
5 honōrēs[3] magis dūcere poterat quam ars dīcendī,[4] Cicerō tōtō animō huic studiō sē dedit. Nōn sōlum omnēs ōrātōrēs ēgregiōs maximā cūrā audīvit, sed etiam in arte dīcendī sē dīligentissimē exercuit. Mox nūllus ōrātor eī pār invenīrī potuit.

Cicerō, postquam omnēs honōrēs minōrēs obtinuit, cōnsul
10 creātus[5] est. Dum ille cōnsul rem pūblicam gerit, maximum erat perīculum cīvitātis Rōmānae. Nam Catilīna,[6] homō pessimus et potestātis cupidissimus, imperium Rōmae occupāre in animō habuit. Catilīna multōs sociōs ejusdem mentis perfidae[7] sibi jūnxerat et bellum contrā patriam facere parāverat. Cōpia
15 satis magna armōrum ab eō in castrīs in Italiā occultīs abdita erat. In eadem castra ducēs alacerrimī praemissī erant, quī

LAR

mortem cōnsulis exspectābant. Nam cōnsilium Catilīnae erat cōnsulem interficere.

Haec omnia Cicerō paucīs diēbus cognōvit, officium enim cōnsulis erat cīvitātem contrā omnia perīcula et pūblica et 20 prīvāta[8] dēfendere. Itaque Cicerō partēs plūrimās urbis praesidiīs validīs cōnfirmāvit. In senātū quoque ōrātiōnem in Catilīnam habuit[9], quā in ōrātiōne cōnsilia Catilīnae atque perīculum cīvium ēnūntiāvit. Hanc ōrātiōnem, quae Prīma Ōrātiō in Catilīnam hodiē appellātur, vōs ipsī legētis, sī per annōs linguae 25 Latīnae operam dabitis.[10]

Omnēs senātōrēs,[11] ubi ōrātiōnem cōnsulis fortis audīverant, ē locō ubi Catilīna sedēbat discessērunt. Ille autem, simul atque mentēs oculōsque omnium esse sibi inimīcōs perspexit, verbīs Cicerōnis respondēre nōn potuit. Ex urbe in bellum celerrimē 30 contendit, ubi tandem exercitibus cīvitātis victus est atque vītam āmīsit. Ita Cicerō ōrātor rem pūblicam servāvit.

[NOTES] 1. *eques*, of equestrian rank (the second highest rank of citizens). 2. *nūllus, -a, -um*, no. 3. *honor, -ōris (m.)*, office. 4. *ars (artis) dīcendī*, skill in speaking. 5. *creō, -āre*, elect. 6. *Catilīna, -ae (m.)*, Catiline. 7. *perfidus, -a, -um*, treacherous. 8. *prīvātus, -a, -um*, private. 9. *ōrātiōnem habuit*, delivered a speech. 10. *operam dabitis*, you will give your attention. 11. *senātor, -ōris (m.)*, senator.

**"**

Can you answer these questions on the story?

1. In what way did Cicero train himself to be an orator? 2. Why did he wish to be one? 3. What danger did the state face when Cicero was consul? 4. What was it his duty to do? 5. What did he do first? 6. What did he do next? 7. What was the effect of his speech? 8. What finally happened to Catiline? 9. Why was Cicero's act a noble one?

1.                          CICERŌ

Apud virōs maximōs quī nunc Rōmae vīvēbant Mārcus
Tullius Cicerō erat, vir humilis generis, quī ad summōs
honōrēs per sē ascenderat. Ubi ē puerīs excessit Rōmam
ā patre missus lēgis nōn bellī studium sūmpsit, nam homō
mīlitāris nōn erat et cupidissimus pācis semper erat. 5
Quod nūllā rē magis ad summōs in rē pūblicā honōrēs viam
mūnīrī posse intellegēbat quam arte[1] dīcendī[1], tōtō animō
eius studium sūmpsit et ab optimīs magistrīs doctus
est. Quod erat in Cicerōne magna facultās, et ille multum
efficiēbat, magistrōrum et cēterōrum puerōrum admīrā- 10
tiōnem habuit.

Paucīs post annīs Athēnās studiōrum grātiā[2] petiit, ubi
Antiochum philosophum nōtum magnō cum studiō
audīvit. Inde ad īnsulam Rhodum prōcessit ubi Molōnī,
Graecō magistrō tum notissimō sē dedit. Posteā prīmum 15
inter ōrātōrēs locum facile obtinuit. Nūllīus vērō ōrātiōnēs
aut grātiōrēs aut nōtiōrēs fuērunt.

Paulō post Cicerō magistrātūs petere incipiēbat et
magistrātum alium post alium sibi obtinuit; prīmō quaes-
tor, alterum aedīlis, tertium praetor, posteā cōnsul fuit. 20

Cōnsul factus cīvitātem ā maximō perīculō ēripuit.
L. Sergius Catilīna, pessimus vir senātōriī ōrdinis, propter
inopiam pecūniae necessāriae potestātisque senātum
necāre, cōnsulēs interficere, urbem incendere, pecūniam
rapere studiō optimō, iūdiciō minus firmō in animō 25
habēbat. Magnae cōpiae in castrīs in Etrūriā coāctae

---

[1] art of oratory.          [2] for the sake of.

LWR
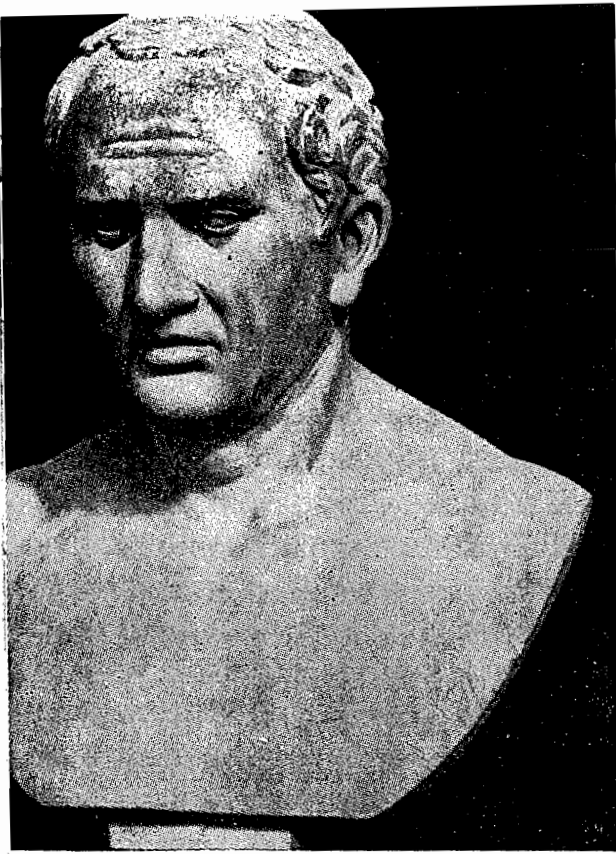
*Cicero*

erant. Multōs sociōs quoque in urbe habuit quī proelium committere in
30 animō habēbant, sed cōnsilia pessimē gesta sunt. Ubi Cicerō et cōnsiliō suō et auxiliō amīcōrum dē cōnsiliīs occultīs Catilīnae
35 cognōvit, senātōribus convocātīs, ōrātiōnem in senātū habuit. Omnīnō quattuor ōrātiōnēs in Catilīnam habuit. In prīmā
40 ōrātiōne dīcit:

"Nihilne[3] tē, Catilīna, nocturnum[4] praesidium Palātī mōvit? Nihilne[3] tē urbis vigiliae, nihil timor
45 populī, nihil concursus[5] bonōrum omnium, nihil hōrum senātōrum ōra[6] vultūsque[6] mōvērunt?

"O tempora! O mōrēs[7]! Senātus haec intellegit, cōnsul videt; hic tamen vīvit. Vīvit? Etiam in senātum venit.
50 "Habēmus senātūs cōnsultum[8] in tē, Catilīna, ācre et grave. Mutā[9] iam tuam mentem. Tenēris undique. Omnia cōnsilia tua sunt clāriōra[10] nōbīs lūce. Tē urbem Praeneste occupātūrum esse nocturnō[4] impetū putāvistī. Sensistīne illam meīs praesidiīs ac vigiliīs mūnītam
55 esse? Iam intellegēs mē ad salūtem multō ācrius quam tē ad perniciem[11] reī pūblicae vigilāre[12]. Dīcō tē priōre nocte vēnisse in M. Laecae domum. Dīcō convēnisse ad eundem locum plūrimōs et pessimōs virōs, sociōs tuōs. Videō enim

---

[3] not at all.   [4] nightly.   [5] gathering.   [6] expression on the faces.   [7] customs.
[8] decree.   [9] change.   [10] clearer.   [11] destruction.   [12] watch.

628

*Rom*

esse hī
mortāl
habēm
Ex h
esse. I
exercit
gerere
serant,
sunt.
Cice
exīstim
quartā
sulem
vītam
Habēti
exīstim
ōrdinēs

---

[10] clear

socios quo-
habuit quī
ımittere in
nt, sed cōn-
gesta sunt.
cōnsiliō suō
nicōrum dē
:īs Catilīnae
ɔnātōribus
rātiōnem in
t. Omnīnō
iōnēs in Ca-
t. In prīmā
::
ē, Catilīna,
p' esidium
↲ ınilne[3] tē
, nihil timor
concursus[5]
.[6] vultūsque[6]

legit, cōnsul
:um venit.
līna, ācre et
:is undique.
. Tē urbem
tū putāvistī.
ıs mūnītam
rius quam tē
priōre nocte
e ad eundem
. Videō enim
ıces.   [7] customs.
        [12] watch.
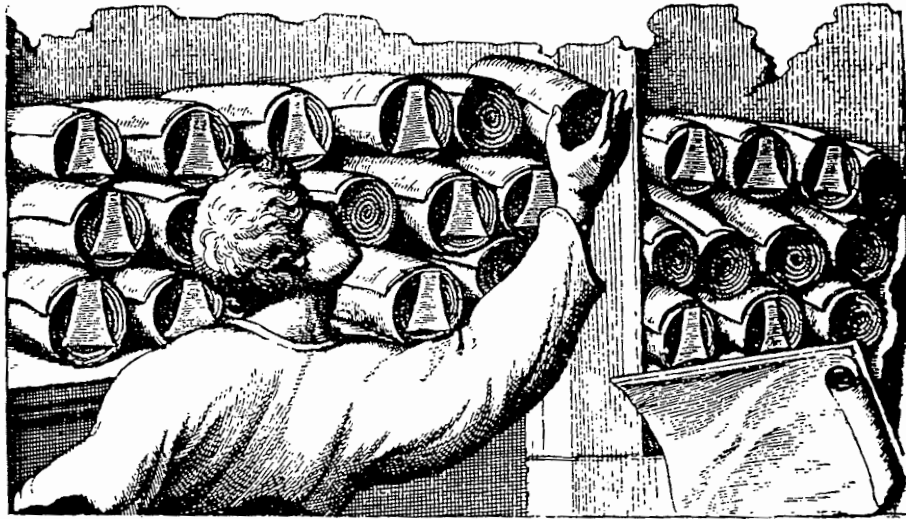


**Roman Books.** *In the time of the Romans books were scrolls, which were put away as you see them in this picture.*

esse hīc in senātū quōsdam[13] quī tēcum fuērunt. O deī im-
mortālēs! in quā urbe vīvimus? quam rem pūblicam [60]
habēmus?"

Ex hīs verbīs Catilīna nōverat cōnsilia sua clāriōra[10] lūce
esse. Post spatium paucārum hōrārum Rōmā fūgit et ad
exercitum, quem parāverat, prōcessit in patriam bellum
gerere in animō habēns. Sed sociī eius, quī in urbe mān-[65]
serant, prehēnsī et paucīs post diēbus sine iūdiciō necātī
sunt.

Cicerō enim sociōs Catilīnae statim interficī dēbēre
exīstimābat, sed Caesar mortis poenam nōn cupiēbat. In
quartā ōrātiōne in Catilīnam Cicerō dīcit: "Habētis cōn-[70]
sulem ex plūrimīs perīculīs atque ex mediā morte, nōn ad
vītam suam, sed ad salūtem vestram cōnservātum.
Habētis ducem fidēlem quī dē vōbīs sōlīs, numquam dē sē
exīstimat, quae nōn semper facultās datur. Habētis omnēs
ōrdinēs, omnēs hominēs, ūniversum populum Rōmānum—[75]

---

[10] clearer.             [13] certain ones.

629

id quod in cīvīlī causā hodiē prīmum vidēmus—ūnum
atque idem sentientem." Exīstimāvērunt Catilīnam in-
terficī dēbēre.

His rēbus cognitīs, Catilīna sēnsit sē cum sociīs reliquīs
80 ad urbem iam appropinquāre nōn posse itaque in Galliam
fugere temptābat, sed nūlla facultās fugae data est.
Statim mediō hieme Cicerō magistrātūs cum legiōnibus
bene armātīs et equitātū in aciem contrā Catilīnam
cōpiāsque eius mīsit et prīmō dextra aciēs hostium, tum
85 tōta facillimē victa est. Catilīna fortissimē pugnāns tamen
in proeliō, multīs vulneribus acceptīs, cecidit.

Cicerō in tertiā ōrātiōne in Catilīnam dīxit:

"Rem pūblicam, Quirītēs[14], vītamque omnium vestrum,
bona, fortūnās, uxōrēs līberōsque vestrōs, et hanc pulcher-
90 rimam urbem, hodiē deōrum immortālium summō amōre,
labōribus, cōnsiliīs, perīculīs meīs, ex ignī atque gladiō
ēripuī." Propter haec officia senātus populusque Rōmānus
Cicerōnem "Patrem Patriae" appellāvērunt.

Paucīs post annīs, etsī[15] optimē dē rē pūblicā semper
95 sēnserat, Cicerōnis hostēs tamen ex urbe eum pepulērunt
quod cīvēs Rōmānōs sine iūdiciō necāverat. Cicerō armīs
et praesidiīs salūtem suam dēfendere nōn potuit itaque hic
pedibus ante lūcem tribus annīs post Catilīnae mortem
ex urbe, quam ē perīculō ēripuerat, cum tribus servīs, quī
100 eī in fidē mānserant, discessit et in portum Brundisium
prōcessit. Inde ad Macedoniam nāvigāvit. Illīus domus
et vīllae incēnsae sunt. Sed illa vīs hostium nōn satis
firma erat; mox enim tōtus ferē populus Rōmānus Cicerō-
nem maximē dēsīderāre incēpit et aestāte prīmī annī post
105 fugam maximō omnium ōrdinum studiō Cicerō in patriam
revocātus est. Nihil per tōtam vītam Cicerōnis erat
grātius quam iter quō in patriam revēnit. Cum magnīs

---

[14] fellow citizens.        [15] etsī ... sēnserat: *although he had always had the good
of the state at heart* (what literally?).

clamōribus populus Rōmānus eum ab ōrā maritimā Rōmam dūxit. Domus eius pūblicā pecūniā iterum aedi-
ficāta est.　　　　　　　　　　　　　　　　　　110

Eō tempore Caesar et Pompēius dē auctōritāte inter sē contendēbant. Uterque, ut[16] suprā dēmōnstrātum est, maior potentiorque quam alter et superior quam cēterī in rē pūblicā esse cupiēbat. Cicerō autem in grātiam Pompēium cum Caesare redūcere fidēliter et fortiter[115] temptābat, sed nihil effēcit, nam neuter eōrum ā sententiā suā discēdere voluit. Quod neutrum ad pācem movēre poterat, diūtissimē dubitābat et tum subitō ad Pompēium sē iūnxit. Sed omnīnō victō Pompēiō, ā Caesare victōre veniam[17] recēpit. Plūrēs annōs prīvātus vīvēbat plūraque[120] brevī tempore cadente rē pūblicā scrīpsit quam multīs annīs rē pūblicā firmā scrīpserat. Caesare item interfectō, ad Octāviānum, fīlium fīliae Caesaris sorōris, sē iūnxit et in Antōnium pugnāvit, dē quibus duōbus virīs in proximā fābulā legētis.　　　　　　　　　　　125

Sed Antōnius inceptā cum Octāviānō societāte[18], Cicerō-nem iam diū sibi inimīcum prōscrīpsit[19]. Hāc rē cognitā, Cicerō in vīllam quae ā marī nōn longē aberat, magnā celeritāte fūgit indeque nāvem ascendit, sed ex ōrā paulum nāvigāvit et mox in terram rūrsus expositus in aliam vīl-[130]lam prōcessit et exspectābat, nam iam Cicerō vītam plūs quam mortem timēbat. Mox Antōnī mīlitēs vēnērunt. Cicerō intrā[20] quīntum ab Pompēī morte annum inter-fectus est. Eius caput et duae manūs quārum dextra Philippicās[21], ōrātiōnēs in Antōnium, scrīpserat, ad An-[135]tōnium portātae sunt quī caput et dextram manum in Rōstrīs, ubi Cicerō ōrātiōnēs habuerat, posuit.

Hodiē ōrātiōnēs nōtissimās Cicerōnis etiam legimus.

---

[16] as.　　　　[17] pardon.　　　　[18] alliance.　　　　[19] listed publicly for death.
[20] within.　　　　[21] so called because they imitated those of Demosthenes against King Philip.

OBJECTIVES

…rn about the
…l friendship
…en Cicero and

…rn    declen-
…nd use of
…al and pronomi-
…ectives

# CICERŌ ET TĪRŌ

Cicerō et Tīrō fuērunt Rōmānī clārī, alter maximus[1] ōrātor tōtīus Ītaliae, alter servus fīdus[2]. Quod Tīrō dīligentiā sapientiāque[3] Cicerōnī magnum auxilium dabat, Cicerō eum tōtō corde amābat et posteā līberāvit. Neutrī grātum erat sine alterō ūllum iter facere.

5    Cicerō cum Tīrōne in Graeciā fuerat. Ubi ille in Ītaliam revertit, Tīrō sōlus in Graeciā relīctus est quod aeger[4] fuit. Cicerō ad eum trēs litterās in itinere ūnō diē[5] scrīpsit. Inter alia haec ipsa scrīpsit:

"Variē litterīs tuīs affectus sum, prīmā parte territus, alterā cōnfirmātus. Hōc tempore tē[6] neque marī neque itinerī committere dēbēs. Medicus tuus

10  bonus est, ut[7] scrībis et ego audiō; sed eum nōn probō; nam iūs[8] nōn dēbet stomachō aegrō darī. Sed tamen et ad illum et ad Lysōnem[9] scrīpsī. Lysōnis nostrī neglegentiam nōn probō, quī, litterīs ā mē acceptīs, ipse nūllās remīsit; respondēre dēbet. Sed Lysō Graecus est et omnium Graecōrum magna est neglegentia. In nūllā rē[10] properāre dēbēs.

15  "Curium[11] iussī omnem pecūniam tibi dare quam cupis. Sī medicō pecūniam dabis, dīligentia eius augēbitur. Magna sunt tua in mē officia[12]; omnia superāveris, sī, ut spērō, salūtem tuam cōnfirmātam vīderō. Ante, dum magnā dīligentiā mihi auxilium dās[13], nōn salūtem tuam cōnfirmāre potuistī; nunc tē nihil impedit. Omnia dēpōne; salūs sōla in animō tuō esse dēbet."

20    Nōnne Cicerō dominus aequus amīcusque erat? Aliī dominī erant bonī, aliī malī. Omnī aetāte[14] et in omnibus terrīs bonī et malī hominēs fuērunt et sunt et fortasse semper erunt.

## Questions

1. What was Tiro's relationship to Cicero?
2. Why was Cicero so fond of Tiro?
3. To whom did Cicero write about Tiro?
4. Why was Tiro left behind in Greece?
5. What things did Cicero recommend for Tiro's recovery?
6. What prejudices does the writer show toward Greeks?
7. What does the letter say about the cost of medical care?

# QUĪNTUS CICERŌ ET POMPŌNIA

**P**ompōnius Atticus erat firmus amīcus M. Cicerōnis. Pompōnia, soror Atticī, erat uxor Quīntī, frātris M. Cicerōnis. Sed inter Pompōniam Quīntumque nōn semper concordia erat. Ūna gravis causa inter aliās erat haec, quod apud[1] Quīntum auctōritās Stātī[2] valēbat; quem Pompōnia domō[3]
5 expellere nūllō modō potuit; aliēnae auctōritātī cēdere nōn cupīvit. Neuter alterī cēdere potuit; neuter alterum movēre potuit. Cicerō Pompōniam accūsāvit; Atticus, Quīntum. Cicerō ad Atticum hōc modō scrīpsit:

"Frātrem meum vīdī. Tōtus sermō[4] inter nōs dē tē et sorōre tuā fuit. Verba Quīntī nōn inimīca fuērunt. Tum ad Pompōniam contendimus. Quīntus eī
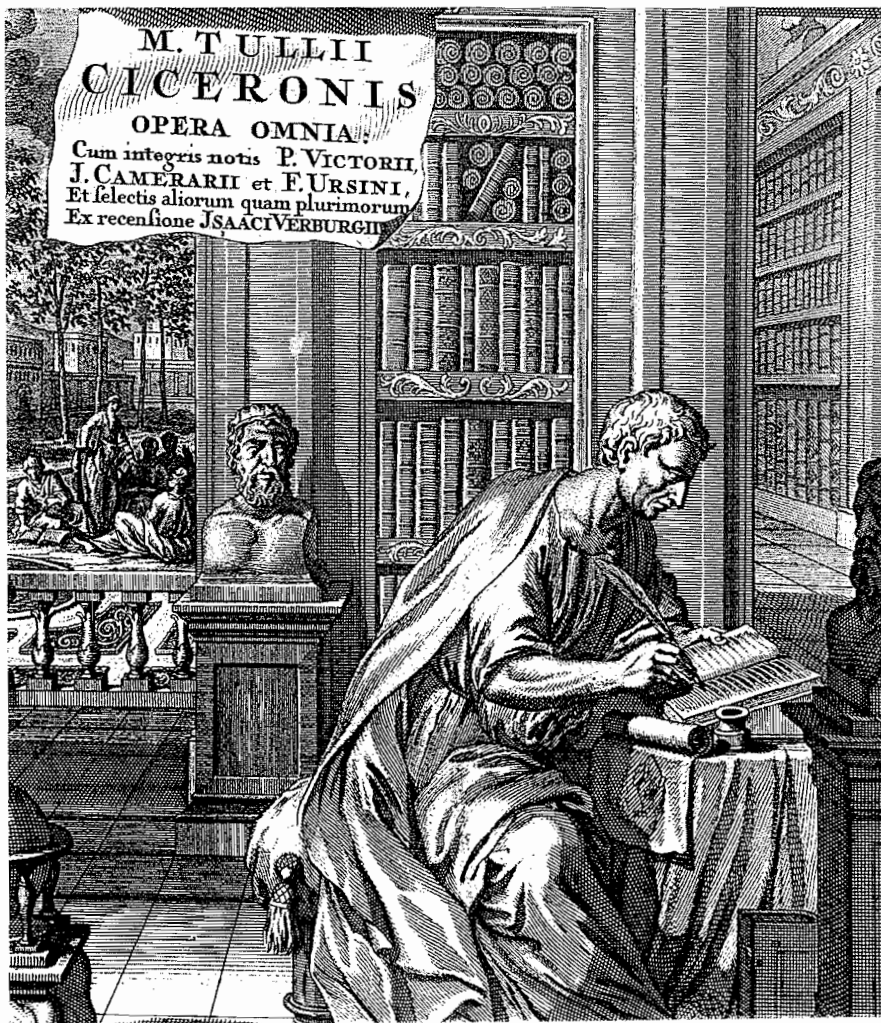
M. TULLII
CICERONIS
OPERA OMNIA:
Cum integris notis P. VICTORII,
J. CAMERARII et F. URSINI,
Et selectis aliorum quam plurimorum
Ex recensione J. SAACI VERBURGII

n/CORBIS

LFA

amīcā vōce dīxit: 'Pompōnia, tū rogā mulierēs[5] ad cēnam, ego puerōs 10
rogātūrus sum.' [Hī puerī erant fīliī Cicerōnis et frātris eius.] Sed illa,
audientibus nōbīs, 'Ego ipsa sum,' respondit, 'in hōc locō hospita[6].' Hoc
dīxit quod īdem Stātius cēnam parārī iusserat. Tum Quīntus, 'Audīsne?'
inquit[7] mihi, 'haec semper sustinēre cōgor.' Dīcēs: 'Haec vōx nihil est.' Sed
magnum est;[8] vōce dūrā atque animō aliēnō eius oppressus et commōtus 15
sum. Ad cēnam illa nōn adfuit; Quīntus tamen ad eam sedentem sōlam
cibum mīsit; illa remīsit. Grave vulnus Quīntus accēpit neque ipse ūllam
iniūriam fēcit. Cupiēns eam plācāre nōn potuit. Gravibus cūrīs opprimor.
Quid factūrī sumus? Contendere dēbēmus inter sorōrem tuam et frātrem
meum pācem efficere."                                                          20

## Questions

1. Who was Atticus' brother-in-law?
2. Of whom was Pomponia jealous? Why?
3. What action did she try to take against him?
4. Who blamed whom?
5. Whose boys was Quintus going to call to dinner?
6. What did Pomponia say to protest?
7. What further offense, according to Cicero, did Pomponia show toward
   her husband?
8. What solution does Marcus Cicero propose to Pomponius Atticus?
9. What relationship do Pomponius Atticus and Pomponia have to one
   another?

# VOCABULARY

## Noun

vōx, vō´cis f. *voice, remark*                    [vocō]

## Adjectives

aliē´nus, -a, -um *another's, unfavorable*         [alius]
gra´vis, -e *heavy, severe*                        (gravitation, gravity)

## Verbs

conten´dō, conten´dere, conten´dī,                [tendō]
   contentū´rus *struggle, hasten*
op´primō, oppri´mere, oppres´sī,                  [premō]
   oppres´sus *overcome, surprise*

# IV. Caesar and Empire

the present tense

:tion 6, *e*, page
ch, illustrating
ogressive, and

llowing verbs:
uation for
stem and per-
parts of the
, (3), (4), (5),

e third plural

s.
es.
ces.

e.

e street.



**Suovetaurilia.** *A sacrifice consisting of a boar (sūs), a ram (ovis) and a bull (taurus)—probably late in 1st century A.D.*

## CHAPTER XIV

I.                    CAESAR IN GALLIĀ

Vibia Tertiaque ad Sullam in Galliam litterās scrībunt, nam Sulla nōn iam est in vīllā cum fīliābus. Nunc ex Ītaliā ad Galliam properat; Sulla enim lēgātus est cōpiārum Rōmānārum in Galliā. In Galliā Rōma terram habet. Rōmānī terram prōvinciam appellant. Prō- 5 vincia prope Ītaliam est. Prōvinciae prōcōnsul[1] est Iūlius Caesar, sed nunc in Ītaliā est. Caesar cōpiās Rōmānās firmās in prōvinciā habet.

In Galliā multī populī, Belgae, Celtae, Aquītānī habitant, sed Rōmānī cūnctōs populōs Gallōs appellant 10 et terram Galliam. Lingua Belgārum nōn est lingua Celtārum et Aquītānōrum neque lingua Celtārum um- quam est lingua Aquītānōrum et Belgārum. Multī Celtae et Aquītānī in prōvinciā habitant, sed multī in prōvinciā nōn habitant. Belgae quoque nōn habitant in prōvinciā. 15

[1] governor.

LWR
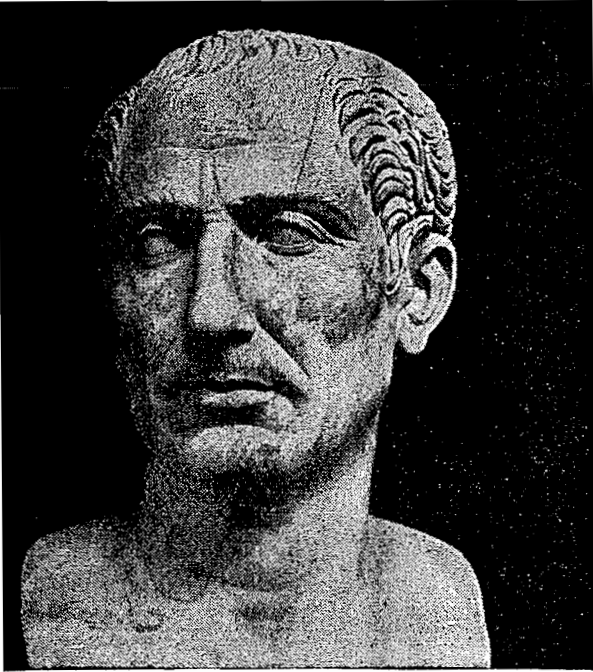
***Julius Caesar.*** *Power to think quickly and power to act decisively are revealed in this strong face.*

Terra Gallōrum est pulchra nōtaque. Īnsula nōn est sed magna terra Eurōpae. Populī Gallicī patriam
20 amant. Gallī ēgregiī tunicās sed nōn togās albās habent, nam toga Rōmāna est. Nōn multōs servōs sed clientēlās[2] habent. Clientēlae,[2] nōn
25 servī, armīs[3] rūsticīs in agrīs dominōrum Gallicōrum labōrant. Multī dominī Gallicī sunt agricolae bonī et in casīs magnīs habitant. Magnōs
30 agrōs et multōs equōs habent.

Gallī nōn sunt barbarī, sed cultum[4] Rōmānōrum nōn habent.

In Galliā Celticā Helvētiī habitant. In Ītaliā Caesar audit, "Helvētiī agrōs nōn iam cūrant, sed populum cūnctum ad terram novam per prōvinciam dūcunt."
35 Caesar igitur cōpiās ex prōvinciā et novās cōpiās ex Ītaliā in Helvētiōs mittit. In Galliam per viam nōn aequam properat et Helvētiōs spectat. Ubi Helvētiī prope prōvinciam iam sunt, Caesar cōpiās Rōmānās firmās mittit et Helvētiōs vincit, nam cōpiās bonās nōn
40 habent. Helvētiī igitur antīquam terram in Galliā Celticā nunc habitant. Helvētiī sunt miserī; Caesarī grātiam nōn habent. Magnō[6] cum[6] studiō[6] Caesarī[5] litterās dē victōriā Rōmānā scrībit et ad populum Rōmānum mittit.
45 Prope Galliam habitant Germānī et in Galliam saepe veniunt. Germānī sunt barbarī; cultum[4] etiam Gallōrum nōn habent. In silvīs habitant. Deī Germānī, nōn

---

[2] clients.    [3] tools.    [4] culture.    [5] Dat. Singular    [6] with great eagerness.
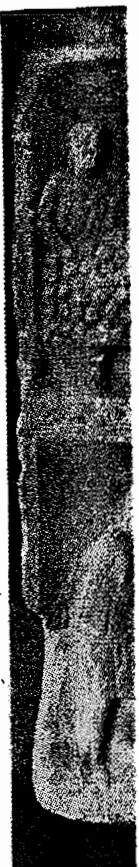
134
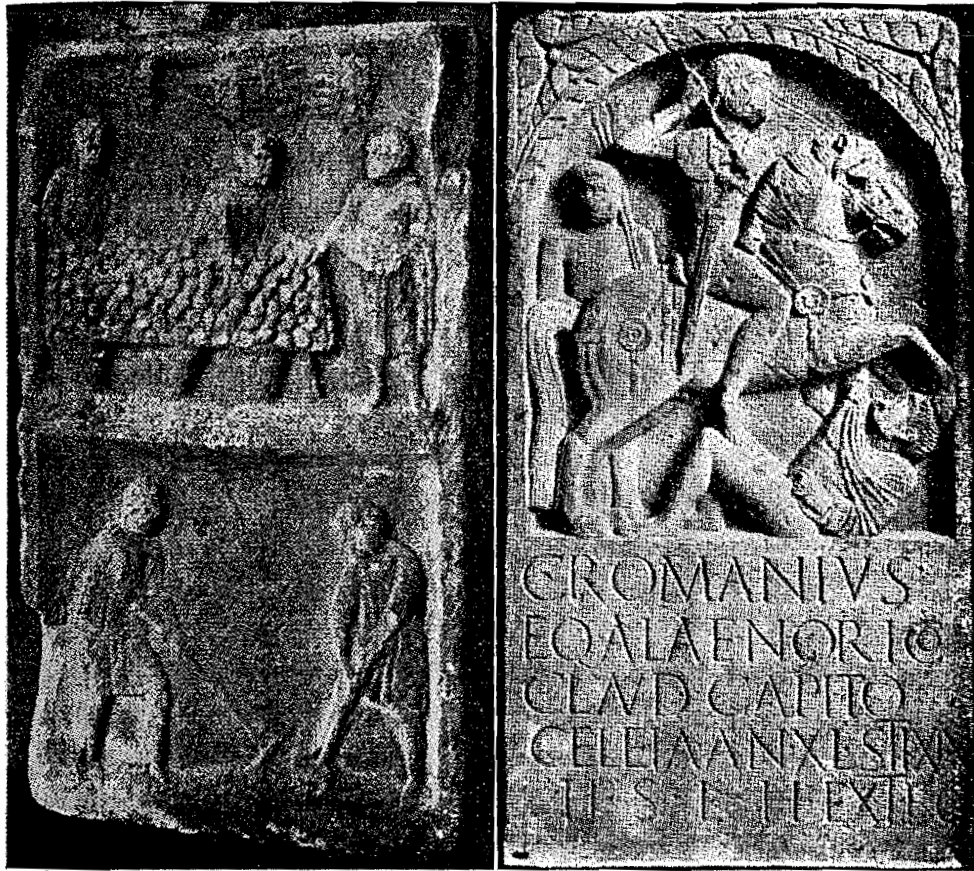
**Selling Pears.** (Left) Upper panel. **Hoeing and Digging.** Lower panel.
**A Roman Cavalryman.** (Right) From a funeral stone from England.

Rōmānī, Germānōs cūrant; Vulcānus et Lūna et terra et
cūncta nātūra deī deaeque Germānōrum sunt. Germānī
libenter pugnant; Rōmānī igitur Germānōs nōn amant. 50
Ubi Germānī in Galliam propinquam veniunt atque cum
Gallīs pugnant, Caesar Rōmānōs in Germānōs dūcit
atque Germānōs ex Galliā in Germāniam mittit.

Ubi Caesar igitur cum Germānīs et Gallīs pugnat,
cūnctam Galliam vincit et multōs captīvōs in Ítaliam 55
dūcit. Cōpiae Gallicae captīvī sunt; multī agricolae
quoque et puellae et puerī. Etiam fīliī fīliaeque cōpiārum
Gallicārum sunt captīvī. Rōmānī puellās et puerōs ter-
rent. Vīta captīvōrum misera est, sed fortūna Rōmānō-
rum bona est. 60

135

Dē pugnīs Rōmānīs Sulla litterās scrībit. Ubi Vibia et Tertia dē pugnīs audiunt, ad casam propinquam dominae bonae Helenae properant. "Caesar triumphum mīrum dūcere dēbet! Caesar triumphum mīrum dūcere dēbet!"
65 clāmant. "Sulla et Caesar cum multīs captīvīs venīre dēbent. Captīvōs nōn saepe vidēmus."

"Sed misera sum ubi captīvōs videō," clāmat Helena. "Ubi Sullam vidētis, nōn miserae esse dēbētis. Num captīvōs libenter spectātis?"

70 "Nōn misera sum ubi Sulla et Caesar vincunt," respondet Vibia. "Suntne triumphī vōbīs[7] grātī?"

"Quid est triumphus?" Helena rogat. "Cūr triumphum laudās?"

"In triumphō Caesar ē Galliā in Ītaliam et per Sacram
75 Viam Rōmae in Capitōlium captīvōs miserōs dūcit. Cōpiae Rōmānae ē Galliā in Ītaliam veniunt et in triumphō sunt. Caesar palmam[8] habet et cōpiīs pecūniam dat. Populus clāmat, 'Iō[9] triumphe! Victor es! Victor es!' Caesar deīs sacrificia iam dat. Magnī lūdī quoque
80 sunt, nam Rōmānī libenter lūdunt."

Fābulam dē triumphīs Rōmānīs Vibia Tertiaque amicīs Helenae et filiābus et servīs saepe nārrant.

---

[7] to you.     [8] palm branch; originally, the palm of the hand.     [9] oh!

**2.**                 **LIVING WITH THE ROMANS**

*a.* What modern countries are included in the territories of the peoples mentioned in the Latin story? Look these up on a map of Europe.

*b.* Describe briefly the Germans as they are portrayed in the Latin.

*c.* What was the state of development of the Gauls as compared to the Germans and to the civilization which Caesar represented?

---

**3.**
lit'ter a, littera

scrī'bō, scrībe
    scrīptus,
ter'ra, terrae,

cūnc'tus, cūnc
per (prep. wit
mit'tō, mittere
ve'ni ō, venīre

**4.**

From the
drop the ca
you see tha
What gend
sion does h

**5.**          L
*a.* Somet
without an
become a t
*someone in*
*one court to*
*b.* From
you will sc
English we
*avenue* are
*adventure* i:
part **ventū**
*Intermitten*
**mitt** of **mi**
the fourth
stands at t

## SENTENCE PATTERNS

A. Translate into English. Explain the syntax of the Latin infinitives.

1. Nōnne hostēs summam scientiam reī mīlitāris habuisse exīstimant?
2. Interim Caesar sē exercitum suum flūmen trādūctūrum esse dīxit.
3. Quālem virum Mārcum Crassum fuisse dīcunt?
4. Intellēxēruntne Caesarem eōs nōn lūdere?
5. Intereā senātus oppida Caesarī sine pūgnā sē dedisse audīvit.
6. Quandō mīlitēs sē Rōmam ventūrōs esse nūntiāvērunt?
7. Prīmō saeculō ante Chrīstum hominēs clārōs vīxisse cōgnōvimus.
8. Caesar complūrēs cohortēs rūrsus laudāvit quod hās quam fortissimē semper pūgnāre intellēxit.
9. Quam ob rem sē hostibus veniam datūrum esse negāvērunt?
10. Interim ferē omnēs senātōrēs ex urbe fūgērunt ubi Caesarem legiōnēs trāns flūmen trādūxisse audīvērunt.

B. Translate into Latin. Explain the syntax of the Latin infinitives used.

1. Do you know that Caesar was killed in the first century before Christ?
2. Many thought that Caesar would not lead his army across the river.
3. In the meantime the general said that the senate had acted against the laws.
4. When did he find out that the senators had left Rome?
5. They did not know that several towns were being destroyed. ——

### The Man Who Came, Who Saw, and Who Conquered

Prīmō saeculō ante Chrīstum erant Rōmae multī prīncipēs māximī, inter quōs erat Gājus Jūlius Caesar, vir nōbilissimī generis. Ubi adulēscēns fuit, bellum cīvīle inter Marium et Sullam gerēbātur. Sulla, ubi ex puerīs (*boyhood*) Caesar excessit, cōnsul creātus est et eī inimīcissimus erat quod Caesar fīliam Cinnae, quī fuerat amīcus Mariō, in mātrimōnium dūxit.

Sulla dīxit sē Caesarem pūnitūrum esse. Posteā autem adulēscentī, quod Caesaris amīcī eam postulābant, veniam dare cōgēbātur. Ille autem hōs amīcōs dē Caesare monuit. Exīstimāvit Caesarem futūrum esse inimīcum nōbilibus et nūntiāvit multōs Mariōs esse in Caesare. Post Sullae mortem Caesar ad īnsulam Rhodum nāvigāre cōnstituit, nam in hāc īnsulā eō tempore clārissimum dīcendī (*of oratory*) magistrum esse audīverat. Hūc dum nāvigat, ā pīrātīs captus est mānsitque apud eōs prope quadrāgintā (*forty*) diēs. Interim sociī pecūniam compārāvērunt quam pīrātīs dēdidērunt.

OLH

Caesar pīrātīs dīxerat sē eōs captūrum atque interfectūrum esse. Pīrātae eum lūdere exīstimābant; sed Caesar ubi ex manibus pīrātārum evāsit (*escaped*), aliās nāvēs invēnit et pīrātās quoque quōs crucifīxit. Inde ad īnsulam Rhodum prōcessit. Postquam studium dīcendī cōnfectum est, Caesar Rōmam sē recēpit et tribūnus mīlitāris dēlectus est et posteā quaestor Hispāniae. Omnem magistrātum, alium post alium, sibi obtinuit; aedīlis, pontifex māximus, praetor, cōnsul creātus est.

Caesar scīvit nōbilēs sibi inimīcissimōs esse. Illō tempore Pompējus māximam potestātem, Crassus māximās dīvitiās habēbat. Caesar, Pompējus, Crassus amīcī factī sunt et sē triumvirōs appellāvērunt. Ob auxilium hōrum virōrum, Caesar cōnsul creātus est. Nihil in tōtā cīvitāte factum est quod ūllī ex tribus nōn grātum erat.

Caesar post cōnsulātum prōvinciam Galliam accēpit. In Galliā ferē decem annōs manēbat et hīs annīs omnem Galliam vīcit. Pompējus in urbe Rōmā mānserat ubi victōriās Caesaris māximās audīvit. Illō tempore Crassus ā Parthīs interfectus erat; et Jūlia, uxor Pompējī et fīlia Caesaris, ex hāc vītā excesserat. Tum Pompējus sōlus cōnsul ā senātū creātus est, quī Caesarem exercitum dīmittere et Rōmam statim venīre jūssit. Hic exercitum suum Rubicōnem trādūxit et contrā Pompējum et nōbilēs bellum gessit.

# *Unit* XLIX

## CONVERSATION

MAGISTER: Quandō Caesar dictātor in perpetuum creātus est?

ANNA: Caesarem dictātōrem in perpetuum creātum esse post bellum cīvīle putō. Deinde superbē rēgnāre incipiēbat.

MAGISTER: Cūr populus Rōmānus lībertātem āmittēbat?

CORNĒLIUS: Omnem potestātem auctōritātemque ā senātū rapuit, cupiēns superior cēterīs in rē pūblicā esse. Senātōrēs ad sē venientēs sedēns excēpit.

MAGISTER: Quis corōnam (*crown*) in Caesaris capite in sellā aureā (*golden chair*) prō Rōstrīs sedentis posuit?

CORNĒLIA: Antōnius, Caesaris in omnibus bellīs et tum cōnsulātūs socius, prope (*nearby*) stāns corōnam in Caesaris capite po-

# PŪBLIUS PŪBLIAE SAL.[1]

[A letter that a young Roman with Caesar's forces in Gaul in 55 B.C. might have sent to his sister in Rome.]

icit: *Publius says
Publia,* the usual
ing a letter.
*is well)*

**S**ī valēs, bene est[2]; ego valeō. Magnō studiō litterās tuās lēgī quae cum cūrā scrīptae et plicātae erant.

De Galliā rogās[3] ac dē nōbīs cognōscere cupis. Vīta nostra nōn dūra est et integrī sumus. Magnus numerus captīvōrum in castrīs iam coāctus est.
5 Caesar multās pugnās iam pugnāvit et multa oppida mūnīta cēpit, quae praesidiīs tenet. In paucīs oppidīs, numerō, nōn animō superāmur. Victōria nostra erit. Mox[4] Caesar erit dominus Galliae; Gallia in prōvinciam redigētur et viae novae mūnientur. Sed dominus aequus erit. Tum virōs nostrōs trāns Rhēnum flūmen ēdūcet et Germānōs terrēbit. Iam eōs[5] monuit. Modum quō
10 bellum gerit probō. Sententia eius[6] est: "Veniō, videō, vincō." Magnus et ēgregius vir est. Fortasse[7] trāns aquam in Britanniam prōcēdēmus, quae est magna īnsula dē quā nōn ante lēgī aut cognōvī.

Quid Quīntus noster[8] agit? Quae nova officia suscēpit? Cūr nōn ante scrīpsit? Litterās tuās cum studiō exspectābō. Valē.[9]

## Questions
1. Did Publius have an easy time in Gaul?
2. By what means is Caesar holding towns in Gaul?
3. What progress is Caesar making in his conquest of Gaul?
4. Does Publius approve of Caesar's method of conducting war?
5. What is Caesar's motto?
6. Has Publius seen Germany yet? Has he seen Britain?
7. What does the writer of the letter know about Britain?

LFA

# PŪBLIA PŪBLIŌ SAL.

[An answer to the letter in Lesson XXXIX]

Adducta litterīs ā tē, Pūblī, in Galliā scrīptīs, respondēbō, nam multa rogāvistī. Multa nova sunt. Quid putās[1]? Quīntus noster fīliam tertiam Rūfī in mātrimōnium dūxit! Ego hoc[2] nōn prōvīdī; Quīntus mē nōn cōnsuluit. Tūne hoc prōvīdistī? Tenēsne memoriā puellam, parvam ac timidam? Nōn
5 iam timida est; nunc pulchra est, ā multīs amāta.

De Caesaris ducis ēgregiīs victōriīs scrīpsistī. Magnō cum studiō litterās tuās lēgī, nam ultima Gallia semper fuit terra nova et nōn mihi nōta. Dē Galliā paucī nūntiī vēnērunt, quī fugam Gallōrum nūntiāvērunt. Caesar victōriīs suīs[3] glōriam et fāmam mīlitum Rōmānōrum auxit et pācem effēcit.
10 Caesarī grātiam habēmus quod prō salūte nostrā pugnāvit. Gallōs in fugam datōs nōn iam timēbimus. Alpēs, quae inter nōs et Gallōs stant, nunc Rōmam ā perīculō dēfendunt, nam Gallī timidī trāns Alpēs mīlitēs nōn trānsportābunt. Gallīs mīlitēs trāductōs redūcere dūrum erit.

Sī Caesar mē cōnsulit, librum "Dē Bellō Gallicō" scrībere dēbet. Sī liber
15 ab eō[4] scrībētur, ā multīs hominibus legētur; etiam post spatium multōrum annōrum, cum cūrā et dīligentiā legētur.

Litterae tuae nōn longae erant. Cūr longās litterās nōn scrībis? Multa nova in terrīs ultimīs vīdistī atque vidēbis. Valē.

## Questions
1. What reasons does Publia give for replying to Publius' letter?
2. What girl does Quintus marry and what was she like?
3. What has Caesar accomplished in Gaul?
4. What does Publia think Caesar should do now and why?
5. What geographical barrier serves to protect Rome from her northern neighbors?
6. What complaint does Publia have about Publius' letters?

nothing; but certain of the women wished to remain at home. 9. Having obtained suitable terms of peace, the Germans promised to surrender their weapons. 10. The consul, a man of great authority, talked with my friends for many hours, but could not persuade them to set out.
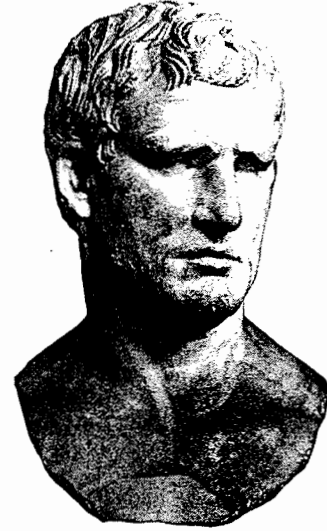
*Male hair style of the first century*

## —— Reading ——

### CAESAR SAILS TO BRITAIN

Caesar in īnsulam Britanniam proficīscī cōnstituerat. Ut cognōsceret quae rēs in īnsulā essent, lēgātum cum nāve longā praemīsit. Huic mandāvit ut, omnibus rēbus explōrātīs, ad sē venīret. Ipse cum omnibus cōpiīs in Morīnōs profectus est, quod inde erat brevissimus in Britanniam cursus. Hūc nāvēs undique ex fīnitimīs regiōnibus iussit convenīre.

Interim cōnsiliō eius cognitō ā multīs īnsulae cīvitātibus ad eum lēgātī vēnērunt quī pollicerentur sē futūrōs Populī Rōmānī amīcōs. Quibus audītīs, eōs hortātus ut in eā sententiā manērent, in cīvitātēs rēmīsit.

Lēgātīs Britannōrum domum remissīs, Volusēnus, lēgātus ā Caesare ad Britanniam praemissus, Caesarī quae ibi vīdisset renūntiāvit. Sed ille, vir minimae virtūtis, nāve nōn ēgressus erat; nōn multa ergō imperātōrī renūntiāvit.

Itaque Caesar in nāvēs coāctās exercitum imposuit. Equitēs in ulteriōrem portum prōgredī et nāvēs ibi cōnscendere iussit. Ille cum quibusdam ex mīlitibus ad īnsulam accēdēbat. Ibi in omnibus collibus expositās hostium cōpiās cōnspexit. Hunc locum nōn tūtum arbitrātus nāve nōn ēgressus est.

scription, such as the head of Washington on a twenty-five-cent piece, is called the *obverse* side because it is turned toward you. This side is called *heads;* the reverse side, *tails.* The *obverse* side of anything is the side that is *facing* you; the *reverse* side is the opposite.

That which is *obvious* (**ob** + **via**) is facing you so that you cannot fail to see it. If we *obviate* something, we go toward it, meet it, and take it out of the way.

## SENTENCE PATTERNS

A. Translate into English:

1. Prīmā lūce proelium commīsērunt et hostibus diū restitērunt.
2. Helvetiī omnium rērum inopiā adductī lēgātōs ad Caesarem mīsērunt.
3. Itaque hāc ōrātiōne inductī et auctōritāte Orgetorīgis permōtī cōnstituērunt dē fīnibus suīs cum omnibus cōpiīs exīre.
4. Helvetiī undique flūminibus, montibus, lacū continēbantur.
5. Hōc modō facillimē sociīs persuāsit.
6. Prōvinciae quam māximum potest mīlitum numerum imperat.
7. Proptereā quod sē fīnēs habēre angustiōrēs crēdēbant, patriam relinquere statuērunt.
8. Ubi ea rēs Helvetiīs nūntiāta est, ducī conjūrātiōnis nōn pepercērunt.
9. Diē cōnstitūtā omnis familia Orgetorīgis ad jūdicium iit.
10. Nōnne dux, bellī et glōriae cupidus, patriae nocuit?

B. Translate into Latin:

1. Casticus, induced by the influence of Orgetorix, determined to seize the power in his own state.
2. The Helvetians believed that their country was too small.
3. The leaders were disturbed by the reasons of Orgetorix.
4. He, led on by the speech of the chief, made a conspiracy.
5. They prepared as large a number of men and as great a supply of grain as possible.

### The Fighting Helvetians

Saepe audīvimus Galliam in partēs trēs dīvīsam esse. Helvetiī eam partem Galliae quae nunc "Switzerland" appellātur habitābant. Illī erant proximī Germānīs, quī trāns flūmen Rhēnum (*Rhine*) habitābant. Reliquōs Gallōs virtūte superābant quod ferē cotīdiānīs (*daily*) proeliīs cum Germānīs contendēbant.

ORGETORIX ASSUMES LEADERSHIP

Apud Helvetiōs longē nōbilissimus fuit Orgetorīx. Ille summum imperium māgnopere cupīvit et conjūrātiōnem nōbilitātis

**305**

fēcit. Helvētiōs dēbēre cum omnibus ' cōpiīs terrās novās ā Germānīs remōtās petere dīxit.

Facilius eīs persuāsit quod Helvētiī undique locī nātūrā continēbantur; ūnā ex parte flūmine Rhēnō, lātissimō et altissimō, quī agrum Helvēticum ā Germānīs dīvīsit; altera ex parte monte Jūrā altissimō; tertiā Lacū Lemannō (*Geneva*) et flūmine Rhodanō, quī prōvinciam Rōmānam ab Helvētiīs dīvīsit.

Prō (*in proportion to*) multitūdine autem hominum et prō glōriā bellī atque fortitūdinis sē angustiōrēs fīnēs habēre exīstimābant. Proptereā hominēs bellī cupidī fīnēs suōs relinquere cupiēbant.

### THE HELVETIANS PLAN THEIR GREAT MIGRATION

Hīs rēbus adductī et auctōritāte Orgetorīgis permōtī, Helvētiī carrōrum quam māximum numerum, frūmentī quam māximam cōpiam parābant. Cum proximīs cīvitātibus pācem et amīcitiam cōnfirmāre cōnstituērunt.

### CONSPIRACY OF ORGETORIX

Orgetorīx dux creātus sibi lēgātiōnem ad cīvitātēs fīnitimās suscēpit. In hōc itinere Casticus Sēquanus, auctōritāte Orgetorīgis inductus, rēgnum in cīvitāte suā occupāre statuit, quod pater ante habuerat. Itaque Dumnorīgī Haeduō, frātrī Dīviciācī, quī eō tempore prīncipātum in cīvitāte obtinēbat, idem persuāsit, eīque fīliam suam in mātrimōnium sē datūrum esse prōmīsit. "Ipse meae cīvitātis imperium obtentūrus sum. Facillimē rēgnum occupāre atque tōtīus Galliae imperium obtinēre possumus. Omnibus meīs cōpiīs vōs adjūvābō." Orgetorīx hīs verbīs trēs fīrmissimōs populōs conjūnxit.

### BETRAYAL AND TRIAL OF ORGETORIX

Ea rēs Helvētiīs nūntiāta est. Omnis familia Orgetorīgis ad jūdicium vēnit, sed Orgetorīx causam suam numquam dīxit (*pleaded his case*). Ipse sē interfēcit.

the fields of Lycia and killing many of its citizens. A chimera was a horrible monster whose body was a compound of a lion and a goat, its hind legs those of a dragon, and its breath of fire. The king of Lycia had sought in vain throughout Greece for a hero capable of destroying the monster.

In a letter that Bellerophon brought from Proteus, son-in-law of Iobates, were instructions to kill the bearer, who, of course, knew nothing of the contents of the letter. Iobates, thinking Bellerophon could not possibly return from such a mission, sent the hero to fight the chimera.

Before going into combat, he consulted an oracle of the gods and was counseled to seek the winged horse Pegasus, which had sprung from the blood of the Gorgon Medusa. This horse had been caught by Minerva and had been presented by her to the Muses. These nine daughters of Jupiter and Mnemosyne were patronesses of various phases of literature, art, and science.

Bellerophon passed the night in the temple of Minerva. While he slept, the goddess brought him a golden bridle. With the help of this bridle, he captured and mastered Pegasus. Riding the winged horse, Bellerophon sped through the air, found the chimera, and, avoiding its deadly breath, sent his arrows into the monster from every side.

Afterward Bellerophon died in a rash attempt to reach Olympus, and Pegasus returned to the service of the Muses.


## A Deserted Homeland

Post Orgetorīgis mortem Helvētiī id quod cōnstituērunt facere cōnātī sunt, id est, ē fīnibus suīs exīre. Ubi sē ad eam rem parātōs esse putāvērunt, oppida sua omnia plūrimōsque vīcōs incendērunt. Frūmentum omne, praeter quod sēcum portātūrī erant, eōdem tempore incendērunt, quod exīstimābant sē, spē reditūs āmissā, facilius omnia perīcula sustentūrōs esse. Haec eadem fīnitimīs suīs persuāsērunt. Suīs oppidīs vīcīsque incēnsīs, quattuor gentēs Gallicae cum Helvētiīs proficīscī parāvērunt.

### A CHOICE OF ROUTES

Erant itinera duo quibus domō exīre possent (*they could*); ūnum per Sēquanōs, angustum et difficile, inter montem Jūram et flūmen Rhodanum; alterum, multō facilius, per prōvinciam nostram. Prīncipēs Helvētiōrum suīs nūntiāvērunt: "Per prō-

*311*

vinciam Rōmanam iter faciēmus." Omnibus rebus comparātīs, diē cōnstitūtā ad rīpam Rhodanī omnēs convēnērunt.

### THE FIRST BLITZKRIEG

Caesarī, quī prōvinciae Galliae praefuit, nūntiātum est Helvētiōs per prōvinciam nostram iter facere cōnārī. Ab urbe profectus est et quam māximīs poterat itineribus in Galliam contendit et ad (*in the vicinity of*) Genāvam pervēnit. Prōvinciae tōtī quam māximum poterat mīlitum numerum imperāvit, et pontem quī erat ad Genāvam dēlērī jūssit. Ubi dē ējus adventū Helvētiī cōgnōvērunt, lēgātōs ad eum mīsērunt, nōbilissimōs cīvitātis. Dīxērunt sē sine ūllō maleficiō iter per prōvinciam factūrōs esse et sē aliud iter nūllum habēre.

### CAESAR'S REPLY

Caesar, quod memoriā tenēbat Lūcium Cassium cōnsulem occīsum (esse) exercitumque ējus ab Helvētiīs pulsum (esse) et sub jugum missum (esse), eīs hoc concēdere nōlēbat (*was unwilling*). Tamen quod mīlitēs quōs imperāverat nōndum convēnerant, respondit sē tempus ad dēlīberandum (*to deliberate*) sūmptūrum (esse); atque eōs ad Īdūs Aprīlēs revenīre jūssit.

# *Unit* LIV

## CONVERSATION

MAGISTER: Caesar erat vir māgnā virtūte quī summus dux factus est. Cōnsiliīs Helvētiōrum cōgnitīs, quid fecit?

CORNĒLIUS: Ubi Caesarī nūntiātum est Helvētiōs cōnsilium cēpisse per agrum Sēquanōrum et Haeduōrum trānsīre in eōs fīnēs prope prōvinciam Rōmānam, commōtus cōnsilia sua cēpit.

MAGISTER: Quam ob rem cōnsilium Helvētiōrum Caesarī nōn grātum erat?

CORNĒLIA: Hoc māximō cum perīculō prōvinciae futūrum esse scīvit.

MAGISTER: Quae Caesar illō tempore fierī volēbat?

JŪLIUS: Caesar Helvētiōs vī ac virtūte repellere studēbat. Rīpās flūminis mūniēbat et item eī mūnītiōnī quam fēcerat Titum Labiēnum lēgātum, mīlitem māgnā fortitūdine, praefēcit.

## They Shall Not Pass!

Ubi ea diēs quam cōnstituerat cum lēgātīs vēnit et lēgātī ad eum revēnērunt, negāvit sē posse iter ūllī per prōvinciam dare; et sē eōs cōnantēs prohibitūrum esse ostendit. Helvētiī eā spē dējectī Rhodanum trānsīre cōnātī sunt, sed operis mūnitiōne (*fortification*) et mīlitum tēlīs repulsī hoc facere nōn potuērunt.

### ANOTHER AVENUE OF ESCAPE

Ūna via per Sēquanōs relinquēbātur sed erat difficilis et angusta. Sēquanīs invītīs, trānsīre nōn poterant. Helvētiī igitur dē hōc itinere lēgātōs ad Sēquanōs mīsērunt. Dumnorīx, quī erat prīnceps Haeduōrum, Helvētiīs erat amīcus quod ex eā cīvitāte Orgetorīgis fīliam in mātrimōnium dūxerat. Apud Sēquanōs plūrimum poterat (*was very powerful*). Ille propter haec lēgātiōnī praeerat. Eō tempore Dumnorīx, cupiditāte rēgnī adductus, novīs rēbus studēbat et quam plūrimās cīvitātēs suō beneficiō habēre sibi obstrictās (*under obligations*) volēbat. Itaque hanc rem suscēpit et Sēquanī, eō petente, per fīnēs suōs Helvētiōs trānsīre passī sunt.

### CAESAR REINFORCES HIS ARMY

Caesarī nūntiātum est Helvētiōs in animō habēre per agrum Sēquanōrum et Haeduōrum iter in eōs fīnēs facere quī nōn longē ā Tolōsātium fīnibus aberant, quae cīvitās erat in prōvinciā. Hoc māgnō cum perīculō prōvinciae futūrum esse intellegēbat. Ob eās causās eī mūnitiōnī quam fēcerat Titum Labiēnum praefēcit.

Ipse in Ītaliam māgnīs itineribus contendit duāsque ibi legiōnēs cōnscrīpsit, et trēs ex hībernīs ēdūxit; et in ulteriōrem Galliam per Alpēs cum hīs quīnque legiōnibus īre contendit. Ibi quaedam gentēs itinere exercitum prohibēre cōnātae sunt, sed pulsae sunt.

### APPEALS FOR HELP

Helvētiī jam per angustiās et fīnēs Sēquanōrum suās cōpiās trādūxerant et in Haeduōrum fīnēs pervēnerant; eōrumque agrōs vāstābant. Haeduī lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē auxiliō mīsērunt. Eōdem tempore aliae gentēs Caesarī nūntiāvērunt sē, vāstātis jam agrīs, nōn facile ab oppidīs vim hostium prohibēre posse. Item Allobrogēs, quī trāns Rhodanum vīcōs habēbant, fugā sē ad Caesarem recēpērunt et auxilium petīvērunt.

OLH

## Divide and Conquer

Flūmen est Arar, quod per fīnēs Haeduōrum et Sēquanōrum in Rhodanum fluit. Per explōrātōrēs Caesar certior factus est trēs jam partēs cōpiārum Helvētiōs hoc flūmen trādūxisse; quartum partem citrā (*on this side*) flūmen Ararim relinquam esse.

Itaque Caesar dē tertiā vigiliā cum legiōnibus tribus ē castrīs profectus est, et quam celerrimē vēnit ad eam partem cōpiārum quae nōndum flūmen trānsierat. In eōs ex itinere impedītōs impetum fēcit māgnamque partem eōrum occīdit. Reliquī sē in fugam dedērunt atque in proximās silvās sē abdidērunt.

### PAST WRONGS AVENGED

Is pāgus (*district*) appellābātur Tigurīnus; nam omnis cīvitās Helvētia in quattuor partēs aut quattuor pāgōs dīvīsa est. Hic pāgus patrum nostrōrum memoriā Lūcium Pīsōnem, cōnsulem Rōmānum, interfēcerat et ējus exercitum sub jugum mīserat.

Ita aut casū aut cōnsiliō deōrum immortālium, pars cīvitātis Helvētiae, quae īnsīgnem calamitātem populō Rōmānō intulerat, ea prīma poenam dedit. In hāc rē Caesar nōn sōlum publicās sed etiam prīvātās injūriās ultus est (*avenged*).

### CAESAR AND THE HELVETIAN EMBASSY

Hōc proeliō factō, Caesar, quī reliquās cōpiās Helvētiōrum cōnsequī vult, ūnō diē pontem in Ararī facit ut ita exercitum trādūcat. Tum Helvētiī id quod ipsī diēbus xx aegerrimē cōnfēcerant illum ūnō diē fēcisse intellegunt. Hāc de causā, māgnopere adventū ējus commōtī, legātōs ad eum quī pācem petant mittunt; cūjus legātiōnis Dīvicō est prīnceps.

### DIVICO SPEAKS

Is ita loquitur: "Sī pācem populus Rōmānus cum Helvētiīs faciet, in eam partem ibunt atque ibi erunt Helvētiī, ubi eōs tū cōnstituēs atque esse volēs. Sin (*but if*) bellum īnferre persevērābis (*persist*), memoriā tenē veterem (*ancient*) calamitātem populī Rōmānī et prīstīnam (*former*) virtūtem Helvētiōrum."

### CAESAR REPLIES

Hīs Caesar respondet sē omnia haec memoriā tenēre, sed sē quoque cōgnōscere eōs iter facere per prōvinciam per vim cōnātōs esse et sociīs Rōmānīs injūriās tulisse. "Sī, autem, obsidēs ā vōbīs mihi dabuntur, et sī Haeduīs et Allobrogibus dē injūriīs quās ipsīs sociīsque eōrum intulistis satisfaciētis (*make amends*), vōbīscum pācem faciam."

2. When the mountain had been seized, Labienus, refraining from battle, awaited our men.
3. Did Caesar build a bridge in order to lead his army across the river?
4. Considius, who was very skilled in military affairs, was sent ahead with the scouts.
5. He refrained from battle lest his men be killed.

### A Surprise Attack

Posterō diē Helvētiī castra ex eō locō mōvērunt. Item Caesar fēcit, et omnem equitātum praemīsit quī iter hostium cōgnōsceret. Hī cupidius agmen secūtī aliēnō locō cum equitātū Helvētiōrum proelium commīsit. Paucī dē nostrīs cecidērunt. Caesar autem suōs ā proeliō continēbat ac hostēs praedam facere prohibēbat.

Quīndecim (*Fifteen*) diēs Caesar exercitum Helvētiōrum sequēbātur. Tum ab explōrātōribus certior factus est hostēs sub monte castra posuisse ab ipsīus castrīs octō mīlia passuum. Explōrātōrēs quī nātūram et ascēnsum montis cōgnōscerent mīsit. Illī ascēnsum esse facilem nūntiāvērunt.

Itaque dē tertiā vigiliā Titum Labiēnum lēgātum cum duābus legiōnibus et eīs ducibus quī iter cōgnōverant summum jugum montis ascendere jūssit. Eīs cōnsilium suum ostendit. Ipse dē quārtā vigiliā eōdem itinere quō hostēs ierant ad eōs contendit et omnem equitātum ante sē mīsit. Pūblium Cōnsidium, quī reī mīlitāris perītissimus habēbātur, cum explōrātōribus praemīsit.

#### AN OFFICER'S BLUNDER

Prīmā lūce, dum summus mōns ā Labiēnō tenētur, ipse ab hostium castrīs nōn longē aberat, neque aut ipsīus adventus aut Labiēnī cōgnitus est, Cōnsidius ad eum, equō incitātō, accessit. Dīxit montem nōn ā Labiēnō sed ab hostibus tenērī; id sē ā Gallicīs armīs atque īnsīgnibus cōgnōvisse. Caesar igitur cōpiās suās in proximum collem dūxit et aciem īnstrūxit.

Intereā Labiēnus, monte occupātō, nostrōs exspectābat et proeliō abstinēbat quod Caesar eum adventum suum exspectāre jūsserat ut undique ūnō tempore in hostēs impetus fieret. Multō dēnique diē per explōrātōrēs Caesar cōgnōvit et montem ā suīs tenērī et Helvētiōs castra mōvisse. Cōnsidius enim, timōre perterritus, id quod nōn vīderat prō vīsō (*as seen*) Caesarī nūntiāverat. Hostēs autem castra sua mōverant. Itaque eō diē cum eīs proelium committere nōn poterat.

OLH

Helvētiī Rōmānōs timōre perterritōs discēdere exīstimābant. Posterō diē illī, mūtātō cōnsiliō, iter convertērunt et in nostrōs impetūs facere incipiēbant. Postquam id animadvertit, cōpiās suās Caesar in proximum collem dūxit et equitātum praemīsit. Ipse in colle mediō aciem īnstrūxit legiōnum quattuor veterānārum. In summō jugō duās legiōnēs, quās in Galliā proximē cōnscrīpserat, et omnia auxilia locārī jūssit.

# *Unit* LVII

## CONVERSATION

CAESAR: Haec esse vēra cōgnōvī. Ipse est Dumnorīx, summā audāciā, apud plēbem māgnā grātiā, rērum novārum cupidus.

VALERIUS: Ille tantum numerum equitum circum sē semper habet ut capī nōn possit.

CLAUDIUS: Neque Caesarem neque Rōmānōs amat, quod eōrum adventū auctōritās ējus minor facta est, et quod Dīviciācus, frāter ējus, in antīquō locō grātiae et honōris locātus est. Tam īrātus erat Dumnorīx ut frātrī suō nocēre cōnārētur.

CAESAR: Dīviciācus amīcus meus est. Cōgnōvī eum summum ad populum Rōmānum studium et ad mē habēre. Voluntātem, fidem, jūstitiam, temperantiam habet. Ego Dīviciācō nocēre nōn cupiō. Vocā eum ad mē ut cum eō loquar.

DĪVICIĀCUS: Adsum, nōbilis Caesar. Quid vīs?

CAESAR: Tālia, Dīviciāce, sunt maleficia frātris tuī ut ego eī parcere nōn dēbeam. Cōgnōvistīne haec?

DĪVICIĀCUS: Haec sciō, sed tam adulēscēns est Dumnorīx ut nihil cum eō agere possim. Parce eī nē populus mē perfidiae accūset.

## SECTION 1 Result Clauses

▶ DISCUSSION

1. In English the verb in a *clause of result* is expressed by the indicative mood because a result is something that has actually happened. A

bearers at the head of the procession, marched the musicians, playing mournful music on their flutes, lyres, and dulcimers.

Professional clowns and buffoons came next, singing and shouting to amuse the spectators. Behind them walked an actor, dressed as the deceased and imitating his speech, mannerisms, gait, and perhaps even mocking the dead man's foibles.

The most important attraction of the display was composed of actors, carrying wax images of all the outstanding ancestors of the man's family, and dressed as consuls, generals, or other officials, according to the position each held in life. When Marcellus, nephew of Augustus, died, six hundred such actors walked in the procession, each bearing a mask of an important ancestor.

Slaves carried placards on which were written accounts of the deeds of the dead man. Then came the deceased, ornately gowned and carried on an elaborately decorated couch by eight pallbearers. The family, friends, freedmen, and ex-slaves followed. The women, their hair disheveled as an indication of grief, wore white, and the friends were dressed in dark-colored togas.

The funeral advanced first to the Forum, where the mourners and actors were provided with seats. An important kinsman mounted the Rostra and delivered a suitable eulogy. Then the procession reassembled and marched outside the city gates, where the body was cremated; the ashes were collected by a son of the deceased and deposited in a funeral urn. This was placed inside the tomb in a chamber called the *columbarium*, because each of the many niches resembled a dovecot.

The remains of magnificent tombs on all roads leading out of Rome illustrate the types of architecture used by wealthy Romans to impress passers-by with the importance of their families.

## Preparation for Battle

Interim Helvētiī omnia impedīmenta sua in ūnum locum contulērunt. Ipsī, rejectō (*hurled back*) nostrō equitātū, phalange (*phalanx*) factā, ad prīmam nostram aciem prōcessērunt. Caesar, postquam cōpiās īnstrūxit, sīgnum dedit et proelium cum Helvētiīs commīsit.

### VICTORY FOR THE ROMANS

Nostrī, pīlīs ē locō superiōre missīs, facile hostium phalangem perfrēgērunt (*broke through*), et in eōs gladiīs impetum fēcērunt. Ita diū et ācriter pūgnātum est. Helvētiī prīmum impetum

nostrōrum sustinēre nōn poterant; atque aliī in montem, aliī ad impedīmenta et carrōs suōs sē contulērunt.

Hī tamen ab hōrā septimā ad vesperum ex castrīs cōpiās ēducēbant. Ad multam noctem (*late at night*) etiam prope impedīmenta pūgnātum est, proptereā quod Helvētiī prō vallō carrōs objēcerant et ē locō superiōre in nostrōs venientēs tēla conjiciēbant, et inter carrōs pīla longa subjiciēbant (*kept thrusting*) nostrōsque vulnerābant. Tandem illī, vulneribus dēfessī, sē nōn diūtius (*longer*) dēfendere poterant. Impedīmentīs castrīsque eōrum expūgnātīs, Helvētiī sē recipere incēpērunt. Ibi Orgetorīgis fīlia atque ūnus ē fīliīs captus est. Ex eō proeliō circiter (*about*) CXXX mīlia hominum superfuērunt (*survived*), eāque tōtā nocte continenter iērunt. Posteā Caesar cum omnibus cōpiīs eōs sequī incēpit.

### THE HELVETIANS SURRENDER

Helvētiī omnium rērum inopiā adductī dē dēditiōne lēgātōs ad Caesarem mīsērunt. Sē ad pedēs prōjēcērunt. Caesar Helvētiōs in eō locō manēre et adventum suum exspectāre jūssit. Eō postquam pervēnit, obsidēs, arma, servōs quī ad eōs fūgerant postulāvit. Dum ea geruntur, circiter hominum mīlia sex prīmā nocte ē castrīs Helvētiōrum ēgressī ad Rhēnum fīnēsque Germānōrum contendērunt. Quod ubi Caesar cōgnōvit, hōs quōrum per fīnēs ierant eōs redūcere jūssit. Eōs reductōs in numerō hostium habuit.

### TERMS OF PEACE

Reliquōs omnēs, obsidibus, armīs, servīs trāditīs, Caesar in dēditiōnem accēpit. Helvētiōs et alterās gentēs in fīnēs suōs unde erant prōfectī, redīre jūssit, et oppida quae incenderant iterum aedificāre jūssit. Sīc māximus imperātor, Gājus Jūlius Caesar, bellum tam bene gesserat ut paucīs mēnsibus tōtum bellum Helvēticum cōnficeret.

CONV

GALLU
MĀNLI

CĪVIS
MĀNLI
CĪVIS

MĀNLI

CĪVIS

MĀNLI

SECTIO

▷ DISC

The
the te

First
Secon
Third

First
Secon
Third

## SIGHT TRANSLATION: JULIUS CAESAR

Octō annōs Caesar in Galliā proelia plūrima et ācerrima gessit. Ā mīlitibus amātus est quod eum fortissimum aequumque esse cōgnōvērunt. Hostēs quibuscum pūgnāvit eum timuērunt sed admīrātiōne māgnae virtūtis in bellō et clēmentiae admīrābilis in pāce permovēbantur. Prīmō annō bellī Gallicī quaedam gēns, appellāta Helvētia, domō cum omnibus

cōpiīs exīre statuit. Sē fīnēs habēre angustiōrēs exīstimāvērunt prō multitūdine hominum et prō glōriā bellī, et lātiōrēs terrās māximē cupiēbant.

Illō tempore Caesar erat prōcōnsul in Galliā. Ubi certior factus est dē cōnsiliīs hūjus gentis, quam celerrimē ad Galliam profectus est. Impetū in Helvētiōs factō, tōtam gentem vīcit. In fīnēs suōs unde erant profectī Helvētiōs redīre jūssit. Omnī cibō Helvētiōrum dēlētō, Caesar fīnitimam gentem eīs frūmentum dare, et ipsōs oppida vīcōsque quōs incenderant iterum aedificāre quoque jūssit.

OLH

# CHAPTER LV

## CAESAR I

**I.**

Apud prīncipēs Rōmae, ut[1] dictum est, erat Caesar, vir
nōbilissimī generis. Ubi puer fuit, Sulla et Marius dē
potestāte inter sē contendēbant. Sulla, postquam ex
puerō Caesar excessit, cōnsul erat et eī inimīcissimus erat
5 quod eius patris soror ā Mariō in mātrimōnium[2] ducta erat
et quod Caesar ipse Cornēliam, Cinnae fīliam, dūxerat
uxōrem; cuius pater, socius Marī, Sullae inimīcissimus
erat. Auctōritātem potestātemque quoque huius adul-
ēscentis ēgregī ipsīus timēbat. Itaque hunc interficere
10 cupīvit; id autem nōn efficere potuit. Caesar, ubi certior
factus est cōnsilia occulta dē morte suā ā Sullā capta esse,
nocte Rōmā in occulta loca magnā celeritāte fugere
cogēbātur. Prehēnsus ā Sullae mīlitibus, tamen, datā
pecūniā, līberātus est. Posteā autem Caesarī, quod amīcī
15 id postulābant, Sulla veniam[3] dare cogēbātur; Caesar
tamen vim inimīcī timēns Rōmae nōn mānsit. Ad urbem
Mytilēnās quae est portus in īnsulā Graecā Lesbō discessit
et cum exercitū Rōmānō sē iūnxit quī id oppidum oppugnā-
bat. Eō tempore Mytilēnae ā cōpiīs Mithradātis tentae
20 sunt quī contrā Rōmam arma rūrsus sūmpserat. Hīc, quod
vītam socī servāverat, eī corōna[4] cīvica[4] data est, id quod
honor summus dūcitur.

Post Sullae mortem Caesar Rōmam revēnit, sed nōn
diū manēbat. Brevī tempore ad īnsulam Rhodum cēdere
25 statuit, nam studium dīcendī[5] cōnficere cupiēbat. Dum ad

---

[1] as.     [2] marriage with **dūcō** = *to marry*.     [3] pardon.
[4] civic crown (made of oak leaves).     [5] of oratory.

602

īnsulam ]
portum a
praedōni
captus et
quōs cuɪ
duōbus s
drāgintā
tōtum au
temporis
nūllō m
Sociī inte
dīmiserat
parāvera
praedōnē

Ille au
"nōn sat
quāgintɛ
nam nō
cīvem R

Item
līberātuɪ
gravissi
mam pɛ
ipsōs ca
exīstimā

Pecūɪ
ōram ex
aberat,
armīsqu
portum
sine mo

[6] sea roɪ

LWR

ıt Caesar, vir
t Marius dē
ostquam ex
cissimus erat
n[2] ducta erat
am, dūxerat
nimīcissimus
huius adul-
c interficere
; 'i certior
ı ..pta esse,
tāte fugere
amen, datā
quod amīcī
ur; Caesar
Ad urbem
bō discessit
n oppugnā-
ātis tentae
. Hīc, quod
st, id quod

t, sed nōn
lum cēdere
t. Dum ad

īnsulam nāvigat et ubi ad
portum appropinquāvit, ā
praedōnibus[6] maritimīs[6]
captus et raptus est, apud
quōs cum ūnō amīcō et 30
duōbus servīs prope qua-
drāgintā diēs manēbat. Per
tōtum autem illud spatium
temporis ā praedōnibus[6]
nūllō modō territus est. 35
Sociī interim servīque quōs
dīmiserat pecūniam com-
parāverant. Vīgintī talenta[7]
praedōnēs[6] postulāverant.

Ille autem "Id," inquit, 40
"nōn satis est. Vōbīs quīn-
quāgintā talenta[7] dabō,
nam nōn scītis mē esse
cīvem Rōmānum."

Item eīs ēnūntiāvit sē 45
līberātum ab eīs poenam
gravissimam et iūstissi-



*Julius Caesar.* His statue in the Forum of Caesar. Note S.P.Q.R., which means Senatus Populusque Romanus.

mam petītūrum esse et alia. "Ego vērō," inquit, "vōs
ipsōs capiam et interficiam." Praedōnēs[6] eum lūdere
exīstimābant. 50

Pecūniā autem praedōnibus[6] datā Caesar līberātus in
ōram expositus est. Statim Mīlētum, quae urbs nōn longē
aberat, contendit et paucīs nāvibus comparātīs, eās virīs
armīsque armāvit, et circum haec eadem loca et in eundem
portum nāvigāns praedōnēs[6] cēpit et in ōram eōs expositōs 55
sine morā interfēcit.

---

[6] sea robbers = pirates.          [7] talent (about $1,000).

Nunc ad īnsulam Rhodum prōcessit et ibi initium studī
sūmpsit. Ibi ab Apollōniō, magistrō ēgregiō, doctus est.
Caesar dīcitur ōrātor mīrissimus fuisse, nam eius mēns
60 alacerrima et ācerrima fuit, sed Cicerō dē quō mox legētis
prīmus, Caesar secundus semper fuit. Caesar item dux
mīrissimus fuit, prīmus omnium.

Caesar, studiō dīcendī[5] cōnfectō, ā portū Rhodī Rōmam
sē recēpit et tribūnus mīlitāris factus est. Posteā quaestor
65 Hispāniae creātus[8] est, quae tum ab Rōmānīs regēbātur.

Hōc eōdem annō suam uxōrem Cornēliam āmīsit et eius
patris soror quoque ē vītā excessit. Ōrātiōnēs quibus
Marium et Cinnam, patrem Cornēliae, laudāvit in Forō
habuit et statuae Marī ostentae sunt. Id populō sed nōn
70 senātuī grātissimum erat et populus eum cum magnō
clāmōre laudāvit et item spem suam in eō posuit.

Postquam Caesar ab Hispāniā domum revēnit, magistrā-
tum[9] alium post alium sibi obtinuit; prīmō aedīlis, deinde[10]
pontifex maximus, tertium praetor, posteā cōnsul fuit.
75 Postquam praetor fuit, prōpraetor cum exercitū ad
Hispāniam missus est. Id eī grātissimum erat quod cupi-
dissimus potestātis glōriaeque semper erat. Auctōritāte
superior quam cēterī in rē pūblicā esse cupiēbat. Dum
pedibus per montēs Alpium ad Hispāniam iter facit et
80 cum amīcīs parvum vīcum[11] spectat, ēnūntiāvit sē ibi
prīmum quam secundum Rōmae esse mālle[12].

Ubi in Hispāniam pervēnit, mūnus magnā cum cūrā
gessit. Novās gentēs superāvit et cum urbibus quae inter
sē bellum diū gesserant pācem fēcit.
85 Caesar postquam ex Hispāniā revēnit, magistrātum[9]
cōnsulis petīvit. Scīvit senātum sibi inimīcissimum esse
neque sē sine amīcīs potentissimīs creārī[8] posse. Hic
igitur amīcitiam cum Pompēiō et Crassō iūnxit quī in

---

5 of oratory.    8 elect.    9 office.    10 next.    11 village.    12 prefer.

604

**Roman Troc**
*This is a gr
with a six-s
The metal
covers his
more or less
medals; the
larger scale
lief. The tv
and the tw
the niche*

cīvitāte
Crassus
alterō e
cum Cr
uterque
pēius a
acceptā
sē pecū
bene gei
hoc cōn
creātus
ūllī ex t
Timo
ubi mū
citum q
Gallia r

---

8 elect.

***Roman Trooper—First Century, A.D.***
*This is a gravestone of a man armed with a six-sided shield and a spear. The metal discs on the frame which covers his breast are decorations, more or less corresponding to our war medals; they can be seen again on a larger scale at the bottom of the relief. The two bracelets represented, and the two pairs of torques above the niche are further decorations.*

cīvitāte potentissimī erant. Eō tempore Pompēius et Crassus inter sē inimīcī erant, nam uterque potentior 90 alterō esse cupiēbat. Caesar autem in grātiam Pompēium cum Crassō redūxit. Neuter eōrum alterum amābat, sed uterque alterum iuvāre poterat, Crassus pecūniā, Pompēius auctōritāte. Posteā Caesar fidē occultā datā et acceptā, utrōsque sibi societāte[13] iūnxit quod exīstimābat 95 sē pecūniā Crassī et auctōritāte Pompēī rem pūblicam bene gerere posse. Itaque propter auxilium hōrum virōrum hoc cōnsilium effectum est, et hōc modō Caesar cōnsul creātus[8] est. Nunc nihil in tōtā rē pūblicā āctum est quod ūllī ex tribus nōn grātum erat. 100

Timor mentēs senātōrum omnium occupāvit. Caesar ubi mūnera cōnsulis effēcit prōvinciam Galliam et exercitum quīnque annōs accēpit. Num fābulam dē Caesare in Galliā memoriā tenētis? Eam in Capite XIV iam lēgistis.

---

[8] elect.    [13] alliance.

105 Senātus perterritus laetus erat ubi Caesar Rōmam
relīquit et negōtium difficillimum prōvinciae suscēpit,
nam iam longē aberat et senātus exīstimābat populum
illum nōn iam memoriā tentūrum esse.

Caesar in Galliā ferē decem annōs manēbat et eō spatiō
110 temporis multa et difficillima et gravissima bella gessit.
Ante suum adventum in Galliam certior factus, ut[1] iam
nōvistis, Helvētiōs terrārum lātiōrum cupidōs domō cum
omnibus suīs discēdere, itinere brevissimō et facillimō
magnā celeritāte ad Galliam contendit. Caesar perterritus
115 est quod Helvētiī per prōvinciam ad terram novam popu-
lum dūcere in animō habēbant. Ubi certior factus est
Helvētiōs oppidīs suīs omnibus et prīvātīs aedificiīs
incēnsīs per Alpēs iam iter facere magnā cum celeritāte
prōvinciam mūnīvit et armīs sūmptīs, aciē īnstrūctā, in
120 eōs impetum fēcit. Postquam proelium multās hōrās
factum est, multī hominēs interfectī sunt, multa vulnera
gravia accepta sunt. Brevī tempore Helvētiī humillimī
in Caesaris manūs vēnērunt et sē suaque Rōmānīs trā-
didērunt. Caesar tōtam gentem domum sē recipere iussit.
125 Item eōdem annō Ariovistus, rēx potentissimus Ger-
māniae quae terra nōn longē ā prōvinciā aberat, multi-
tūdinem suōrum trāns Rhēnum trādūxit et tertiam par-
tem agrōrum bonōrum Sēquanōrum occupāvit. Mox ab
alterā parte tertiā Sēquanōs discēdere iubet quod Harūdēs
130 gēns Germānōrum, mīlia hominum XXIV ad eum vēnē-
runt, quibus locus parātur. Paucīs annīs omnēs Gallī ex
Galliae fīnibus pellentur atque omnēs Germānī trāns
Rhēnum current et ibi manēbunt.

Caesar autem aciē īnstrūctā, auxiliō ducum fidēlissi-
135 mōrum et fortissimī exercitūs Germānōs ē Galliā discēdere
mox coēgit.

---

[1] as.

Mīlitēs Rōmānī summam fidem Caesarī habēbant, nam magna virtūs et mēns ācris in hōc erant, et nihil virtūte summā et mente ācerrimā mīrius est. Hōc duce, mīlitēs fortēs nihil timuērunt ubi in aciem missī sunt, nam semper 140 scīvērunt victōriam certam esse. Amīcissimus et grātissimus virīs suīs erat, sed in labōre animī et corporis et bellī eōs bene exercuit, nam cōpiārum bene exercitārum cupidissimus erat. Praetereā ipse labōrem mīlitum suōrum semper sustinēbat et eōs saepe laudābat. Mīlitēs 145 ducem suum tōtō animō, ut[1] dīcitur, amābant.

------

[1]as.

**2.** <div style="text-align:center">**VOCABULARY**</div>

| | |
|---|---|
| **certus, -a, -um,** m., f., n., 1 & 2 | *certain, sure* |
| **iungō, -ere, iūnxī, iūnctus,** 3 | *join, unite* |
| **brevis, breve,** mf., n., 3 | *short, brief* |
| **item,** adv. | *likewise, in the same way, also* |
| **gravis, grave,** mf., n.,3 | *heavy; severe; serious, important* |
| **longē** (adv. from adj. **longus**) | *far, far off* |
| **mēns, mentis,** f., 3 (**ium**) | *mind* |
| **nihil,** n. (indecl. noun) | *nothing* |

**3.** <div style="text-align:center">**NEW TYPES OF OLD FRIENDS**</div>

*a.* A member of the **faciō** family:

ex, (*out*) + **faciō,** (*make*) = **efficiō,** *make out, work out; bring about, accomplish, complete*

*b.* The **occult-**(*hidden*) family:

Add first and second declension adjective endings to this base and you get a new friend **occultus, -a, -um,** *hidden, concealed, secret.* What member of this family do you already know?

*c.* **portus, portūs,** m., 4 = ?

*d.* A member of the **emō** family:

**sub** (*up*) + **emō** (*take*) = **sūmō** *take up, take,*

<div style="text-align:center">607</div>

**I** Translate.

1 Flūmen Tiberis per urbem Rōmam fluit.
2 Hostēs multa flūmina in regiōnibus montium trānsībunt.
3 Rōmānī centuriōnēs mīlitēsque legiōnis Rōmānae vītam perīculōsam agēbant.
4 Lēgēs Solōnis, virī Athēnārum, bonae et jūstae sunt.
5 Trēs ex nāvibus longīs ad pontem paulātim appropinquābant.
6 Graecī magnō cum labōre equum ex lignō cōnstrūxērunt.

**II** Translate each underlined word with a Declension III noun, supplying the ending appropriate to its use in the sentence. Give the nominative and genitive plural of each.

1 There was no spring near the river.
2 The shouts of the citizens approved the new laws.
3 Between the two mountains is a narrow region of fields.
4 The soldiers' helmets protect their heads.
5 The man took the food from the animal.
6 The other tree stood near the end of the road.
7 The citizens are very unfriendly to the senator.
8 We shall attack the cavalry and infantry of the enemy at the same time.

# XLVIII

## A LETTER FROM THE FRONT

Mārcus Sextō salūtem dīcit. Sī valēs, bene est; valeō. Sumus prope parvum oppidum Haeduōrum, et legiō nostra castra posuit in rīpā flūminis quod lātum et altum est.

Hodiē mīlitēs nostrī, quī bene labōrāvērunt, circum castra mūrum aedificāvērunt. Magnā cum difficultāte multī rāmōs 5 et saxa ē silvā portābant; multī equōs cūrābant; multī tabernācula parābant, sed cum illīs mīlitibus nōn labōrābam. Cum paucīs explōrātōribus cibum in dēnsā silvā petēbam. In hāc regiōne sunt multa genera animālium. Nūllī autem leōnēs in hāc parte Galliae, sed ursae paucae sunt. Multōs cervōs 10 necāvimus, quōrum corpora ad castra portāvimus.

Hodiē paucīs cum sociīs in silvā ambulābam. Silvam circumspectāvimus, sed nūllōs vīdimus Helvētiōs. In mediō flūmine erat magnum saxum ad quod cum sociīs meīs natāvī. In saxō diū sedēbāmus et mīlitēs in alterā rīpā spectābāmus. 15 Paucī in flūmine natābant; capita eōrum in aquā vīdimus. Laetus sum, quod hāc in regiōne diū manēbimus.

Explōrātōrēs nostrī dīxērunt, "Helvētiī, quī magnās cōpiās trāns flūmen habent, castra nostra vāstāre parant, sed eōs nōn timēmus. Gallī Helvētiōs timent, quod corpora valida 20 habent et sunt barbarī. Dux Helvētiōrum est perfidus, sed bona cōnsilia bellī capiunt magnamque fortitūdinem ducēs nostrī habent. Imperātor Caesar multās legiōnēs in hāc regiōne habet, sed legiō nostra est optima."

Nōnne legiō tua mox veniet in Galliam? Tum tē vidēbō et 25 tibi multa hāc dē regiōne nārrābō. Venī ante fīnem bellī! Valē.

| | |
|---|---|
| **cervus, -ī** | M., stag, deer |
| **\*tabernāculum, -ī** | N., tent |
| **\*explōrātor, -ōris** | M., scout, explorer |
| **\*genus, -eris** | N., kind, sort |
| **imperātor, -ōris** | M., commander, leader |
| **\*legiō, -ōnis** | F:, legion, division of the Roman army (4000-6000 men) |
| **\*leō, -ōnis** | M., lion |
| **\*perfidus, -a, -um** | faithless, perfidious |
| **castra pōnere** | pitch camp, set up camp |
| **salūtem dicere** | greet |

I Whenever practical, change Declension III nouns from singular to plural or from plural to singular, and change other forms as needed for correct construction.

Explōrātōrēs nostrī dīxērunt, "Ducēs Helvētiōrum, quī magnās cōpiās trāns flūmen habent, castra nostra vāstāre parant. Cōnsulēs ducēs Helvētiōrum timent, quod corpora fortia habent et magnam fortitūdinem mōnstrant. Bona autem cōnsilia bellī et virtūtem centuriōnēs nostrī habent, et legiōnēs nostrae optimae sunt. Imperātor Rōmānus difficultātem nōn habēbit."

**255**

The king, in anguish and despair, consulted an oracle, who declared that the only way to appease the offended nymphs was to sacrifice his daughter Andromeda to the monster. Now, chained to the rock, she awaited her doom.

While they were yet speaking, a terrifying sound was heard as the monster lashed his way to the rock. Quick as a flash Perseus mounted the back of the monster, who fought in vain against his winged and unseen foe. After watching the combat from the shore, the Ethiopians joyously released Andromeda as soon as the monster was dead.

Joyfully Perseus and Andromeda, with her parents, made their way to the palace of Cepheus. There a banquet was prepared to celebrate Perseus' bravery, Andromeda's rescue, and their marriage to each other. Into the midst of the festivities rushed Phineus, who had once been betrothed to the bride but who had made no attempt to save her in her deadly peril.

A fierce struggle ensued. Perseus, fearing he would lose Andromeda, produced the Gorgon's head, and his enemies were instantly turned to stone. Cepheus provided the young people with a handsome ship, in which they sailed to the island where Danae lived. They arrived just in time to rescue her from Polydectes and turn that wicked tyrant to stone.

The charmed helmet, the winged shoes, and the pouch were returned to their owners, but Perseus presented the head of Medusa to Minerva, who thereafter wore its image on her breastplate or on her shield.

### Beware the Ides of March

Caesar, ut suprā dēmōnstrātum est, cum Pompējō et Crassō prīmum triumvirātum fēcit. In librīs dē bellō Gallicō Caesar ipse sē esse in Galliā ferē decem annōs et hīs annīs omnem Galliam vīcisse scrīpsit. Ille etiam exercitum flūmem Rhēnum in Germāniam trādūxit, et posteā in Britanniam nāvigāvit. Neque omnem Germāniam neque omnem Britanniam vīcit quod Germānī et Britannī fuērunt virī fortissimī.

Legimus Pompējum in urbe Rōmā mānsisse. Ubi multās victōriās clārissimās Caesaris audīvit, invidiā contrā Caesarem commōtus est. Quod illum dēlēre cupīvit, cōgere eum sine exercitū et sine magistrātū revenīre Rōmam cōnstituit.

Caesar Pompējum et senātum contrā lēgēs Rōmānās agere scīvit, et ipse contrā lēgēs exercitum Rubicōnem trādūxit. Ubi

OLH

Pompējus et senātus Caesarem cum exercitū sine proeliō per Ītaliam iter facere audīvērunt, Rōmā fūgērunt. Pompējus cum exercitū suō Brundisium pervēnit atque inde nāvibus ad Graeciam nāvigāvit.

Tandem duo māximī impērātōrēs Rōmānī inter sē in Thessaliā ad Pharsālum contendērunt. Pompējus exercitum mājōrem, Caesar mīlitēs fortiōrēs habēbat. Legiōnēs Pompējī ā minōribus cōpiīs Caesaris victae sunt et Pompējus, rēgem Aegyptī eī auxilium datūrum esse putāns, eō fūgit; sed mandātīs rēgis ipsīus interfectus est et caput ējus ad Caesarem missum est.

Post fīnem bellī Caesar in Āsiam Minōrem iter fēcit et Phārnacem, fīlium Mithridātis, quī Pompējō auxilium dederat, vīcit. Id dīcitur fuisse bellum Caesaris brevissimum, quī ad senātum hunc nūntium mīsit: "Vēnī, vīdī, vīcī." Posteā pauca proelia et in Āfricā et in Hispāniā gessit et tandem domum revēnit ubi victōriārum quattuor triumphōs ēgit. Quārtum cōnsulātum ēripuit (*seized*) et dictātor creātus est.

Caesar multa prō bonō pūblicō cōnfēcisse dīcitur; sed quod omnem potestātem auctōritātemque ā senātōribus et nōbilibus ēripuerat, populus Rōmānus nōn jam lībertātem habēbat.

Complūrēs senātōrēs et nōbilēs conjūrātiōnem contrā Caesarem fēcērunt quod ipsī eum esse rēgem cupere exīstimāvērunt. Caesar Īdibus Mārtiīs, dē quō diē monitus erat, sine timōre in senātum vēnit. Ūnus ē nōbilibus prope eum stantibus sīgnum dedit. Prīmō Caesar sē dēfendit, sed amīcum Brūtum apud reliquōs vidēns, "Et tū quoque, Brūte," clāmāvit neque jam contendit.

# *Unit* L

## CONVERSATION

MAGISTER: Quot ōrātiōnēs omnīnō in Catilīnam Cicerō habuit?
HENRĪCUS: Cicerō quattuor ōrātiōnēs immortālēs in Catilīnam habuit.
MAGISTER: Recitā prīmae ōrātiōnis partem, Mārce.
MĀRCUS: "Ō tempora! Ō mōrēs! Senātus haec intellegit, cōnsul videt; hic tamen vīvit. Vīvit? Etiam in senātum venit. Dēsīgnat (*Points out*) oculīs ad caedem quemque nostrum."
MAGISTER: Optimē, Mārce. Quam partem memoriā tenēs, Cornēlia?
CORNĒLIA: "Habēmus senātūs cōnsultum in tē, Catilīna. Mūtā jam istam mentem. Tenēris undique. Lūce sunt clāriōra nōbīs

arison was

e nomina-

e without

*ı her mother.*

*e have never*

*etimes ex-*

*d of* quam

*ıe is taller*

t. Latin

es: *swift,*

*ıe longest*

*ıe of the*

*ıes: short,*

*ʹays)*

ın those.

ıen.

ɔther. (2

ır.

# CHAPTER LVI

1.                        **CAESAR II**

Quartō annō bellī Gallicī, parvā parte aestātis reliquā,
tamen Caesar cum parte cōpiārum ad īnsulam Britanniam,
quae gēns ad id tempus omnīnō ignōta Rōmānīs erat itinere
brevissimō nāvigāvit. Ibi nōn diū manēbat, nam necessā-
rium erat propter frūmentī inopiam in Galliam ante hie-5
mem revenīre. Proxima aestāte quīntō bellī annō in
Britanniam exercitum iterum trādūxit et, plūribus proe-
liīs factīs, populum vīcit. Pecūniīs et obsidibus acceptīs,
cum omnibus mīlitibus ex īnsulā discessit. Postquam
Caesar ā Britanniā sē recēpit, centum annōs nūllī Rōmānī 10
ad eam appropinquāvērunt. Posteā pars īnsulae victa est
et prōvincia populī Rōmānī appellāta est.

Caesar in Galliā et Britanniā ferē novem annōs bellum
gessit et eō spatiō brevī temporis octingenta oppida ex-
pugnāverat, trecentās gentēs omnīnō vīcerat. Propter eās 15
victōriās tōta Gallia prōvincia Rōmāna appellābātur et
sub imperiō Rōmānōrum tenēbātur.

Caesar, ut[1] suprā dēmōnstrātum est, amīcitiam cum
Pompēiō et Crassō iūnxerat. Crassus autem, cuius timor
inter eōs pācem semper cōnservāverat, ā Parthīs quibus-20
cum bellum gerēbat, interfectus erat. Post mortem Crassī
et Iūliae, fīliae Caesaris, quam Pompēius in mātrımōnium[2]
dūxerat, eī duo maximī hominēs inter sē inimīciōrēs esse
incipiēbant. Uterque maximus potentissimusque erat, sed
id satis nōn erat, nam uterque potentior maiorque quam 25

---

[1] as.          [2] marriage; with **dūcere** = *to marry.*

**Marcus Brutus.** *This is the man who assassinated Julius Caesar.*

alter esse cupiēbat. Utrī-
que cupidissimī potestā-
tis glōriaeque erant et
neuter eōrum alterum su-
30 periōrem in rē pūblicā
esse cupiēbat.

Quod Caesar longē
aberat, nihil in senātū ef-
ficere poterat. Pompēius
35 autem Rōmae aderat ne-
que sententiam dīcere du-
bitāvit. Propter reī pū-
blicae condiciōnēs pessi-
mās Pompēius sōlus cōn-
40 sul ā senātū factus est et
Caesarī in fidē nōn mān-

sit. Statim nūntium ad Caesarem mīsit et iussit eum
exercitum dīmittere et Rōmam revenīre, prīvātum. Caesar
autem in quō, ut[1] suprā dēmonstrātum est, summa virtūs
45 et mēns ācris erat, exercitum nōn dīmīsit, sed mīlitēs
armātōs quī eī fidēlissimī erant trāns Rubicōnem flūmen,
quod prōvinciae eius fīnis erat, dūcere statuit. Hic
paulum cōnstitit et sibi exīstimābat, ʺSī mīlitēs meōs
trāns Rubicōnem trādūcam, contrā patriam meam bellum
50 faciam.ʺ Magnitūdine cōnsilī iterum et iterum dubitābat
et tum subitō clāmāns, ʺĀlea[3] iacta[3] est,ʺ mīlitēs suōs
trāns flūmen statim trādūxit.

Dum per Ītaliam Rōmam iter facit, populus eum magnīs
cum clāmōribus recēpit, et, plūrimīs urbibus occupātīs, sex-
55 āgintā diēbus sine ūllō proeliō dominus tōtīus Ītaliae erat.

Interim Pompēius ubi nōvit Caesarem Rōmam incēdere,
propter cōnsilī inopiam perterritus est. Itaque Brundi-

sium fūgit
tendērunt.
Pompēius (
in Caesare:
Caesar a
cum mīliti
sociīs Pom
victīs Caes:
Tum dum l
tum omne
nāvēs erar
nāvium ne
cōpiārum,
equitibus,
dubitāvit.
disium ā
equitātusc
sunt. Ubi
ex ōrā ma
litterās ā
omnēs clas
pit nāvēso
tempestāt
Postrēm
īnstrūctīs
Pharsālun
Duo m
faciēbant.
sed nōn l
spem vici
numerō p
potuērunt

---

[1] as.    [3] the die is cast.

[4] finally.

:bat. Utrī-
ī potestā-
erant et
lterum su-
ē pūblicā

ar longē
senātū ef-
Pompēius
aderat ne-
dīcere du-
er reī pū-
nēs pessi-
sōlus cōn-
:tus est et
nōn mān-
ɹ eum
m. Caesar
ma virtūs
d mīlitēs
n flūmen,
tuit. Hic
itēs meō:
m bellun.
lubitābat
litēs suōs

m magnīs
ɔātīs, sex-
ɑliae erat.'
incēdere,
: Brundi-

sium fūgit et cōnsulēs et ferē omnis senātus cum eō con-
tendērunt. Nāve ascēnsā ad Graeciam nāvigāvērunt ubi
Pompēius exercitum magnum cōgere in animō habēbat et 60
in Caesarem arma sūmere.

Caesar autem Rōmae paucōs diēs manēbat et statim
cum mīlitibus in Hispāniam cucurrit. Proximā aestāte
sociīs Pompēī quī in Hispāniā erant vī et armīs omnīnō
victīs Caesar Rōmam revēnit et ibi undecim diēs manēbat. 65
Tum dum hiems etiam adest, duodecim legiōnēs et equitā-
tum omnem Brundisium prōcēdere iussit. Ibi paucae
nāvēs erant. Maiōre parte legiōnum propter inopiam
nāvium necessāriārum relictā ipse cum minōre parte
cōpiārum, quīndecim mīlibus mīlitum et quīngentīs 70
equitibus, ad Graeciam gravissimā hieme nāvigāre nōn
dubitāvit. Expositīs mīlitibus nāvēs eādem nocte Brun-
disium ā Caesare remissae sunt et reliquae legiōnēs
equitātusque ad eum magnā cum celeritāte venīre iussī
sunt. Ubi nāvēs Brundisiō iterum nāvigāvērunt et paulum 75
ex ōrā maritimā prōcessērunt Mārcus Antōnius, lēgātus,
litterās ā Caesare accēpit, quibus certior factus est ōrās
omnēs classibus hostium tenērī. Itaque sē in portum recē-
pit nāvēsque omnēs revocāvit, et ibi propter ventōs et
tempestātem diū manēbat.                                              80

Postrēmō[4] sē cum Caesare iūnxit et legiōnibus in aciē
īnstrūctīs multās hōrās magnum proelium in Thessaliā ad
Pharsālum pugnātum est.

Duo maximī Rōmānī imperātōrēs inter sē proelium
faciēbant. Pompēius maiōrem exercitum quam Caesar 85
sed nōn meliōrem habēbat; Pompēius tamen magnam
spem victōriae habēbat. Equitēs Pompēī quamquam[5]
numerō plūrēs erant, impetum Caesaris sustinēre nōn
potuērunt. Minōrēs cōpiae potentiōrēs erant.

---

[4] finally.          [5] although.

*Time of Julius Caesar.* The coin at the left depicts Mark Antony — about 36 B.C. The one at the right depicts Orodes I, King of Parthia. He was king when Crassus met with his great disaster.

90  Pompēius omnīnō victus est et rēgem Aegyptī eī auxilium datūrum esse putāns cum paucīs mīlitibus ad Aegyptum sē in fugam dedit. Sed ubi in ōram expositus est et paucōs pedēs prōcessit ab rēge necātus est et caput eius ad Caesarem missum est quī dīcitur id multīs lacrimīs[6]
95 spectāvisse.

Proximō annō post multās aliās victōriās Caesar in Asiam Minōrem iter fēcit et intrā[7] quīntum ab adventū diem hostēs superāvit. Id bellum Caesaris brevissimum erat dē quō certiōrem fēcit senātum tribus verbīs: "Vēnī,
100 vīdī, vīcī."

Postquam Caesar domum revēnit victōriārum ex priōribus bellīs quattuor triumphōs ēgit. Tum quārtum cōnsulātum[8] accēpit et posteā dictātor creātus[9] est, sed tamen multās rēs prō bonō pūblicō effēcit. Viās mūnīvit, templa
105 statuāsque locāvit, annum ad cursum[10] sōlis accommodāvit[11], itaque annus nunc trecentōrum sexāgintā quīnque diērum erat. Īdem ex magnā lēgum cōpiā optimās et necessariās legere et in paucissimōs librōs cōnferre[12], et

[6] tears.　[7] within.　[8] consulship.　[9] elect.　[10] course.　[11] fitted.　[12] bring together.

616

*Time of Julius Caesar.* The coin at the left depicts Brutus who killed Caesar — 42 B.C. The coin at the right shows the cap of liberty and two daggers with which Caesar was killed.

fossam[13] in Graeciā facere in animō habēbat, item biblio-thēcās[14] Graecās et Latīnās pūblicāre[15]. Haec et alia 110 agēbat tum ubi mors vēnit.

Quod Caesar omnem potestātem auctoritātemque ā senātū rapuerat contrā lēgēs agēbat et populus Rōmānus lībertātem amittēbat. Caesar, ut[1] suprā dēmōnstrātum est, superior quam cēterī in rē pūblicā esse semper cupiē- 115 bat. Ūnus homō nunc imperium Rōmānum regēbat et hostēs eius dīcēbant eum rēgem esse cupere, sed id nōmen populō Rōmānō grātissimum nōn erat. Quā dē causā sexāgintā senātōrēs equitēsque apud quōs amīcus eius Mārcus Brūtus erat cōnsilia occulta dē morte eius facere 120 incēperant, nam spem lībertātis in Caesaris morte pōnī exīstimābant. Omnem quidem potestātem auctoritā-temque in manūs ūnīus cadere nōn cupīvērunt. Multīs signīs futūrī perīculī ab deīs datīs, Caesar tamen Īdibus Mārtiīs, dē quō diē monitus erat, in senātum vēnit, nam 125 Caesar putāvit timōrem mortis esse peiōrem quam mortem ipsam.

[1] as.  [13] canal.  [14] library.  [15] make public.

Mox ūnus ē multīs senātōribus circum hunc cōnsistenti-
bus propius accessit et togā prehēnsā eum tēlō mīlitārī
130 paulum vulnerāvit et, tribus et vīgintī vulneribus acceptīs,
interfectus est. Prope statuam Pompēī cecidit intrā[7]
quārtum ab Pompēī morte annum. Caesar amīcum
Brūtum apud reliquōs vidēns, "Tū quoque, Brūte,"
clāmāvit neque iam contendit. Ita vīta virī nōtissimī
135 maximīque imperātōris Rōmae fīnem habuit.

---

[7] within.

2.                         VOCABULARY

| | |
|---|---|
| aestās, aestātis, f., 3 | *summer* |
| omnīnō, adv. (from omnis) | *altogether, wholly; at all* |
| hiems, hiemis, f., 3 | *winter* |
| suprā, adv. | *above, beyond* |
| dēmōnstrō, -āre, 1 | *point out, show* |
| dubitō, -āre, 1 | *hesitate; doubt* |
| paulum, adv. | *a little* |

3.             NEW TYPES OF OLD FRIENDS

*a*. quārtus, -a, -um: an adjective from quattuor, *four
= fourth*

*b*. quīntus, -a, -um: an adjective from quīnque, *five =
fifth*

*c*. reliquus: add 1st and 2nd declension adjective end-
ings to the perfect stem of your old friend relinquō, *leave
(behind)*, and you have the new friend reliqu-us, -a, -um,
*left behind, remaining, the rest of;* pl. as noun, *the rest*

*d*. c-opia and in-opia both come from a common source
which means *wealth;* hence in-opia, *without wealth* or
*means; want, scarcity, lack*

*e*. necessārius: add the adjective suffix -ārius to the
base of necesse and you have a new adjective meaning
*necessary.*

618

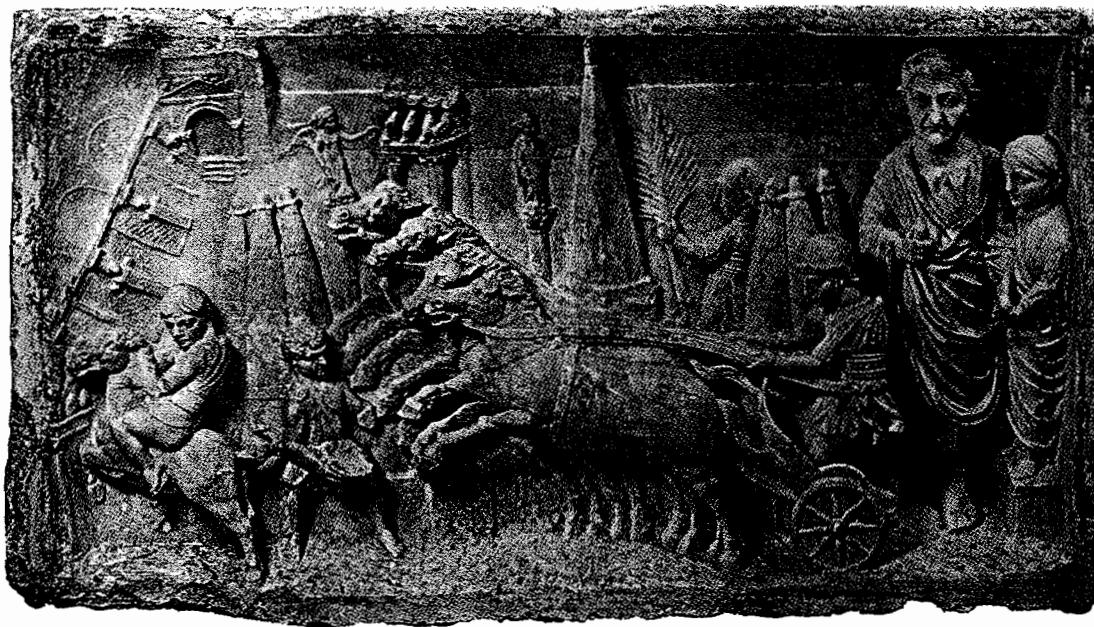*Funerary relief with chariot—Lateran Museum, Vatican, Rome*

## ——Reading——

### OCTAVIAN

Post Iūlī Caesaris mortem illī quī eum occīderant Rōmā fūgērunt. Imperium exercitūs Rōmānī Marcō Antōniō, virō summae auctōritātis quī Caesarī amīcus fuerat, ā senātū datum est. Octāviānus, autem, quī posteā Augustus est appellātus, Rōmam ā Graeciā quam celerrimē vēnit, atque imperium sibi petīvit. Tandem Octāviānus pācem et amīcitiam cum Antōniō sociīsque eius cōnfirmāvit. Hī duo prīncipēs, brevī spatiō intermissō, inimīcōs Caesaris oppressērunt.

Paulō posteā Antōnius ad prōvinciam suam profectus apud Cleopātram, rēgīnam Aegyptiōrum, morābātur. Quīdam cīvēs Rōmānī dīxērunt Antōnium Cleopātram populī Rōmānī rēgīnam factūrum esse. Hīs rēbus incitātus Octāviānus bellum Antōniō intulit et victōriam cōnsecūtus est. Omnibus inimīcīs per tōtum orbem terrārum victīs, Octāviānus Rōmam rediit ut sōlus cīvitātem cum pāce regeret.

Id quod Iūlius Caesar facere cōnātus erat cōnfēcit Octāviānus Augustus. Timōre atque perīculō cīvēs Rōmānōs līberāvit. Salūs prōvinciārum Augustō magnae cūrae erat. Itaque postquam cognōvit quantās iniūriās passae essent, aliās prōvinciās regēbat ipse, aliās senātuī commīsit. Ille omnia tam bene gessit ut ā senātū pater patriae appellārētur et post mortem suam in numerō deōrum habērētur.

For a comedy the stage scenery usually represented a street, with an entrance at each end, one toward the town, the other toward the sea. The fronts of two or three houses, with doors that opened, provided backstage scenery. Entrances and exits were through the doors or at either end of the street. Later, stage scenery in the form of prisms was used. These could be turned to represent a palace, prison, or whatever was needed.

If a murder was essential to the plot, a platform was rolled out suddenly onto the stage. The murderer stood with his dripping dagger. The victim was at his feet. Nothing was said. After the audience had duly gasped, the platform was rolled back, the indications of murder were washed away, and the supposed corpse would reappear in another part.

Admission to these plays was free to every citizen. Women were not admitted to comedies, but they could be present at tragedies. In later times no such restrictions were made. The chariot races and gladiatorial combats were always more popular than plays, which gradually degenerated into the lowest and the coarsest pantomimes and mimes. Finally, under the influence of Christianity, these disappeared entirely.

## Augustus: Imperātor et Prīnceps

Mārcus Brūtus, quod hominem interficere prō bonō pūblicō jūstum esse exīstimābat, conjūrātiōnem contrā Caesarem, amīcum suum, facere nōn dubitāvit. Populō Rōmānō māgnopere incitātō ab Antōniō contrā hominēs quī Caesarem interfēcerant, Brūtus et sociī ex urbe fūgērunt. Antōnius, dux Caesaris partis (*party*) creātus, bellum cīvīle effēcit. Caesar, quī nūllum fīlium habēbat, Gājum Octāvium fīlium fīliae sorōris adoptāverat.

Caesare interfectō, Octāvius in Ītaliam quam celerrimē vēnit et cum Antōniō bellum gessit. Magistrātum Caesaris sibi capere cupīvit, sed ante adventum ējus Antōnius, parte Caesaris adjuvante, in manūs omnem potestātem cēperat.

Brevī tempore intermissō, multīs cōpiīs novīs cōnscrīptīs, Octāvius cum duābus legiōnibus Caesaris quae eī sē trādiderant, cum Antōniō diū contendit. Antōniō victō, Octāvius cum Antōniō et Lepidō secundum triumvirātum fēcit. Illī plūrimōs inimīcōs prōscrīpsērunt, inter quōs, ut suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, erat Cicerō, quī ōrātiōnēs multās et ācrēs contrā Antōnium habuerat. Inimīcīs interfectīs, bona et dīvitiās rapere poterant.

OLH

Jūnctīs triumvirōrum exercitibus, Octāvius et Antōnius in Graeciam nāvigāvērunt et in māgnō proeliō Philippīs Brūtum et Cassium vīcērunt. Brūtus statim sē interfēcit. Bellō cōnfectō, Lepidus in Āfricam, Āntōnius in Āsiam prōcessit. Octāvius sōlus Rōmam properāvit.

Quīnque annīs intermissīs, Octāvius in Siciliam nāvigāvit et ibi Sextum, fīlium Pompējī, facillimē vīcit. Octāvius, quī Lepidum auxilium Sextō dedisse exīstimāvit, hunc captum Rōmam mīsit, ubi Lepidus prīvātus per reliquam vītam suam ēgit. Antōnius in Aegyptō, quod sē Cleopātram rēgīnam amāre putābat, uxōrem suam Octāviam, sorōrem Octāvī, dīmīsit.

Octāvius īrātus omnēs rēs ad bellum pertinentēs parāvit, et ad Aegyptum nāvigāvit. Apud Actium, oppidum Graecum, pūgnātum est. Uterque classem in aciē īnstrūxit. Aliae nāvēs Antōnī sē in fugam dēdērunt; aliae Octāviō sē trādidērunt. Antōnius, postquam exercitus ējus etiam Octāviō sē trādidit, in Aegyptum fūgit.

Proximō annō Octāvius in Aegyptum nāvigāvit, sed Antōnius et Cleopātra, quī eum venīre audīvērunt, sē interfēcērunt. Omnibus inimīcīs victīs, Octāvius sōlus Rōmae summum imperium tenēbat. Augustus, Imperātor, Prīnceps ā senātū appellātus est.

# *Unit* LII

## CONVERSATION

MAGISTER: Caesar scrībit Helvētiōs reliquōs incolās Galliae virtūte superāvisse. Crēdisne Caesarī?

ROBERTUS: Scīmus antīquīs temporibus Helvētiōs ferē cotīdiānīs (*daily*) proeliīs Germānīs restitisse et nocuisse.

MAGISTER: Quam ob rem Helvētiī cum Germānīs contendēbant?

MĀRCELLA: Interdum suīs fīnibus Germānōs prohibēbant; interdum ipsī in eōrum fīnibus bellum gerēbant.

MAGISTER: In quō locō habitābant Helvētiī?

HENRĪCUS: Gēns Helvētiōrum eam partem Galliae habitābat quae nunc "Switzerland" appellātur. Proximī erant Germānīs quī trāns Rhēnum vīvēbant. Genāva, māgnum oppidum

be enlisted because he has been wounded before. 7. The wise father did not ask his son what was happening in the camp where he was. 8. Did he ask when the hostages who were being brought from Britain would come to Rome? 9. They will be informed that the old general who has been wounded in battle will not come home. 10. The slaughter of all the sick animals was done the same day.

— *Reading* —

### HORACE, A ROMAN POET

Q. Horātius Flaccus puer Rōmam adductus est ā patre, quī scīvit fīlium suum in eā urbe disciplīnam meliōrem acceptūrum quam sī domī Venusiae manēret. Mōs erat ut puer Rōmānus servum semper habēret quī cum puerō ad lūdum īret, ut eum ā malīs dēfenderet. Pater ipse Horātī hoc servī officium accipere māluit.

Posteā Horātius Athēnās profectus est. Ibi quōsdam clārōs virōs et Graecōs et Rōmānōs nōvit, inter quōs erat M. Brūtus, quī bellum cum Octāviānō gerere parābat. Horātius sē cum Brūtī cōpiīs iūnxit. Duōbus post annīs, exercitū Brūtī victō, Horātius domum rediit miser et sine pecūniā. Eō tempore carmina scrībere incipiēbat.

Mox autem per Vergilium, alium poētam, auxilium ā potentī amīcō Augustī accēpit. Hic amīcus, Maecēnās nōmine, vir ēgregius, carminibus Horātī audītīs, eī pecūniam atque vīllam in collibus Rōmae propinquīs positam dedit. Horātius, iam imperātōris amīcus, ob sua carmina et levia et gravia nōtissimus in poētīs fīēbat. Carminibus docēbat virum integrum vītam beātiōrem agere quam eum quī potēns esset.

Dē fonte qui erat prope suam vīllam cecinit: "Fīēs nōbilium tū quoque fontium"; atque suam ipsam glōriam hīs verbīs praedīxit: "Nōn omnis moriar." Hoc vērē dictum est, quod etiam hodiē plūrimī sciunt quis fuerit Horātius.

OBJECTIVES
- To learn about the early life and work of Vergil
- To learn hints for understanding Latin
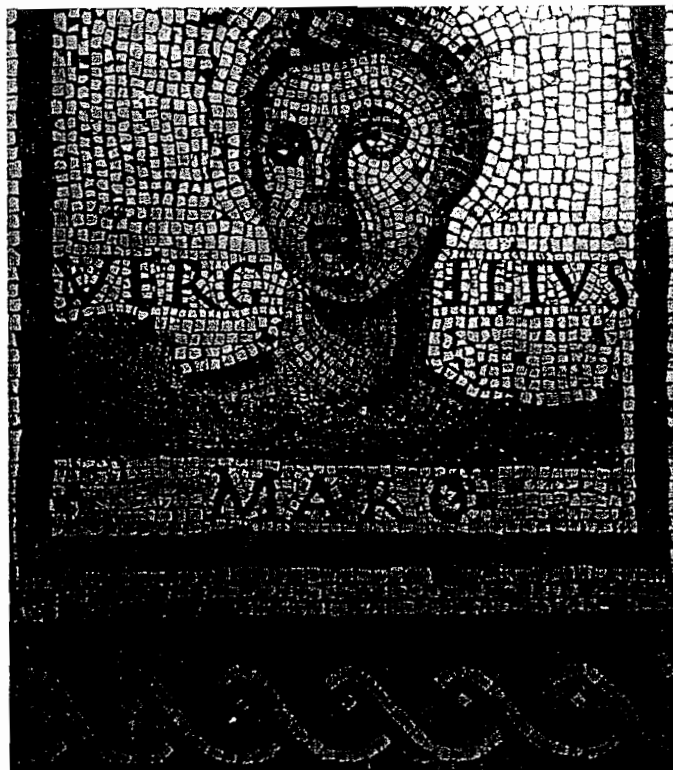- To learn how to form and translate the imperfect tense

# POĒTA CLĀRUS

**Q**uondam puer parvus Pūblius prope[1] Mantuam, oppidum Italiae, habitābat. Fīlius erat agricolae. In agrīs Pūblius nōn labōrābat quod numquam valuit, sed agrōs, silvās, frūmentum, et equōs amābat. In lūdō[2] multōs librōs legēbat, multās fābulās dē glōriā patriae et dē locīs clārīs
5 Italiae audiēbat, verba sententiāsque magistrī memoriā tenēbat.

Reliquī puerī in patriā mānsērunt, sed Pūblius, nunc vir, in urbe[3] Rōmā studia coluit[4]. In Forō Rōmānō verba numquam fēcit quod timidus erat et populus eum[5] terrēbat. Bella armaque semper fugiēbat, concordiam ōtiumque amābat. Agrōs et casam familiae āmīsit[6], sed auxiliō amīcōrum recēpit.
10 Magnam grātiam amīcīs semper habēbat. Amīcōs nōn multōs sed firmōs habēbat. Tum carmina[7] varia dē agrīs agricolīsque scrībere incēpit. Tardē scrībēbat multumque labōrābat, sed nōn multa carmina effēcit. Posteā[8] magnum carmen[9] dē bellō Trōiānōrum et dē glōriā Rōmae scrīpsit.

Audīvistisne dē Pūbliō, puerī puellaeque? Erat Pūblius Vergilius Marō[10], clārus poēta Rōmānus, quī reliquōs poētās Rōmānōs superāvit[11].
15 Lēgistis legētisque fābulam pulchram Vergilī dē Aenēā.

[1] near
[2] school
[3] city
[4] cultivated, carried on
[5] him
[6] lost
[7] songs, poems (acc. pl.)
[8] afterwards
[9] song, poem (acc. sing.)



Dagli Orti/Museo della Civilta Romana, Rome/The Art Archive

Publius Vergilius Maro, or simply Vergil (70–19 B.C.), was one of Rome's greatest poets. He created the *Eclogues*, ten poems in the forms of pastoral poetry dealing with the social, political, and literary questions of his day. Next came his *Georgics*, four poems devoted to different aspects of farming, and finally his masterpiece, the *Aeneid*, in twelve books, left slightly unf    hed at his death. The simple prose selections in this textbook will tell you at least the plot of this great Roman epic.

Statue of Augustus in His Forum.

*hout a preposi-
vord implying
*e* between two

:he adjectives
iglish.

*ickly* than the

friendship.
ter.
ie *smaller* one

r tnought he

*ully* managed.
:s:
derstood that
iuld not seek
ht.

ero rescued
from very

y knew that
have the nec-
.

of Romulus and
olf, on the end of
i today. It was set
vhen Rhodes was
' to govern.

## CHAPTER LVIII

### SIXTH REVIEW – CHAPTERS LII - LVIII

#### REVIEW STORY

1.

a. **AUGUSTUS**

Caesar, ūnus dē imperātōribus maximīs omnium tem-
porum, ut[1] suprā dēmōnstrātum est, ē vītā discessit. Ā
Mārcō Brūtō interfectus est quī vērō cīvitātem ex iniūriīs
eius servāre cupiēbat. Brūtus Caesarem, amīcum suum,
interficere nōn dubitāvit, nam exīstimābat interficere 5
hominem prō bonō pūblicō iūs esse. Exīstimābat populum
Rōmānum quoque Caesaris mortis cupidum futūrum esse.
Ubi autem certior factus est populum Rōmānum mortem
suam coniūrātōrumque[2] cēterōrum cum magnīs clāmōribus
postulāre, hunc et sociōs ex urbe ante lūcem magnā 10
celeritāte currere necessārium erat.

---

[1] as.    [2] conspirators.

639

LWR

Eō tempore M. Antōnius quī optimus amīcus Caesaris fuerat Rōmam male regēbat. Intellēxit sē propter Octāviānum, Caesaris hērēdem[3], et Lepidum, magistrum equi-
15 tum, quī dux mīlitum erat, in difficultātibus esse. Mox cum Lepidō in grātiam vēnit et dux Caesaris partis dēlēctus est. Iam initium bellī cīvīlis factum est quod per quattuordecim annōs gestum est. Octāviānō imperium bellī in Antōnium ā senātū datum est.

20 Hic Octāviānus, ut[1] suprā dēmōnstrātum est, fīlius erat fīliae sorōris Caesaris. Quārtum annum agēns patrem āmīsit, itaque ab Caesare adoptātus[4] est. Ubi cognōvit Caesarem interfectum esse et sē hērēdem[3] relictum esse Rōmā longē aberat, sed in urbem celeriter prōcessit,
25 hērēditātem[5] accēpit, nōmen Caesaris sūmpsit. Item magistrātum Caesaris obtinēre cupīvit, sed ante adventum eius Antōnius in manūs potestātem sūmpserat, nam Octāviānum ab imperiō prohibēre cupiēbat.

Quod Octāviānus mīlitibus Caesaris grātissimus erat,
30 duae legiōnēs huic sē trādiderant. Brevī tempore inter-missō, multīs mīlitibus novīs cōnscrīptīs, cōpiās in Galliam dūxit et ibi bellum duōbus proeliīs perfēcit; quōrum in alterō nōn ducis modō, sed mīlitis officium fēcit. Inde in Ītaliam paulum recessit et cum Antōniō diū pugnābat.
35 Uterque alterum superāre temptābat sed nihil effectum est. Pācem igitur inter sē fēcērunt et Lepidus eīs sē iūnxit. Octāviānus in fidē senātuī nōn mānserat. Ipse et Lepidus et Antōnius in īnsulā flūminis convēnērunt et cōnsilia cēpērunt. Iam omnia cum amīcīs commūnia
40 habēbat. Propter inopiam pecūniae triumvirī, ut[1] ap-pellātī sunt, suōs quisque[6] inimīcōs prōscrīpsērunt[7], nam inimīcīs interfectīs, bona rapere poterant. Eō modō

Antōnius (
eōrum exp
pāvit. Ali
runt. Ho
multōrum
et id perīc
Iūnctīs
urbem nō
annīs post
exercitū i
aciem ēdu
coniūrātīs
dextra ac
Brevī aut
superātus
Lepidus i
erant, pr

---

[1] as.     [3] heir.     [4] adopt.     [5] inheritance.     [6] each one.
[7] place on the list for death.

[2] conspirat

640

*Forum of Augustus.* Remains of temple of Mars Ultor.

nicus Caesaris
propter Octā-
 igistrum equi-
us esse. Mox
aesaris partis
n est quod per
inō imperium

est, fīlius erat
agēns patrem
Ubi cognōvit
relictum esse
iter prōcessit,
impsit. Item
r adventum
npuerat, nam

itissimus erat,
empore inter-
iās in Galliam
it; quōrum in
n fēcit. Inde
diū pugnābat.
nihil effectum
epidus eīs sē
serat. Ipse et
onvēnērunt et
is commūnia
nvirī, ut[1] ap-
psērunt[7], nam
t. Eō modō

Antōnius Cicerōnem rapī et interficī iussit. Mox cōnsilia
eōrum exposita sunt et terror ferē omnium mentēs occu-
pāvit. Aliī statim prehēnsī sunt et aliī ex urbe contendē- 45
runt. Hominēs causīs levibus interfectī sunt. Salūs
multōrum Rōmānōrum summum in perīculum vocāta est
et id perīculum mortis per omnēs ōrdinēs pertinēbat.

Iūnctīs triumvirōrum cōpiīs Rōmam incessērunt et
urbem nōn mūnītam facillimē occupāvērunt. Duōbus 50
annīs post mortem Caesaris Antōnius et Octāviānus cum
exercitū in Graeciam nāvigāvērunt et mox exercitū in
aciem ēductō in Brūtum, commūnem inimīcum, ūnum ē
coniūrātīs[2], impetum fēcērunt. In prīmō proeliō Brūtī
dextra aciēs contrā Octāviānum īnstrūcta facile vīcit. 55
Brevī autem tempore post Brūtus prope Philippōs omnīnō
superātus est et statim sē interfēcit. Post id proelium
Lepidus in Āfricam, Antōnius in Asiam, ubi officia levia
erant, prōcessit; Octāviānus Rōmae relictus est. Iam

[2] conspirators.

641

60 Octāviānus sōlus regere statuit, nam superior quam cēterī in rē pūblicā esse cupiēbat. Itaque quīntō annō post proelium Philippōrum plūribus legiōnibus novīs cōnscrīptīs cum mīlibus mīlitum in Siciliam nāvigāvit. Hīc Sextum, fīlium Pompeī, cui sēnsit Lepidum auxilium dare, 65 facile superāvit. Lepidus captus Rōmam missus est ubi prīvātus vīxit. Etiam satis auctōritātis nōn occupāverat. Antōnium Rōmā prohibēre in animō habēbat. Imperium cum eō commūne habēre nōn cupīvit.

Ubi Octāviānus ab Siciliā revēnit, sibi, "Sōlus," inquit, 70 "summam potestātem tenēre cupiō. Antōnium ab auctōritāte prohibēbō." Itaque multīs mīlibus mīlitum equitātibusque cōnscrīptīs, maximum exercitum et classem exercuit armāvitque. Spatiō sex annōrum intermissō, postquam omnēs rēs ad bellum pertinentēs parātae erant, ad 75 Aegyptum nāvigāvit et Antōnium ad ōram maritimam Actī, oppidī Graeciae invēnit. Uterque classem suam in aciē īnstrūxit et plūrēs hōrās pugna fortiter facta est, sed neuter eōrum victor discessit. Subitō paucae Antōnī nāvium ex pugnā sē recēpērunt et in fugam sē dedērunt. 80 Brevī tempore intermissō reliquae nāvēs ācrius pressae Octāviānō sē trādidērunt. Mox exercitus quoque sē trādidit et tum Antōnius omnīnō superātus est. Nūlla vulnera excēpit sed, quod facultās fugae eī nōn data est, gladiō suō sē interfēcit.

85 Nunc Octāviānus prīnceps cīvitātis erat et rēgnum Aegyptī obtinuerat. Ibi plūrēs mēnsēs mānsit et rēs ratiōnēsque bene administrāvit. Posteā aliīs prōvinciīs cōnspectīs ad Ītaliam recessit et trēs triumphōs ēgit. Iam bellīs omnibus perfectīs erat pāx terrā marīque per tōtum 90 imperium Rōmānum. Octāviānus templī Iānī portās suā manū clausit quae tantum[8] bis anteā[9] clausae erant,

[8] only.     [9] before.

642
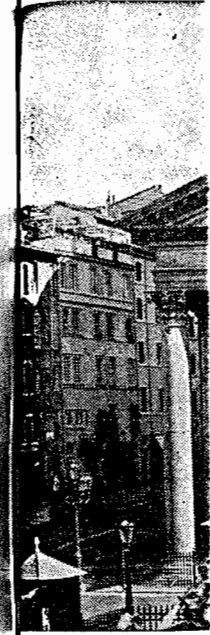
primu
iterum
in grā
benefi
iam i
Prōvi
strant
cīviun
benefi
est et
appell
appell
studiō
aedifi
cōnsp
admii
     Pe
————
[1] as.

erior quam  
tō annō post  
novīs cōn-  
igāvit. Hīc  
xilium dare,  
ssus est ubi  
ccupāverat.  
. Imperium  

lus," inquit,  
m ab auctō-  
itum equitā-  
lassem exer-  
missō, post-  
e rant, ad  
maritimam  
assem suam  
er facta est,  
ucae Antōnī  
sē dedērunt.  
rius pressae  
quoque sē  
s est. Nūlla  
iōn data est,  

et rēgnum  
ānsit et rēs  
is prōvinciīs  
ōs ēgit. Iam  
ae per tōtum  
ī portās suā  
ausae erant,  
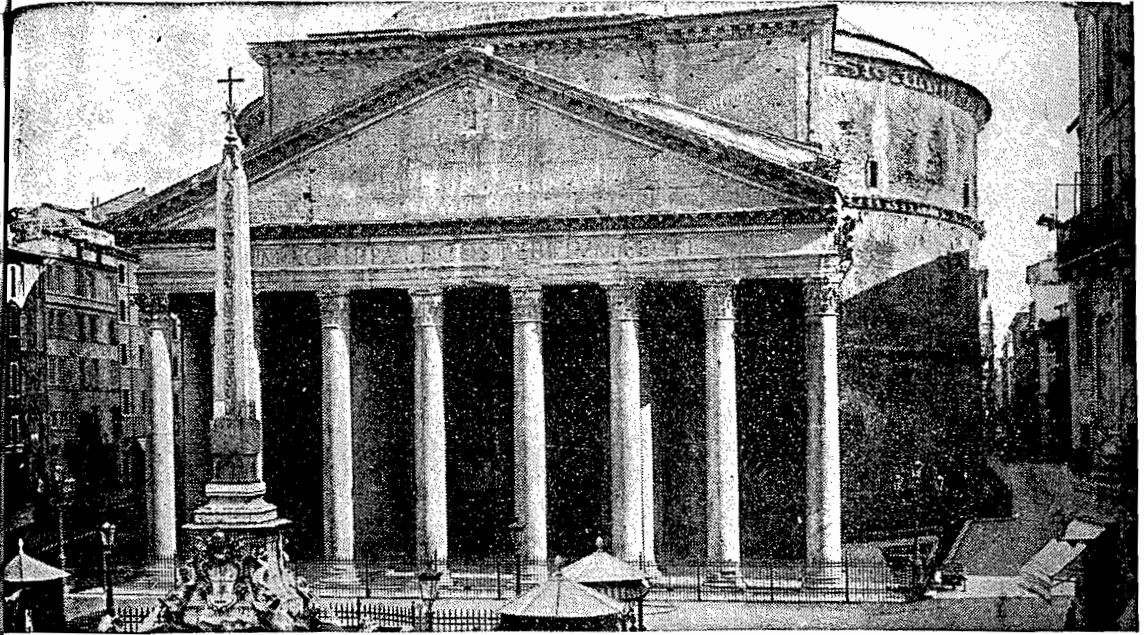


*Pantheon—Rome.*

prīmum, ut[1] suprā dēmōnstrātum est, sub Numā rēge, iterum post prīmum Pūnicum bellum. Inimīcī hostēsque in grātiam huius vēnērunt, nam similis Caesarī magnum beneficium omnibus ostendit. Hominēs causīs levibus nōn[95] iam interficiuntur neque iniūriā potentium premuntur. Prōvinciae quoque melius quam in priōribus annīs administrantur. Populī pressī contrā cōnsuētūdinem multa iūra cīvium Rōmānōrum obtinent. Octāviānō ipsī maxima beneficia ā senātū data sunt. Ipse Augustus appellātus[100] est et in honōrem eius sextus[10] mēnsis annī eōdem nōmine appellātus est. Imperātor et Prīnceps quoque ā senātū appellātus est. Nōmen "Pater Patriae" ā cīvibus maximō studiō Augustō collātum est.[11] Multa aedificia templaque aedificāvit, inter quae Pantheon erat quod Rōmae hodiē[105] cōnspicere etiam possumus. Omnia ad pācem pertinentia administrāta sunt.

Pedibus saepe per urbem cum praesidiīs incēdēbat,

---

[1] as.  [10] sixth.  [11] offer.

643

magnō studiō ad sē ap-
110 propinquantēs excipiēbat.
Per annōs plūs quam quad-
rāgintā in eādem domō hi-
eme et aestāte habitāvit.
Rēs magnās et gravēs, ra-
115 tiōnēs cīvitātis et mīlitārēs
et cīvīlēs optimē adminis-
trāvit et ā populō Rōmānō
magnopere amātus est.

Augustō imperātōre "nā-
120 tus[12] erat Christus Iēsus
in Bethlehem Iūdaeae in

Vergil

diēbus Hērōdis rēgis," quem Antōnius rēgem huius
prōvinciae Rōmānae fēcerat.

Ex cōnsuētūdine vītae tempore pācis hominēs in studiō
125 litterārum[13] semper versantur[13]. Ita iam multī Rōmānī
omnibus bellīs perfectīs sē in totō litterīs trādidērunt.
Maecēnas, vir nōbilissimī generis, amīcus fidēlis Augustī,
quem dē rēbus ratiōnibusque cīvitātis saepe monēbat,
magnum beneficium poētīs scrīptōribusque ostendit. Quod
130 magnam pecūniam habēbat auxilium eīs saepe dabat quam
rem in Capite V huius librī nōvistis. Inter eōs quōs Maecē-
nas domī suae accēpit Horātius, Vergilius, Ovidius, Līvius
erant sed Vergiliō Horātiōque amīcissimus maximē erat.
Horātius vōbīs nōtissimus est. Vergilium ex cōnsuētūdine
135 quārtō annō scholae[14] nōscētis. Aenēidem, quem librum
scrīpsit, magnā cum admīrātiōne cōnspiciētis legētisque.

Augustō quoque plūrimī scrīptōrēs grātissimī erant, sed
Ovidium excēpit. Ob causās occultās Ovidium ex Ītaliā
in exsilium expulit. Postquam quadrāgintā et quattuor
140 annōs magnā cum cūrā rēxit, ē vītā discessit.

---

[12] born. (Matthew 2, 1)        [13] are engaged in literary pursuits.        [14] high school

644

# XLII

## VESUVIUS

Plīnius sum; apud avunculum habitābam, cujus vīlla erat in
locō altō inter oppidum Mīsēnum et ōram maritimam.

Ōlim māter mea in hortō vīllae ambulābat. Subitō clā-
māvit, "Spectā flammās clārās! Spectā caelum obscūrum!
Quod perīculum est propinquum?" 5

Caelum spectāvī. Circum Vesuvium flammae erant clārae
et fūmus erat dēnsus. Statim Plīnium avunculum meum
vocāvī.

Avunculus Vesuvium spectāvit. Tum ad locum altum
extrā mūrōs hortī properāvit. 10

Mox revēnit et dīxit, "Vocā servōs! Nostrī amīcī, quī vīllās
Vesuviō proximās habent, magnō in perīculō sunt; eōs juvāre
dēbeō. Quī servī mē juvābunt?"

Statim paucīs cum servīs ad ōram maritimam properāvit.
In hortō mānsimus; diū eum expectāvimus, sed nōn revēnit. 15

Postrīdiē erat magnus mōtus terrae.° Vesuvius fūmum et
cinerēs° dēnsōs in hortum et circum mūrōs mittēbat. Perīcu-
lum maximum erat.

Dēnique ā vīllā per viās Mīsēnī fūgimus. Multī incolae
territī per viās obscūrās et angustās currēbant. Multās post 20
hōrās ad vīllam lentē revēnimus et ibi avunculum iterum
expectābāmus.

Postrīdiē nūntius vēnit, quī dīxit, "Vesuvius Pompeiōs et
Herculāneum dēlēvit. Avunculus tuus, quī multōs servāvit,
mortuus est." 25

°mō′tus ter′rae  (nom. sing.) earthquake  •  cinerēs  (acc. pl.)
ashes

| | |
|---|---|
| *fū′mus, -i | M., smoke |
| quī, quae, quod | (interrog. adj.) which, what |
| *prox′imus, -a, -um | nearest, very near |
| *cur′rō, -ere, cucur′rī | run |
| *ex′trā | (with acc.) beyond, outside |

eral.   4. It was necessary to send troops to bring help to our cavalry, certain of whom had been wounded in battle. 5. Although the Germans chose their wisest leader, nevertheless he could not resist the Roman cavalry.   6. If we consult the interests of the state in this matter, who of the citizens will be harmed?   7. We ought to trust that citizen who returned the money; at any rate (**quidem**) we cannot harm him.   8. They wished to drive the ambassadors from the town, for the conditions of peace were most disgraceful.   9. On account of the arrival of Caesar himself, the Germans did not harm even the slaves of our allies.   10. The general approached the town and put Lucius in command of his forces.

## —— *Reading* ——

### MARCUS AURELIUS AND THE CHRISTIANS

Mārcus Aurēlius, vir maximā virtūte et ūnus ex quīnque bonīs imperātōribus Rōmānīs, patriam suam iūstissimē vīgintī annōs rēxit. Erat cōnsuētūdō eiusdem per viās Rōmae cum servō ambulāre et cum cīvibus dē eōrum difficultātibus loquī. Omnibus temporibus erat hīs auxiliō. Itaque Rōmānī exīstimāvērunt illum esse omnium imperātōrum optimum.

Necesse erat Aurēlium multīs proeliīs pugnāre ut Rōmānōs fīnēs dēfenderet. Ōlim bellum in barbaram gentem Quādōs appellātam īnferēbat. Hostēs tam acriter undique aggressī sunt ut Rōmānī sē in inīquum locum recipere cōgerentur. Quō factō, ob vim sōlis omnēs inopiam gravissimam aquae patiēbantur. Quādam in legiōne erant tria mīlia Christiānōrum quī simul clāmāvērunt, "Domine, dā nōbīs auxilium; aqua sit."

Statim tonītrus audītur, lūx discēdit, imber pervenit. Omnibus tantum virtūtis redditur ut in hostēs multō ācriōrem impetum faciant. Quādīs ita victīs, omnēs crēdidērunt ab deō Christiānōrum imbrem missum esse.

Christiānī, imperātōrem ad suam fidem dūcere cōnātī, hāc spē dēiectī sunt. Eīs, tamen, amīcissimus erat. Aurēlius, cuidam rogantī quod nōmen huic legiōnī darētur, respondit sē eam Legiōnem Tonitrūs semper appellātūrum esse.

*Friez(*

# V. Rome

## Sights, monuments, Surroundings, etc.

or, as we sometimes express the idea in English, –like.  What do the words *divine* and *feminine* mean?

The flower of the *columbine* resembles a group of *doves*, hence its name; but it is difficult to see the relation between the dainty blue *lupine* and the *wolf* after which it is named.  Do you know that if you are *capricious* (**caper,** *goat*) in your moods, you are also *hircine*, acting like a *goat* (**hircus**)?

## SENTENCE PATTERNS

A. Complete with the required form and translate:

1. Rōmānī propinqua loca (were ravaging).
2. Virī prope rīpam industriē labōrant et fēminae virōs (are aiding).
3. Fīnitimī inimīcī ubi mūrum circum oppidum (they will have built) contrā Rōmānōs (will fight).
4. Agrōs sociōrum (they had laid waste), sed incolās servāverant.
5. Mūrus Rōmānus multās portās (has), et per portās multī Rōmānī cotīdiē (walked).
6. Nōnne viae longae lātaeque ab Ītaliā ad multās terrās (did extend)?
7. Portābantne (messengers) litterās saepe ad locum?
8. Ōlim (there were) multae tabernae (on all sides), sed posteā virī clārī aedificia pulchra (built).
9. Sī sociī Rōmānōs nōn (will have aided), Rōmānī agrōs sōciōrum (will lay waste).
10. Portam bene memoriā teneō.  Per portam et circum oppidum saepe (I walked).

B. Translate into Latin the italicized words or phrases.

1. If the Romans *will have built* a wall *around the town*, the inhabitants *will not fear* the enemy.
2. Cicero *with many words warned the Roman people about the great danger* to the fatherland.
3. The Sacra Via *is not far away* from the Rostra, where *the famous Roman is standing*.
4. *On all sides there used to be* many *shops*.
5. *They fought* in many wars *against hostile neighbors*.

## The Glory of Ancient Rome

Paulus et Patricius cum amīcīs ad Forum Rōmānum properābant.  Forum, māgnum spatium oblongum inter Capitōlium et Palātīnum, in mediō (*middle of*) oppidō prope rīpam Tiberis erat.  Prīmō Forum erat locus negōtī, et undique erant parvae tabernae.

OLH

Posteā Rōmānī clārī aedificia māgna pulchraque ibi aedificāvērunt. Comitium (*Place of Assembly*) prope tabernās erat. In aedificiō Mārcī Aemilī, Rōmānī negōtia pūblica cūrābant. Prope monumentum erat Cūria ubi senātōrēs Rōmānī congregābant. Nōn longē ā Cūriā erant Āra (*Altar*) deī Vulcānī et Templum deī Jānī et carcer (*prison*) et Rōstra ubi multī virī clārī ōrātiōnēs habēbant (*delivered speeches*). Cicerō ibi populum Rōmānum dē virīs malīs monēbat.

Paulus et Patricius cum amīcīs per templa et circum aedificia ambulāvērunt. Templum Vestae in Forō erat. Ibi sex puellae, Virginēs Vestālēs, flammam perpetuam Vestae semper servābant. Prope Templum Vestae stābat atrium ubi Virginēs habitābant. Multae statuae Virginum Vestālium clārārum ibi erant.

Puerī Templum Sāturnī, deī agricultūrae, et Templum pulchrum Castoris et Pollūcis amābant. Castor et Pollūx in bellō Rōmānōs adjūverant et Rōmam servāverant. Multī nūntiī ad Rōstra litterās ē virīs clārīs et ē prōvinciīs portābant. Senātōrēs nōbilēs in quadrīgīs (*chariots*), fēminae pulchrae in lectīcīs (*litters*), agricolae cum equīs et carrīs per Forum cotīdiē properābant. Puellae et puerī, māgnī et parvī, in viīs et prope aedificia lūdēbant (*used to play*).

Puerī vērō aedificia splendida amābant et bene memoriā tenēbunt. Sed quid est hodiē in Forō Rōmānō? Tristēs (*sad*) ruīnās spectāmus. Nōn jam (*No longer*) virī et fēminae in templīs pulchrīs multōs deōs adōrant. Nōn jam senātōrēs superbī (*proud*) in Cūriā negōtia pūblica cūrant. Nōn jam Rōmānī clārī ē Rōstrīs ōrātiōnēs habent. Līberī laetī inter ruīnās lūdunt. Forum Rōmānum locus desertus est, sed ruīnae pulchrae cūnctīs populīs glōriam Rōmae antīquae vērē prōclāmant.

# *Unit* XVII

## CONVERSATION

MAGISTER: Quī servus contrā dominōs Rōmānōs pūgnāvit, Roberte?
ROBERTUS: Spartacus gladiātor sociōs ad bellum incitāvit et contrā populum Rōmānum māgnō cum studiō pūgnāvērunt.
MAGISTER: Cūr servus clārus sociōs congregāvit et incitāvit?
ROBERTUS: Spartacus cūnctōs servōs līberāre dēsīderāvit.

**Roman Forum.** *As seen today, looking toward the west—Tabularium, center back; Columns of Saturn, left; Arch of S. Severus, right.*

## CHAPTER XVIII

**1.**                                    **IN FORŌ RŌMĀNŌ**

Vibia et Tertia ē vīllā veniunt et per viam properant. Mārcum fīlium Galbae agricolae et amīcum Sextum in viā inveniunt. Puerī cum puellīs ē viā in casam Helenae quae litterās scrībit properant; Lesbiam et Aspāsiam vidēre volunt, nam amīcitia est magna. In ātrium properant, sed puellae in ātriō nōn sunt. Ex ātriō vident Lesbiam et Aspāsiam quae prope aquam in mediō peri-stȳliō sunt. In peristȳliō sunt multae rosae et violae et līlia quae puellae legunt. Puellae peristȳlium amant.

"Ad Forum Rōmānum properāmus. Vultisne venīre?" 10 Vibia rogat.

"Forum vidēre volumus," respondent.

Scale in Feet
0 50 100 200 300 400 500

BASILICA AEMILIA

3 T A B E R N A E
4. PORTICUS

CURIA

TEMPLUM IANI

LACUS CURTIUS

COLUMNA

S T A T U A E

SACRA VIA

ROSTRA

ARA VULCANI

BASILICA IULIA

4. PORTICUS

TEMPLUM CONCORDIAE

TEMPLUM SATURNI

CLIVUS CAPITOLINUS

2. TABULARIUM

TEMPLUM IOVIS ON THIS SPUR OF HILL

SACRA VIA

TEMPLUM CASTORIS

TEMPLUM VESTAE

4. PORTICUS

ATRIUM VESTAE

FONS IUTURNAE

VIA

CLIVUS

STAIRS

PALATIUM

N

1. The new site to which Caesar decided to remove the Rostra, although it was not dedicated until 42 B.C.

2. The Tabularium was the building in which the records were kept.

3. The Tabernae were the shops.

4. The Porticus consisted of two or more rows of columns which were covered. Its chief purpose was to provide a place for walking and lounging which would be sheltered from rain and sun.

Roman Forum. *A plan of the Forum in Rome as it appeared in the latter days of the free republic before the changes of Augustus.*
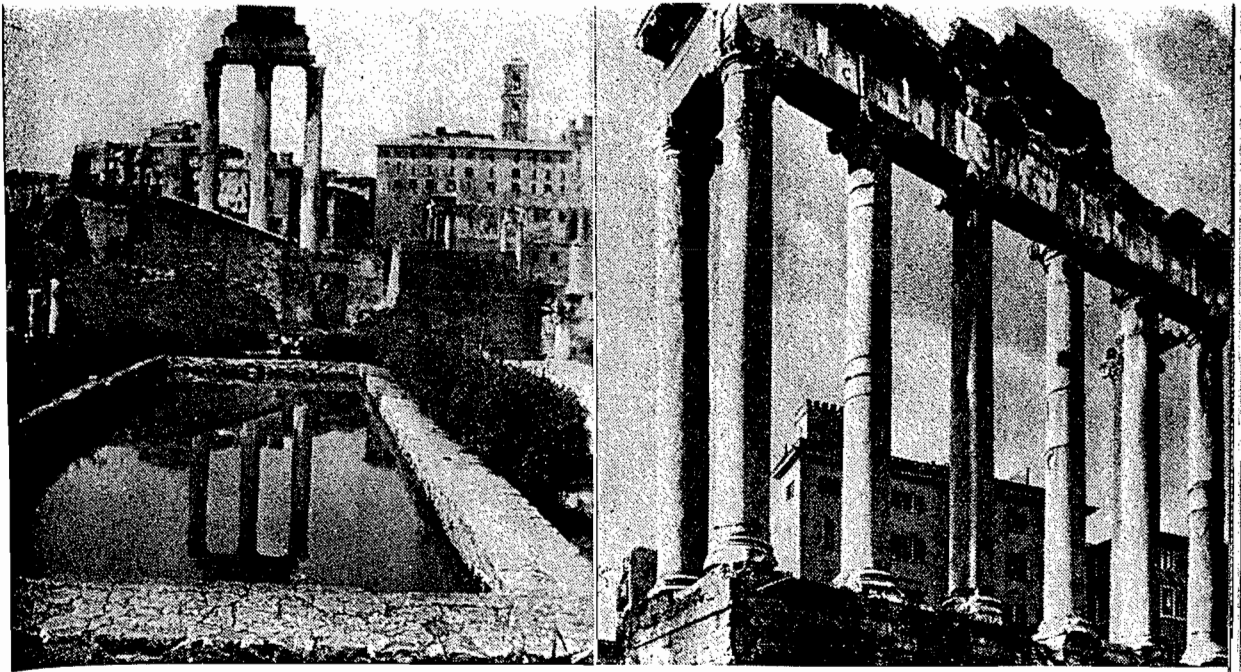
**Roman Temples.** *Left, temple of Castor and Pollux; right, of Saturn—first temple built in Forum, 497 B.C., served as public treasury.*

Nunc in oppidum veniunt et ad Forum Rōmānum cum
servīs celeriter perveniunt; nam Helena servās cum
fīliābus semper mittit. In mediō oppidō prope rīpam 15
Tiberis est Forum Rōmānum antīquum. In Forō sunt
aedificia pūblica, multae columnae, templa deōrum,
statuae virōrum et equōrum. In Forō quoque et virī
labōrant et puerī magnī parvīque lūdunt. Per Sacram
Viam amīcās amīcōsque ad aedificium pulchrum dūcunt. 20

"Quid est aedificium quod spectāmus?" Aspāsia rogat.

"Monumentum Mārcī Aemilī, virī ēgregī, nunc spectā-
mus," Tertia respondet. "Aedificium est in quō Rōmānī
negōtium pūblicum agunt. Rōmānī negōtia semper agunt
nam multōs populōs regunt." Aedificium magnum et 25
multās columnās pulchrās puerī puellaeque et servī,
quibuscum Forum Tertia spectat, laudant.

"Prope monumentum Aemilī," nārrat Vibia, "est
cūria in quā senātus negōtium pūblicum agit et prope
cūriam est āra[1] deī Vulcānī. Prope cūriam quoque tem- 30

[1] altar.

185

plum deī Iānī vidētis. Portās habet sed nunc portās Rōmānī nōn claudunt, nam cōpiae Rōmānae in Galliā pugnant. Deus Rōmānōs videt ubi per portam properant et ubi ex portā quoque veniunt." Puerī puellaeque 35 parvum templum spectant; deum antīquum amant.

Nunc rōstra et templum Concordiae spectant ubi Lesbia clāmat, "Quid est magnum aedificium pulchrum in quod multī Rōmānī properant?"

"Est in Capitōliō templum in quō Iuppiter, Iūnō, 40 Minerva habitant," Tertia respondet. "Iuppiter rēx[2] deōrum; Iūnō rēgīna deōrum est." Statuās quoque multās et pulchrās in Capitōliō vident et laudant.

Sed iam in Sacram Viam iterum veniunt et prope templum Sāturnī, antīquī deī, sunt. "Sāturnus, cuius 45 templum vidētis, Ītaliae agricultūram dat. Deus cōpiae est," Sextus nārrat. "In templō Sāturnī Rōmānī pecūniam habent; nam Sāturnus pecūniam cūrat."

Novum aedificium quoque inveniunt. Monumentum Iūliae est quod Rōmānī prope templum Sāturnī nunc 50 aedificant. Lacum[3] Curtium[3] quoque vident.

"Templum parvum et album prope medium Forum quod nunc spectāmus dea pulchra amat," Mārcus nārrat.

"Quis est dea?" Lesbia rogat.

"Dea est Vesta, et prope templum Vestae habitant 55 Vestālēs,[4] puellae pulchrae bonaeque quae templum Vestae semper cūrant," Vibia respondet. (Etiam nunc Americānī ruīnās Vestae templī vident et aedificium ubi Vestālēs[4] habitant. In terrā prope ruīnās multae columnae et ōrnāmenta sunt.)

60 Vibia Tertiaque nunc ad templum quod Castor et Pollux amant amīcōs per Sacram Viam dūcunt. (Etiam nunc Americānī in Forō trēs[5] columnās pulchrās libenter

---

[2] king.    [3] Lake Curtius.    [4] Vestal Virgins.    [5] three.

186

vident quae sunt ruīnae templī.)

"Sunt in Forō multa tem-65 pla Rōmāna deōrum deārumque," Vibia nārrat. "Sed multī deī Rōmānī et deae quoque templa in Forō nōn habent. Nam Rōmānī deōs 70 aquae, lūnae, frūmentī, terrae, agrōrum, sılvārum habent."

Sed nūntius in Forum nunc pervenıt. Multī virī ad rōs-75 tra properant. Saepe nūntiī in Forum veniunt et dē magnīs victōriīs nārrant. Iam adest nūntius quem lēgātus ex Galliā ad oppidum Rō-80 mam remittit et quī populō dē fortūnā grātā cōpiārum Rōmānārum nārrat. Nūntium audiunt.



**Palatine Hill.** *Private stadium of the emperors.*

"In Galliam ad cōpiās Rōmānās properāre dēsīderō; 85 nam vir nunc sum et patriam amō," repente clāmat Mārcus. "Pugnae fīliōs Rōmānōrum bonōrum terrēre nōn dēbent."

"Triumphum in Forō Rōmānō vidēre volō," Sextus clāmat, "ubi Rōmānī victōriam magnam habent. Ubi 90 lēgātus vincit et triumphum habet, cōpiās et captīvōs miserōs per Sacram Viam dūcit, et cūnctus populus Rōmānus adest in Forō."

Nunc ad Palātium perveniunt et Rōmānī pulchra aedificia virōrum ēgregiōrum spectant. Casam Rōmulī quoque 95

187

spectant. Dē Palātiō Circum Maximum prope Aventīnum
vident. Sed nunc lūdī in Circō nōn sunt. Ubi dē Palātiō
in Forum iterum veniunt, Helena puellās et puerōs prope
aquam Iūturnae exspectat. "Vīsne ad vīllam amīcī prope
100 ōram venīre?" Mārcus Helenam rogat. Nam Mārcus
amīcum vidēre vult; Helenam puellāsque igitur ad ōram
dūcit.

**2.** <center>**VOCABULARY**</center>

| | |
|---|---|
| **vo′lō** (parts later) | *wish* |
| **me′di us, media, medium,** m., f., n., 1 & 2 | *middle, middle of* |
| **sem′per** (adv.) | *always* |
| **vir, virī,** m., 2 | *man, husband, hero* |
| **ne gō′ti um, negōtī,** n., 2 | *business, difficulty, trouble* |
| **nūn′ti us, nūntī,** m., 2 | *messenger* |
| **per-,** prefix | *through*; sometimes has intensive force (See Chapter XVII, section 5) |
| **-ium,** noun suffix | denotes something connected with the action of a verb, either the act itself or the means or the result. (See section 3, *a*, below). |

**3.** <center>**NEW TYPES OF OLD FRIENDS**</center>

  *a.* **aedificium, aedificī,** n., 2:
  **aedific** (*build*) + **ium** (*result of*) = *result of building* = ?
What other Latin word have you had built on this base?
What English derivatives? Observe that all nouns with
the suffix **ium** are second declension, neuter.

  *b.* A member of the **veniō** family:
  **per** (*through*) + **veniō** (*come*) = **perveniō,** *come
through, arrive.* **Perveniō** is generally used with **ad** or **in** +
accusative (place to or into which): **Ad** (or **in**) **Forum Rō-
mānum celeriter perveniunt.** The literal translation is *They
quickly come through to the Roman Forum;* but we do not

<center>188</center>

# CĪVITĀS RŌMĀNA

Duae partēs cīvitātis Rōmānae, Trōiānī et Latīnī, contrā perīcula commūnia pugnāvērunt. Ubi cīvitās nova concordiā aucta est, rēgēs populīque fīnitimī, cupiditāte praedae adductī, partem agrōrum Rōmānōrum occupābant. Paucī ex sociīs auxilium Rōmānīs submittēbant quod perīculīs
5 territī sunt. Sed Rōmānī properābant, parābant, cum hostibus proelia committēbant, lībertātem patriamque commūnem armīs dēfendēbant, mortem nōn timēbant. Dum pāx incerta est[1], dum eī nē spīrāre quidem[2] sine perīculō possunt[1], cūram perpetuam nōn remittēbant.

Dum haec geruntur[1], eī Rōmānī quōrum corpora ob annōs nōn iam firma
10 erant sed quī bonō cōnsiliō valēbant dē rē pūblicā[3] cōnsulēbantur; ob aetātem[4] patrēs aut senātōrēs appellābantur. In senātū convēnērunt.

Prīmō rēgēs erant, quī lībertātem cōnservābant et rem pūblicam[3] augēbant, sed posteā, quod eōrum rēgum duo ex Etrūriā superbī fuērunt, Rōmānī rēgēs pepulērunt et fēcērunt duōs cōnsulēs[5]. Eī cōnsulēs appellābantur quod
15 senātōrēs dē rē pūblicā[3] cōnsulēbant.

use the past tense
**nē... quidem** *not even*
*republic*
*age*
*consuls,* the two officials jointly hol , the supreme power in Rome

)nce little more than marshy iastureland for shepherds, the loman Forum slowly evolved nto the chief civic and religious center of the city. It reached its jreatest glory in the first and econd centuries A.D., but, with lome's gradual decline, it suffered so from fire, invasion, iilfering, and neglect that by the ieventeenth century it was once igain a Campo Vaccino, a *cow iasture.* Archaeological investi- jation and reconstruction under the ' ervision of experts from nany nations began in the eighteenth century and con- tinues to this day.

Stephen Studd/Getty Images

LFA

F

Eō tempore corda omnium Rōmānōrum glōriam spērāvērunt. Virī fortēs bella amābant, in castrīs aestāte atque hieme labōrābant, nihil timēbant: virtūs vēra eōrum omnia superāverat. Itaque populus Rōmānus magnum numerum hostium paucīs mīlitibus in fugam dabat, oppida nātūrā mūnīta pugnīs capiēbat. Hostibus superātīs et perīculō remōtō, Rōmānī aequē 15 regēbant. Iūra bellī pācisque cōnservābant; hōc modō auctōritās eōrum cōnfirmāta est. In ultimās partēs mīlitēs colōnīque eōrum missī sunt. Lingua Latīna in omnibus terrīs docēbātur. Post tertium Pūnicum bellum Rōmānī fuērunt dominī omnium terrārum mariumque. Nunc sine cūrā spīrāre et animōs remittere potuērunt. 20

Sed tum fortūna, semper incerta, eōs superāvit. Rōmānī pecūniam imperiumque[6], nōn iam glōriam, spērāvērunt. Superbī, nōn iam aequī, fuērunt; iūra lēgēsque nōn iam cōnservāvērunt. Sēnsim[7] virtūtem, auctoritātem, fīnēs prōvinciās āmīsērunt et post longum tempus ā barbarīs sūperātī sunt.

[6] *empire, power*
[7] *gradually*

## Questions

1. What caused the Roman state to grow?
2. What two peoples originally were parts of the Roman state?
3. Were their neighbors friendly?
4. What motivated neighboring kings to occupy Roman territory?
5. What character traits enabled the early Romans to survive?
6. How did the old men serve the state?
7. Why did the Romans expel their kings for good?
8. After the expulsion of the kings, how was the power shared?
9. What developments occurred as Roman dominion was extended?
10. When did they begin to relax and not feel anxiety?

# VOCABULARY

## Noun

**\*pars, par´tis, par´tium** f. *part,*    (partition, party)
*direction, side*

## Demonstrative

**is, e´a, id,** (adj.) *this, that;* (pron.) *he, she, it;*
(pl.) *they*

## Adjectives

**commū´nis, -e** *common*    (commune, communism)
**incer´tus, -a, -um** *uncertain*    [certus]

## 6

### THE TARPEIAN ROCK

Servius, amīcus Lūciī, in parvō vīcō Etrūriae habitat, sed nunc in urbe Rōmā apud Lūcium amīcum est.

**Lūcius.** Quid, amīce, in urbe nostrā prīmum vidēre dēsīderās?

**Servius.** Capitōlium est in magnō saxō. Maximē dēsīderō 5 saxum vidēre Tarpeium.

**Lūcius.** Ita. Saxum Tarpeium est clārum. Nārrābō tibi dē Tarpeiā, dum in Capitōliō sumus.

Mox puerī stant in Capitōliō.

**Lūcius.** Vidē! In hōc locō Tatius, rēx Sabīnōrum, dolō 10 Capitōlium occupāvit. Tarpeius, pater Tarpeiae, castellum cum sociīs dēfendēbat. Cotīdiē Tarpeia aquam ab fonte sub saxō magnō portābat. Ōlim autem in sēmitā sēcrētā prope fontem virōs incognitōs vīdit. Virī armillās aureās et ānulōs aureōs habuērunt. Tarpeia stulta armillās et 15 ānulōs dēsīderābat. Itaque Tatius, dux virōrum, dīxit, "Mōnstrā nōbīs sēmitam et dabimus tibi ea quae gerimus in bracchiīs nostrīs." Tarpeia stulta noctū Tatium et virōs ad Capitōlium dūxit, et . . .

**Servius.** Tatiusne Tarpeiae armillās dedit? 20

**Lūcius.** Minimē. Tatius sociīque, postquam Capitōlium occupāvērunt, dē bracchiīs scūta ēripuērunt et miseram puellam interfēcērunt.

**Servius.** Ita Tarpeia recēpit ea quae advenae gerēbant in bracchiīs! Neque armillās neque ānulōs, sed scūta virī 25 Tarpeiae miserae dedērunt.

**dolus, -ī** M., trick • **castellum\*, -ī** N., castle, fortress
**cotīdiē** daily • **incognitus, -a, -um** unknown • **armilla, -ae** bracelet • **ānulus, -ī** ring • **stultus, -a, -um** stupid, foolish • **ēripuērunt** took off • **advena, -ae** M. or F., stranger

## 1.   DĒ TARPĒIĀ ET DĒ FĒMINĪS SABĪNĪS

Ubi Rōmulus, dux Rōmānus, oppidum suum in Palātiō aedificāvit, arcem quoque in Capitōliō quae ab Palātiō nōn longē[1] abest aedificāvit. Mīlitēs Rōmānī dē eā arce agrōs lātōs et viās et silvās spectant et nāvigia quae in aquīs Tiberis nāvigant. Multōs annōs ea arx oppidum 5 dēfendit.

Propter eam arcem rēx Sabīnōrum ad oppidum Rōmam pervenīre nōn potuit. Is cum multīs mīlitibus et armīs vēnit sed Rōmam expugnāre nōn potuit. Ēgregius lēgātus Rōmānus arcem tenēbat[2] et fīlia Tarpēia cum eō semper 10 erat. In mūrō arcis erat porta parva. Per eam portam Tarpēia propter aquam ex arce ad fontem[3] vēnit. Tum Sabīnus rēx et eius mīlitēs Tarpēiam vīdērunt et puellam portam sibi aperīre[4] iussērunt.

"Sī[5] nōbīs tuum auxilium dabis, tibi praemium dabimus. 15 Quid rogās?" rēx eī dīcit. Nam arcem oppugnāre et ex-pugnāre in animō habet.

Tarpēia mīlitēs Sabīnōs spectāvit et ōrnāmenta amāvit quae in sinistrīs[6] bracchiīs[6] vīdit. Tum[7] puella sibi dīxit, "Ea ōrnāmenta volō. Ea arx quam pater tenet Rōmam 20 dēfendit, sed Sabīnōs per portam perdūcam et id magnum praemium habēbō." Rēgī igitur, "Sī[5] mihi dabitis," inquit, "ea quae mīlitēs vestrī in bracchiīs[6] sinistrīs[6] habent, meum auxilium vōbīs dabō et vōs per portam in arcem perdūcam."                                                25

"Ea quidem tibi dabimus," dīxit rēx.

---

[1] far.     [2] was holding.     [3] spring.     [4] open.     [5] if.     [6] left arms.
[7] then.

**Tarpeia.** *Coin at left — B.C. 14. Tarpeia, buried to the waist in shields. At right, she thrusts off two Sabine soldiers — coin about 87 B.C.*

Tarpēia igitur mīlitēs per portam perdūxit et Sabīnī praemium eī dedērunt. Statim in puellam miseram sua scūta[8] lāta iactāvērunt; nam mīlitēs Sabīnī scūta[8] quoque in sinistrīs[6] bracchiīs[6] habent. Mīlitēs scūtīs[8] lātīs propter 30 eius iniūriās Tarpēiam necāvērunt et eam dē Capitōliō, ūnō ē[9] septem montibus[9] Rōmae, iactāvērunt. Mala semper est fortūna fēminārum quae honōrem suae patriae nōn dēfendunt.

Iam mīlitēs Sabīnī arcem in Capitōliō celeriter expug- 35 nāvērunt. Statim rēx cum mīlitibus dē Capitōliō ad oppidum Rōmam properāvit.

Rēx, "Rōmam oppugnābimus," inquit "et Rōmānōs pellēmus." Magnō in perīculō igitur erat Rōma. Sed Rōmulus dux Rōmānus et eius cōpiae gladiōs coēgērunt 40 et ex oppidō in Sabīnōs properāvērunt. Nōn iam Sabīnī oppugnāre oppidum potuērunt, sed in eō locō ubi nunc Forum Rōmānum est cum Rōmānīs pugnāvērunt. Horribilis erat pugna. Neque Rōmānī neque Sabīnī erant victōrēs. 45

---

[6] left arms.　　　[8] shields.　　　[9] one of the hills.

263
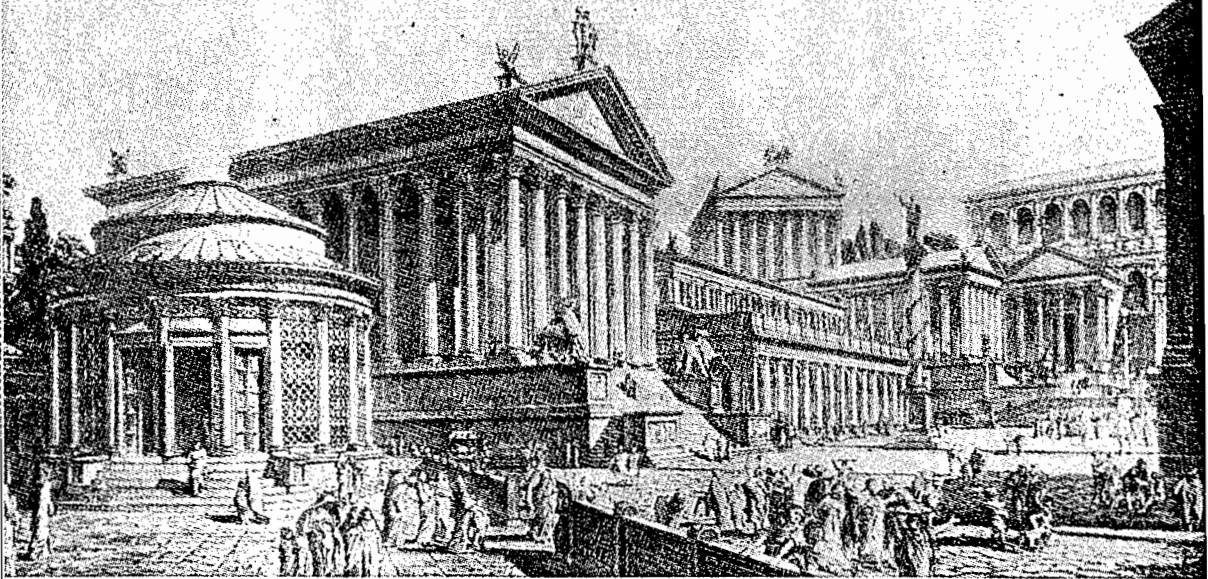
Temple of Vesta     Temple of Castor and Pollux     **Capitolium**     **Temple of Saturn**     **Tabularium**
                                                        Basilica Julia     Temple of Vespasian

**The Capitolium** was begun by the Tarquins but not dedicated until
B.C. 509. The tabularium was the record office, 78 B.C.

# CHAPTER XIX

1.                              **METTIUS CURTIUS**

Saepe lēgimus dē Rōmānīs quī prō patriā pugnāvērunt.
Fābula quam Vibia nunc nārrat dē virō Rōmānō est quī
prō patriā vītam dedit.

"Fīliī parvī Quīntī, Rōmānī antīquī, ē casā, quae prope
5 ōram est, ad Forum Rōmānum cum servīs properāvērunt.
Puerī amīcōs, quibuscum saepe lūdunt, prope aquam
Iūturnae exspectant. Nam populus Rōmānus saepe
convenit in Forum, locum ubi virī negōtium agunt et
amīcōs inveniunt. Puerī et magnī et parvī spectant monu-
10 menta quae Rōmānī aedificāvērunt, ubi in Forō cum
amīcīs lūdunt. Puer quem amīcī Aulum appellant prope
aedificium pūblicum in Forō mediō lūdit. Subitō[1] mediō

---
[1] suddenly.

198

LWR

*Mettius Curtius*—First century, B.C. Mettius Curtius leaping fully armed into the hole which had opened up in the middle of the Forum. The rider is Samnite in origin. This slab was probably originally placed on the balustrade around the Lacus Curtius.

in Forō Rōmānō magnum cavum videt. Cavum spectat et perīculum timet. Ex locō igitur per oppidum properā- vit et Rōmānīs dē cavō celeriter nārrāvit. 15

"Virī in Forum quod prope rīpam Tiberis est celeriter convēnērunt et cavum spectāvērunt. Magnam cōpiam terrae in cavum celeriter iactāvērunt sed deī cavum nōn clausērunt.

" 'Rōmānī in grātiā cum deīs nōn sunt. Deī enim nōn 20 iam sunt in amīcitiā cum populō Rōmānō,' virī clāmā- vērunt.

"Cavum populum terruit; nam magnum perīculum timuērunt. Rōmānī igitur ad templa deōrum nūntiōs mīsērunt. 25

"Nūntiī ad portās templōrum pervenērunt et deīs clāmāvērunt, 'Magnum perīculum timēmus; nam cavum magnum in Forō est. Deī virōs regunt. Quid Rōmānōs agere vultis?'

30 "Deī respondērunt, 'Dēsīderāmus Rōmānōs id[2] quod amant in cavum iactāre.'

"Rōmānī ōrnāmenta semper amant; in cavum igitur ōrnāmenta iactāvērunt. Sed deī cavum nōn clausērunt. Populus dē fortūnā miserā clāmāvit.

35 "Mettius Curtius, Rōmānus ēgregius, adfuit quī perīculum nōn timuit et repente clāmāvit, 'Deī Rōmānum ēgregium amant,' et per Forum in cavum equō properāvit et prō patriā vītam dedit. Populus Rōmānus in cavum cum Mettiō dōna[3] pecūniae et frūmentī celeriter iactāvit.

40 Nunc deī cavum clausērunt. Populus Rōmānus in Forum iterum et iterum convēnit, sed cavum iterum nōn vidēre potuit neque Mettium iterum vidēre potuit; nam deī Mettium nōn remīsērunt. Mettius in Īnferīs[4] erat cum rēge[5] Plūtōne et rēgīnā Prōserpinā. Cūnctī Rōmānī igitur

45 Mettium Curtium amāvērunt et laudāvērunt. 'Virī victōria est magna,' semper clāmāvērunt."

Etiam nunc Rōmānī fābulam dē Mettiō Curtiō nārrant. Et puerī et puellae quī fābulam audiunt in Forum saepe veniunt et aedificia spectant, sed cavum nōn vident.

50 Locum in Forō mediō vident quod Rōmānī Lacum[6] Curtium[6] appellant. Monumentum pūblicum glōriae Curtī est. Etiam nunc Amēricānus in Forō antīquō ruīnās monumentī libenter spectat. Litterās ad amīcum scrībit et per litterās atque pictūrās amīcus Amēricānus

55 quoque ruīnās vidēre potest.

[2] that.    [3] offerings.    [4] lower world.    [5] king.    [6] Lake Curtius.

**Lacus Curtius.** *This marked the site of the hole into which Mettius Curtius is said to have leaped to save Rome. Note the bases of several altars.*
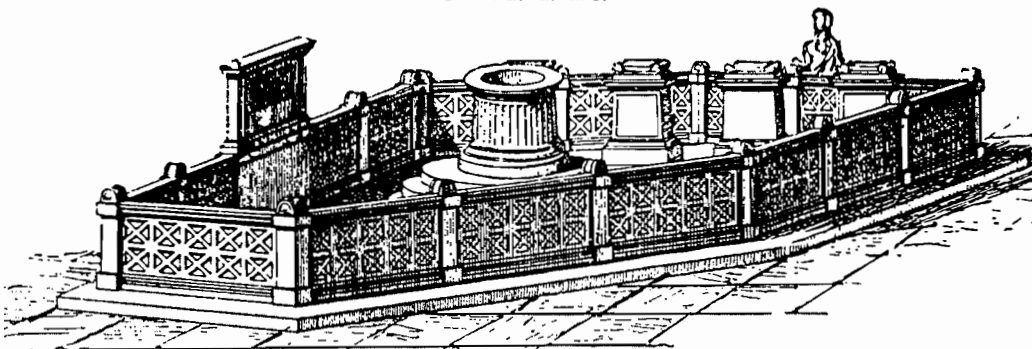
the victorious Cincinnatus who was satisfied to return to the simple life of his little farm. You will read of Mettus Curtius who voluntarily sacrificed his life to calm the fears aroused by a terrifying occurrence in the city; of Mucius who burnt off his hand rather than betray his comrades; of the brothers Horatius who fought as champions of Rome; of the Decii — father, son, and grandson — who gave their lives to gain victory in battle; of Coriolanus who faced exile and death rather than disregard a mother's prayers; of Fabricius who despised the bribes of an invading king; of the deeds of Caesar; of Cicero's patriotism; of many other incidents of history which show us the characters of Roman men and women. They glorified bravery, endurance, patriotism, good faith, honor, obedience to authority and to law, purity of womanhood, respect for the gods and the religion of the state, thrift and frugality, the sanctity of the home.

These were the traits that made Rome great. We must not suppose, however, that they were universal. There was always oppression of the poor by the rich and powerful, and men had to struggle for their rights. As the centuries passed, Roman society became more and more corrupt. Civil strife ending in dictatorship brought with it disregard for human life and the weakening of morality. Rome of the earlier days furnishes us with many examples to follow. Her history in its later centuries may serve equally well as a warning and guide for dealing with problems of our own times.

## LEGACY

Can you name any of our national heroes noted for characters like those of the old Romans? What were some of the characteristics of early generations of Americans which differ from those most usual today? What has caused the change?
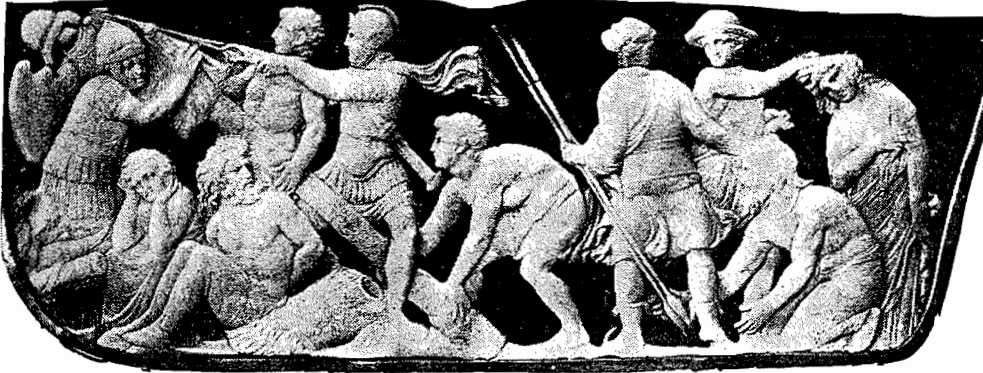
*Supplementary Story*     Curtius

## "WHAT IS OUR MOST PRIZED POSSESSION?"

Antīquī Rōmānī nōn sōlum patriam vehementer amāvērunt sed etiam prō patriā mortem libenter[1] petīvērunt. Fābula quaedam[2] nōbīs trādita est dē Mettō Curtiō, quī tempore perīculī pūblicī vītam prō patriā dedit.

Roman soldiers erect a trophy of victory while captives look on sadly

**"**

5 Quondam[3] magna rīma[4] propter causam ignōtam[5] mediō in forō appāruerat. Cīvēs Rōmānī, quod causam ignōrābant, maximē terrēbantur. Cōnsiliō ducum cōpiam terrae et saxōrum[6] comparāvērunt et in rīmam jēcērunt. Sed frūstrā labōrāvērunt. Rīma enim neque saxīs neque terrā complērī[7] potuit.

10 Tandem auxilium ā deīs quaesītum est, quod īra[8] deōrum ā cīvibus et ducibus ācerrimē timēbātur. Tum ōrāculum[9] deōrum ita respondit: "In illam rīmam maximum bonōrum[10] vestrōrum jacī dēbet. Tum rīma facile complēbitur." Diū Rōmānī, verbīs ōrāculī commōtī, dubitābant, quod maximum bonōrum

15 suōrum nōn cognōvērunt. "Quid," ā sē quaerēbant, "maximum bonum nostrum est? Estne aurum[11] aut gemmae?"[12] Atque omnēs in rīmam et aurum et gemmās suās jēcērunt. Sed frūstrā.

[NOTES] 1. *libenter (adv.)*, willingly. 2. *quaedam*, a certain. 3. *quondam (adv.)*, once, formerly. 4. *rīma, -ae (f.)*, crack. 5. *ignōtus, -a, -um*, unknown. 6. *saxum, -ī (n.)*, rock. 7. *compleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus*, fill, fill up. 8. *īra, -ae (f.)*, anger. 9. *ōrāculum, -ī (n.)*, oracle. 10. *bona, -orum (n.)*, possessions. 11. *aurum, -ī (n.)*, gold. 12. *gemma, -ae (f.)*, jewel.

**"**

Can you answer these questions on the story?

1. What appeared once in the Forum? 2. What did the Romans try to do about it? 3. Whom did they then consult? 4. What was the reply? 5. What did the Romans then do? 6. What was the result?

[ 370 ]

Prīn
Porsen.
rēx exᵥ
Scrība[3]
dubitā
miseru
Ma:
rant.
sena īr
cōnsiliᵥ
Tuι
meum
cōnsili
Hīs
sena iᵧ
jussit.
sed "Ō
verbīs
patria
terficiᵥ
mūne
Mī
et suᵦ
et ten
tem tᵢ

*Supplementary Story*

## METTUS CURTIUS SAVES ROME

Apud Rōmānōs erat forte illō tempore cīvis fortissimus, nōmine Mettus Curtius. Ille, dum reliquī cīvēs rīmam spectant et timōre dubitant, in forum vēnit et haec dīxit: "Frūstrā in illam rīmam aurum et gemmās jacitis. Num rīmam complēre potestis? Nōn aurum et gemmae, sed animus fortis atque in- 5 victus[1] cīvis Rōmānī est maximum bonum vestrum. Audāciā[2] unīus cīvis tōtus populus Rōmānus servārī potest."

Tum corporī suō arma omnia induit[3] et clāmāvit: "Audīte, cīvēs! Rōmae et deīs cīvitātis nostrae vītam meam nunc voveō.[4]" Deinde in equum ascendit[5] et, dum omnēs audāciā 10 ejus commoventur, in rīmam lātam equitat.[6] Simul atque equus et vir ē cōnspectū[7] Rōmānōrum discessērunt, rīma complēta est. Hōc factō cīvis fortis Rōmānī ē timōre et perīculō servātī sunt.

Posteā locus in Forō ubi Mettus Curtius prō patriā vītam 15 dedit ā Rōmānīs Lacus[8] Curtius appellābātur. Hōc modō Rōmānī factum forte Mettī memoriā semper tenēre poterant.

[NOTES] 1. *invictus, -a, -um,* invincible. 2. *audācia, -ae (f.),* boldness. 3. *induō, -ere, -duī, -dūtus,* put on. 4. *voveō, -ēre, vōvī, vōtus,* promise, dedicate. 5. *ascendō, -ere, ascendī, ascēnsus,* mount. 6. *equitō, -āre,* ride. 7. *cōnspectus, -ūs (m.),* sight. 8. *lacus, -ūs (m.),* lake.

*"*

1. Can you tell all about how Mettus caused the crack in the Forum to close? 2. What do you think about this deed of Mettus?

**Forum of Traders, Ostia.** *The majestic ruins show that Romans, while being practical `traders and businessmen, liked to work surrounded by beauty.*

# CHAPTER XV

1.                                ŌSTIA

Vibia prope vīllam Sullae rosās mīrās cūrat. Sulla
Rōmae nunc adest. Puellae Graecae cum servā ad vīllam
veniunt, nam fābulās grātās Vibiae Tertiaeque amant.

"Ubi est Tertia?" Aspāsia rogat. "Adesse dēbet.
Num ad Galliam properat?"                                    5

"Nōn properat; novum templum spectat; Rōmānī
enim templum in ōrā prope silvam aedificant," Vibia
respondet.

Sed nunc venit Tertia quoque in vīllam. "Cūr fābulam
dē Ītaliā patriā Rōmānōrum nōn nārrās?" puellae 10
Graecae rogant.

"Ītalia magna et nōta terra est," clāmat Tertia. "Nōn
dē cūnctā Ītaliā igitur sed dē oppidō Ōstiā fābulam
nārrō."

143

**Ostia.** *Entrance of theater which dates from the beginning of the Empire; now used for Classical plays.*

15 "Ubi est Ōstia?" rogat Lesbia.

Tertia respondet: "Ōstia est prope ōram Tyrrhēnam.[1] An-
20 cus Mārcius (fābula est) oppidum, portum Rōmae, prope ōram aequam aedificat. Rōmānī oppidum Ōstiam appellant. Multī barbarī[2] ex Hispāniā,[3] Galliā, Āfricā, Aegyp-
25 tō, īnsulīs in portum veniunt et Ōstia per multās linguās commercium[4] multum habet et magnam pecūniam. Prōvinciae per Ōstiam ad Rōmānōs
30 frūmentum mittunt. Rōmānī multum frūmentum in oppidō habent. Ubi cōpiae Rōmānae in Hispāniā et Galliā pugnant, Ōstia cōpiam frūmentī mittit.
35 Rōmānī igitur Ōstiae grā-
tiam habent atque Ōstiam amant.

"In oppidō sunt multa templa et theātra et monumenta. Cūnctus populus Ōstiae libenter lūdit. Equōs firmōs in arēnā et pugnās bonās libenter videt. Ad lūdōs igitur
40 puerī, puellae, servī properant. Lēgātus quoque cum amīcīs ad lūdōs venit. Dominī multōs captīvōs ad lūdōs gladiātōriōs dūcunt. In viīs sunt multī agricolae cum amīcīs. In oppidum ex agrīs agricolae equīs saepe veniunt, nam vīta agricolārum bona est. Ubi terra agricolīs
45 frūmentum dat, cōpiam frūmentī in oppidum mittunt.

---

[1] See Chapter I, section 7. [2] choose carefully *foreigners* or *barbarians* as the sense demands. [3] Spain. [4] trade, commerce.

144
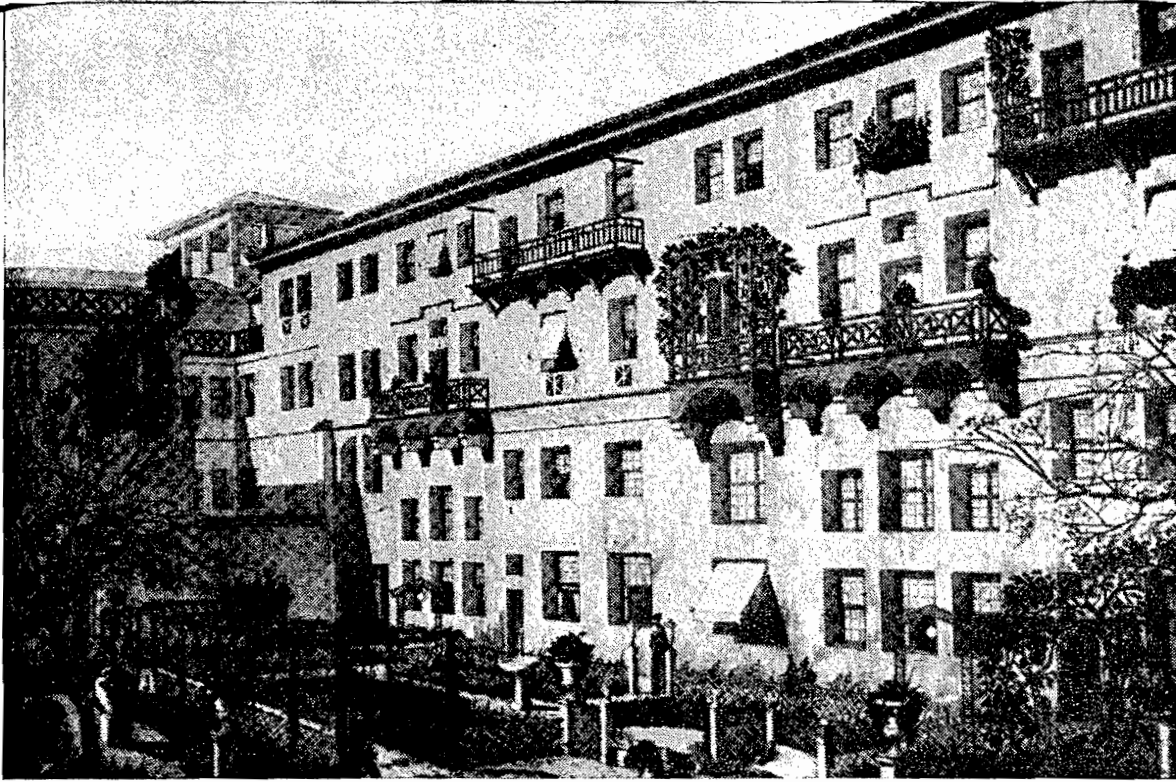
**Ostia.** *Reconstruction of a large apartment house. The view shows the inner court with plants, trees, and statues.*

Ōstia Rōmae fortūnam et bonam et miseram habet. Ubi estis in oppidō, Ōstiā, in ēgregiō oppidō estis."

Sed nunc Rōmānī, Ītalicī, barbarī in oppidō Ōstiā nōn habitant neque templa, theātra, vīllās, casās aedificant. Nōn iam dominī servōs ad portum mittunt; nōn iam servae 50 in casīs labōrant; nōn iam dominae puellās puerōsque parvōs ad templa dūcunt; nōn iam fīliī fīliaeque ad theātrum et lūdōs properant; nōn iam servī cum bēstiīs in arēnā pugnant et vincunt.

Etiam octāvō[5] saeculō[5] A.D. ubi barbarī[2] per Tyrrhē- 55 num[1] ad Ītaliam properant dominōs, dominās, servōs, servās, puerōs, puellās in oppidō Ōstiā nōn vident, nam nōn adsunt; sed multa et magna monumenta Ōstiae antīquae vident et ad ōram igitur veniunt. Incolās[6] nōn terrent; in oppidō enim Ōstiā nōn iam multae incolae[6] 60

_____
[1] Tyrrhenian Sea.    [2] choose *foreigners* or *barbarians*.    [5] in the eighth century.
[6] inhabitants.

145
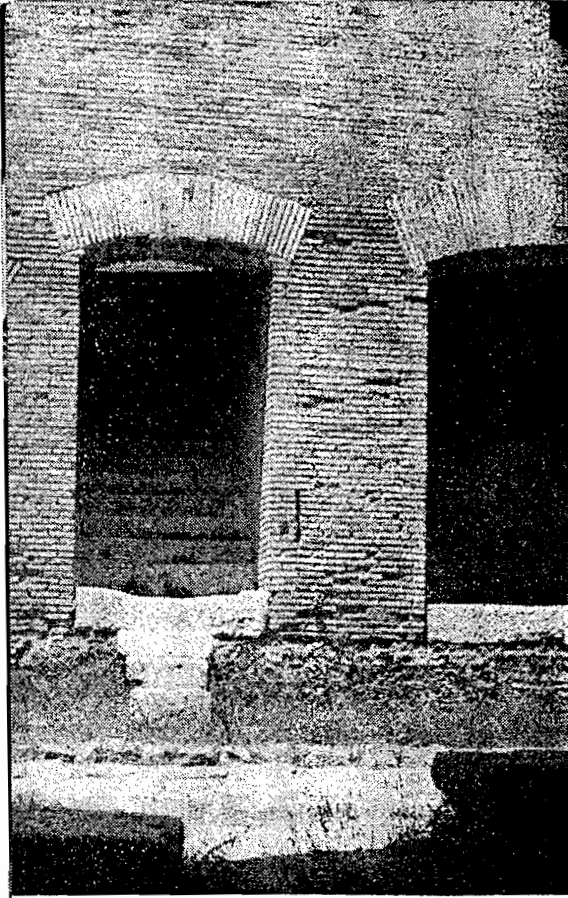
Detail of a house at Ostia.       Houses on the street of Diana, Ostia.

adsunt. Ubi barbarī[2] ex ruīnīs ad oppidum propinquum
Rōmam properant, multa ōrnāmenta et templōrum et
monumentōrum Ōstiae habent.

Sed etiam nunc Amēricānī, ubi in Ītaliā sunt, ruīnās
65 Ōstiae antīquae saepe vident. Ruīnās pulchrās spectant
atque laudant. Ruīnās templōrum, theātrōrum, casārum,
vīllārum, viārum  vident neque populum umquam vident.
Per viam Diānae, deae lūnae, ad theātrum veniunt.
Prope theātrum sunt ruīnae multārum tabernārum[7].
70 Tabernae[7] sunt albae. Signa tabernārum[7] in pavīmentīs[8]
sunt. In pictūrā elephantum vidētis. Signum tabernae[7]
est. In pavīmentīs[8] Ōstiae antīquae sunt multa et pulchra
signa tabernārum.[7] Amēricānus, ubi signa videt, amat

[2] choose *foreigners* or *barbarians*.       [7] shops.       [8] pavement.

146

**Mosaic Pavement of a Shop at Ostia.** *The elephant is the sign of an ivory shop.*

atque laudat, et saepe ad amīcum Amēricānum dē pavī-mentīs[8] pulchrīs litterās scrībit.

[8] pavement.

**2.** <center>VOCABULARY</center>

| | |
|---|---|
| tem′plum, templī, n., 2 | *temple* |
| ō′ra, ōrae, f., 1 | *shore, coast* |
| ae di′fi cō, aedificāre 1* | *build* |
| op′pi dum, oppidī, n., 2 | *town* |
| frū men′tum, frūmentī, n., 2 | *grain* |
| ad, prefix, (see sec. 4 of this chapter) | *to, toward;* sometimes intensive |

**3.** <center>NEW TYPES OF OLD FRIENDS</center>

*a.* **monumentum, monumentī,** n., 2 (*means of recalling*) *monument*

*b.* **ōrnāmentum, ōrnāmentī,** n., 2 *decoration, ornament, jewel*

* Hereafter only the present tense and the present infinitive will be given in the vocabulary for first conjugation verbs that follow the pattern,-ō,-āre,-āvī,-ātus.

<center>147</center>

*cape, cope,* and *chaplet,* all meaning *a covering for the head or the body.*   A *little cape* was a **capella,** from which came the word *chapel.*   The custodians of the chapel were called **capellani,** that is, *chaplains.*

There may be a wide gap today between the meanings of *chaplain* and *chaperon,* but in reality they spring from the same original **capa.** In former times the chaperon, who accompanied young people, could be recognized by the large hat she wore.

There was a time when *escape* and *escapade* meant slipping out of one's cloak, **ex capā.**

## SENTENCE PATTERNS

A. Translate into English the two paragraphs in Practice Patterns A and B, page 108.

B. Translate into Latin:

1. Was not the master sometimes kind to the slaves?
2. It was necessary for the men to fight without weapons.
3. Finally, because he feared the great anger of the people, he blamed the captives.
4. No longer did they fear the power of men.
5. It was necessary for the inhabitants to seize the neighboring town.

### Rome's Ancient Port

Ōlim Rōmānī oppidum parvum prope ōstium (*mouth*) Tiberis (*of the Tiber*) aedificāvērunt.   Oppidum Ōstiam appellāvērunt (*called*).   Multī incolae Hispāniae, Galliae, Āsiae, Āfricae, Aegyptī, īnsulārum propinquārum ad oppidum Ōstiam nāvigābant.   Incolae Ōstiae multum commercium (*trade*) et māgnam pecūniam habēbant.

Nautae validī et servī miserī māgnam cōpiam frūmentī ē Prōvinciīs ad oppidum Ōstiam portābant.   Posteā, incolae et servī Ōstiae ad oppidum propinquum Rōmam frūmentum portābant, et Rōmānī multum cibum habēbant.   Vīcī oppidaque Ītaliae etiam cibum habēbant.   Ubi cōpiae Rōmānae ad Galliam, Hispāniam, Āfricam, Āsiam properābant et cum incolīs inimīcīs pūgnābant, necesse erat Ōstiam hīs (*these*) cōpiīs et incolīs locōrum frūmentum dare.

Incolae Ōstiae villās pulchrās, casās parvās, tabernās (*shops*) albās, multa templa, theātra māgna in oppidō aedificāvērunt. Lūdī et spectācula incolīs Ōstiae erant grāta, et ad lūdōs et spectācula saepe properābant.   Ex agrīs agricolae laetī quoque properābant.   Interdum lēgātus, interdum tribūnus aderat.

111

Post longa bella multī captīvī et servī, virī et fēminae, Ōstiae habitābant. Dominī crūdēlēs (*cruel*) captīvōs et servōs occupāvērunt et in mediā arēnā pūgnāre saepe jussērunt, quod spectāre lūdōs incolīs Ōstiae grātum fuit. Interdum virī cum virīs gladiīs in arēnā pūgnābant; interdum virī cum bestiīs pūgnābant; interdum etiam necesse erat virōs sine tēlīs contrā leōnēs pūgnāre, sed bestiae virōs miserōs semper necāvērunt.

Tandem post multōs annōs barbarī (*barbarians*) ex Germāniā, Galliā, atque aliīs (*other*) terrīs Eurōpae incolās Ōstiae oppūgnāvērunt (*attacked*) et mox superāvērunt. Barbarī māgnā cum īrā templa, theātra, villās, casās vāstāvērunt. Nōn jam virī, fēminae, līberī Ōstiae habitābant. Nōn jam nautae frūmentum ad oppidum propinquum Romam et vīcōs Ītaliae portābant. Nōn jam incolae ad templa, theātra, spectācula, lūdōs properābant. Nōn jam virī cum bestiīs in arēnā pūgnābant. Ōstia dēserta erat.

Nunc Amēricānī ubi Ītaliam vīsitant māgnō cum studiō ruīnās Ōstiae spectant et laudant. Barbarōs ex terrīs antīquīs Eurōpae accūsant quod oppidum et aedificia Ōstiae vāstāvērunt.

# *Comprehensive Review: Units* XVI–XX

A. Write in Latin the nominative, genitive, and base of:

| | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| year | gate | arms | limit | delay | injury | weapons |
| deed | bank | space | anger | spirit | courage | beginning |
| plan | duty | fight | place | battle | memory | injustice |
| end | act | wall | wrong | wheel | letter | service |

B. Write in Latin the feminine and the neuter forms, nominative plural, of these adjectives. Give the English meanings.

aequus    medius    idōneus    nōtus    grātus    inīquus    benīgnus

C. Write the adverbs formed from the following adjectives. Give the English meanings of the adjectives and the adverbs.

aequus    benīgnus    inīquus    grātus

D. Write in Latin:

sometimes    finally    whence    already    for a long time    no longer

E. Write the English meanings of these prepositions, and tell the case each one governs:

contrā    apud    inter    sine    sub    circum    prō    ante    post

F. Write in Latin the principal parts of:

| | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| try | bind | wait | order | announce | approve | approach |
| fly | hold | blame | raise | obtain | delight | hesitate |
| kill | save | seize | incite | summon | destroy | lay waste |

*112*

ds to
They

mihi

com-

Sicilia est magna īnsula inter Ītaliam et Āfricam. Antī-
quitus Sicilia erat paenīnsula Ītaliae; nunc Sicilia est īnsula.
Inter Siciliam et Ītaliam aquae sunt angustae. Inter Siciliam
et Āfricam aquae sunt altae et lātae.

Antīquitus Sicilia erat terra opīma.° Incolae erant agri- 5
colae et nautae. Vīllae agricolārum erant in terrā opīmā;
casae nautārum erant in ōrā maritimā.

Incolae Siciliae dīcēbant, "Sunt multae ārae deārum in
Siciliā. Deae sunt terrae nostrae benignae; incolīs īnsulae
sunt amīcae. Itaque in Siciliā multās vidētis ārās deārum." 10

In īnsulīs Siciliae propinquīs erant pīrātae. Interdum
pīrātae incolās necābant et casās īnsulae vāstābant.

Aetna est in Siciliā. Incolae Siciliae flammās Aetnae vidē-
bant. Aetnam timēbant, sed dīcēbant, "Deae nostrae erunt
benignae; incolās Siciliae servābunt.°" 15

°o pī′ma   fertile, rich   •   ser vā′bunt   will save

|  | Nouns |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| a gri′co la, -ae | M., | farmer |
| de′a, -ae | F., | goddess |
| *flam′ma, -ae | F., | flame |
| nau′ta, -ae | M., | sailor |
| *pī rā′ta, -ae | M., | pirate |
|  | Adjectives |  |
| a mī′ca |  | friendly |
| *be nig′na |  | kind |
| pro pin′qua |  | near, nearby |
|  | Verbs |  |
| [1]dī cē′bant |  | used to say; said |
| ne cā′bant |  | used to kill; killed |
| ti mē′bant |  | used to fear; feared |
| vās tā′bant |  | used to destroy; destroyed |
|  | Adverb |  |
| *an tī′qui tus |  | in ancient times |

[1]With -ba- or -bā- inserted before the person ending, the time changes from present
to past in all Latin verbs (except **sum** and compound verbs containing **sum**).

nd

ṵL

**43**

Rōmānae et ārae Rōmānae. Sed in Britanniā Celticā° sunt 10
silvae. Silvae sunt obscūrae et perīculōsae. In silvīs obscūrīs
sunt bēstiae mīrae. Per silvās viae Rōmānae nōn pertinent.°
Incolae silvārum in parvīs casīs habitant. Prope casās nōn
sunt ārae, sed procul in silvīs sunt ārae mīrae.

Briganta est ancilla° amitae meae. Briganta in silvīs 15
obscūrīs habitat. Briganta mihi et amitae meae multās dē
Britanniā Celticā fābulās nārrat. Amitae et mihi sēmitam°
obscūram silvae mōnstrat, sed casās nōn vidēmus Celticās.
Interdum Briganta amitae meae herbās novās dat.

Mox erimus in Galliā. Erisne in Āfricā? Eritne amita tua 20
in Ītaliā? Erō beāta in Galliā. Valē.

°**Cel'ti ca*** (adj.) Celtic • **per'ti nent** extend • **an cil'la,
-ae** maid • **sē'mi ta, -ae** path

| Nouns | |
|---|---|
| **ā'ra, -ae** | altar |
| ***fā'bu la, -ae** | story, fable |
| ***her'ba, -ae** | herb, plant |
| **in'co la, -ae** | inhabitant, resident |
| ***scho'la, -ae** | school |
| **Adjectives** | |
| **be ā'ta** | happy; fortunate, blessed |
| **nos'tra** | our |
| **pe rī cu lō'sa** | dangerous |
| **tu'a** | your, yours (of one person) |
| **Verbs** | |
| **dat** | gives |
| **ha'bi tat** | lives, dwells |
| **mōn'strat** | shows, points out |
| **nār'rat** | tells |
| **Conjunctions** | |
| **et . . . et** | both . . . and |
| **Preposition** | |
| ***cir'cum** | (with acc.) around |

**INDIRECT OBJECT** A word denoting the person to
whom something is given, said, told, or shown is an indirect
object.

**39**

when their childhood friendship deepened into love, their parents would not allow their marriage. Since they were forbidden to speak to each other, they could converse only by signs and glances.

Then one day they discovered a crack in the wall that separated their houses. Through this crack they could whisper expressions of their devotion; but that was not enough. With great fear and trepidation they arranged to meet each other at twilight near a white mulberry tree outside the city walls. As Thisbe at the appointed hour approached the meeting place, she saw a fierce-looking lioness. Terrified, she fled, dropping her veil as she ran. The beast picked up the veil in her bloody mouth, but soon dropped it and ambled off to the woods.

Just then Pyramus appeared. Filled with anguish when he recognized the blood-stained veil, he plunged his sword into his side just as Thisbe, wishing to warn him of the danger, came forth from her hiding place. Filled with anguish, she too killed herself; and the mingled blood of the unfortunate lovers stained the roots of the mulberry tree, whose fruit ever since has been a deep purple.

### Damon and Pythias

Ōlim habitābat Syrācūsīs in īnsulā Siciliā cīvis quīdam nōmine Dionȳsius quī urbem pulchram regere māgnopere volēbat. Illō tempore incolae Syrācūsae bellum cum Carthāginiēnsibus gerēbant. Post bellum Carthāgō victor ex pūgnā discessit. Incolae Syrācūsae arbitrātī sunt Dionȳsium, mīlitem prīvātum, māgnam virtūtem ostendisse, et ob hanc causam multī eum laudāvērunt.

Posteā conciliō (*meeting*) convocātō, populus victus dē condiciōnibus bellī agēbat. Nēmō illō tempore intellēxit cūr Dionȳsius contrā lēgem ōrātiōnem habēret in quā nūntiāvit imperātōrēs exercitūs Syrācūsae contrā rem pūblicam ēgisse et mortem hōrum imperātōrum postulāvit. Clam autem alia cōnsilia cōgitābat.

Populus ab hāc ōrātiōne incitātus, imperātōribus mortuīs, ducēs novōs apud quōs Dionȳsius erat creāvit. Brevī tempore, populus eum prīncipem ducum creāre coāctus est. Hōc factō, cīvēs sē esse beātōs arbitrātī sunt, sed mox sēnsērunt cūr Dionȳsius summam potestātem māgnopere cupīvisset. Nōn jam cīvēs erant caecī. Dionȳsius quidem dictātor Syrācūsae factus erat, et etiam dominus operum mīlitārium urbis erat. Paulō post, quod dīxit

OL H

hostēs lībertātis ipsum oppūgnāvisse et vulnerāvisse, sescentōs (*six hundred*) hominēs dēlēctōs cohortem praetōriam (*bodyguard*) obtinuit. Senātus et concilia (*assemblies*) convēnērunt, sed nūllam auctōritātem nec potestātem habuērunt. Scelus post scelus contrā patriam fēcit. Nēmō lēge temptātus est. Lēgēs novās vetuit. Dionȳsius jam vērō tyrannus erat.

Quīdam senātor nōmine Pythias, ubi nōvit arcem et omnēs rēs mīlitārēs ā Dionȳsiō obtentās esse, commōtus est; nam dē lībertāte cīvitātis māximē timēbat. Cùm prīmum cōgnōvit Dionȳsium rēgem creārī in animō habēre, in senātum contendit. Audācter loquēns senātum rogāvit cūr ā lēge discessissent et tyrannum rēgem creārent. Senātō statim dīmissō, Pythias ab mīlitibus Dionȳsī captus est et interficī jūssus est. Dum Pythias ad mortem trahitur, amīcum Dāmōnem cōnspēxit, quī, calamitāte amīcī audītā, ad eum celeriter contendēbat.

# *Unit* LX

## CONVERSATION

DIONȲSIUS:  Quis es tū? Unde vēnistī?
DĀMŌN:     Tūne, Dionȳsī, quaeris ā mē quis sim et unde vēnerim? Dāmōn, mīles Agrigentō, ego sum. Ex puerīs ego et Pythias amīcī fidēlēs fuimus. Uterque alterum tōtō animō amat.
DIONȲSIUS:  Pythias hodiē sē mihi inimīcum ostendit et jam eum interficī jūssi. Abī!
DĀMŌN:     Pythias fīlium et uxōrem rūrsus vidēre māximē cupit. Ego mē vadem (*pledge*) dabō prō Pythiā ut amīcus meus moram mortis habeat et ad domicilium redeat.
DIONȲSIUS:  Ego nōn crēdō ūllum amīcum prō alterō ē vītā excēdere velle, sed vidēbimus. Nōvistīne ubi uxor et fīlius ējus habitent?

## Damon and Pythias (continued)

Dāmōn Agrigentō vēnerat et Syrācūsīs paucōs diēs manēbat, nam Calanthem in mātrimōnium dūcere dēsīderābat. Temporibus prīstinīs (*former*) Dāmōn et Pythias fuerant amīcī nōtī. Eō tempore ex puerīs excesserant, sed etiam amīcī fidēlēs erant, ūnus mīles fortis, alter senātor honestus (*honored*). Ambō juvenēs erant nōbilēs aspectū et factō, et uterque alterum cārum habēbat.

Dāmōn māgnō cum dolōre amīcum salūtāvit. Bene intellēxit quam ob rem Pythias ad mortem traherētur, et ab hōc quaesivit quae māgnopere vellet. Pythias respondit sē ante mortem puerum parvum et uxōrem fīdam rūrsus vidēre tōtō animō cupere, sed Dionȳsius id vetuerat. Statim Dāmōn ad tyrannum Dionȳsium properāvit ut causam Pythiae expōneret. Tyrannus rogāvit ubi uxor Pythiae habitāret. Dāmōn eī dīxit Pythiae domicilium ferē vīgintī mīlia passuum abesse, sed hunc sex hōrīs revenīre posse. Dāmōn Pythiam reventūrum esse prōmīsit, et dīxit sē ipsum vadem (*pledge*) prō amīco datūrum esse.

Dionȳsius nōn arbitrātus est ūllum amīcum prō alterō vītam dare velle, sed rēge volente Pythias ad domicilium propinquum ōrae maritimae māximā cum celeritāte contendit, dum Dāmōn apprehenditur et in carcerem (*prison*) trahitur.

Interim Dionȳsius et omnēs amīcī Pythiae et Dāmōnis reī ēventum exspectābant, et quaerēbant inter sē uter eōrum in fīde remanēret. Fīne sex hōrārum accedente nec illō reveniente, Dāmōn ad mortem ducī jūssus est, nam aut Dāmōnem aut Pythiam interficī oportet. Ambō juvenēs vītam cupiēbant, sed neuter eōrum fidem alterī āmīsit. Uterque alterō crēdidit.

Ipsā igitur hōrā ā tyrannō statūtā, subitō ille cui vas (*pledge*) datus erat carcerem māgnā cum celeritāte ingressus est. Dionȳsius, aspectū Pythiae permōtus, amīcōs fidēlēs salūtāvit et in admīrātiōne poenam remīsit (*remitted*). Deinde hīs amīcīs fidēlibus sē socium tertium hūjus amīcitiae jungere volēbat. Multī incolae Syrācūsae ad nūptiās Dāmōnis et Calanthis properāvērunt. Dāmōn et Pythias lūmina tōtīus Siciliae in perpetuum tenēbantur.

ative of separa-

ve declensions.

d:
(b) one mile,
liēs, (f) eadem
h ɔe (of two)
participles for

infinitives for
audiō.

y would save

ay from the

ed, neverthe-
ny days.
s were found.
were fighting



**Syracuse.** *Looking down on the theater.*

## CHAPTER LIII

### DĀMON ET PYTHIAS

1.

Temporibus antīquīs habitābat Syrācūsīs, in urbe īnsulae
Siciliae, cīvis nōmine Dionȳsius quī urbem regere cupiēbat.
Hōc tempore oppidum Syrācūsae bellum contrā Carthā-
ginem gerēbat, et proeliō diū factō, Carthāgō victor ex
pugnā discessit. In hōc bellō Dionȳsius, mīles prīvātus, 5
magnam virtūtem ostenderat et ob eam causam ab multīs
laudābātur.

Conciliō[1] propter timōrem convocātō, populus superātus
dē condiciōnibus bellī agēbat. Dionȳsius ā lēge discēdēns
sine ūllō timōre ōrātiōnem habuit in quā dīxit imperātōrēs 10
exercitūs nostrī causam victōriae Carthāginis esse; im-
perātōrēs nostrōs contrā rem pūblicam ēgisse et mortem
hōrum ducum mīlitārium postulāvit. Haec ōrātiō popu-
lum iam incitātum perterruit quī statim ducēs novōs

[1] assembly.

577

LWR

*A Young Roman. Much like Damon or Pythias—First Century B.C.*

15 creāvit[2] apud quōs Dio-
nȳsius erat. Hoc erat eius
prīma victōria. Negōtium
magnō studiō suscēpit.
Nunc auctōritātem et po-
20 testātem habuit sed nōn
satis. Mox populum sē
prīncipem ducum creāre[2]
coēgit. Hoc erat eius al-
tera victōria magna, nam
25 hic nunc dominus magnā-
rum operum[3] mīlitārium
urbis erat. Dictātor qui-
dem erat. Nunc dīcēbat,
ut[4] fābula nārrātur, hos-
30 tēs lībertātis sē oppugnāvisse et vulnerāvisse; sē igitur
cohortem[5] praetōriam[5], sescentōs hominēs dēlēctōs, ob-
tinuisse. Hoc alia victōria summa erat. Hic iam vērō
tyrannus[6] erat. Senātus et concilia[1] convēnērunt, sed
auctōritātem et potestātem quam superiōribus temporibus
35 semper habuerant nōn iam ostendēbant. Sententia lēgis
aderat, sed nēmō lēge tentus est.

Hōc ipsō tempore tōta urbs multitūdine mīlitum
complēta[7] est. Dionȳsius sociīque Agrigentō, quae urbs
mūnīta in ōrā Siciliae erat, subitō vēnerant. Dionȳsius ab
40 senātōribus arma et frūmentum et pecūniam petere cupiē-
bat sed senātum timēbat. Scīvit cōpiam frūmentī et
armōrum et pecūniae in arce tenērī et statuit circum
urbem ad illum locum mīlitēs armātōs dūcere. Mox
mīlitēs comparātī arcem magnō studiō et magnīs clāmōri-
45 bus occupāverant et rapuerant.

---

¹ assembly.  ² elected.  ³ works.  ⁴ as.  ⁵ body-guard.  ⁶ tyrant.  ⁷ fill.

Senātor n
audīvit et ab
Dionȳsium i
habēre, com
apud quae
timēbat. Ea
cum magnō
interficiēban
Dāmōnis vīt
nōtus erat.
"Ūnus," inc
gladius et ai
"Quod hi
mīlitibus res
Dāmon A
manēbat, n
cere[10] in ani
Pythias, Pȳ
puerīs exces
ēgregius mīl
et fide nōtī
Nunc neute
cum Dāmōi
Mox Lūc
senātōrem
necesse esse
"Quid,"
Rēgem! D
Lūcullō nō
"Probābt
nō[6]?" Dān
"Nōn om
habēbō. Ei

² elected.

Senātor nōmine vel[8] Phintias vel[8] Pythias clāmōrēs audīvit et ab servō Lūcullō causam quaesīvit. Ubi nōvit Dionȳsium in manibus[9] arcem et omnēs rēs mīlitārēs habēre, commōtus est. Eum multa nōmina appellāvit apud quae tyrannus[6] erat, nam dē lībertāte cīvitātis 50 timēbat. Ea verba ab mīlitibus audīta sunt et celeriter cum magnō impetū ad Pythiam vēnērunt et hunc ferē interficiēbant. Hōc ipsō autem mōmentō et hōrā adventus Dāmōnis vītam Pythiae cōnservāvit, nam ille mīlitibus nōtus erat. Cum eīsdem multa proelia secunda fēcerat. 55 "Ūnus," inquit, "sumus, ego et meus Pythias. Eius gladius et arma sum."

"Quod hic tuus amīcus est, cōnservābitur," ūnus ex mīlitibus respondit et statim sē recēpērunt.

Dāmon Agrigentō vēnerat et Syrācūsīs paucōs diēs 60 manēbat, nam suam Calanthem in mātrimōnium[10] dū- cere[10] in animō habēbat. Temporibus antīquīs Dāmon et Pythias, Pȳthagoreī, fuerant puerī, amīcī nōtī. Nunc ex puerīs excesserant, sed etiam amīcī fidēlēs erant, ūnus ēgregius mīles, alter fidēlis senātor. Utrīque doctī virtūte 65 et fide nōtī erant et uterque alterum tōtō animō amābat. Nunc neuter alterum relinquere cupiēbat; Pythias igitur cum Dāmōne domum Calanthis contendit.

Mox Lūcullus vēnit et dominum petīvit. Dīxit alium senātōrem sē mīsisse; eum ad senātum statim venīre 70 necesse esse—haec et multa alia.

"Quid," inquit Pythias, "putās, Dāmon? Rēgem! Rēgem! Dionȳsius rēx creārī[2] in animō habet. Hoc ab Lūcullō nōvī."

"Probābuntne hoc omnēs? Trādentne urbem eī tyran- 75 nō[6]?" Dāmon respondit.

"Nōn omnēs, nam ego sōlus contrā tyrannum[6] ōrātiōnem habēbō. Ego quidem nōn probābō."

[2] elected.    [6] tyrant.    [8] either . . . or.    [9] hands.    [10] marry.

Neuter eōrum, ut[4] apertum est, iūstīs dē causīs Dionȳ-
80 sium amābat.

Mox Pythias in senātum pervenit. Omnēs probantēs
audit itaque ōrātiōnem incipit.

"O tempora! O mōrēs[11]!" clāmat. "Quis vestrum haec
nōn videt neque perīculum nōvit? Etiam probātis. Fuit,
85 fuit superiōribus temporibus virtūs in hāc rē publicā.
Nunc senātus nūllam auctōritātem ostendit sed ā lēge
discēdit et tyrannum[6] rēgem creat[2]."

Statim senātus dīmissus est et Pythias ab mīlitibus
Dionȳsī magnīs cum clāmōribus occupātus est et interficī
90 iussus est. Dum Pythias ad mortem dūcitur, Dāmon,
difficultāte amīcī audītā, ad eum magnā cum celeritāte
contendit. Pythias eī dīxit sē puerum parvum et uxōrem
bonam rūrsus vidēre tōtō animō cupere, sed Dionȳsium id
nōn permissūrum esse. Statim Dāmon ad Dionȳsium con-
95 tendit, causam Pythiae exposuit. Ab tyrannō[6] Pythiae
moram mortis propter rēs prīvātās postulāvit et sē vadem[12]
prō amīcō dedit. In rēgem admīrātiō incessit; nam nōn
putābat ūllum amīcum prō alterō ē vītā excēdere cupī-
tūrum esse. Putāvit quidem Pythiam ab omnī perīculō
100 līberātum hōrā statūtā nōn reventūrum esse. Tyrannus[6]
autem Pythiae dīxit, "Ubi uxor tua habitat?"

"In ōrā maritimā quae ferē vīgintī mīlia passuum
abest," respondit. "Sex hōrās moram mortis faciam.
Recipiēsne tē ad mē fīne spatī sex hōrārum?" Dīxit sē
105 reventūrum esse et celeriter ad ōram maritimam fugit,
dum Dāmon in custōdiam[13] dūcitur.

Nunc omnēs et in[14] prīmīs[14] Dionȳsius novae atque
ēgregiae reī exitum[15] spectābant. Hominēs inter sē
quaerēbant, "Uter eōrum in fidē manēbit?"

Dionȳsius Dā
temptāvit, sed h
Fīne temporis
poenam dūcī ius
interficī necesse ᵤ
omnēs nōn iam s
fidem alterī āmīs
Neque tempestᵤ
Pythiam revenī
mentō et hōrā ā
accēperat cum r
reveniēns in ad:
cium[18] fidē rem
tertium huius :
erant vīrēs ar
memoriā sempe

---

[12] pledge.   [16] havin

2.

alius, alia, aliud,
tōtus, -a, -um, m
nōscō, -ere, nōvī,
verbum, -ī, n., 2
ferē, adv.
hōra, -ae, f., 1
fidēs, fideī, f., 5

neuter, neutra, nᵤ
 irreg.
-scō, verb suffix
-men, noun suffi
-āris, -āre or -āri
 suffix

---

    [2] elected.     [4] as.     [6] tyrant.     [11] customs.     [12] pledge.     [13] prison
[14] especially.         [15] outcome.

: causīs Diony-

ınēs probantēs

s vestrum haec
probātis. Fuit,
āc rē publicā.
dit sed ā lēge

s ab mīlitibus
est et interficī
citur, Dāmon,
cum celeritāte
um et uxōrem
Dionȳsium id
ɔi  ̄sium con-
annō⁶ Pythiae
t et sē vadem¹²
ssit; nam nōn
excēdere cupī-
omnī perīculō
se. Tyrannus⁶
?"

iīlia passuum
ıortis faciam.
m?" Dīxit sē
itimam fugit,

novae atque
ınēs inter sē

edge. ¹³ prison

---

Dionȳsius Dāmonem nōn scientem dē fidē dēdūcere ¹¹⁰
temptāvit, sed hoc cōnficere nōn poterat.

Fīne temporis accēdente nec illō reveniente, Dāmon ad
poenam dūcī iussus est, nam aut Dāmonem aut Pythiam
interficī necesse est. Quod hōra mortis statūta ferē aderat,
omnēs nōn iam spem habuērunt. Neuter autem amīcōrum ¹¹⁵
fidem alterī āmīsit. Uterque, fidē acceptā¹⁶, fidem servāvit.
Neque tempestās neque ventus nec ūlla alia difficultās
Pythiam revenīre¹⁷ prohibēre potuit. Eōdem igitur mō-
mentō et hōrā ā Dionȳsiō statūtā subitō ille quī vadem¹²
accēperat cum magnā celeritāte contendēns pervēnit. Ille ¹²⁰
reveniēns in admīrātiōnem coēgit Dionȳsium quī suppli-
cium¹⁸ fidē remīsit. Nunc hōs amīcōs fidēlēs sē socium
tertium huius amīcitiae recipere cupiēbat. Huius modī
erant vīrēs amīcitiae fidēlis. Dāmonem Pythiamque
memoriā semper tenēbitis. ¹²⁵

---

¹² pledge.   ¹⁶ having exchanged promises.   ¹⁷ from coming back.   ¹⁸ punishment.

**2.**                          **VOCABULARY**

| | |
|---|---|
| **alius, alia, aliud,** m., f., n., irreg. | *another, other* |
| **tōtus, -a, -um,** m., f., n., irreg. | *all, whole* |
| **nōscō, -ere, nōvī, nōtus,** 3 | *learn;* perf. *have learned, know* |
| **verbum, -ī,** n., 2 | *word* |
| **ferē,** adv. | *almost, about* |
| **hōra, -ae,** f., 1 | *hour* |
| **fidēs, fideī,** f., 5 | *trust, faith; confidence; pledge; reliability, trustworthiness* |
| **neuter, neutra, neutrum,** m., f., n., irreg. | *neither* (of two) (See 3, *d*, below) |
| **-scō,** verb suffix | *beginning of something* |
| **-men,** noun suffix | *by means of* |
| **-āris, -āre** or **-ārius, -a, -um,** adj. suffix | *connected with, belonging to* (English suffix, *-ary*) |

581

**Cornelia and her daughters worship the family gods**

# LESSON NINE

*"*

## *Questions with Num; Gender*

===== PRELIMINARY REMARKS =====

Sometimes a noun stands after another noun and explains who or what is meant by the first noun. [As, *Tullia, the daughter of Cornelia, is speaking.*] Such a noun is called an *appositive* and the two nouns are said to be in *apposition.* Questions in English are often asked in such a way that they seem to expect the answer "No." [As, *They are not working, are they? She does not call, does she?*] A special word in Latin indicates such a question.

In English, a noun denoting a male is in the *masculine gender.* [As, *man, boy.*] A noun denoting a female is in the *feminine gender.* [As, *woman, girl.*] A noun denoting a sexless object is in the *neuter gender.* [As, *money, fame.*] *Neuter* means neither masculine nor feminine. We pay little attention to gender in our use of English, except when we have occasion to employ the pronoun *he, she,* or *it* to refer to a noun. In Latin, gender is frequently determined by the ending of the noun itself. Nouns neuter in English may be *masculine* or *feminine* in Latin. As modifying adjectives must agree in gender, it is important to note the gender of every noun learned. The gender will be indicated in the vocabularies by the letters *m., f.,* and *n.*

[ 88 ]

Pictū
mātrōna
Num [3
Neque l
    Mātr
Cornēlia
Ibi star
sacrifica
    Sī pi
Statuae
tant.¹¹
Larēs¹⁴ :
et famil
ante sa⟨
Secunda
ficant, ⟨

[Notr
sacrificin⟨
5. *deīs*, g⟨
two boy⟨
11. *saltō*,
the Lares
have two
wine (*acc.*

**1.** No
which ar
and **poēt**⟨
The first

**2.** Yo⟨
nouns wh
to indica⟨
ing of its

LAR

## AN OFFERING TO THE LARES

Pictūram novam hodiē spectāte. In pictūrā nostrā [1, 2]
mātrōnam et puellās vidēmus. Quid mātrōna et puellae agunt?
Num [3] labōrant? Num lūdunt? Num ambulant? Minimē.
Neque labōrant neque lūdunt neque ambulant.

Mātrōna, Cornēlia, ante sacrārium[1] stat. Puellae, fīliae 5
Cornēliae, prope mātrōnam stant. Cūr prope sacrārium stant?
Ibi stant, quod sacrificant.[2] Cotīdiē[3] Rōmānī[4] deīs[5] familiae
sacrificant.

Sī pictūram spectātis, statuās[6] parvās in sacrāriō[7] vidētis.
Statuae duōs puerōs[8] ostendunt. Puerī[9] tunicās[10] gerunt. Sal- 10
tant.[11] Paterās[12] tenent et corōnās[13] gerunt. Rōmānī statuās
Larēs[14] appellant.[15] Larēs, deī[16] familiae Rōmānae, Cornēliam
et familiam Cornēliae cūrant. Itaque Cornēlia, fēmina bona,
ante sacrārium nunc sacrificat. Et ad sacrārium Tulliam et
Secundam, fīliās parvās, dūcit. Mātrōna et fīliae, cum sacri- 15
ficant, vīnum[17] et cibum[18] in mēnsā pōnunt.

[NOTES] 1. *sacrārium*, shrine (*nom. and acc.*). 2. *sacrificant*, they are
sacrificing. 3. *cotīdiē* (*adv.*), daily. 4. *Rōmānī*, the Romans (*nom. pl.*).
5. *deīs*, gods (*dat. pl.*). 6. *statua*, statue. 7. *sacrāriō* (*abl.*). 8. *duōs puerōs*,
two boys (*acc. pl.*). 9. *puerī*, the boys (*nom. pl.*). 10. *tunica*, tunic.
11. *saltō, saltāre*, dance. 12. *patera*, saucer. 13. *corōna*, wreath. 14. *Larēs*,
the Lares (*nom. and acc.*). 15. Verbs meaning *name, call*, and so forth may
have two objects in Latin, as here. 16. *deī*, the gods (*nom. pl.*). 17. *vīnum*,
wine (*acc.*). 18. *cibum*, food (*acc.*).

## GRAMMAR NOTES

*[Gender. Nouns of the First Declension.]*

1. Nouns of the first declension are feminine, with a few exceptions
which are masculine because of their meanings. [As, **agricola**, **nauta**,
and **poēta**.] *Adjectives agree in gender with the nouns which they modify.*
The first-declension forms of adjectives are feminine.

*[Five Declensions in Latin.]*

2. You will find in Latin five classes, or declensions, of nouns. The
nouns which belong to the *First Declension* end in -a. It is customary
to indicate the declension to which a noun belongs by placing the end-
ing of its genitive singular after it in the vocabulary. Whenever you

[ 89 ]

who or what
, *is speaking.*]
said to be in
ay that they
*ire they? She*
h a question.
*gender.* [As,
[As, *woman*,
[As, *money*,
ay little at-
e occasion to
gender is fre-
uter in Eng-
ectives must
oun learned.
*n., f.,* and *n.*

Animals of the sacrifice

Roman relief

# LESSON THIRTY-EIGHT

*II*

## *The Future Tense*

=== PRELIMINARY REMARKS ===

The stories that you have been reading have all been told in either present or past time. The present, perfect, imperfect, and past perfect tenses of verbs have been used. But action may also be described as *going to take place*. To express such an idea the *future tense* is used. [As, *I shall call*; *she will remain*; *we shall hide*; *they will accomplish*.] Note that in English we use an auxiliary, *shall* or *will*. Watch for verbs in the story which express future time.

### TULLIUS'S HOUSEHOLD CELEBRATES THE SATURNALIA

Iō Sāturnālia[1]! Gaudēte[2] nōbīscum! Tempus Sāturnālium[3] est. Per tōtam Italiam Sāturnālia nunc aguntur.[4] Forum et tabernās Rōmānī relīquērunt. Ōrātiōnēs nōn jam audiuntur. Neque agricolae neque servī in agrīs labōrābunt [1]. Mīlitēs
5 nōn jam pugnant. Paedagōgī puerōs in lūdum hodiē neque dūcent [1] neque cōgent. Nam fēriae[5] aguntur. "Iō Sāturnālia!" clāmant puerī puellaeque propter fēriās laetī. "Iō Sāturnālia!" clāmant patrēs mātrēsque.

[ 286 ]

I
tōta
dom
Ser
fam
rum
tinu
mor
rēgr
Hīs
Sed
atq
Sāt
rēx.
prīr
fēri

3. S
-āri
8. c
vorō

bec
it i
by
*wil*
an
*cal*

wh
-t
[A

LAR

Domicilia multīs in partibus urbis corōnīs[6] ōrnantur. Hodiē
tōta familia Tullī dōna[7] accēpit aut accipiet. Multī cēreī[8] in 10
domiciliīs[9] Tullī et cēterōrum patrum familiārum videntur.
Servī cum dominō et dominā cēnābunt[10]; nam hodiē tōta
familia aequa jūra habēbit.

Sāturnālia nōmen ā Sāturnō, ūnō ex antīquīs deīs Rōmānō-
rum, trāxērunt. Ille fīlius Ūranī erat, quī anteā rēgnum ob- 15
tinuerat. Patrem tamen ē rēgnō pepulit, quī fīlium ita
monuit: "Nōn diū rēgnum tenēbis. Mox fīlius tuus tē ex
rēgnō removēbit. Hōc modō tū imperium amittēs atque fugiēs."
Hīs verbīs perterritus, Sāturnus duōs ē fīliīs statim dēvorāvit.[11]
Sed Rhēa, marīta Sāturnī, Jovem,[12] fīlium tertium, cēlāvit[13] 20
atque ē perīculō mortis servāvit. Juppiter, vir factus, patrem
Sāturnum ē rēgnō jēcit. Itaque ille est deōrum hominumque
rēx. Sāturnus autem in Italiā multōs annōs habitāvit, ubi
prīnceps erat agricolārum. Rōmānī mēnse Decembrī semper
fēriās Sāturnī agunt. 25

[NOTES] 1. *Iō Sāturnālia,* Ho for the Saturnalia! 2. *gaudeō, -ēre,* rejoice.
3. *Sāturnālium (genitive plural).* 4. *aguntur,* are being celebrated. 5. *fēriae,
-ārum (f. pl.),* holiday. 6. *corōna, -ae (f.),* wreath. 7. *dōnum, -ī (n.),* gift.
8. *cēreī,* candles. 9. *domicilium, -ī (n.),* house. 10. *cēnō, -āre,* dine. 11. *dē-
vorō, -āre,* eat up. 12. *Juppiter, Jovis (m.),* Jupiter. 13. *cēlō, -āre,* hide.

## GRAMMAR NOTES

*[The Future Indicative Active, All Conjugations.]*

1. The future indicative is harder to remember than the other tenses
because it is formed in two ways. In the first and second conjugations
it is formed by adding to the present stem the tense sign **-bi-** followed
by the personal endings. [As, **vocā-bi-s,** *you will call;* **vidē-bi-t,** *he
will see.*] But **i** of the tense sign is dropped in the first person singular
and changed to **u** in the third person plural. [As, **vocā-bō,** *I shall
call;* **vidē-bu-nt,** *they will see.*]

In the third and fourth conjugations there is a future tense sign **ē,**
which is changed to **a** in the first person singular and shortened before
**-t** and **-nt.** The ending of the first person singular is **-m,** and not **-ō.**
[As, **dūcam,** *I shall lead;* **capiēs,** *you will take;* **audiet,** *he will hear.*]

[ 287 ]

## *Supplementary Story*

### THE TEMPLE OF VESTA

Magna et splendida[1] fuērunt aedificia[2] in forō Rōmānō. Quid in forō Rōmānō hodiē est? Nōn jam templa pulchra et ārās[3] et statuās in forō vidēmus. Nōn jam virī et fēminae in templīs sacrificia[4] parant aut deōs adōrant. Hodiē ruīnae[5]
5 sunt in forō. Advenae[6] ex terrīs multīs in forum veniunt et ruīnās spectant. Cum ruīnās spectant, dē fāmā Rōmae antīquae multum dīcunt.

In pictūrā (p. 139) templum Rōmae antīquae vidētis. Quaeritisne, "Nōnne templum deī aut deae spectāmus?" "Certē,"
10 respondeō, "templum Vestae, deae focī, vidētis." Templum Vestae in mediō forō Rōmānō fuit. Neque aedificium fuit magnum. Sed nōtum[7] fuit in Italiā et multīs in terrīs. Nam hīc sacra[8] flamma in ārā deae semper ardēbat.[9] Rōmānī flammam semper servābant. Sī sacra flamma ardēbat, Rōma fuit
15 salva.[10] Sī autem flamma nōn ardēbat, magnō in perīculō fuērunt Rōma et Rōmānī.

Itaque in templō Vestae sex[11] fēminae et puellae flammam semper cūrābant atque sacrificia parābant. Fēminae et puellae Vestālēs[12] appellābantur.

[NOTES] 1. *splendidus, -a, -um*, brilliant. 2. *aedificium, -ī (n.)*, building. 3. *āra, -ae (f.)*, altar. 4. *sacrificium, -ī (n.)*, sacrifice. 5. *ruīnae, -ārum (f. pl.)*, ruins. 6. *advena, -ae (m. and f.)*, stranger. 7. *nōtus, -a, -um*, famous. 8. *sacer, -cra, -crum*, sacred. 9. *ardēbat*, was burning. 10. *salvus, -a, -um*, safe. 11. *sex*, six. 12. *Vestālēs*, Vestals (*nom.*).

*"*

Can you answer these questions on the story?

1. How is the appearance of the Roman Forum now different from what it was in ancient times? 2. What can you tell about the temple of Vesta and the sacred fire? 3. What made this temple and fire so important? 4. Who took care of it?

LAR

# TEMPLA DEŌRUM

**S**ilvae erant prīma templa deōrum. Prīmō[1] virī in agrīs habitābant et Nātūram colēbant[2]. Posteā[3] virī quī in oppidīs habitābant templa pulchra in altīs locīs ad glōriam deōrum pōnēbant. Templa saepe in locīs altīs posita sunt. Cūr? Quod haec[4] loca caelō fīnitima erant, in quō deī habitābant.

5    "Nātūra est pulchra," hominēs[5] dīxērunt. "Etiam loca sacra ad quae convenīmus et in quibus beneficia deōrum petimus pulchra esse dēbent. Deī nōbīs fortūnam bonam dedērunt. Deīs grātiam habēmus ob frūmentum quō vītam sustinēmus et ob auxilium perpetuum quod nōbīs submīsērunt."

   Itaque Graecī et Rōmānī ob beneficia deōrum magna et pulchra templa
10 faciēbant quae deīs erant grāta. Statua aut deī aut deae semper in templō pōnēbātur.

   In Graeciā et in Italiā ruīnae templōrum multōrum et pulchrōrum videntur. Templum clārum Athēnae, appellātum Parthenōn, ob fōrmam pulchram semper laudātum est. Nōnne fuērunt multa templa Rōmāna inter pictūrās
15 quās vīdistī? Cūr pictūrās templōrum et Graecōrum et Rōmānōrum, quae in multīs librīs inveniuntur, nōn spectātis? Etiam in actīs diurnīs[6] pictūrās templōrum antīquōrum inveniētis.

   In templīs virī auxilium deōrum petēbant. Virī malī quōrum vīta[7] in perīculō erat saepe[8] ad templa fugiēbant, quod neque ex templīs removēbantur neque ibi poenam sustinēbant.
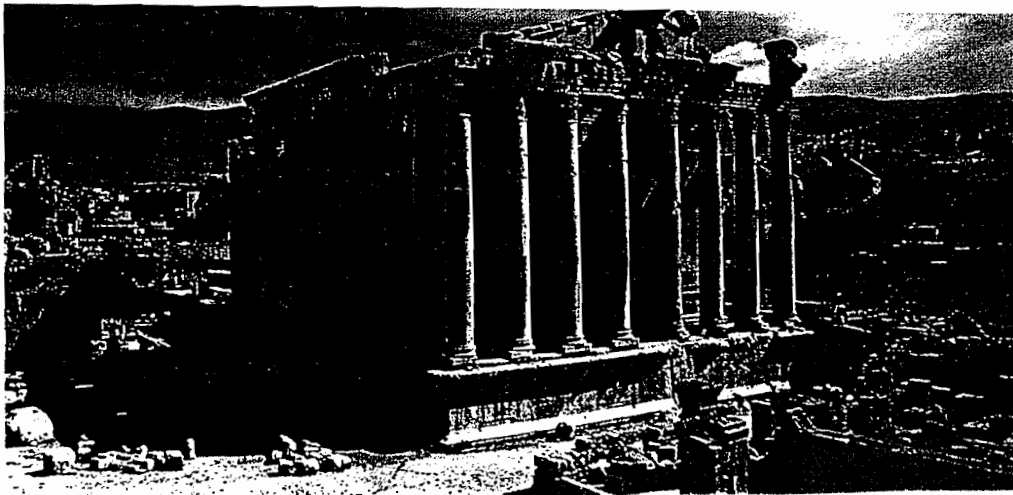
2

LESSON
OBJECTIVES

To learn the third
conjugation: present,
present imperative,
and perfect tenses
To learn about
apposition

# PATRŌNUS ET CLIENTĒS[1]



artist's rendition of an
ancient Roman house is based
on existing archaeological
remains in Pompeii. The view
is through the **ātrium** to the
interior. Note the **impluvium**,
a central pool, often located
under an opening left in the
roof to catch rainwater. At
the upper right, drapes may
conceal second-floor rooms.
The lower sections of some
columns are painted red (to
hide fingerprints!).

North Wind Picture Archives

atron and his clients
central hall
soon will be present
meanwhile
office
leisure
others
him
never
often
therefore
his
so many

**I**n ātriō[2] multī clientēs exspectant. Patrōnus, vir clārus, mox aderit[3].
Interim[4] clientēs dē officiīs agunt. Patrōnum laudant quod amīcus et
generōsus est.

   Cliēns prīmus: "Salvē, amīce! Vīdistīne patrōnum nostrum?"
5  Cliēns secundus: "Minimē. Multa officia habet et in tablīnō[5] labōrat."
   Cliēns prīmus: "Parvum ōtium[6] habet quod prō aliīs[7] vītam agit. Cūrae
aliōrum virōrum semper eum[8] movent."
   Cliēns secundus: "Ab officiīs novīs et dūrīs numquam[9] cēdit. Nōnne
saepe[10] auxilium ad familiās nostrās mīsit?"
10 Cliēns prīmus: Sīc. Ergō[11] dēbēmus eum laudāre et grātiā nostrā fāmam
eius[12] augēre. Ssst! Patrōnus accēdit!"
   Nunc patrōnus in ātriō est. Patrōnō grātum est vidēre tot[13] virōs—amīcōs,
fīliōs, clientēs, servōs. Familiam salūtat, et familia eum salūtāre matūrat.

LFA

Magnus servus sportulās[14] in atrium portat et in sportulās pecūniam et cibum pōnit. Sportulae praemia sunt. Quod clientēs fīdī[15] fuērunt et erunt, patrōnus[15] sportulās ad familiās clientium[16] mittit. Tum patrōnus ad Forum excēdit.

Aliquandō[17] clientēs patrōnum spectant dum[18] causās in Forō agit. Aliquandō patrōnus clientēs dēfendit. Aliquandō clientēs ad cēnam vocat. Clientēs nōn servī sunt, sed patrōnus paene dominus est. "Manus manum lavat."[19]

<div align="right">20</div>

[14] *little baskets*
[15] *loyal*
[16] *of the clients*
[17] *sometimes*
[18] *while*
[19] *"One hand washes the other."*

## Questions

1. Where is the patron at the start of the story?
2. In what part of the house are the two clients waiting for him?
3. Why is the patron always so busy?
4. What are the clients discussing while they are waiting?
5. What do the clients take home from the visit to their patron?
6. In what other ways did Roman patrons provide for their clients?
7. What do clients provide in return for the support given them by patrons?

# VOCABULARY

## Noun

**offi´cium, offi´cī** n. *duty*  (official, officiate)

## Verbs

**a´gō, a´gere, ē´gī, [āc´tus]** *do, drive,*  (action, active)
*discuss, live, spend (time)*
**cē´dō, cē´dere, ces´sī, [cessū´rus]** *move*  (cede)
*(away from), retreat, yield, give way*
    **accē´dō, accē´dere, acces´sī,**
    **[accessū´rus]** *approach*
    **excē´dō, excē´dere, exces´sī,**
    **[excessū´rus]** *depart*
**dēfen´dō, dēfen´dere, dēfen´dī,**  (defensive, indefensible)
    **[dēfēn´sus]** *defend*
**exspec´tō, exspectā´re, exspectā´vī,**  [spectō]
    **[exspectā´tus]** *look out for, await*
**mit´tō, mit´tere, mī´sī, [mis´sus]** *let go, send*  (missile, transmit)
**pō´nō, pō´nere, po´suī, [po´situs]** *put, place*  (postpone, position)

## Nota•Bene

Carefully inspect the verbs in the vocabulary to the left to see how often verbs of the third conjugation, unlike most verbs of the first and second conjugations, change their stem in the third and fourth principal parts, e.g. **agō** → **ēgī, āctus; pōnō** → **posuī, positus,** etc. Pronouncing them aloud as you memorize them is a great help.

# BELLA

**Q**uae sunt causae bellī? Variī auctōrēs ostendērunt multās esse causās. Multa bella aut ob iniūriās aut prō lībertāte gesta esse vidēmus. In aliīs bellīs lībertās sociōrum dēfēnsa est. Haec bella iūsta fuērunt. Multī populī pugnāvērunt quod putāvērunt potestātem imperiumque vī bellōque augērī 5 posse. Hī cupīvērunt patriam esse nūllī secundam. Sī superātī sunt, omnia saepe āmīsērunt; sī superāvērunt, aliēnās terrās occupāvērunt, quās in fōrmam prōvinciārum redēgērunt. Putāsne bella huius generis iūsta esse? Multī dīcunt omnia bella iūsta esse, aliī putant nūlla esse iūsta. Quid dē hōc putās? Nōvimus aliōs prō lībertāte, aliōs prō glōriā bella gessisse. Quae 10 fuērunt causae bellōrum nostrōrum? Audīvistīne dē bellō frīgidō? Etiam nunc nova bella et novōs hostēs timēmus.

Horātius,[1] poēta Rōmānus, scrībit dulce esse prō patriā vītam āmittere. Sī patria in perīculō est, nōnne putās mūnus nostrum esse eam dēfendere?

e. T. exact words of his
is phrase are: **Dulce et**
**um est prō patriā mori,**
*and fitting it is to die for*
*country.* The Latin words
r on the gates leading into
ton National Cemetery near
ngton, D.C.

*LFA*

sol s used different
nents of war, depending
situation. Here, a batter-
(**ariēs**) is used to
or break into the walls
fortification.



Mary Evans/Photo Researchers

Scīmus nōn levēs esse labōrēs mīlitum, gravia eōs accipere vulnera, multōs ad mortem mittī; etiam scīmus eōs tamen nōn dubitāre omnēs labōrēs prō 15 patriā grātō animō suscipere et sustinēre. Prō hīs mūneribus praemia aequa eīs solvere nōn possumus. Sed nec praemia nec beneficia exspectant; spērant cīvēs facta sua memoriā tentūrōs esse et aliōs semper parātōs futūrōs esse patriam dēfendere. Hōc modō praemia solvere possumus.

Bellane ūllō tempore cōnstitūra sunt? Possuntne bella prohibērī? Quis 20 scit? Sed spērāmus parvō spatiō temporis nōn iam bella futūra esse; spērāmus omnēs hominēs aliōrum iūra cōnservātūrōs esse.

### Questions

1. What are three reasons for war that many people consider just?
2. Why else, according to the passage, did many peoples wage war?
3. What have been the risks and potential benefits of these wars?
4. What did the poet Horace have to say about dying in battle?
5. If your country is in danger, according to this passage, what should you do?
6. The passage reminds us of certain facts about soldiers in war. Name three.
7. What do brave soldiers undertake on behalf of their country?
8. What do these soldiers expect in return for their service?
9. What does the writer express about his hopes for the future?
10. What are your answers to the questions asked in the Latin reading?

## VOCABULARY

### Nouns

**la´bor, labō´ris** m. *work, hardship*      (laboratory, laborious)
**mū´nus, mū´neris** n. *duty, service, gift*      (munificent)

### Adjectives

**iūs´tus, -a, -um** *just*      (justice, justify)
**secun´dus, -a, -um** *second*      (secondary)

### Verbs

**pu´tō, -ā´re, -ā´vī, -ā´tus** *think, suppose*      (reputation)
**scī´ō, scī´re, scī´vī, scī´tus** *know*      (science)
**sol´vō, sol´vere, sol´vī, solū´tus** *loosen, pay*      (solution, resolve)

### Conjunction

*"*

## The Future Tense Passive

═══════════════ PRELIMINARY REMARKS ═══════════════

The future, just as other tenses, has a passive form. Observe its use in the story.

### MARCUS PUTS ON THE TOGA OF MANHOOD

Hora quārta fuit et Titus Fabius, nōtus cīvis Rōmānus, in Viā Lātā forte ambulābat. Spectācula[1] urbis dēmōnstrābat cuidam[2] amīcō quī ab Hispāniā Rōmam vēnerat. Nōnne, puerī et puellae, illa verba quae inter sē 5 dīcēbant audīre cupitis? Attendite!

AMĪCUS AB HISPĀNIĀ. Tēcum per viās ambulāre, amīce, mihi gaudium magnum dat. In hāc viā multitūdinem hominum vidēre pos- 10 sum. Vidēsne eōs? Cūr tanta multitūdō per mediam viam sē movet? Quid agunt illī hominēs? Quō illī contendunt?

TITUS. Illī sunt Tullius, vir 15 dignitātis singulāris, et fidēlēs clientēs[3] ejus. Mārcus, ūnus ex fīliīs Tullī, cum patre ambulat. Nōnne eum vidēs? Hodiē enim Mārcus togam virīlem[4] sūmet. 20

AMĪCUS. Cujus generis est haec toga virīlis? Quam ob causam toga virīlis a Mārcō sūmētur [1]? Nōnne mihi dē hāc togā nārrābis?

TITUS. Certē nārrābō. Puerī 25 Rōmānī togam praetextam[5] semper gerunt. Sed puer Rōmānus, postquam quīndecim annōs nātus est,[6]

The Emperor Augustus dressed
in his toga

R

[ 337 ]
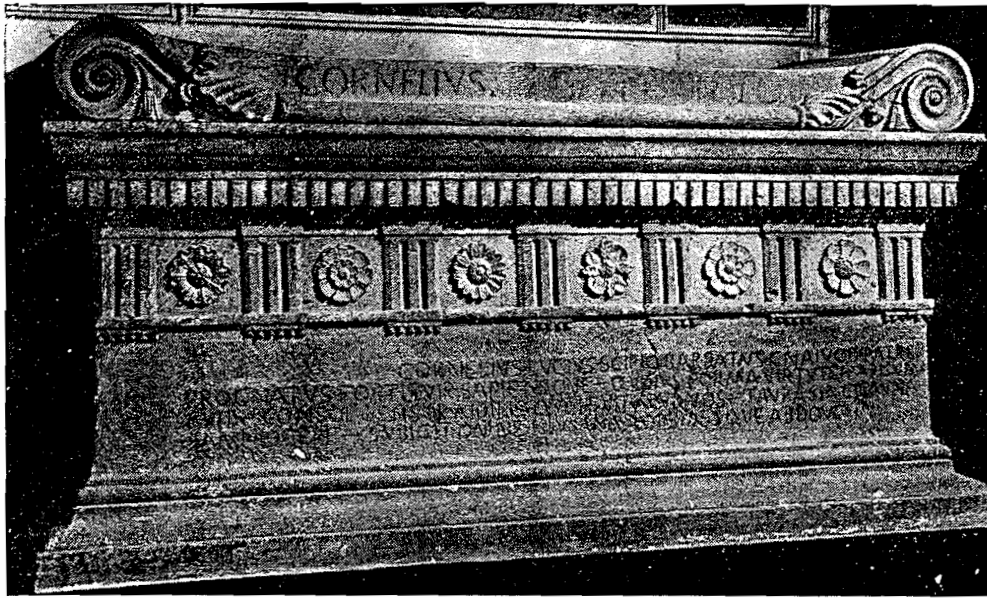
The Vatican, Rome

Sarcophagus (stone coffin) of Lucius Cornelius Scipio Barbatus, a great general and an ancestor of Cornelius Scipio Africanus. Found in the tomb of the Scipios on the Appian Way

# LESSON FORTY-EIGHT

*"*

## The Fourth Declension

PRELIMINARY REMARKS

As preparation for learning a new declension, review the endings of the three declensions that you have already studied. For practice, decline **pater cārus, vulnus recēns, familia nōbilis, mare magnum, cīvis dīligēns.** Observe in the story the forms of a new declension.

### A GREAT ROMAN FAMILY

Hodiē Cornēlia domī suae[1] nōn est. Cum fīliīs suīs Mārcō et Quīntō ad domum [1] frātris suī Gnaeī Cornēlī Scīpiōnis[2] pervēnit. In eādem domō pater Cornēliae per vītam suam habitābat. Cornēlia fīliōs per ātrium in ālam[3] dūcit et eīs imā-
5 ginēs[4] majōrum[5] gentis Cornēliae[6] in mūrō positās dēmōnstrat.

"Spectāte, fīliī," inquit, "illās imāginēs majōrum vestrōrum quōrum multī cōnsiliīs factīsque cīvitātem Rōmānam cōnservāre et augēre potuērunt. Laetissimī vōs ipsī esse dēbētis, quod

[ 354 ]

LAR

majōrēs tantae fāmae possidētis. Virtūtēs eōrum atque bene-
ficia pūblica memoriā semper tenēre dēbētis et exempla[7] ante 10
vōs prōpōnere.

"Omnēs majōrēs vestrī erant fortissimī et potentissimī.
Nūllus[8] tamen eōrum virtūte et laude illī Cornēliō aequus fuit
cui populus Rōmānus cognōmen[9] Āfricānum dedit. Per tōtam
vītam Pūblius Cornēlius Scīpiō homō fortissimus erat. Juvenis[10] 15
duodēvīgintī annōrum vītam patris suī servāvit. Pater ejus,
quem quoque eōdem nōmine appellāmus, illō tempore contrā
Hannibalem[11] pugnābat, quī cōpiās trāns montēs in Italiam
magnā difficultāte dūxerat. Sed ab hostibus circumventus
erat et vulnus grave accēperat. Simul atque perīculum patris 20
vīdit, fīlius in mediōs hostēs sē prōjēcit et patrem ē morte
ipsā trāxit. Eōdem bellō Cannīs[12] pugnāvit, quō in proeliō
exercitus Rōmānus victus est quod exercituī Hannibalis minimē
pār erat.

"Multōs post annōs īdem Scīpiō, quī ipse imperātor exer- 25
citūs Rōmānī jam erat, imperātō senātūs bellum in Āfricā
gessit. Ad Zamam,[13] quae urbs nōn multa mīlia passuum[14] ā
Carthāgine[15] aberat, Hannibal et Scīpiō, maximī ducēs nōn sō-
lum suae aetātis sed etiam totīus aetātis antīquae, proeliō
contendērunt. Exitus proelī erat victōria exercitūs Rōmānī. 30
Scīpiō triumphāvit[16] et cognōmen Āfricānum accēpit."

[NOTES] 1. *domī suae*, at her own home. 2. Genitive of *Gnaeus Cornēlius
Scīpiō*. 3. *āla, -ae* (*f.*), the ala (a room off the atrium in which portrait
busts or masks of deceased members of the family were kept in small niches
in the wall). 4. *imāgō, -inis* (*f.*), mask. 5. *majōrēs, -um* (*m. pl.*), ancestors.
6. *gentis Cornēliae*, of the Cornelian family. 7. *exemplum, -ī* (*n.*), example.
8. *nūllus, -īus* (*m.*), no one. 9. *cognōmen, -inis* (*n.*), surname, cognomen.
10. *juvenis, -is* (*m.*), youth. 11. *Hannibal, -alis* (*m.*), Hannibal. 12. *Cannīs*,
at Cannae; the village where Hannibal defeated the Romans. 13. *Zama,
-ae* (*f.*), Zama. 14. *Mīlia passuum*, miles (thousands of paces): accusative
of extent; for the declension of *mīlle* see page 423. 15. *Carthāgō, -inis* (*f.*)
Carthage. 16. *triumphāvit*, celebrated a triumph.

If you had visited ancient Rome, you would have seen offerings made at the altars, worshipers going in and out of the temples, religious processions passing through the streets. In the later centuries many Oriental religions became popular. With the establishment of the empire, the worship of the emperor as a god spread all over the Roman world. The willingness of the Romans to accept religious change proved their tolerant spirit.

## LEGACY

Can you find for each of the gods and goddesses mentioned a modern picture, advertisement, or clipping which makes use of him or her? Make a poster of these. What English words are derived from *Mars*, *Mercury*, *Ceres*, *Janus*, *Jove*, *Saturn*?

## *Supplementary Story*

### ROMAN PATRIOTISM

Fābulās multās, līberī, dē rēbus gestīs[1] fortissimīs prūdentissimīsque Rōmānōrum jam lēgistis. Propter amōrem[2] patriae cīvis Rōmānus vītam suam prō lībertāte cīvitātis semper cum gaudiō dabat. Multa exempla[3] amōris patriae nōbīs
5 ā scrīptōribus[4] Rōmānīs trādita sunt. Ūnum exemplum singulāre hujus amōris nōbīs trāditum est.

Bellum contrā Latīnōs, gentem fīnitimam, ā Rōmānīs ācriter gerēbātur. Rōmānī aciem īnstrūxerant; sed proelium committere[5] dubitābant, quod Latīnī potestāte et numerō homi-
10 num eīs parēs erant et exitus proelī nōn erat certus. Neque Rōmānī sine difficultāte cēdere potuērunt. Cōnsulēs quoque, ubi sacrificia fēcērunt, nam cōnsuētūdō antīqua erat sacrificia ante proelium facere et deōs cōnsulere,[6] deōs esse āversōs[7] sēnsērunt. " Quō modō īram deōrum āvertere[8] poterimus? Quō
15 modō victōriam reportāre[9] poterimus?" cīvēs rogāvērunt. Atque in omnibus templīs ā deīs auxilium petere coepērunt. Tandem nōn multō ante tempus proelī cōnsulēs hīs verbīs deōrum monitī sunt: "Victōriam certam habēbitis, Rōmānī, sī dux exercitūs vestrī prīmus in aciē interficiētur."

[ 380 ]
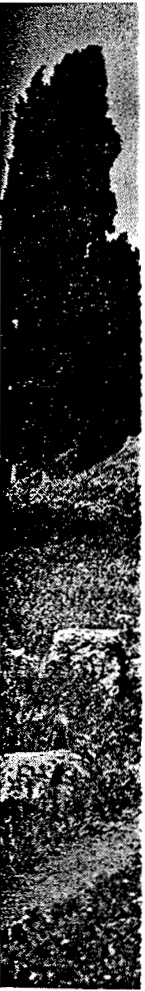
amor
4. *sc*
6. *cō*
8. *āv*
back

did
Rom
5. W
ask
vice

**B.** Read the Latin and translate.

1. Caesar erat imperātor magnus in Galliā.   2. Germānī magnā cum audāciā nostra castra oppugnābunt.   3. Mīlitēs cum dīligentiā in oppidō arma parābant.   4. Mātrum carmina filiās dēlectāverint.   5. Nautae Graecī nōn nāvigābant magnā celeritāte.   6. Nōnne flūmen erat lātum et longum et pulchrum?   7. Lūcī Iūlī Caesaris filiae nōmen erit Iūlia.   8. Populus Rōmānus imperium cōnsulibus grātē dedit.   9. Corpora Rōmānōrum magna nōn erant.   10. Post bellum nōmen novum cōnsulī dabimus.

**C.** Translate.

1. The teachers did not often look at the boys with great friendliness.   2. Men of Rome, fight with great diligence!   3. Did the messenger give the battle signal on a trumpet?   4. There was a horse's body on the road.   5. The Spanish always used to fight with great boldness.   6. A great king in Germany was a friend and ally of the Roman People.   7. The German forces had fought in the camp of the Romans.   8. The journey to the Spanish town is long, but we shall walk with great speed.   9. The troops of Rome attacked the German camp with long weapons.   10. Why did you carry the grain to town in a wagon, Marcus?

— *Reading* —

## ROMAN SCHOOLS

In lūdō Rōmānō erant puerī sed nōn multae puellae. Sī lūdus bonus erat, puerī magistrō pecūniam dabant. Magister saepe erat servus fīdus. Docēbat puerōs grammaticam, rhētoricam, arithmēticam. Sī puerī discipulī bonī erant, eōs (*them*) laudābat. Sī puerī malī et nōn studiōsī erant, eōs castīgābat. Paedagōgus puerōs exspectābat et librōs portābat. Fortūna puerōrum nōn mala erat sī puerī bonī erant.

Puellae domī erant. Mātrēs puellās artēs domesticās docēbant. Nōnne vīta puellārum bona erat?

Hodiē in patriā nostrā puerī puellaeque in lūdō sunt. In multīs lūdīs cīvēs librōs comparant. Fortūna vestra bona est. Nunc magna cōpia librōrum bonōrum est sed tum librī paucī erant.

# VI. Literature

quam petīverat dedit atque hōc modō librōs ēmit. Sibylla rēgem statim relīquit, neque posteā in urbe Rōmā vīsa est.

Illī librī ā Rōmānīs appellātī sunt Sibyllīnī.[6]  Ex eīs populus Rōmānus auxilium atque cōnsilium petēbat, sī cīvitās magnō 15 in perīculō erat.

[NOTES] 1. *emō, -ere, ēmī, emptus,* buy.  2. *recūsō, -āre,* refuse.  3. *rūrsus* (*adv.*), again.  4. *Sibylla, -ae* (*f.*), Sibyl.  5. *idem,* the same (*acc.*).  6. *Sibyllīnus, -a, -um,* Sibylline.

**II**

Can you answer these questions on the story?

1. Can you tell in your own words all that happened after Tarquin had refused for the second time to buy the books?  2. What were these books?  3. What did they do for the Roman people?  4. What lesson do you think Tarquin should have learned from this experience?

## PROVERBS FROM LATIN LITERATURE

Dum anima est, spēs esse dīcitur. *While there's life there's hope.*
Cuiusvīs hominis est errāre. *To err is human.*
Nōn sī male nunc et ōlim sīc erit. *Cloudy mornings turn to clear evenings.*
Dimidium factī, quī coepit, habet. *Well begun is half done.*
Semper avārus eget. *The miser is always in want.*
Nēmō malus fēlīx. *A bad man is never happy.*
Exitus ācta probat. *All's well that ends well.*
Age sī quid agis. *Do with all your might what your hands find to do.*
Imperāre sibi maximum imperium. *Self-control is the highest power.*
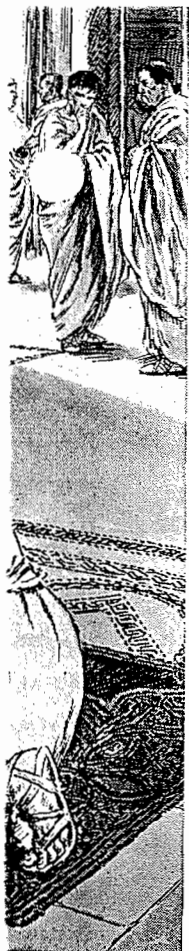Omne ignōtum prō magnificō est. *Distance lends enchantment.*
Āctum nē agās. *Let well enough alone.*
Quot hominēs, tot sententiae. *So many men, so many minds.*
Possunt quia posse videntur. *They can because they think they can.*
Grātia grātiam parit. *One good turn deserves another.*
Aurea nē crēdās quaecumque nitescere cernis. *All that glitters is not gold.*

## PREFIXES

The following prefixes are found in Latin words: ā, ab, abs (*away*); ad, ap, ac, at (*to*); ante (*before*); bi, bis (*twice*, adverb only); circum (*around*); con, com (*with, together*; prep. cum); contrā (*against*); dē (*down, down from, about*); dis, dī (*apart*, adverb only); ē, ex (*out of, from*); extrā (*out of*); in, im (*in, on, into*); in, im (*not*, adverb only); inter (*among*); intrā (*within*); intrō (*within*, adverb only); ob, op, oc (*against*); per (*through*); post (*after, behind*); prae (*before*, English *pre*); prō (*for, forward*); re, red (*back, again*, adverb only); retrō (*back*, adverb only); se (*apart*, adverb only); sub, sus, suc (*under, off*); subter (*beneath*); super (*above*); trāns (*across*). The prefixes con and per also strengthen the meaning of the verb by giving the idea of *completely*. [Thus, cōnfirmō, *I strengthen, establish completely*; perficiō, *I accomplish completely*.]

## LEGACY

Can you give for each prefix an English word in which it is used?

## *Supplementary Story*

### HOW TRIMALCHIO RECEIVED HIS GUESTS

Dum hodiē per viam oppidī nostrī ambulō, amīcum meum Encolpium subitō vīdī. Eum per multum spatium temporis nōn vīderam. Itaque cōnstitimus. "Salvē, Encolpī!" inquam, ac ille, "Salvē tū quoque, amīce!" "Ubi tū per hōs mēnsēs fuistī?" ab eō quaerō. "Jam diū tē nōn vīdī." "In urbe 5 Capuā,[1]" ille respondit, "decem mēnsēs fuī. Jam autem bīduum domī sum, maximō cum gaudiō." "Nōnne multa jūcunda[2] Capuae[3] vīdistī?" quaesīvī. "Certē vīdī," is respondit, "sed ūnum ex iīs maximē erat jūcundum. Nōnne id audīre cupis?" "Certē," ego respondī, "bene attendō." 10

"In urbe Capuā," ita Encolpius nārrāvit,[4] "homō nōtus, Trimalchiō appellātus, habitat. Ego et amīcus meus Ascyltus apud eum[5] forte cēnābāmus.[6] Per viam ad domicilium Trimalchiōnis ambulābāmus. Subitō senem calvum[7] vīdī quī quoque

[ 263 ]

15 per viam cum multīs servīs ambulābat. Is tunicam russeam[8]
gerēbat. 'Quis est ille?' ab Ascyltō quaesīvī. 'Trimalchiō est,'
ille respondit. 'Nunc ad domi-
cilium revenit, ubi mox bene
cēnābimus.[9] Nōlī diū exspec-
20 tāre.'

"Postquam ad portam do-
micilī pervēnimus, haec verba
in portā scrīpta vīdimus ac lē-
gimus. 'Sī servus sine imperātō
25 dominī excēdit, plāgās cen-
tum[10] accipit.' In vēstibulō[11]
ōstiārius[12] prasinātus[13] sedē-
bat. Dum eum spectāmus, pīca[14]
ē caveā aureā[15] subitō clāmāvit:
30 'Salvēte! Salvēte!' Prīmum
timēbāmus ac pedēs remittē-
bāmus. Tum tandem rīsimus[16]

Mosaic from Pompeii

**Guardian of the house**

atque animōs cōnfirmāvimus. Pictūra autem, quae erat in
mūrō vēstibulī, mē perterruit. Erat enim pictūra canis[17] ma-
35 ximī cum verbīs scrīptīs, 'Cavē canem!'"

[NOTES] 1. *Capua, -ae (f.)*, Capua. 2. *jūcundus, -a, -um*, delightful,
pleasant. 3. *Capuae*, at Capua (*locative*). 4. *nārrō, -āre*, tell a story. 5. *apud
eum*, at his home, with him. 6. *forte cēnābāmus*, we happened to be dining.
7. *senem calvum*, a bald-headed old man (*acc.*). 8. *russeus, -a, -um*, reddish.
9. *cēnābimus*, we are going to dine. 10. *plāgās centum*, a hundred lashes
(*acc.*). 11. *vēstibulum, -ī (n.)*, vestibule. 12. *ōstiārius, -ī (m.)*, doorkeeper.
13. *prasinātus, -a, -um*, having a leek-green garment. 14. *pīca, -ae (f.)*,
magpie. 15. *cavea aurea*, a golden cage. 16. *rīdeō, -ēre, rīsī*, laugh. 17. *canis,
-is (m.)*, dog.

Can you answer these questions on the story?

1. Tell exactly how the teller of the story happened to hear about
Trimalchio's dinner. 2. Can you repeat the conversation? 3. Where
did Encolpius and Ascyltus first see Trimalchio? 4. What was he
doing? 5. Why was his appearance strange? 6. What words did the
friends find written on the door? 7. What other things did they see
in the vestibule?
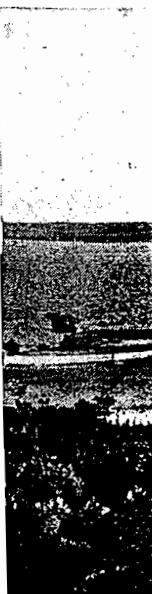
would find him seated in the large open room at the back of the **ātrium,** the **tablīnum** (8), which was especially the room set aside for the



Pompeian wall painting

**A dancing Maenad**

master of the house. You might have noticed the **āla** (7) in passing across the **ātrium.**

Through the large opening at the back of the **tablīnum** you would have looked into the peristyle with its colonnade, surrounding a lovely bit of garden. Upon it the chief living rooms opened, and from it a passage led to the side entrance (16). At one corner of the colonnade was placed the household shrine (11). Other rooms were used for sleeping (12, 14), for dining (15), and for cooking (13).

The House of the Tragic Poet was one of the most attractive in Pompeii, although many were more elaborate. Its compactness made it homelike and comfortable. The owner probably used the shops as his place of business.

### LEGACY

What is the origin of our words *janitor, vestibule, postern, sacristy, kitchen?* Look them up in a dictionary.

How many English words can you find that are derived from **domus** and **hortus?**

## *Supplementary Story*

### HOW THEY REACHED THE DINING ROOM

"Nōs ad trīclīnium[1] Trimalchiōnis jam pervēnerāmus," ita Encolpius mihi nārrāvit. "Prope jānuam[2] trīclīnī ūnum ē servīs perspexī, quī nōs ac dominum accipiēbat. Quantam multitūdinem servōrum noster Trimalchiō possidet! Paucī ē
5 servīs ejus, ut saepe audīvī, dominum cognōscere possunt.

"In portā trīclīnī fascēs[3] vīdī et pictūram nāvis ventō im-

pulsae cum hīs verbīs: 'C. Pompēiō Trimalchiōnī, sēvirō
Augustālī, Cinnamus dispensātor.'[4] Quae verba auctōritātem
dominī ostendēbant. Duae pictūrae in mūrō erant, quārum
altera[5] haec verba habuit, 'Tertiō et prīdiē[6] Kalendās Jānuāriās 10
dominus noster forās cēnat'; altera[5] pictūra lūnam stellāsque
septem ostendit. Hās pictūrās pulchrās et servōs multōs et
potestātem dominī familiae maximō cum gaudiō spectābāmus.

"In triclīnium veniēbāmus, cum ūnus ex servīs, quem
super hoc officium dominus posuerat, 'Dextrō pede'[7] exclā- 15
māvit. Statim pedēs remīsimus ac paulisper[8] timuimus quod
nōs contrā imperāta in triclīnium venīre nōn cupiēbāmus. Tum
pariter[9] dextrōs pedēs mōvimus et in triclīnium vēnimus.

[NOTES] 1. *triclīnium, ī* (*n.*), dining room. 2. *jānua, -ae* (*f.*), doorway.
3. *fascēs, -ium* (*m.*), the fasces (the bundle of rods carried by the lictors, the
officers who attended the highest officials of the state). 4. *C. . . . dispensātor,*
gift of Cinnamus, the steward, to Gaius Pompeius Trimalchio, priest of the
college of Augustus. 5. *altera . . . altera,* the one . . . the other. 6. *Tertiō et
prīdiē . . . cēnat,* our master dines away from home on December 30 and 31.
7. *dextrō pede,* right foot first. 8. *paulisper* (*adv.*), for a while. 9. *pariter*
(*adv.*), side by side.

**"**

Can you answer these questions on the story?

1. Who welcomed the guests at the doorway of the dining room?
2. What was the interesting thing about the slaves? 3. What did the
guests see on the door? 4. What did it show? 5. Describe the two
pictures on the wall. 6. What strange thing happened when they tried
to enter the room? 7. What did the guests do about it?

Alinari

Etruscan dancing girl and boy. They form part of the decoration of the walls of a tomb

If so, how? If you can do so, get some pictures which show cloisters, balconies, patios, or any other features in modern buildings similar to those in the Roman house.

## Supplementary Story

### TRIMALCHIO HAS SOME FUN

Nōnne est jūcunda, amīcī, haec fābula quae dē cēnā[1] Trimalchiōnis ab Encolpiō nārrātur? Sed jam fīnis fābulae adest. Attendite!

"Cum in trīclīnium vēnimus atque in lectīs[2] nōs posuimus,"
5 ita Encolpius mihi dīxit, "'Tandem tempus est, amīcī,' ēnūntiāvit Trimalchiō, 'nōs cēnāre. Spectāte! Cēna nōbīs parātur. Vōs cēna exspectat.' Nam paulō ante[3] servī in trīclīnium mēnsam portāverant.

"Quae ubi Trimalchiō dīxit, celeriter in trīclīnium quattuor
10 servī vēnērunt quī saltābant[4] et aprum[5] mīrā[6] magnitūdine portābant. Nōs laetī plausum[7] dedimus. Sed Trimalchiō

[ 278 ]

maximō gaudiō permōtus, 'Carpe![8]' subitō clāmāvit. Appropinquāvit statim ob hoc imperātum servus magnus quī quoque saltābat et aprum cultrō[9] maximō carpere coepit. Dominus autem 'Carpe, Carpe!' vōce magnā clāmābat. 15

"Ego quidem mē rogābam, 'Cūr dominus haec verba dīcit? Quid illum servum perficere jubet?' Tandem ab illō quī prope mē accumbēbat[10] quaesīvī. Ille, quī forte cēnās ejus modī saepe spectāverat, 'Vidēsne eum,' respondit, 'quī aprum carpit? Carpus appellātur. Itaque, cum Trimalchiō 20 exclāmat "Carpe, Carpe!", hīs verbīs et eum vocat et eī imperātum dat.'"

Nōnne, amīcī, magnō cum gaudiō fābulam audīvistis quam Encolpius mihi nārrāvit? Valēte.

[NOTES] 1. *cēna, -ae (f.)*, dinner. 2. *lectus, -ī (m.)*, couch. 3. *paulō ante*, a little while before. 4. *saltō, -āre*, dance. 5. *aper, aprī (m.)*, a wild boar 6. *mīrus, -a, -um*, wonderful. 7. *plausum*, applause (*acc.*). 8. *carpō, -ere*, carve. (The joke is that *Carpe* may be either the imperative of the verb, that is, carve! or it may be the vocative of the slave's name, which was Carpus, that is, Carver. *Carpe, Carpe!* Carve 'er, Carver!) 9. *culter, -trī (m.)*, knife. 10. *accumbō, -ere*, recline.

*"*

Can you answer these questions on the story?

1. Can you describe all that happened after the guests entered Trimalchio's dining room? 2. Can you mention the interesting things that happened to Encolpius and that delighted him so much? 3. What would you think of a dinner party like that?

wore one of the masks and was dressed in the official costume which that particular ancestor had worn.

## LEGACY

Who compose an American family? Does your father have authority over his family such as the Roman father had? What control does he have over your mother's and your own money and possessions? Is he responsible for any of your acts? See if you can find out.

Several English words are derived from the word **imāgō, imāginis**. Can you think of any? Remember that words often come from the genitive stem.
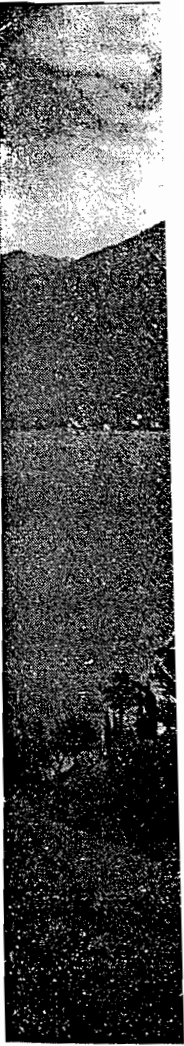
## Supplementary Story

### PLINY'S BEAUTIFUL VILLAS

(This is an extract, in simplified form, of a letter of Pliny to a friend.)

Mihi scrīpsistī, "Ego aedificāvī.[1] Quid dē tē?" Hoc dē tē audīre mihi maximē grātum est. Nam ego quoque aedificāvī; et bonō cōnsiliō, ut putō, quod tēcum ad negōtium hujus modī addūcor.

5 Tū, ita in epistulā scrīpsistī, aedificium novum prope mare posuistī. Ego autem ad lacum[2] aedificāvī, ubi pulchritūdine[3] locī vehementer dēlector.[4] In lītore[5] ejus lacūs duās vīllās possideō. Prīma in monte imposita[6] ex locō altō lacum et undās spectat; secunda aquās lacūs tangit.[7] Prīma, quod aquam nōn 10 tangit, undās nōn sentit[8]; secunda undās frangit,[9] ubi ventus aquam movet. Ex prīmā virōs perspicere potes quī piscēs[10] capere temptant. Ex secundā autem hāmum[11] dē fenestrā[12] atque paene dē lectō, ut ē nāve, jacere potes et ipse[13] piscēs capere. Ego hās vīllās semper in memoriā habeō. Tam pul- 15 chrae sunt! Eīs satis laudis dare nōn possum. Tē subitō in eās venīre atque hīc tempus satis longum mēcum manēre jubeō. Valē.

[NOTES] 1. *aedificāvī*, I have been building a house. 2. *lacus* (*m.*), lake (*gen. lacūs, acc. lacum*). 3. *pulchritūdō, -inis* (*f.*), beauty. 4. *dēlectō, -āre*, please. 5. *lītus, -oris* (*n.*), shore. 6. *impōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus*, locate.

The tow

7. *tangō -ere, frē* 12. *fene.*

Can
1. W
he built
two vill
feel abc

LAR

Maybe you would like to make some models of Roman furniture or copy in color some Roman painting. You will find many examples to follow in your books.

## Supplementary Story

### A HAUNTED HOUSE (PART 1)

Gaius Plīnius,[1] nōtus scrīptor[2] Rōmānus, nōbīs hanc fābulam dē domiciliō quōdam[3] nārrat. Erat quidem Athēnīs,[4] ita scrībit, domicilium in quō nēmō[5] habitāre cupiēbat. Hoc domicilium erat bene mūnītum et satis magnum, sed fāma ejus mala erat. Eī quī ibi habitābant per noctem sonum[6] vinculōrum[7] audiē- 5 bant. Causam[8] sonōrum mox cognōvērunt. Ut enim exspec- tābant subitō senem[9] vidēbant quī barbam[10] et capillum[11] longum habēbat. Pedibus vincula gerēbat. Neque laetae erant noctēs eōrum quī in illō domiciliō habitāre temptābant. Per diem[12] etiam memoria cum eīs manēbat et eōs terrēbat. Aderat 10 enim timor mortis.

Tandem nēmō in domiciliō habitāre audēbat. Domicilium tōtum illī senī relīquērunt. Nēmō enim illud condūcere[13] cupiēbat.

[Notes] 1. *Plīnius, Plīnī (m.)*, Pliny.  2. *scrīptor, -ōris (m.)*, writer. 3. *quōdam (adj.)*, certain *(abl.)*.  4. *Athēnīs*, at Athens *(locative)*.  5. *nēmō (m)*, no one *(dat. nēminī; acc. nēminem)*.  6. *sonus, -ī (m.)*, sound.  7. *vincu- lum, -ī (n.)*, chain.  8. *causa, -ae (f.)*, cause.  9. *senex, senis (m.)*, an old man. 10. *barba, -ae (f.)*, beard.  11. *capillus, -ī (m.)*, hair.  12. *diem*, day *(acc.)*. 13. *condūcere*, to rent.

**"**

Can you answer these questions on the story?

1. Who has told about the haunted house?  2. Where was it? 3. What kind of house was it?  4. How did the people who lived in it know that it was haunted?  5. What did the ghost look like?  6. How did the people feel about it?  7. What happened to the house?

## THE PERFECT TENSE PASSIVE

Note how in Latin, as in English, many words are formed from one stem. As in English from *friend* we get *friendship, friendly, friendliness, friendless, and friendlessness,* so in Latin from **timeō** we get **timor, timidus, timiditās, timefactus, timēscēns, timidulē.**

The suffixes **–bilis, –tus,** and **–āris** will be met later. Watch for them.

## EXERCISES

Give the simple root word, the suffix, the prefix (if any), the meaning, and the English form (if there is one) for **petitiō, valor, victōria, paucitās, pulchritūdō, Āfricānus, conventiō, captor, humānus, amor, amātor, aquaticus, altitūdō, inimīcitia, marīnus, prōductiō.**

Tell from what Latin word each of the following English words comes and what each means in terms of the Latin word: *aquarium, habitation, curable, victorious, vocation, servile, portable, invincible, attentive, vocal.*

What Latin suffixes do you recognize in *divine, navigation, spectator, contention, cupidity, equine, occupation, validity, barbarian, servitude, canine?*

## *Supplementary Story*

### A HAUNTED HOUSE (PART 2)

Per paucōs mēnsēs vacuum relictum est domicilium in quō ille senex, dē quō audīvistis, habitābat. Tandem vēnit Athēnās philosophus[1] Athēnodōrus. Domicilium illud condūcere[2] cupīvit, sed amīcī eī fābulam dē imāgine[3] nārrāvērunt. Nihilōminus[4] domicilium condūxit. Ubi nox vēnit, lectum posuit 5
in prīmā domicilī parte et servōs tabellās,[5] stilum,[6] lūmen[7] portāre jussit. Sōlus sine servīs mānsit et scrīpsit. Oculōs in tabellīs tenuit. Prīmō silentium[8] noctis; deinde vincula audiuntur. Ille oculōs nōn movet. Sonus[9] vinculōrum appropinquat; jam ad portam, jam intrā portam audītur. Ille 10
ad sonum oculōs vertit, imāginem videt. Stābat et digitīs innuēbat.[10] Philosophus autem in lectō permanet, rūrsus stilō et tabellīs labōrat. Mox sonus vinculōrum iterum[11] audītur. Philosophus ad portam spectat, iterum imāginem videt. Nōn jam dubitat. Lūmen capit et imāginem sequitur.[12] Senex 15

[ 299 ]
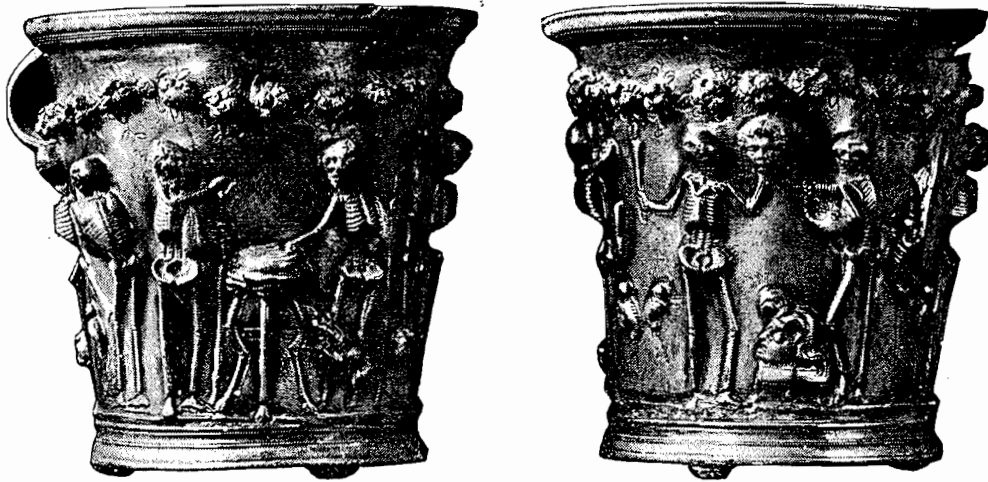
Silver goblet found near Pompeii. The skeletons, who are acting like living persons, symbolize the philosophy of life: "Enjoy life while you are alive, for tomorrow is uncertain"

difficultāte magnā ambulat quod pedibus vincula trahit. Post-quam ille in peristȳlium domicilī pervēnit, subitō nōn jam vidētur. Philosophus in locō ubi imāgō fuerat signum pōnit.

Posterō diē,[13] Athēnodōrus ea quae vīderat amīcīs nārrāvit.
20 Ejus verbīs commōtī, servōs illum locum effodīre[14] jussērunt. Inveniuntur ossa[15] et vincula. Numquam posteā[16] imāgō illīus senis vīsa est.

[NOTES] 1. *philosophus, -ī (m.)*, philosopher. 2. *condūcō, -ere, -dūxī*, rent. 3. *imāgō, -inis (f.)*, ghost. 4. *nihilōminus*, none the less. 5. *tabella, -ae (f.)*, tablet. 6. *stilus, -ī (m.)*, stylus. 7. *lūmen, -inis (n.)*, light. 8. *silentium, -ī (n.)*, silence. 9. *sonus, -ī (m.)*, sound. 10. *innuō, -ere*, beckon. 11. *iterum (adv.)*, again. 12. *sequitur*, follows. 13. *posterō diē*, on the following day. 14. *effodiō, -īre*, dig up. 15. *ossa*, bones (*nom.*). 16. *numquam posteā*, never afterwards.

Can you answer these questions on the story?

1. What happened when Athenodorus arrived in Athens? 2. What preparations did he make for the night? 3. Tell all that then happened. 4. What was the end of the whole affair?

To whom is this Pompeian girl writing her letter?

# LESSON TWENTY-FOUR

*"*

## Time When; Negative Commands

=== PRELIMINARY REMARKS ===

The time of an action is expressed in English by an adverbial phrase with or without a preposition. [As, *He worked hard that year; They sleep at night; We work by day; In the winter it is cold; We rest on Sunday; In two hours he will arrive.*] For all such expressions there is one Latin construction. Note its use in the story.

You have learned the forms and the use of the imperative mood. Note how negative command is expressed in the story.

### A LETTER FROM THE COUNTRY

Hodiē epistulam ab amīcō meō Pūbliō recēpī. Pūblius discipulus est in lūdō magistrī Orbilī Rōmae. Ego quoque sum discipulus in illō lūdō. Pūblium fābulās multās epistulāsque scrībere oportet. Hanc epistulam Pūblī dum legō audīte:

5  Pūblius Gaiō amīcō salūtem dīcit.[1]  Sī valēs, gaudeō[2]; ego valeō.  Ex vīllā amīcī nostrī Mārcī hās litterās mittēbam,[3] cum Mārcō enim hunc annum rūrī[4] maneō.  Marcus adfuit sed hodiē tertiā hōrā [1] vīllam relīquit et cum patre[5] Rōmam contendit.  Ibi illum cum patre propter negōtium paucās hōrās

10 manēre oportēbat.  Interim, quod Mārcus aberat et sociī nōn aderant, mē litterās in vīllā vacuā scrībere licēbat.

    Nōlī [2] dē fortūnā meā timēre.  Hīc enim laetus sum. Paucās cūrās[6] habeō.  Vīlla et ampla et pulchra est.  Numerus satis magnus servōrum bonōrum vīllam cūrat.  Hīc mē togam

15 gerere nōn oportet ut Rōmae[7] in lūdō nostrō.  Cotīdiē multās hōrās dormiō.[8]  Hōrā secundā, sī sōl[9] splendet, in silvīs ambulāre parō.  Cum aut per silvās propinquās aut in ōrā maritimā[10] ambulō, nōn sōlum corpus[11] sed etiam animus meus beneficium multum capit.  Tum multās hōrās legō.  Ob hunc modum vītae

20 maximē valeō.[12]

    Epistulam diū nōn mīsistī.  Cūr nōn scrīpsistī?  Nōlī scrībere dubitāre.  Dē fortūnā tuā et cēterōrum amīcōrum nostrōrum audīre magnopere cupiēbam.  Itaque saepe scrībe.  Valē.

[NOTES] 1. *salūtem dīcit*, greets. (The Roman letter-writer often spoke of himself in the third person at the beginning of a letter.) 2. *gaudeō, -ēre*, I am glad. 3. *mittēbam*, I am sending. (The Roman letter-writer used the imperfect where we use the present.) 4. *rūrī*, in the country. 5. *cum patre*, with his father. 6. *cūra, -ae* (*f.*), worry, care. 7. *ut Rōmae*, as at Rome. 8. *dormiō, -īre, -īvī*, sleep. 9. *sōl*, sun (*nom.*). 10. *in ōrā maritimā*, on the seashore. 11. *corpus*, body (*nom.*). 12. *maximē valeō*, I am in fine health. (The imperative *valē* (*pl.* *valēte*) is the word for good-by.)

## GRAMMAR NOTES

*[The Ablative Used to Express Time.]*

**1.** The time when or within which an action takes place is usually expressed in Latin by the ablative case without a preposition. [As, **Tertiā hōrā relīquit**, *He left in* (*at* or *within*) *the third hour*.] But duration of time is expressed by the accusative.

*[Negative Command.]*

**2.** When a person is ordered not to do something, the idea is expressed in Latin by the imperative **nōlī** (*pl.* **nōlīte**), *be unwilling, do not*, followed by the infinitive. [As, **nōlī timēre**, *do not fear*.]

In writing, most English nouns show possession by adding an apostrophe and -s ('s). When the noun already ends in -s or an "s" sound, as in most plurals, the apostrophe alone shows possession. English nouns which show possession are said to be in the possessive case.

girl's, girls'    man's, men's    princess', princesses'

Possession is often shown in English by "of" and the noun in place of the possessive case.

the dresses of the girls    the homes of the people

**LOOK AND THINK** In the last two paragraphs of "Roman Provinces" the verb **sunt** is used five times. When is it better translated just "are" (without the expletive) and when "there are"? (See footnote 1 on page 14.)

**USE YOUR EYES** **Paenīnsula** is a combination of **paene** (almost) and **īnsula** (island). What is a peninsula? What does the Italian peninsula look like on a map?

**SCRAMBLED SENTENCES** Unscramble the words to make sentences, and translate. Watch word endings. They make the meaning clear, regardless of word order.

1 **longās habent prōvinciae Aquās Rōmānae.**
2 **bona in aqua est Aquīs.**
3 **obscūrīs bēstiae silvīs in magnae īnsulārum sunt.**

# II

## AFRICA

Anna Cornēliae salūtem dīcit[1]; sī valēs, bene est; valeō.[2] Prīmō erāmus in Siciliā; nunc sumus in Āfricā; mox erimus in Ītaliā. Nunc in Āfricā cum amitā meā sum.

[1]This phrase is equivalent to the salutation "Dear Cornelia" in a personal letter an American girl might write; literally, "Anna says a greeting to Cornelia."

[2]**Sī valēs, bene est; valeō** was an expression so often used by the Romans in letter writing that it was usually abbreviated: **s.v.b.e.v.** It means "If you're well, that's good; I am well," and may be compared with a similar expression still used by some letter writers.

Āfrica est magna prōvincia Rōmae; est terra mīra. Ōra
maritima Āfricae est pulchra et aqua maritima est quiēta. 5
Multae vīllae Rōmānae in ōrā sunt. Vīllae sunt albae et
pulchrae, sed casae parvae nōn sunt pulchrae.

Āfrica est ārida.° Nōn procul ab ōrā maritimā est terra
arēnōsa.° In viīs angustīs vidēmus bēstiās mīrās—ele-
phantōs° et camēlōs.° 10

Es nunc in Britanniā; mox eris in Galliā. Nārrā° mihi° dē
Britanniā. Estne Britannia terra frīgida°? Suntne viae lātae
in Britanniā? Dūcuntne Aquae aquam in urbēs? Suntne
silvae obscūrae? In ōrā Āfricae silvās nōn vidēmus.

Amita mea mē° vocat. Valē.[1] 15

°**ā′ri da**\* dry, arid • **a rē nō′sa** sandy • **e le phan′tōs**\*
(acc. pl.) elephants • **ca mē′lōs**\* (acc. pl.) camels • **nār′rā**
(a command) tell • **mi′hi** (to) me • **frī′gi da**\* cold, frigid
**mē**\* me

| | |
|---|---|
| Noun | |
| **a′mi ta, -ae** | aunt |
| Adjectives | |
| **al′ba** | white |
| **an gus′ta** | narrow |
| \***ma ri′ti ma** | of the sea; (with **ōra**) seacoast |
| **me′a** | my, mine |
| [2]**pul′chra** | beautiful |
| \***qui ē′ta** | quiet |
| Verbs | |
| **vi dē′mus** | we see |
| **vo′cat** | calls, is calling |
| Adverbs | |
| **mox** | soon |
| **nunc** | now |
| **pro′cul** | far, far away |
| Prepositions | |
| **cum** | (with abl.) with |
| **dē** | (with abl.) about, concerning |

[1]**Valē,** the Roman expression meaning literally "Farewell," is equivalent to our "Good-
by" (God be with you).

[2]In syllabication, **ch** is treated as a single letter. Its sound is that of "c" in "can."

**35**

**LOOK AND THINK** Besides the forms of **sum,** these verb forms appear in stories I and II of this unit.

**vidētis** (I, 1)   **valēs** (II, 1)   **vidēmus** (II, 9)

**dīcit** (II, 1)   **valeō** (II, 1)   **Dūcunt** (II, 13)

What are the person and number of each of these verb forms? What are the clues? What pronoun is used in translating each form?

**USE YOUR EYES** In the story, "Africa," **bēstiās** (line 9), **elephantōs** and **camēlōs** (lines 9-10), and **urbēs** (line 13) are all accusative plural. In what way are their endings alike? How do they differ?

**LATIN LIVES TODAY** For each sentence choose the word which makes the statement true. Explain your choice.

1 An albino is sometimes/never black.
2 To a shipowner maritime law is important/unimportant.
3 Miss America usually has great/no pulchritude.
4 Land is arid when it is flooded/dry.

# III

## BRITAIN

Cornēlia Annae salūtem dīcit: s.v.b.e.v.

Amita mea in vīllā nostrā in Britanniā habitat. Britannia est magna īnsula. Circum īnsulam est alta et frīgida aqua, sed inter Galliam et Britanniam aquae nōn sunt frīgidae.

Vīlla nostra est prope ōram maritimam. Nōn procul ā 5 vīllā nostrā sunt thermae.° In thermīs sunt et aqua tepida° et aqua frīgida. Prope vīllam nostram est via lāta, sed via nōn est longa. Nōn sunt multae vīllae in viā nostrā.

In Britanniā Rōmānā sunt scholae Rōmānae et vīllae

°ther'mae, -ārum the baths  •  te'pi da* lukewarm, tepid

I I

38

Rōmānae et ārae Rōmānae. Sed in Britanniā Celticā° sunt ₁₀
silvae. Silvae sunt obscūrae et perīculōsae. In silvīs obscūrīs
sunt bēstiae mīrae. Per silvās viae Rōmānae nōn pertinent.°
Incolae silvārum in parvīs casīs habitant. Prope casās nōn
sunt ārae, sed procul in silvīs sunt ārae mīrae.

Briganta est ancilla° amitae meae. Briganta in silvīs ₁₅
obscūrīs habitat. Briganta mihi et amitae meae multās dē
Britanniā Celticā fābulās nārrat. Amitae et mihi sēmitam°
obscūram silvae mōnstrat, sed casās nōn vidēmus Celticās.
Interdum Briganta amitae meae herbās novās dat.

Mox erimus in Galliā. Erisne in Āfricā? Eritne amita tua ₂₀
in Ītaliā? Erō beāta in Galliā. Valē.

°Cel′ti ca* (adj.) Celtic • per′ti nent extend • an cil′la,
-ae maid • sē′mi ta, -ae path

| | Nouns | |
|---|---|---|
| | ā′ra, -ae | altar |
| | *fā′bu la, -ae | story, fable |
| | *her′ba, -ae | herb, plant |
| | in′co la, -ae | inhabitant, resident |
| | *scho′la, -ae | school |
| | Adjectives | |
| | be ā′ta | happy; fortunate, blessed |
| | nos′tra | our |
| | pe rī cu lō′sa | dangerous |
| | tu′a | your, yours (of one person) |
| | Verbs | |
| | dat | gives |
| | ha′bi tat | lives, dwells |
| | mōn′strat | shows, points out |
| | nār′rat | tells |
| | Conjunctions | |
| | et . . . et | both . . . and |
| | Preposition | |
| | *cir′cum | (with acc.) around |

**INDIRECT OBJECT** A word denoting the person to
whom something is given, said, told, or shown is an indirect
object.

# VII.

# Greek History

the profit from rental. They reached to a height of from four to six stories, the better apartments being on the lower stories. Shops were on the ground floor, while there were often balconies on the upper stories. A few had central courts. The term īnsula was applied to such a building, because it was usually entirely surrounded by streets just as an island is by water.

Into these buildings people crowded. They got their water from the street fountains and their food from the many little cookshops. There was constant danger from fires and the collapse of walls.

## LEGACY

What is the meaning of our word *insulate*? How does this resemble the Roman use of īnsula to describe an apartment house?

What is the meaning of each of the following words, all derived from īnsula: *insulator, insulation, insular, insularity*? They are formed by the use of certain suffixes. These are *-tor, -tion, -ar*, and *-ity*. They are all of Latin origin and change the meaning of the basic word. *-tor* indicates the performer of an act. [Thus, *auditor* is one who hears.] Can you think of similar words from dēbeō, dūcō, and capiō? *-tion* (Latin -tiō) indicates the act of doing something. [Thus, *audition* is the act of hearing.] Form similar words from prohibeō, dīcō. *-ar* (Latin -āris) indicates having the quality of. [Thus, *singular* is having the quality of oneness.] Form similar words from familia, populus. *-ity* (Latin, -itās) indicates a state of having a certain quality. [Thus, *singularity* is a state of being singular.] Form similar words from familia and populus.

Enter in your notebook suffixes as you meet them. If you observe their force carefully, you will gain the ability to recognize the meanings of many new words by analyzing them into their separate parts.

## *Supplementary Story*

### THE FIRST MARATHON RACE

Darīus, rēx[1] Persārum,[2] Graeciam vincere dēsīderāvit. Ad Atticam, patriam Athēniensium[3] cum mīlitibus[4] nāvigāvit.

Jam Athēniensēs magnopere timuērunt. Ad Spartānōs[5] Phīdippidem,[6] cursōrem juvenem,[7] mittunt et auxilium quaerunt. Sed, ubi Phīdippides ad oppidum Spartānōrum vēnit et 5 perīculum dēmōnstrāvit, Spartānī auxilium nōn mīsērunt.

[ 127 ]

the people

*elligerent*

age 272)
ts. The
ir great
circum-
houses.
d people
popula-
s today.
f Rome,
ere con-
increase

LAR

Tum Athēniensēs perīculum ā patriā prohibēre nōn dubitā-
vērunt.  In campō Marathōniō[8] proeliō magnō[9] cum Persīs
10 contendērunt.  Athēniensēs vīcērunt et Persās ē Graeciā ēgē-
runt.  Nunc Athēniensēs clāmāvērunt: "Curre,[10] Phīdippides,
et populō victōriam nostram nūntiā!"[11]  Jam Phīdippides per
montēs[12] celeriter[13] cucurrit.  In forum irrūpit.[14]  "Gaudēte!"[15]
clāmāvit.  "Persās vīcimus."  Tum moriēns cecidit.[16]  Hic[17]
15 erat prīmus cursus Marathōnius, quem[18] etiam[19] nunc per
annōs servāvimus.[20]

[NOTES] 1. *rēx*, king (*nom.*).  2. *Persae, -ārum*, the Persians.  3. *Athēni-
ensēs*, the Athenians (*nom.* and *acc.*).  The genitive is *Athēniensium*.
4. *cum mīlitibus*, with his soldiers.  5. *Spartānī, -ōrum*, the Spartans.
6. *Phīdippides*, Phidippides.  The accusative is *Phīdippidem*.  7. *cursōrem
juvenem*, a young runner (*acc.*).  8. *Marathōniō*, at Marathon (*adj.*).
9. *proeliō magnō*, in a great battle.  10. *currō, -ere, cucurrī*, run.
11. *nūntiō, -āre*, announce.  12. *per montēs*, through the mountains.  13. *cele-
riter*, quickly.  14. *irrūpit*, he burst.  15. *Gaudēte!* rejoice!  16. *moriēns ce-
cidit*, he fell dying.  17. *Hic erat prīmus cursus Marathōnius*, this was the
first Marathon race.  18. *quem*, which (*acc.*).  19. *etiam*, even.  20. *servō,
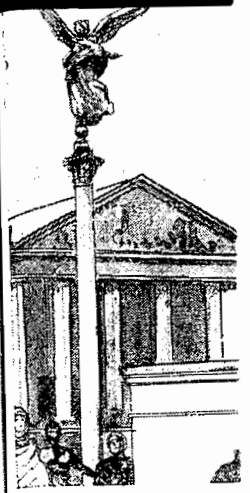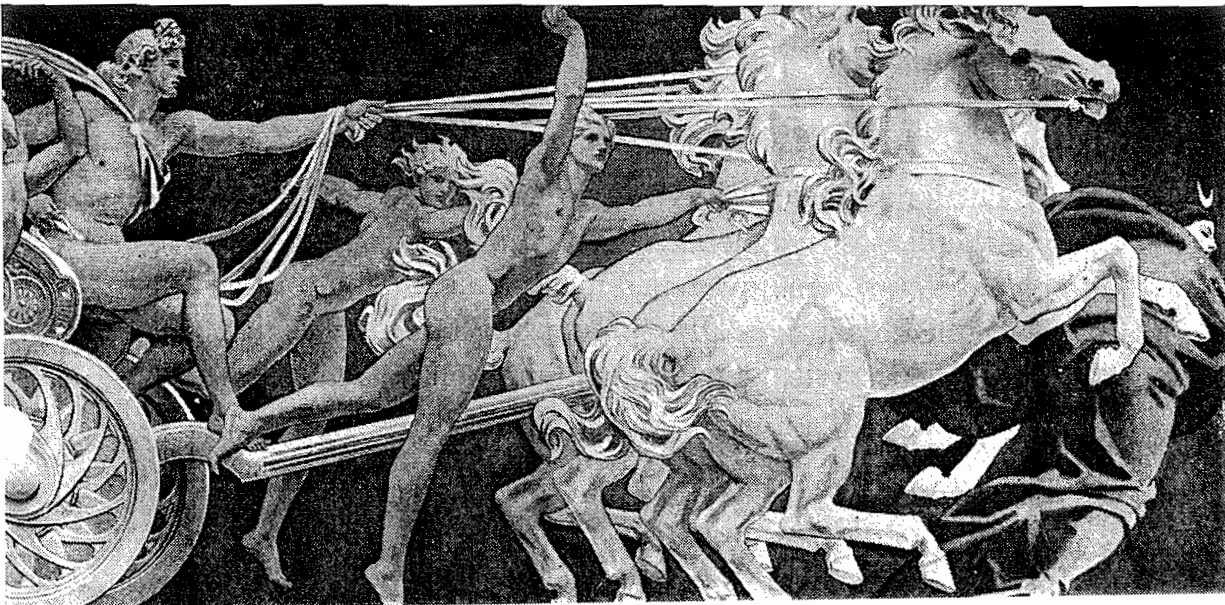-āre*, keep.

"

Can you tell what danger threatened the Athenians;  how they tried
in vain to get help;  what they then did;  and what happened to Phi
dippides?  Read Robert Browning's poem *Phidippides*.

"

**Apollo in his chariot with the Hours**
Mural painting by John S. Sargent, Museum of Fine Arts, Boston

## *Supplementary Story*

### THE SWORD OF DAMOCLES

Ōlim[1] Dionȳsius, tyrannus[2] Syrācūsārum,[3] amīcusque ejus[4] Dāmocles prope rēgiam[5] Dionȳsī stābant.[6] Dionȳsius amīcō vīllās suās[7] et silvās pulchrās et nāviculās dēmōnstrat. Dīvitiās[8] tyrannī Dāmocles multum laudat. Tum ita[9] dīcit.
5 "Quam[10] bona est fortūna tua,[11] Dionȳsī.[12] Pecūniam multam habēs. Dominus es servōrum multōrum. Nautae Syrācūsārum ad Graeciam et Asiam nāvigant et multās rēs[13] pulchrās portant. Quam laetus esse dēbēs!"

Diē posterō[14] Dionȳsius amīcum Dāmoclem ad rēgiam vocat.
10 Ubi venit, cēnam[15] magnam videt. Servī Dāmoclem in locō[16] tyrannī pōnunt. Servī cibum[17] multum portant. Quam laetus est Damocles! Sed subitō[18] tēctum[19] spectat. Super caput[20] gladium pendentem[21] videt. Ūna saeta equīna[22] gladium tenet. Nōn jam Dāmocles cēnam amat. Multum timet. Tum Dionȳ-
15 sius ita dīcit. "Nunc, amīce, fortūnam meam vidēre potes. Super caput meum est semper gladius. Semper timeō. Num laetus esse possum?"

[NOTES] 1. *Ōlim* (*adv.*), once. 2. *tyrannus, -ī* (*m.*), ruler. 3. *Syrācūsārum* (*gen.*), of Syracuse. 4. *ejus*, his. 5. *rēgia, -ae* (*f.*), palace. 6. *stābant*, were standing. 7. *suās*, his. 8. *dīvitiae, -ārum* (*f.*), riches, wealth. 9. *ita* (*adv.*), thus. 10. *Quam* (*adv.*), how. 11. *tua*, your. 12. *Dionȳsī*, vocative case. 13. *rēs*, things (*acc. plural*). 14. *Diē posterō*, on the following day. 15. *cēna, -ae,* (*f.*), dinner. 16. *in locō*, in the place. 17. *cibus, -ī* (*m.*), food. 18. *subitō* (*adv.*), suddenly. 19. *tēctum, -ī* (*n.*), ceiling. 20. *Super caput*, over his head. 21. *gladium pendentem*, a hanging sword (*acc.*). 22. *saeta equīna*, horse hair (*nom.*).

Can you explain now the expression "The sword of Damocles," which is often used today; as when the Senator from Florida defined "the most dangerous of issues" which divides the Big Three as "the almighty Bomb held like a Damoclean sword over the heads of Russia and the rest of the world?" (*Time,* April 1, 1946)

**C.** Read the Latin and translate.

1. Mīlitum animī signō proelī cōnfīrmātī erant.   2. Multa et pulchra dōna rēgīnae potentī dantur.   3. Caesaris mors cīvibus miserīs nūntiātur.   4. Cūr fortēs amīcī nōn laudātī sunt?   5. Bonae fēminae semper amātae sunt.   6. Cīvēs Rōmānī saepe ad campum convocābantur.   7. Pōns longus in urbe Britannīs et Gallīs dēmōnstrābitur.   8. Servī Helvētiī crās līberābuntur.   9. Fābulae dē lēgātō audācī semper nārrābuntur.   10. Castra magnā cum audāciā oppugnāta sunt.

**D.** Translate.

1. Why are the letters not being prepared with care?   2. The wretched captives were being kept in the town.   3. Everyone has been called to the mountain.   4. Tomorrow the city will have been captured; soon we shall break camp.   5. The camp was being attacked with many weapons.   6. The death of the general will be reported far and wide.   7. The brave soldier had been wounded with a heavy weapon.   8. Haven't the enemy been defeated in Germany?   9. Everything was carried into camp.   10. The fields of the good farmer have been seized.

## ——*Reading*——

### ALEXANDER'S HORSE

Alexander Magnus, rēx Macedoniae, equum fortem et celerem habēbat. Būcephalus appellātus est. Rēgem in proelium semper portābat. Armīs signōque proelī delectābātur. Ubi mīlitēs rēgis Būcephalum audācem inter hostēs vidēbant, animī cōnfīrmābantur et virī clamābant, "Būcephalus nōn est animal, sed similis deō."

Fābula dē equō memoriā diū tenēbātur. Alexander cum potentī duce Indōrum pugnābat. Rēx miserē labōrābat. Būcephalus multīs tēlīs hostium vulnerātus erat. In corpore equī erant gravia vulnera. Mors aderat, sed animal forte nōn timēbat. Alexandrum sine iniūriā ad castra portāvit. Tum animam exspīrāvit.

Posteā in fīnibus Indōrum stābat oppidum Macedonicum. Nōmen oppidī erat Būcephala.

Rome.  9. The dangers of a winter on the sea were reported to the Roman sailors.  10. The general had been warned about the fire on the mountain.

## —— *Reading* ——

### ALEXANDER AND PORUS

Alexandrī et cōpiārum Graecārum magnum iter erat per fīnēs Persārum Indōrumque. Graecī ad flūmen Hydaspem ab imperātōre prōmōtī erant. Ibi flūmen lātum hostēs Graecīs prohibuit. Trāns flūmen stābant mīlitēs Indī, virī ingentēs. Multae erant cōpiae. Pōrus, rēx Indōrum, in proelium elephantō portābātur et magna pulchraque arma tenēbat.

Tum Alexander mīlitēs trāns flūmen mōvit. Omnēs Graecī, ubi rēgem Indōrum vīdērunt, ferō animō et corpore magnō territī sunt. Acriter pugnātum est. Et Pōrus et Alexander fortiter pugnāvit. Sed Pōrus superātus est et posteā erat socius Alexandrī.

*Plan of the Baths of Caracalla, dedicated in 216 A.D.*

N. Main Entrance
a. Shops
Q. Nymphaea
P. Rooms opening on
   colonnade
R. Heated Rooms
T. Libraries (Greek and Latin)
S. Stadium
V. Water Tanks
z. Aqueduct
b. Entrances to the baths
L. Dressing Rooms
A. Frigidarium
B. Central Hall
C. Tepidarium
D. Caldarium
G. Palaestra
F. Exedrae
c and E.  Lecture Halls
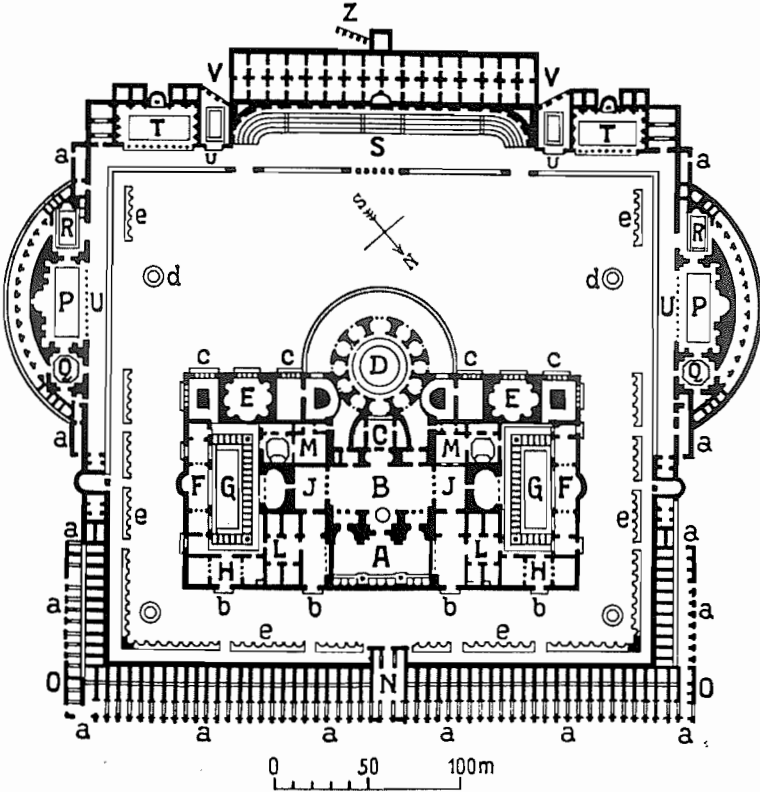
<table>
<tr><td>

**LESSON
OBJECTIVE**

- To learn the second
declension nouns and
adjectives ending in **-r**

</td></tr>
</table>

# ARISTOTELĒS ET ALEXANDER

[1] *Aristotle* (nom.)

[2] *king of Macedonia*

[3] *Aristotle* (acc.)

[4] *Aristotle* (dat.)

[5] *Homer*

[6] *I am*

[7] *of Achilles* (gen.) *hero of Homer's* Iliad

[8] *anger*

[9] *reverence, respect*

[10] *we owe*

[11] *he will be*

**A**ristotelēs[1] magister bonus multōrum virōrum erat. Philosophiam et scientiam nātūrālem docuit. Quod Aristotelēs erat clārus et magister bonus, Philippus, rēx Macedoniae,[2] Aristotelem[3] probāvit.

Philippus fīlium habuit, Alexandrum, puerum bonum et amīcum.
5  Philippus clārō magistrō Aristotelī[4] puerum Alexandrum mandāvit:

"Docē fīlium meum, philosophe."

Aristotelēs semper amīcus Alexandrō erat, et Alexandrum nōn terruit. Aristotelēs Alexandrum dē philosophiā et dē Homērō[5], poētā clārō, docuit. Alexander Homērum amāvit et laudāvit, sed philosophia erat disciplīna dūra
10  et longa.

In agrō Alexander equum novum habuit. Alexander agrum et equum spectāvit, et Aristotelī[4] nūntiāvit:

"Vidē, magister, agrum grātum. Casam tuam nōn amō. Docē mē in agrō. Puer sum[6], nōn vir. Puer līber sum, fīlius Philippī, nōn captīvus tuus. In agrō
15  Homērum et glōriam virī magnī Achillis[7] memoriae mandābō."

Aristotelēs in agrō Alexandrum docēre parat. Sed ubi est puer Alexander? Alexander ad silvam equum incitat. Līber est!

Magna erat īra[8] Philippī, sed in philosophō amīcō nōn erat īra. Philippō Aristotelēs nūntiat:

20  "Puer nōn malus est. Puerī nostrī sacrī sunt; puellae nostrae sacrae sunt. Puerīs nostrīs reverentiam[9] magnam dēbēmus[10]. Alexander bonus est et magnus erit[11]."

Et erat Alexander magnus. Multās terrās occupāvit. Semper fāmam Achillis[7] memoriā tenuit.

### Questions

1. What did Aristotle teach?
2. Why did Philip put Aristotle in charge of teaching his son?
3. What was Philip's son's name and what kind of boy was he?
4. What did Aristotle teach him about?
5. What subject(s) did the boy prefer?
6. What did Alexander watch while studying?

LFA